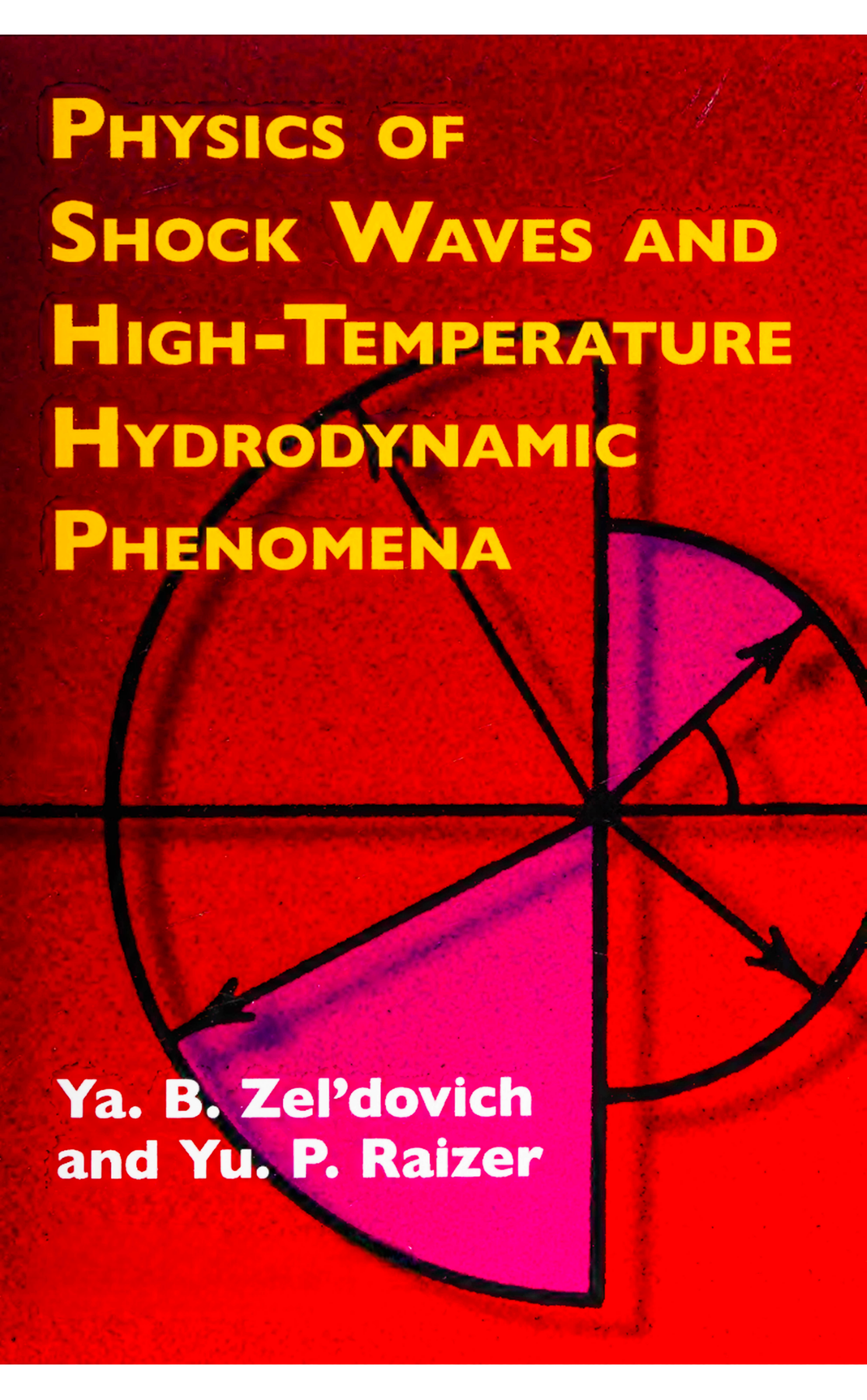
Ya. B. Zel'dovich
Yu. P. Raizer

Physics of Shock Waves and High-Temperature Hydrodynamics

Volume I

Physics of Shock Waves and High-Temperature Hydrodynamic Phenomena



Ya. B. Zel'dovich
and Yu. P. Raizer

Physics of Shock Waves and High-Temperature Hydrodynamic Phenomena

Volume I

Physics of Shock Waves and High-Temperature Hydrodynamic Phenomena

BY

Ya. B. Zel'dovich
Astronomical Soviet

Yu. P. Raizer
Institute of Mechanical Problems

Academy of Sciences, U.S.S.R.
Moscow

EDITED BY

Wallace D. Hayes
Department of Aerospace and Mechanical Sciences
Princeton University
Princeton, New Jersey

Ronald F. Probstein
Department of Mechanical Engineering
Massachusetts Institute of Technology
Cambridge, Massachusetts

Volume I

Translated by Scripta Technica, Inc.

ACADEMIC PRESS
New York and London
1966

COPYRIGHT © 1966, BY ACADEMIC PRESS INC.
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.
NO PART OF THIS BOOK MAY BE REPRODUCED IN ANY FORM,
BY PHOTOSTAT, MICROFILM, OR ANY OTHER MEANS, WITHOUT
WRITTEN PERMISSION FROM THE PUBLISHERS. THIS PERMISSION
WILL BE AUTOMATICALLY GRANTED FOR ANY PURPOSE OF THE
UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT.

ACADEMIC PRESS INC.
111 Fifth Avenue, New York, New York 10003

United Kingdom Edition published by
ACADEMIC PRESS INC. (LONDON) LTD.
Berkeley Square House, London W.1

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CATALOG CARD NUMBER: 66-29390

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

Editors' foreword

The lack of a comprehensive book on high-temperature physical gasdynamics has been felt for a long time. Since we wrote the first edition of "Hypersonic Flow Theory" we have particularly felt the need for a complementary text covering this field. A few books in the field have appeared, treating some of the pertinent topics. The brilliant text of Zel'dovich and Raizer first appeared early in 1964, and was not only outstanding but completely unique. The revised and updated second edition of this text is presented here in English, shortly after the Russian version. We hope that these two volumes together with the second edition of our own "Hypersonic Flow Theory" will serve to present a comprehensive picture of high-temperature high-speed flows in both their physical and hydrodynamical aspects. Our second edition will be in two volumes, the first on Inviscid Flows already published, and the second on Viscous and Rarefied Flows planned for 1969.

Zel'dovich and Raizer's text is truly comprehensive in the field of high-temperature gasdynamics, dealing thoroughly with all the essential physical aspects and their influence on the dynamics and thermodynamics of continuous media. The authors bring a deep physical insight to bear in explaining the nature of seemingly most complicated phenomena. Mathematical and formal treatments are kept to a minimum, while the results of such treatments are reported and compared with those of simplified approaches. The actual scope of the text is discussed in the authors' prefaces.

The standard approach of the theoretical physicist for many of the subjects treated here is quite formal, and not readily connected in the student's mind with physical ideas. Relatively rare are approaches which are correct in essentials and which are based upon sound physical reasoning from fundamental concepts. It is here that this text excels and is unduplicated. The authors consistently explain the physical phenomena of interest on the simplest correct physical basis, using classical instead of quantum physics where this is possible.

As an inevitable consequence of the comprehensive nature of the text, it is a large one. In the English version we have been forced to split the work

into two volumes. This split is a fairly natural one, however, as the first volume covers primarily the fundamental hydrodynamic, physical, and chemical processes involved; the second volume covers primarily the application and interaction of these processes in a multitude of important problems. However, the two volumes together certainly constitute a fully integrated and interrelated work.

It is truly difficult to qualify the audience to which this work is directed. Our physicist colleagues who have used parts of the book in class have found it exceptionally well adapted to teaching in graduate courses. At the same time, they, like the editors, have learned from the book and have obtained a better appreciation for the subject as a whole. The book is also ideally suited for engineers, presenting for them not only the basis for acquiring the physical understanding they need, but also specific formulas, methods, and experimental results for use in making practical calculations. Thus, without exaggeration, we can say that it is well suited to researchers, engineers, students, and professors. In a word, the authors have succeeded in the aims set forth in their original preface.

The authors are thoroughly acquainted with the world literature, and the references cited are comprehensive. The Soviet journals cited are mostly those now regularly translated into English, so that very few of the references cited in this edition are to be found only in Russian.

The editors are grateful for the close and friendly cooperation of the authors. We have exchanged comments, clarifications, and lists of errata. Some editorial changes have been incorporated with the authors' consent. Where it was thought helpful to indicate a different point of view on a topic, to discuss terminology, or occasionally to amplify a statement, we have added an editors' footnote. Subject and author indexes have been added, covering Volume I at the end of that volume, and covering both volumes at the end of Volume II.

The editors gratefully acknowledge the financial support and assistance of the Advanced Research Projects Agency through a contract technically administered by the Fluid Dynamics Branch of the Office of Naval Research with the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. Without this support the editors would not have been able to carry out this project. For the main part of the translating we are indebted to Scripta Technica, Ine. We wish to thank Miss Margaret Gazan for her skillful handling of the secretarial work and of many editorial details. A number of our colleagues have given us valuable comments and corrections, for which we express our sincere thanks.

We also wish to thank Mezhdunarodnaya Kniga for furnishing us the figures. We express our most sincere appreciation to our publishers for their cooperative attitude in this endeavor.

Our warmest thanks go to the authors for their wholehearted cooperation in this undertaking.

September, 1966

WALLACE D. HAYES
RONALD F. PROBSTEIN

Preface to the English edition

This book considers a large variety of problems of modern physics and engineering, which deal with shock waves, high temperatures and pressures, plasmas, strong explosions, very strong electrical discharges, interaction of intense laser radiation with a medium, etc. We have attempted not only to present the clearest possible interpretation of the physical bases of the phenomena arising in these fields, but also to give practical guidance to those who work with these subjects in science and modern technology.

The content of this book is determined to a large extent by the tastes of the authors. In particular, we have considered in more detail those phenomena and problems which were investigated by us personally. Naturally, more attention has been given to the work of Soviet authors. However, we have attempted to reflect in a sufficiently complete manner the work of American and British scientists, which has led to important advances in the solutions of the problems considered.

The text prepared by us for the English edition is almost identical with that of the second Russian edition, which is to be published in 1966. It contains important additions (and corrections) not contained in the first Russian edition of 1963.

We are very glad that this book has been translated into English and will become accessible to many foreign scientists and engineers. We are grateful to the translators for their work and value most highly the initiative of Professors Hayes and Probstein, who have undertaken the editorship of the translation, have shown great care and thoroughness, and have made a number of valuable comments.

October, 1965

YA. B. ZEL'DOVICH
YU. P. RAIZER

Preface to the first Russian edition

The requirements of modern technology have made it necessary for scientific research to penetrate into the domain of very high values of the state variables, such as with high concentrations of energy, very high temperatures and pressures, and extreme velocities. In practice, such conditions are encountered in strong shock waves, in explosions, in hypersonic flight of bodies in the atmosphere, in very strong electrical discharges, etc.

A great variety of physical and physical-chemical processes can occur in gases at high temperatures: excitation of molecular vibrations, dissociation, chemical reactions, ionization, and radiation of light. These processes affect the thermodynamic properties of gases, while at high velocities and with sufficiently rapid changes in the state of the fluid the rates of these processes also affect the motion of the fluid. Of special importance at very high temperatures are processes related to the emission and absorption of light and radiative heat transfer. The enumerated processes are of interest not only from the point of view of their energetic effect on the motion of the gas, but also frequently lead to changes in the composition of the gas and its electrical properties, to the emission of radiation from the gas and many optical phenomena, etc. An appreciable portion of this book is devoted to the study of all of these problems, comprising the newly-arisen branch of science termed "physical gasdynamics."

Of great scientific and practical interest is the study of strong shocks in solids. Recent achievements, which have permitted the compression of solid bodies by means of shock waves to pressures of millions of atmospheres, have opened new paths for the investigation of solid media at ultra-high pressures. Considerable attention has, therefore, been devoted to these problems in the present book.

Many scientific disciplines are interwoven here, including gasdynamics, shock wave theory, thermodynamics and statistical physics, molecular physics, physical and chemical kinetics, physical chemistry, spectroscopy, the general theory of radiation, the elements of astrophysics, and solid state physics. Many of the physical processes and phenomena considered are of differing character and are not directly related to each other. The result of such diversity in the material is the absence of obvious continuity in the

contents of the book. Certain chapters are quite independent, and deal with completely different areas of physics or mechanics, so that not all chapters are related to each other. Hence, the reader interested in one or another particular topic will find it sufficient to become acquainted only with the corresponding chapters.

In examining the most diverse problems, even those of mathematical character, we endeavored primarily to explain the physical essence of the phenomena using the simplest mathematical tools, frequently resorting to estimates and semiqualitative analysis. At the same time, we attempted to help those physicists, fluid mechanicians, and engineers who work in the corresponding areas of applied physics and engineering, and to supply them with practical tools for independent analysis of many different and complex physical phenomena. For this purpose, the treatment of the majority of the phenomena examined is carried through to specific numerical results, the formulas for the calculation and evaluation of various quantities are presented in a convenient form for practical work, a large amount of useful experimental data and reference material is cited, etc.

The book is of a theoretical character and the description of experimental apparatus and methods is kept to a minimum. However, the presentation and comparison of experimental results with theoretically predicted values has been given an appropriate amount of attention.

The journal literature in "physical gasdynamics" is immense. As far as we know, however, no attempt has been made, either in the Soviet Union or elsewhere in the world, to present a systematic and generalized exposition — in a single book and from a single point of view — of the material in this new area of science. Apparently this book is the first attempt in this direction.

The literature cited in the text reflects the fact that the book was written during 1960 and 1961. However, references to more recent works and brief additions were added in those sections dealing with problems which are being developed at an especially rapid pace. This refers primarily to Chapters V, VI and VII.

The great variety of the phenomena and the large scope of the material forced us to limit the presentation to far from all the problems related to the vast area under consideration. We have not considered the more mathematical aspects of hydrodynamics, nor such problems as that of supersonic flow past bodies. We have only barely touched upon electromagnetic phenomena, and have not dealt at all with thermonuclear fusion, behavior of a plasma in a magnetic field, nor magnetohydrodynamics and magnetogasdynamics, combustion, detonation, etc. A great many books dealing with such problems are already available.

The selection of the material for the book has been to some extent a subjective one. A significant place in the text is devoted to phenomena which were investigated by the authors in their own studies. Thus, the authors' original works have served as a basis for part of the text — almost completely in Chapters VIII and IX, to a considerable extent in Chapters VII, X and XII, and partially in Chapter XI. Chapter I represents a complete revision of an earlier book by one of the authors, "Theory of Shock Waves and Introduction to Gasdynamics," published by the Academy of Sciences of the USSR in 1946.

We should like to express our especial gratitude to A. S. Kompaneets, who is responsible for working out a number of problems dealt with in the book and for many useful criticisms and remarks on the manuscript. We are grateful to L. B. Altshuler and S. B. Kormer for their remarks on the manuscript for Chapter XI, which is based on their work to a large extent. We are also grateful to M. A. El'yashevich who read the manuscript carefully and made valuable comments.

YA. B. ZEL'DOVICH
YU. P. RAIZER

Preface to the second Russian edition

The general structure of the book and the major part of the text in this second edition were retained without change. At the same time, certain chapters were thoroughly revised and a considerable amount of new material was added. Chapter V now contains a part devoted to breakdown (high-intensity ionization) processes and to the heating of gases by a focused laser beam. This is one of the most interesting phenomena eonnected with the interaction between an intense light beam and a medium. It was discovered experimentally several years ago, shortly after the development of lasers, which produce high pulse intensities measured in tens of megawatts and higher, and immediately attracted the attention of many physicists (including the authors of this book, who have published works on the theory of this phenomenon).

In connection with problems of gas ionization by laser radiation we have added sections to Chapter V in which emission and absorption of light by free electrons on collision with neutral atoms is considered. The lively interest which is now shown toward lasers has induced us to write a special section (in Chapter II) devoted to the semiclassical treatment of induced emission and of the laser effect.

Extensive changes were made in Part 3 of Chapter VI, in which we consider problems of ionization, recombination, and electronic excitation. This part has been virtually rewritten and extensively expanded in order to take into account modern views on these processes. According to these views an important role is played by stepwise ionization of atoms (first excited and then ionized) and electron capture into upper atomic levels through three-body collisions with subsequent deexcitation of the excited atoms through electron impact and radiative transition. Ionization in air has been considered in more detail. The presentation of the closely related problem of ionization of a gas in a shock wave (in Chapter VII) was also changed.

Sections of Chapter VIII, pertaining to the rate of change in the degree of ionization and of the "freezing" accompanying a sudden expansion of an ionized gas into a vacuum have been rewritten. This problem has been recently reexamined with account taken of electron capture into upper

atomic levels as a result of recombination through three-body collisions.

On the basis of material which was contained in the first edition and of more recent results we have added in Chapter XII a part dealing with the propagation of shock waves in an inhomogeneous atmosphere with an exponential density distribution. We have added an appendix wherein are collected certain constants, relations between atomic constants, and relations between units and formulas which are frequently encountered in practice when dealing with the subject matter of this book.

We have here mentioned only the principal, but by far not all of the changes and additions which were made (we also note that mistakes and printing errors which were found in the first edition have been corrected).

Topics of physics and mechanics which were touched upon in the book are developing at an extremely rapid rate, with the consequent discovery of more and more new fields of application (an example of this is the phenomenon of breakdown and heating of gases in the focus of a laser beam).

As an evidence of the interest shown toward these scientific disciplines we cite the fact that immediately after publication of this book, an English translation was undertaken in the United States, and a need for a new edition very soon arose. We hope that this second revised and supplemented edition will be of use to specialists already working in the above fields of science and engineering and to those who are about to enter these fields.

YA. B. ZEL'DOVICH
YU. P. RAIZER

Contents

EDITORS' FOREWORD v

PREFACE TO THE ENGLISH EDITION . ix

PREFACE TO THE FIRST RUSSIAN EDITION xi

PREFACE TO THE SECOND RUSSIAN EDITION xv

CONDENSED CONTENTS OF VOLUME II . . xxiii

I. Elements of gasdynamics and the classical theory of shock waves

1. Continuous flow of an inviscid nonconducting gas 1

§1. The equations of gasdynamics 1
§2. Lagrangian coordinates 4
§3. Sound waves 7
§4. Spherical sound waves 13
§5. Characteristics 15
§6. Plane isentropic flow. Riemann invariants 19
§7. Plane isentropic gas flow in a bounded region 24
§8. Simple waves 27
§9. Distortion of the wave form in a traveling wave of finite amplitude. Some properties of simple waves 29
§10. The rarefaction wave 33
§11. The centered rarefaction wave as an example of self-similar gas motion 38
§12. On the impossibility of the existence of a centered compression wave . . 43

2. Shock waves 45

§13. Introduction to the gasdynamics of shock waves 45
§14. Hugoniot curves 49
§15. Shock waves in a perfect gas with constant specific heats 50
§16. Geometric interpretation of the laws governing compression shocks . . . 55
§17. Impossibility of rarefaction shock waves in a fluid with normal thermodynamic properties 59
§18. Weak shock waves 63
§19. Shock waves in a fluid with anomalous thermodynamic properties . . . 67

3. Viscosity and heat conduction in gasdynamics 69

§20. Equations of one-dimensional gas flow 69
§21. Remarks on the second viscosity coefficient 73
§22. Remarks on the absorption of sound 74
§23. The structure and thickness of a weak shock front . . 75

4. Various problems 84

§24. Propagation of an arbitrary discontinuity 84
§25. Strong explosion in a homogeneous atmosphere 93
§26. Approximate treatment of a strong explosion 97
§27. Remarks on the point explosion with counterpressure 99
§28. Sudden isentropic expansion of a spherical gas cloud into vacuum . . . 101
§29. Conditions for the self-similar sudden expansion of a gas cloud into vacuum 104

II. Thermal radiation and radiant heat exchange in a medium

§1. Introduction and basic concepts 107
§2. Mechanisms of emission, absorption, and scattering of light in gases . . 111
§3. Equilibrium radiation and the concept of a perfect black body . . . 115
§4. Induced emission 118
§4a. Induced emission of radiation in the classical and quantum theories and the laser effect 122
§5. The radiative transfer equation 128
§6. Integral expressions for the radiation intensity 130
§7. Radiation from a plane layer 133
§8. The brightness temperature of the surface of a nonuniformly heated body 138
§9. Motion of a fluid taking into account radiant heat exchange 141
§10. The diffusion approximation 144
§11. The "forward-reverse" approximation 149
§12. Local equilibrium and the approximation of radiation heat conduction . . 151
§13. Relationship between the diffusion approximation and the radiation heat conduction approximation 154
§14. Radiative equilibrium in stellar photospheres 157
§15. Solution to the plane photosphere problem 161
§16. Radiation energy losses of a heated body 164
§17. Hydrodynamic equations accounting for radiation energy and pressure and radiant heat exchange 168
§18. The number of photons as an invariant of the classical electromagnetic field 172

III. Thermodynamic properties of gases at high temperatures

1. Gas of noninteracting particles 176

§1. Perfect gas with constant specific heats and invariant number of particles 176

§2. Calculation of thermodynamic functions using partition functions . . . 179
§3. Dissociation of diatomic molecules 183
§4. Chemical reactions 188
§5. Ionization and electronic excitation 192
§6. The electronic partition function and the role of the excitation energy of atoms 198
§7. Approximate methods of calculation in the region of multiple ionization 201
§8. Interpolation formulas and the effective adiabatic exponent . . . 207
§9. The Hugoniot curve with dissociation and ionization 209
§10. The Hugoniot relations with equilibrium radiation 213

2. Gases with Coulomb interactions 215

§11. Rarefied ionized gases 215
§12. Dense gases. Elements of Fermi–Dirac statistics for an electron gas . . . 218
§13. The Thomas–Fermi model of an atom and highly compressed cold materials 222
§14. Calculation of thermodynamic functions of a hot dense gas by the Thomas–Fermi method 229

IV. Shock tubes

§1. The use of shock tubes for studying kinetics in chemical physics . . . 233
§2. Principle of operation 234
§3. Elementary shock tube theory 236
§4. Electromagnetic shock tubes 239
§5. Methods of measurement for various quantities 243

V. Absorption and emission of radiation in gases at high temperatures

§1. Introduction. Types of electronic transitions 246

1. Continuous spectra 248

§2. Bremsstrahlung emission from an electron in the Coulomb field of an ion 248
§2a. Bremsstrahlung emission from an electron scattered by a neutral atom 255
§3. Free-free transitions in a high-temperature ionized gas 258
§4. Cross section for the capture of an electron by an ion with the emission of a photon 261
§5. Cross section for the bound-free absorption of light by atoms and ions 264
§6. Continuous absorption coefficient in a gas of hydrogen-like atoms . . 269
§7. Continuous absorption of light in a monatomic gas in the singly ionized region 272
§8. Radiation mean free paths for multiply ionized gas atoms 277

§8a. Absorption of light in a weakly ionized gas . 281

2. Atomic line spectra 283

§9. Classical theory of spectral lines 283
§10. Quantum theory of spectral lines. Oscillator strength . . . 288
§11. The absorption spectrum of hydrogen-like atoms. Remarks on the effect of spectral lines on the Rosseland mean free path . . . 293
§12. Oscillator strengths for the continuum. The sum rule 298
§13. Radiative emission in spectral lines 300

3. Molecular band spectra 303

§14. Energy levels of diatomic molecules 303
§15. Structure of molecular spectra 308
§16. The Frank-Condon principle 313
§17. Probability of molecular transitions with the emission of light 316
§18. Light absorption coefficient in lines 321
§19. Molecular absorption at high temperatures 323
§20. More exact calculation of the molecular absorption coefficient at high temperatures 326

4. Air 331

§21. Radiative properties of high-temperature air 331

5. Breakdown and heating of a gas under the action of a concentrated laser beam 338

§22. Breakdown 338
§23. Absorption of a laser beam and heating of a gas after initial breakdown 343

VI. Rates of relaxation processes in gases

1. Molecular gases 349

§1. Establishment of thermodynamic equilibrium 349
§2. Excitation of molecular rotations 352
§3. Rate equations for the relaxation of molecular vibrational energy . 353
§4. Probability of vibrational excitation and the relaxation time . . 356
§5. Rate equation for dissocation of diatomic molecules and the relaxation time 362
§6. Atom recombination rates and dissociation rates for diatomic molecules 364
§7. Chemical reactions and the activated complex method 368
§8. Oxidation of nitrogen 374
§9. Rate of formation of nitrogen dioxide at high temperatures 378

2. Ionization and recombination. Electronic excitation and deexcitation 382

§10. Basic mechanisms 382
§11. Ionization of unexcited atoms by electron impact . . . 386

§12. Excitation of atoms from the ground state by electron impact. Deexcitation 390
§13. Ionization of excited atoms by electron impact 392
§14. Impact transitions between excited states of an atom . . . 396
§15. Ionization and excitation by heavy particle collisions . . . 398
§16. Photoionization and photorecombination 402
§17. Electron-ion recombination by three-body collisions (elementary theory) 406
§18. A more rigorous theory of recombination by three-body collisions . 408
§19. Ionization and recombination in air 413

3. Plasma 416

§20. Relaxation in a plasma . . 416

CITED REFERENCES . 422

APPENDIX: SOME OFTEN USED CONSTANTS, RELATIONS BETWEEN UNITS, AND FORMULAS 441
AUTHOR INDEX 447
SUBJECT INDEX 452

Condensed Contents of Volume II

Chapter VII

Shock wave structure in gases

1. The shock front
2. The relaxation layer
3. Radiant heat exchange in a shock front

Chapter VIII

Physical-chemical kinetics in hydrodynamic processes

1. Dynamics of a nonequilibrium gas
2. Chemical reactions
3. Disturbance of thermodynamic equilibrium in the sudden expansion of a gas into vacuum
4. Vapor condensation in an adiabatic expansion

Chapter IX

Radiative phenomena in shock waves and in strong explosions in air

1. Luminosity of strong shock fronts in gases
2. Radiative phenomena observed in strong explosions and the cooling of the air by radiation
3. Structure of a cooling wave front

Chapter X

Thermal waves

Chapter XI

Shock waves in solids

1. Thermodynamic properties of solids at high pressures and temperatures
2. The Hugoniot curve
3. Acoustic waves and splitting of waves

4. Phenomena associated with the emergence of a very strong shock wave at the free surface of a body
5. Some other phenomena

Chapter XII

Some self-similar processes in gasdynamics

1. Introduction
2. Convergence of a spherical shock wave to the center and the collapse of bubbles in a fluid
3. The emergence of a shock wave at the surface of a star
4. Motion of a gas under the action of an impulsive shock
5. Propagation of shock waves in an inhomogeneous atmosphere with an exponential density distribution

CITED REFERENCES

APPENDIX: CONSTANTS, UNITS, AND FORMULAS

AUTHOR INDEX (VOLS. I AND II) — SUBJECT INDEX (VOLS. I AND II)

I. Elements of gasdynamics and the classical theory of shock waves

1. Continuous flow of an inviscid nonconducting gas

§1. The equations of gasdynamics

Extremely high pressures, of the order of thousands of atmospheres, are required to achieve an appreciable compression of liquids (and solids). Therefore, under normal conditions it is possible to regard liquids as incompressible media. With the density changes small, the speed of the flow of a liquid is much smaller than the speed of sound; the sound speed serves as a characteristic velocity scale in describing continuous media. With small density changes and with flow velocities much smaller than the speed of sound, gases may also be considered as incompressible and their motion may be described in terms of the hydrodynamics of incompressible fluids. In contrast to liquids, however, appreciable changes in density and flow velocities close to the speed of sound are relatively easy to achieve in gases. In such cases the pressure change can be of the order of the pressure itself, e.g., when the gas is initially at atmospheric pressure and $\Delta p \sim 1$ atm. Under these conditions it is necessary to take into account the compressibility of the medium. The gasdynamic equations differ from the hydrodynamic equations for incompressible fluids by the fact that they account for the possibility of large density changes.

The state of a moving gas whose thermodynamic properties are known can be defined in terms of its velocity, density, and pressure as functions of position and time. These functions are, in turn, defined by the differential equations that describe the general laws of conservation of mass, momentum, and energy. These equations are given below without proof, and may be found, for example, in the book by Landau and Lifshitz [1].

We shall disregard gravitational effects, viscosity, and thermal conductivity*. A partial derivative with respect to time at a given point in space is denoted by $\partial/\partial t$, and a total derivative, describing the time change in any quantity following a moving fluid particle, by D/Dt. If $\mathbf{u}$ is the vector velocity

* Gasdynamic equations which take into account viscosity and thermal conductivity will be considered in §20.

of the fluid particle whose components are u_x, u_y, and u_z or u_i, where $i = 1$, 2, 3, then

$$\frac{D}{Dt} = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla. \tag{1.1}$$

The first equation—the continuity equation—describes the conservation of mass of the fluid, that is, the fact that the density in a given volume element changes as a result of flow of the fluid into or out of this element:

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot \rho \mathbf{u} = 0. \tag{1.2}$$

Using (1.1), the continuity equation can be rewritten as

$$\frac{D\rho}{Dt} + \rho \nabla \cdot \mathbf{u} = 0. \tag{1.3}$$

For an incompressible fluid, where $\rho = const$, the continuity equation is

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u} = 0. \tag{1.4}$$

The second equation expresses Newton's law and does not differ from the corresponding equation of motion for an incompressible fluid (p is the pressure)

$$\rho \frac{D\mathbf{u}}{Dt} = -\nabla p \tag{1.5}$$

or, in the form of Euler's equation,

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t} + \mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{u} = -\frac{1}{\rho} \nabla p. \tag{1.6}$$

It is evident that the equations of motion and continuity when combined are equivalent to the law of conservation of momentum expressed in a form similar to (1.2),

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \rho u_i = -\frac{\partial \Pi_{ik}}{\partial x_k}, \tag{1.7}$$

where Π_{ik} is the momentum flux density tensor

$$\Pi_{ik} = \rho u_i u_k + p\delta_{ik}. \tag{1.8}$$

Equation (1.7) expresses the fact that a change in the ith component of momentum at a given point in space is related to the flux of momentum out of (or into) a small volume (first term in (1.8)) plus the force from the pressure field (second term)*.

* The summation on the right-hand side of (1.7) is carried out with respect to the subscript k ($k = 1, 2, 3$); $\delta_{ik} = 1$ for $i = k$ and $\delta_{ik} = 0$ for $i \neq k$.

The third equation is essentially new to the hydrodynamics of incompressible fluids and is equivalent to the first law of thermodynamics, i.e., to the law of conservation of energy. It can be formulated as follows: A change in the specific internal energy ε of a given particle is a result of the work of compression done on the particle by the surrounding medium, and of the energy generated by external sources

$$\frac{D\varepsilon}{Dt} + p\frac{DV}{Dt} = Q. \tag{1.9}$$

Here $V = 1/\rho$ is the specific volume and Q is the energy generated by the external sources per unit mass of the material per unit time (Q can be negative when nonmechanical energy losses, as for example radiation losses, are present).

Using the equations of motion and continuity, the energy equation can be reduced to a form similar to (1.2) and (1.7)

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\rho\varepsilon + \frac{\rho u^2}{2}\right) = -\nabla \cdot \left[\rho\mathbf{u}\left(\varepsilon + \frac{u^2}{2}\right) + p\mathbf{u}\right] + \rho Q. \tag{1.10}$$

In physical terms, this equation states that a change in the total energy per unit volume at a given point in space occurs as a result of energy flux (in or out) during the fluid motion, the work of the pressure forces, and the energy supplied from external sources.

The continuity, motion, and energy equations form a system of five equations (the equation of motion is vectorial and is equivalent to three scalar equations) with five unknown functions of space and time: ρ, u_x, u_y, u_z, and p. It is assumed that the external energy sources Q are known, and that the internal energy ε can be expressed in terms of density and pressure, since the thermodynamic properties of the fluid are also assumed to be known: $\varepsilon = \varepsilon(p, \rho)$.

If the energy, as is frequently the case, is given not as a function of pressure and density, but either as a function of temperature T and density, or of temperature and pressure, then the equation of state $p = f(T, \rho)$ must be added to the system. The equation of state for a perfect gas is

$$pV = RT, \qquad p = R\rho T, \tag{1.11}$$

where R is the gas constant per unit mass*.

The energy equation (1.9) is a general one and is applicable when the fluid is not in a state of thermodynamic equilibrium. In the particular case of practical importance when the fluid is in thermodynamic equilibrium, this equa-

* $R = \mathscr{R}/\mu_0$, where $\mathscr{R}$ is the universal gas constant and μ_0 is the molecular weight.

tion can be written in a different form based on the second law of thermodynamics

$$T\,dS = d\varepsilon + p\,dV, \tag{1.12}$$

where S is the specific entropy. In the absence of external heat sources, the third gasdynamic equation is equivalent to the entropy equation for a particle, which is the same as the adiabatic flow condition

$$\frac{DS}{Dt} = 0. \tag{1.13}$$

The entropy of a perfect gas with constant specific heats can be expressed in a simple form in terms of pressure and density (specific volume)

$$S = c_v \ln pV^\gamma + const, \tag{1.14}$$

where γ is the isentropic exponent, equal to the ratio of the specific heats at constant pressure and at constant volume, $\gamma = c_p/c_v = 1 + R/c_v$. The entropy (or energy) equation (1.13) can, in this case, be written as a differential equation relating the pressure and density (volume)

$$\frac{1}{p}\frac{Dp}{Dt} + \gamma \frac{1}{V}\frac{DV}{Dt} = 0. \tag{1.15}$$

To the system of gasdynamic equations must be added the appropriate initial and boundary conditions.

§2. Lagrangian coordinates

The flow equations which consider the gasdynamic variables as functions of the space coordinates and time are called the Euler equations, or the flow equations in Eulerian coordinates.

Lagrangian coordinates are frequently used to describe one-dimensional flow, that is, plane and cylindrically and spherically symmetric flow. In contrast to Eulerian coordinates, Lagrangian coordinates do not determine a given point in space, but a given fluid particle. Gasdynamic flow variables expressed in terms of Lagrangian coordinates express the changes in density, pressure, and velocity of each fluid particle with time. Lagrangian coordinates are particularly convenient when considering internal processes involving individual fluid particles, such as a chemical reaction whose progress with time depends on the changes of both the temperature and the density of each particle. The use of Lagrangian coordinates also occasionally yields a shorter and easier way of obtaining exact solutions to the gasdynamic equations, or provides a more convenient numerical integration of them. The derivative

with respect to time in Lagrangian coordinates is simply equivalent to the total derivative D/Dt. The particle can be described either in terms of the mass of fluid separating it from a given reference particle (in one dimension), or in terms of its position at the initial instant of time.

The use of Lagrangian coordinates is especially simple in the case of plane motion, when the flow is a function of only one cartesian coordinate x. Let us denote the Eulerian coordinate of a particular fluid particle by x and the coordinate of a reference particle by x_1 (as a reference particle we can choose a particle near a solid wall or near a gas-vacuum interface). Then the mass of a column of fluid of unit cross section between the reference particle and the particular fluid particle of interest is equal to

$$m = \int_{x_1}^{x} \rho \, dx. \tag{1.16}$$

The increment in mass resulting from the passage from one particle to a neighboring one is

$$dm = \rho \, dx. \tag{1.17}$$

The quantity m may be chosen as the Lagrangian coordinate.

If, as is frequently the case, the gas is initially at rest and its initial density is constant, $\rho(x, 0) = \rho_0$, then it is convenient to take the initial coordinate of the particle (relative to x_1), which we shall denote by a, as the Lagrangian coordinate. Then

$$a = \int_{x_1}^{x} \frac{\rho}{\rho_0} \, dx, \qquad da = \frac{\rho}{\rho_0} \, dx. \tag{1.18}$$

The equations for plane motion of a gas in Lagrangian coordinates take on a simple form. The continuity equation, written in terms of the specific volume $V = 1/\rho$ and the single x component of the velocity u, is

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial m} \qquad \text{or} \qquad \frac{1}{V_0}\frac{\partial V}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial a}. \tag{1.19}$$

Here, as in the following equations, the derivative with respect to time is the total derivative D/Dt, though it is better to express it in the form of a partial derivative $\partial/\partial t$, in order to emphasize that it is taken with m and $a = const$, that is, for a given particle with a specified m or a coordinate. The equation of motion in Lagrangian coordinates is

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial m} \qquad \text{or} \qquad \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = -V_0 \frac{\partial p}{\partial a}. \tag{1.20}$$

The energy equation, written either in the form (1.9) or in the entropy form

(1.13) retains the same form in the absence of external heat sources and dissipative processes (viscosity and heat conduction). Here, it is only necessary to replace D/Dt by $\partial/\partial t$. For a perfect gas with constant specific heats, (1.13) gives

$$pV^{\gamma} = f[S(m)], \tag{1.21}$$

where the function f depends only on the entropy of the given particle m. In so-called isentropic flow, where the entropy of all the particles is identical and does not vary with time, $f = const$, in which case the equation $pV^{\gamma} = const$ is valid in Lagrangian as well as Eulerian coordinates.

The Eulerian coordinate x does not enter the equation explicitly in the one-dimensional (plane) case. After the Lagrangian equations are solved and the function $V(m, t)$ is found, the dependence of the flow variables on the Eulerian coordinate may be obtained by integrating (1.17)

$$dx = V(m, t)\, dm, \qquad x(m, t) = \int_0^m V(m, t)\, dm + x_1(t). \tag{1.22}$$

In the cylindrical and spherical cases, the gasdynamic equations in Lagrangian coordinates are slightly more complicated than in the plane case. Here, the Eulerian coordinate enters the equations explicitly and an additional equation, relating the Lagrangian and Eulerian coordinates, must be added to the system. For example, in the spherical case it is possible to define the Lagrangian coordinate as the mass contained within a spherical volume about the center of symmetry

$$m = \int_0^r 4\pi r^2 \rho\, dr, \qquad dm = 4\pi r^2 \rho\, dr. \tag{1.23}$$

If the gas density is initially constant, then it is possible to take as the Lagrangian coordinate the initial radius r_0 of the "particle", considered here as an elementary spherical shell

$$\frac{4\pi r_0^3}{3}\rho_0 = \int_0^r 4\pi r^2 \rho\, dr, \qquad dr_0 = \frac{r^2}{r_0^2}\frac{\rho}{\rho_0}\, dr. \tag{1.24}$$

The continuity equation in spherical Lagrangian coordinates is

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial}{\partial m} 4\pi r^2 u \qquad \text{or} \qquad \frac{1}{V_0}\frac{\partial V}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{r_0^2}\frac{\partial}{\partial r_0} r^2 u. \tag{1.25}$$

The equation of motion is

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = -4\pi r^2 \frac{\partial p}{\partial m} \qquad \text{or} \qquad \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = -\frac{1}{\rho_0}\frac{r^2}{r_0^2}\frac{\partial p}{\partial r_0}. \tag{1.26}$$

The energy or entropy equations remain the same as in the plane case. As a supplementary equation, the differential (or integral) relationship (1.23) or (1.24), relating m and r or r_0 and r, must be included in the system.

The equations for the cylindrical case are set up in exactly the same manner as those for the spherical case. It should be noted that in the general case of two- and three-dimensional flows, changing to Lagrangian coordinates is inconvenient as a rule, since the equations become very complex.

§3. Sound waves

The speed of sound enters the gasdynamic equations as the velocity of propagation of small disturbances. In the limiting case, where changes in the density and pressure $\Delta\rho$ and Δp accompanying the fluid motion are very small in comparison with the average values of the density and pressure ρ_0 and p_0, and where the flow velocities are small in comparison with the speed of sound c, the gasdynamic equations become acoustic equations describing the propagation of sound waves.

Let us write the density and the pressure as $\rho = \rho_0 + \Delta\rho$, $p = p_0 + \Delta p$ and consider the quantities $\Delta\rho$, Δp and also the velocity u as small. Neglecting second-order quantities and considering only the plane case of a uniform fluid, we rewrite the Eulerian equations of motion and continuity. The continuity equation yields

$$\frac{\partial\,\Delta\rho}{\partial t} = -\rho_0 \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}. \tag{1.27}$$

The equation of motion takes the form

$$\rho_0 \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} = -\left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial \rho}\right)_S \frac{\partial\,\Delta\rho}{\partial x}. \tag{1.28}$$

We have here used the fact that the particle motion in the sound wave is isentropic, whence a small change in pressure is related to a small change in density by the isentropic derivative, $\Delta p = (\partial p/\partial\rho)_S\,\Delta\rho$. As we shall presently see, this derivative represents the square of the sound speed

$$c^2 = \left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial \rho}\right)_S, \tag{1.29}$$

and refers to the undisturbed fluid state.

Differentiating (1.27) with respect to time, and (1.28) with respect to the space coordinate, we eliminate the cross derivative $\partial^2 u/\partial t\,\partial x$ and obtain a wave equation for the density change

$$\frac{\partial^2\,\Delta\rho}{\partial t^2} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2\,\Delta\rho}{\partial x^2}. \tag{1.30}$$

The pressure change $\Delta p = c^2\,\Delta\rho$ (proportional to $\Delta\rho$), the velocity u, and all other fluid parameters, such as the temperature, also satisfy a similar equation*. A wave equation of the type (1.30) permits two families of solutions

$$\Delta\rho = \Delta\rho(x - ct), \qquad \Delta p = \Delta p(x - ct), \qquad u = u(x - ct) \tag{1.31}$$

and

$$\Delta\rho = \Delta\rho(x + ct), \qquad \Delta p = \Delta p(x + ct), \qquad u = u(x + ct) \tag{1.32}$$

where c denotes the positive root $c = +\sqrt{(\partial p/\partial\rho)_S}$.

The first solution describes a disturbance that propagates in the positive x direction, and the second describes a similar motion but in the opposite direction. In the first case, for example, the given value of the density corresponds to a particular value of the argument $x - ct$, that is, the disturbance moves with the velocity c in the direction of positive x. Thus, c here denotes the propagation velocity of sound waves.

Noting that $\partial u(x \mp ct)/\partial x = \mp(1/c)\,\partial u(x \mp ct)/\partial t$ and that in the undisturbed gas ahead of the wave $u = 0$ and $\Delta\rho = 0$, we find from (1.27) a relationship between the particle velocity of the gas u and the changes in density or pressure

$$u = \pm\frac{c}{\rho_0}\Delta\rho = \pm\frac{\Delta p}{\rho_0 c}, \qquad \Delta p = c^2\,\Delta\rho = \pm\rho_0 c u. \tag{1.33}$$

The upper sign refers to a wave propagating in the positive x direction and the lower sign to a wave propagating in the negative x direction. In both cases the particle velocity is in the direction of wave propagation where the fluid is compressed, and in the opposite direction at points where the fluid is expanded.

The general solution of the wave equations for $\Delta\rho$ and u is made up from two particular solutions, corresponding to waves propagating in the positive and negative x directions. From (1.31) to (1.33), the solutions for the density and the velocity are

$$\Delta\rho = \frac{\rho_0}{c} f_1(x - ct) + \frac{\rho_0}{c} f_2(x + ct), \tag{1.34}$$

$$u = f_1(x - ct) - f_2(x + ct), \tag{1.35}$$

* To obtain the wave equation for the velocity, we differentiate (1.30) with respect to time and use (1.27) and (1.28)

$$\frac{\partial^3\,\Delta\rho}{\partial t^3} = c^2\frac{\partial^3\,\Delta\rho}{\partial x^2\,\partial t} = -\rho_0\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = -c^2\rho_0\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2},$$

from which $\partial^2 u/\partial t^2 = c^2\,\partial^2 u/\partial x^2 + f(t)$. Noting that $u = 0$ in the undisturbed fluid ahead of the wave, we find that $f(t) = 0$.

where f_1 and f_2 are arbitrary functions of their arguments, determined by the initial distributions of density and velocity

$$f_1 = \frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{c}{\rho_0}\Delta\rho(x, 0) + u(x, 0)\right],$$

$$f_2 = \frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{c}{\rho_0}\Delta\rho(x, 0) - u(x, 0)\right].$$

For example, if the initial density disturbance is rectangular and the gas is everywhere at rest, then rectangular disturbances will propagate to the right and to the left, as shown in Fig. 1.1. If the density and velocity distributions

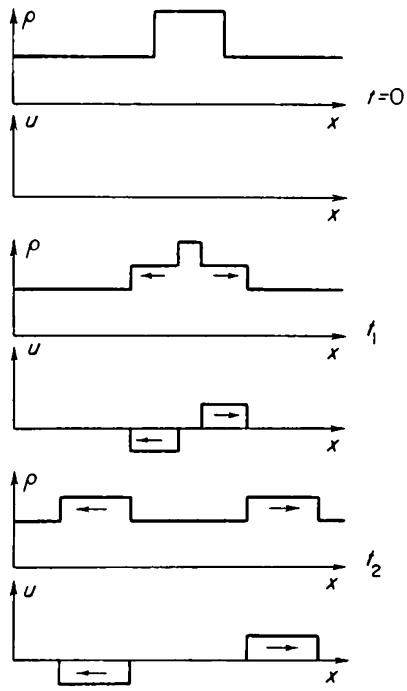


Fig. 1.1. Propagation of a rectangular density and pressure pulse in linear acoustics.

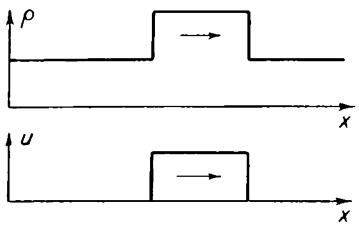


Fig. 1.2. Propagation of a rectangular density and pressure pulse in linear acoustics.

are initially of the form shown in Fig. 1.2, with $u = (c/\rho_0)\,\Delta\rho$ so that $f_2 = 0$, then the rectangular pulses will propagate in one direction only. (Such a disturbance can be created by a piston which at the initial instant of time

begins to move into the undisturbed gas with a constant velocity u, and which stops "instantaneously" after a certain time. If the length of the rectangular pulse is L, then, obviously, the time during which the piston acts on the gas is $t_1 = L/c$.)

Of particular importance in acoustics are monochromatic sound waves, in which all quantities are periodic functions of time of the type

$$f = A \cos\left(\frac{\omega}{c} x - \omega t\right),$$

or in complex form

$$f = A \exp\left[-i\omega\left(t - \frac{x}{c}\right)\right].$$

Here $\nu = \omega/2\pi$ is the sound frequency and $\lambda = c/\nu$ is the wavelength. Any disturbance can be expanded in a Fourier integral, i.e., can be represented as a set of monochromatic waves of different frequencies.

Sounds audible to the human ear have a frequency ν from 20 to 20,000 cps. The wavelengths corresponding to the speed of sound in atmospheric air ($c = 330$ m/sec*) range from 15 m to 1.5 cm.

In order to illustrate the numerical values of the various quantities in a sound wave, we note that the amplitude of the density change in air for the very strongest sound, with an intensity† 10^5 times that of the fortissimo of a symphony orchestra, is 0.4% of the normal density; the amplitude of the pressure change is 0.56% of atmospheric pressure and the amplitude of the velocity is 0.4% of the speed of sound, or 1.3 m/sec. The amplitude of the displacement of the air particles Δx is of the order $u/2\pi\nu = (u/c)(\lambda/2\pi) \approx 6 \cdot 10^{-4}\lambda$ ($\Delta x \approx 0.036$ cm for $\nu = 500$ cps).

Let us determine the energy for a small disturbance that is propagated within a gas initially at rest. The increment in the specific internal energy of the disturbed fluid, with an accuracy up to second order with respect to $\Delta\rho$

* The specific heat ratio for air under normal conditions is

$$\gamma = 1.4, \quad \text{and} \quad c = \left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial \rho}\right)_S^{1/2} = \left(\frac{\gamma p_0}{\rho_0}\right)^{1/2} = (\gamma R T_0)^{1/2}$$

(since $p \sim \rho^\gamma$ for constant S).

† As will be shown below, the energy or intensity of sound is proportional to the square of the amplitude of the pressure or density change. The sound intensity is measured in decibels on a logarithmic scale. The average sensitivity threshold of the human ear is taken as zero. An increase in the volume by n decibels corresponds to an increase in the sound energy by a factor of $10^{n/10}$. An increase in the volume from the rustle of leaves or a whisper (~ 10 decibels) to the fortissimo of a symphony orchestra (~ 80 decibels) corresponds to an increase in the sound energy by a factor of 10^7.

(or Δp or u), is

$$\varepsilon - \varepsilon_0 = \left(\frac{\partial \varepsilon}{\partial \rho}\right)_0 \Delta\rho + \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\partial^2 \varepsilon}{\partial \rho^2}\right)_0 (\Delta\rho)^2.$$

Since the motion is isentropic, the derivatives are taken at constant entropy. They can be evaluated from the thermodynamic relationship $d\varepsilon = T\,dS - p\,dV = (p/\rho^2)\,d\rho$. We obtain

$$\varepsilon - \varepsilon_0 = \frac{p_0}{\rho_0^2}\Delta\rho + \frac{c^2}{2\rho_0^2}(\Delta\rho)^2 - \frac{p_0}{\rho_0^3}(\Delta\rho)^2.$$

The increment in internal energy per unit volume to the same order of accuracy is

$$\begin{aligned}\rho\varepsilon - \rho_0\varepsilon_0 &= (\rho_0 + \Delta\rho)(\varepsilon - \varepsilon_0) + \varepsilon_0\,\Delta\rho \\ &= \left(\varepsilon_0 + \frac{p_0}{\rho_0}\right)\Delta\rho + \frac{c^2}{2\rho_0}(\Delta\rho)^2 = h_0\,\Delta\rho + \frac{c^2}{2\rho_0}(\Delta\rho)^2,\end{aligned}$$

where $h = \varepsilon + p/\rho$ is the specific enthalpy.

The internal energy density associated with the disturbance is, in first approximation, proportional to $\Delta\rho$. The kinetic energy density $\rho u^2/2 \approx \rho_0 u^2/2$ is a second-order quantity. Equations (1.33) which are valid for a traveling plane wave show that the second-order term in the expression for internal energy density and the kinetic energy term are exactly the same; thus the total energy density of the disturbance is

$$E = h_0\,\Delta\rho + \frac{c^2}{2\rho_0}(\Delta\rho)^2 + \frac{\rho_0 u^2}{2} = h_0\,\Delta\rho + \rho_0 u^2. \tag{1.36}$$

The first-order change in the above expression is related to the change in total volume of the gas that occurred as a result of the disturbance. If the disturbance was created in such a manner that the total volume remained unchanged, then the perturbation energy of the entire gas is a quantity of second order in $\Delta\rho$, since the term proportional to $\Delta\rho$ vanishes in the process

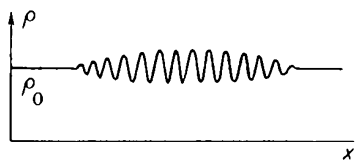


Fig. 1.3. Density distribution in a wave packet.

of integration over the volume. This, for example, is the situation in a wave packet which is propagated within a gas occupying an infinite space and in which the gas at infinity is undisturbed (Fig. 1.3). The density changes in the

compression regions are compensated by the changes in the expansion regions, with an accuracy up to terms of second order. The energy of a sound wave is thus a quantity of second order, proportional to the square of the amplitude*.

$$E_{sw} = \rho_0 u^2. \tag{1.37}$$

If the disturbance causes a change in the gas volume, then the perturbation energy will contain a term proportional to the first power of $\Delta\rho$. However, this basic fraction of the energy which is proportional to $\Delta\rho$, can be "returned by the gas", if the source of the disturbance returns to its initial position. The energy remaining in the disturbed gas will be a quantity of second order. Let us explain this situation by means of a simple example. Assume that at the initial instant of time a piston begins to move into the undisturbed gas with a constant velocity u (much smaller than the speed of sound, $u \ll c$). At the time t_1 the piston stops "instantaneously". A compression pulse of length $(c-u)t_1 \approx ct_1$, whose energy is equal to the work done by the external force in moving the piston, $put_1 = (p_0 + \Delta p)ut_1 \approx p_0 ut_1$ will travel through the gas

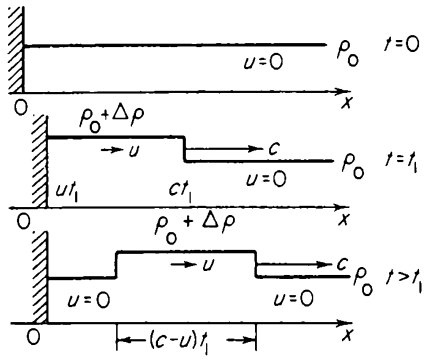


Fig. 1.4. Propagation of a compression pulse created by a piston moving into a gas.

(this case was considered above and is illustrated in Fig. 1.4). The energy, in first approximation, is proportional to the amplitude of the wave u, $\Delta\rho$, Δp, and the compression time (that is, to the length of the disturbance). Suppose now that the piston returns to its initial position in the following manner: its velocity u is "instantaneously" reversed (becomes $-u$) at the time t_1 and at the time $t_2 = 2t_1$ the piston, having returned to its initial position, stops "instantaneously". The disturbance will now have the form shown in Fig. 1.5, where the states are represented at the times $t = 0$, t_1, t_2, and $t > t_2$. It is easy to check by direct calculation that, to first approximation, during the second period from t_1 to t_2 the gas does work on the piston equal to that which the piston does on the gas during the first period from zero to t_1. The

* The expression (1.37) should be either time or space averaged

$$E_{sw} = \rho_0 \overline{u^2} \qquad (\overline{u} \sim \overline{\Delta\rho} \sim \overline{\Delta p} = 0, \quad \text{while} \quad \overline{u^2} \sim (\overline{\Delta\rho})^2 \sim (\overline{\Delta p})^2 > 0).$$

lengths of the positive and negative regions of the pulse, in first approximation, are also equal to each other and are both equal to $ct_1 = c(t_2 - t_1)$. Thus, if we add the energies in the compression and expansion regions of the pulse, the first-order terms cancel out. However, if higher order terms are retained*,

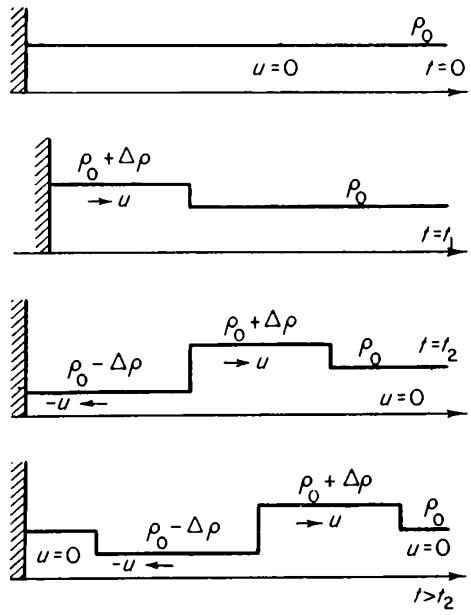


Fig. 1.5. Propagation of compression and rarefaction pulses created by a piston initially pushed into the gas and then withdrawn to the initial position.

the energy will contain a second-order term and the energy density of the perturbation will be given by the general equation (1.37).

§4. Spherical sound waves

In the absence of absorption (that is, without taking into account viscosity and heat conduction; see §22), neither the amplitude nor density of a plane wave decreases with time. For example, the pulses shown in Figs. 1.4 and 1.5 continue to "infinity" without either their form or amplitude changing. This is not the case, however, with a spherical wave. Linearizing the continuity equation in the spherically symmetric case, we obtain

$$\frac{\partial \Delta\rho}{\partial t} = -\frac{\rho_0}{r^2}\frac{\partial}{\partial r} r^2 u.$$

The linearized equation of motion is the same as (1.28)

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = -\frac{c^2}{\rho_0}\frac{\partial \Delta\rho}{\partial r}.$$

* In particular, the lengths of the compression and rarefaction pulses will differ by an amount $2ut_1$ (for $t_2 - t_1 = t_1$).

Hence, as in the plane case, we obtain a wave equation for $\Delta\rho$, whose solution, describing a wave spreading out from the center, is

$$\Delta\rho = \frac{f(r - ct)}{r}. \tag{1.38}$$

Considering short pulses whose lengths are much shorter than r, we can say that the form of a pulse as given by the function $f(r - ct)$ does not change, and that the amplitude of the wave decreases as $1/r$. This is completely natural and also follows from energy considerations. Let us assume that a pulse of a finite width Δr travels from the center. As the pulse is propagated, the mass of fluid which has been set in motion and which is approximately equal to $\rho_0 4\pi r^2\,\Delta r$ increases in proportion to r^2. The energy of a sound wave per unit volume is proportional to $(\Delta\rho)^2$. Since the total energy is conserved, $(\Delta\rho)^2 r^2 = const$, and the amplitude should decrease as $\Delta\rho \sim 1/r$.

The spherical wave differs from the plane wave in still another respect. Let us substitute the solution (1.38) into the equation of motion

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = -\frac{c^2}{\rho_0}\left[\frac{f'(r - ct)}{r} - \frac{f(r - ct)}{r^2}\right],$$

and integrate the resulting equation with respect to time. We obtain the following solution for the velocity:

$$u = \frac{c}{\rho_0}\left[\frac{f(r - ct)}{r} - \frac{\int^{r-ct} f(\xi)\,d\xi}{r^2}\right] = \frac{c}{\rho_0}\left[\Delta\rho - \frac{\varphi(r - ct)}{r^2}\right], \tag{1.39}$$

which differs from the plane wave solution (1.33) by the presence of an additional term. With a plane wave in the situation shown in Fig. 1.4, the fluid can be compressed only in the region of the disturbance. This is impossible in the case of a spherical wave, and a compression region must be followed by an expansion region. Indeed, outside the disturbance region both $\Delta\rho$ and u become zero. In the plane case, by virtue of the proportionality $u \sim \Delta\rho$, this condition is satisfied automatically and independently of the pulse form. In the case of a spherical wave, however, this is possible only when $\varphi(r - ct) = 0$ outside the disturbance region, that is, when the integral over the entire disturbance region is equal to zero

$$\varphi(r - ct) = \int f(\xi)\,d\xi = \int r\,\Delta\rho\,dr = 0.$$

It is thus evident that $\Delta\rho$ changes sign in a spherical wave, and that the compression region is followed by an expansion region.

The additional fluid included in the wave is equal to $\int \Delta\rho\, 4\pi r^2\,dr$. Since

$\Delta\rho \sim 1/r$, the additional mass in the compression wave increases as it spreads out from the center. An increase in the amount of compressed fluid during propagation causes the appearance of the lower density wave which follows the higher density wave.

As in the case of the plane wave, a change in pressure within a spherical wave is proportional to the change in density. The velocity, however, as shown

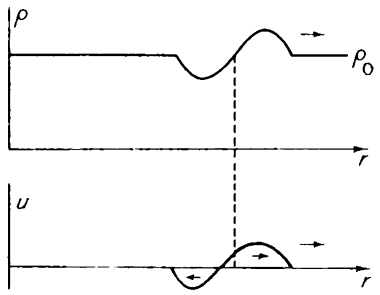


Fig. 1.6. Density and velocity distribution in a spherical sound wave.

by (1.39) is not proportional to either $\Delta\rho$ or Δp. In fact, the velocity and the change in density reverse their signs at different points, so that the density and velocity distributions in a wave traveling from the center assume the shapes shown in Fig. 1.6.

§5. Characteristics

It was shown in §3 that if arbitrarily small disturbances in velocity and pressure (or density*) are created at an initial time t_0 at any point x_0 of a stationary gas with uniform density and pressure, then two waves carrying the disturbances will travel from this point in both directions with the speed of sound. The small changes in the wave variables, which are propagated to the right in the positive x direction, are related by†

$$\Delta_1 u = \frac{\Delta_1 p}{\rho_0 c} = \frac{c}{\rho_0}\Delta_1\rho = f(x - ct).$$

For a wave propagated to the left, these relationships are

$$\Delta_2 u = -\frac{\Delta_2 p}{\rho_0 c} = -\frac{c}{\rho_0}\Delta_2\rho = -f_2(x + ct).$$

The arbitrary disturbances Δu and Δp arising at the initial instant of time can always be broken into two components $\Delta u = \Delta_1 u + \Delta_2 u$, $\Delta p = \Delta_1 p + \Delta_2 p$

* Since the flow is isentropic, the changes in density and pressure are not independent, but are related to one another by the thermodynamic relationship $\Delta p = c^2\,\Delta\rho$.

† We use here Δu instead of u for consistency of notation.

satisfying the above relationships, because the initial disturbance is propagated in different directions in the form of two waves in general. If the initial disturbances Δu and Δp are not arbitrary, but are connected through one of the above relations, then the disturbance will travel in one direction only (this corresponds to the vanishing of one of the functions f_1 or f_2).

If the gas is not stationary, but moves as a whole with a constant velocity u, then the picture does not change, except for the fact that the waves are now carried by the stream in such a manner that their propagation velocities, relative to a stationary observer, become equal to $u + c$ (for a wave traveling "to the right") and $u - c$ (for a wave traveling "to the left"*). This can be easily demonstrated by transforming the gasdynamic equations to a new coordinate system moving with the gas at a velocity u.

Let us now assume that arbitrary small disturbances in velocity and density occur at a time t_0 and at a point x_0, in an arbitrary isentropic plane gas flow described by the functions $u(x, t)$, $p(x, t)$ (or $\rho(x, t)$, see first footnote in §5). Considering a small region about the point x_0 and a small time interval (a small neighborhood of the point x_0, t_0 in the x, t plane), we may in first approximation disregard the changes in the undisturbed functions $u(x, t)$ and $p(x, t)$. Consequently the changes in $\rho(x, t)$ and $c(x, t)$ in this region can also be neglected and the functions may be considered as constant and equal to their values at the point x_0, t_0. Then, the description given above for the propagation of disturbances is also completely applicable to this case. If the disturbances $\Delta u(x_0, t_0)$ and $\Delta p(x_0, t_0)$ are arbitrary, they can be broken into two components, one of which begins to propagate "to the right" with the velocity $u_0 + c_0$ and the other "to the left" with the velocity $u_0 - c_0$; here u_0 and c_0 denote the local values of these quantities at the point x_0, t_0.

Since u and c vary from point to point, then the paths along which disturbances are propagated in the x, t plane (described by the equations $dx/dt = u + c$ and $dx/dt = u - c$) will curve over a long period of time. These curves in the x, t plane, along which the small disturbances are propagated are called the characteristic curves, or simply characteristics. In the case of a plane isentropic flow there exist two such families of characteristics described by

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = u + c, \qquad \frac{dx}{dt} = u - c.$$

They are termed the C_+ and C_- characteristics, respectively. Two characteristics, one belonging to each of the C_+ and C_- families, can be drawn through

* We include the phrase "to the left" in quotation marks: when $u > c$, the wave will also travel to the right, but, obviously, more slowly than the first one. (*Editors' note.* Analogously, the phrase "to the right" has been included in quotation marks.)

each point in the x, t plane. In general the characteristics are curved, as shown in Fig. 1.7. In the region of undisturbed flow, where u, p, c, and ρ are constant in space and time, the characteristics of both families are straight lines.

If the flow is not isentropic but only adiabatic, that is, the entropy of different particles does not change with time but differs for each particle,

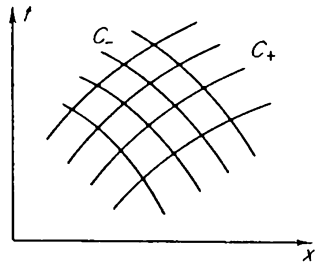


Fig. 1.7. A set of two families of characteristics in the isentropic case.

then disturbances in entropy are also possible. Since the motion is adiabatic $DS/Dt = 0$, that is, each disturbance in entropy not accompanied by a disturbance in the other variables (p, ρ, u), remains localized within the particle and is displaced together with the particle along a streamline. Consequently, in the case of nonisentropic flow these lines are also characteristics. They are described by the equation $dx/dt = u$ and are termed C_0 characteristics. In nonisentropic flow three characteristics pass through each point and the entire x, t plane is covered by a set of three families of characteristics C_+, C_-, and C_0 (Fig. 1.8).

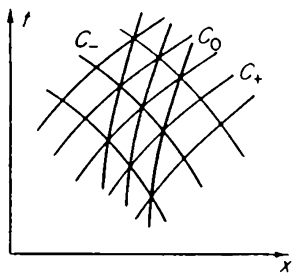


Fig. 1.8. A set of three families of characteristics in the nonisentropic case.

Up to now we have discussed the characteristics as curves in the x, t plane along which small disturbances are propagated. This, however, does not exhaust the significance of characteristics. The gasdynamic equations can be transformed so as to contain derivatives of the flow variables along the characteristics only. As will be shown in the following section, in isentropic flow not only small disturbances but also certain combinations of the flow variables are propagated along characteristics.

It is well known that a function f of the two variables x, t can be differentiated with respect to time along a given curve $x = \varphi(t)$ in the x, t plane. The time derivative of the function $f(x, t)$ along an arbitrary curve $x = \varphi(t)$ is

determined by the angle between the tangent to the curve at the given point and the t axis $dx/dt = \varphi'$, and is equal to

$$\left(\frac{df}{dt}\right)_{\varphi} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\frac{dx}{dt} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\varphi'.$$

We are already familiar with two cases of differentiation along a curve: the partial derivative with respect to time $\partial/\partial t$ (along a curve $x = const$, $\varphi' = 0$) and the total derivative $D/Dt = (\partial/\partial t) + u(\partial/\partial x)$ (along a particle path or along a streamline $dx/dt = \varphi' = u$).

Let us transform the equations of plane adiabatic motion so that they contain derivatives of the flow variables along the characteristics only. To do this we eliminate from the continuity equation

$$\frac{D\rho}{Dt} + \rho\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = 0$$

the density derivative, and replace it by the derivative of the pressure. Since density is related to the pressure and entropy by the thermodynamic relationship $\rho = \rho(p, S)$, and since $DS/Dt = 0$, we have

$$\frac{D\rho}{Dt} = \left(\frac{\partial\rho}{\partial p}\right)_S \frac{Dp}{Dt} + \left(\frac{\partial\rho}{\partial S}\right)_p \frac{DS}{Dt} = \frac{1}{c^2}\frac{Dp}{Dt}.$$

Substituting this expression into the continuity equation and multiplying by c/ρ, we find

$$\frac{1}{\rho c}\frac{\partial p}{\partial t} + \frac{u}{\rho c}\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + c\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = 0.$$

We add this equation to the equation of motion

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + u\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{1}{\rho}\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} = 0$$

and obtain

$$\left[\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + (u + c)\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right] + \frac{1}{\rho c}\left[\frac{\partial p}{\partial t} + (u + c)\frac{\partial p}{\partial x}\right] = 0.$$

Subtracting one equation from the other, we find, analogously,

$$\left[\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + (u - c)\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right] - \frac{1}{\rho c}\left[\frac{\partial p}{\partial t} + (u - c)\frac{\partial p}{\partial x}\right] = 0.$$

The first of these equations contains derivatives only along the C_+ characteristics, and the second, only along the C_- characteristics. Noting that the adiabatic condition $DS/Dt = 0$ can be regarded as an equation along the C_0

characteristics, we can write the gasdynamic equations as

$$du + \frac{1}{\rho c}\,dp = 0 \qquad \text{along } C_+ : \frac{dx}{dt} = u + c, \tag{1.40}$$

$$du - \frac{1}{\rho c}\,dp = 0 \qquad \text{along } C_- : \frac{dx}{dt} = u - c, \tag{1.41}$$

$$dS = 0 \qquad \text{along } C_0 : \frac{dx}{dt} = u. \tag{1.42}$$

In Lagrangian coordinates the equations for the characteristics become (see (1.18))

$$C_+ : \frac{da}{dt} = \frac{\rho c}{\rho_0}; \qquad C_- : \frac{da}{dt} = -\frac{\rho c}{\rho_0}; \qquad C_0 : \frac{da}{dt} = 0.$$

The equations along the characteristics are the same as (1.40)–(1.42).

In spherically symmetric flow, the equations for the characteristics in Eulerian coordinates are the same as for the plane case (it is only necessary to replace the x coordinate by the radius r). The equations along the $C_\pm$ characteristics, however, contain additional terms that depend on the functions themselves but not on their derivatives,

$$du \pm \frac{1}{\rho c}\,dp = \mp \frac{2uc}{r}\,dt \qquad \text{along } C_\pm : \frac{dr}{dt} = u \pm c.$$

In many cases the gasdynamic equations written along the characteristics are more convenient for numerical integration than in the usual form.

§6. Plane isentropic flow. Riemann invariants

In isentropic flow the entropy, being constant in space and time, disappears completely from the equations. The flow can be described by two functions, the velocity $u(x,t)$ and any one of the thermodynamic variables: $\rho(x,t)$, $p(x,t)$, or $c(x,t)$. The latter variables are uniquely related to each other at every point by the purely thermodynamic relations: $\rho = \rho(p)$, $c = c(\rho)$, or $p = p(\rho)$, $c = c(\rho)$; $c^2 = dp/d\rho$.

The differential expressions $du + dp/\rho c$ and $du - dp/\rho c$ represent total differentials of the quantities

$$\begin{aligned} J_+ &= u + \int \frac{dp}{\rho c} = u + \int c\,\frac{d\rho}{\rho}, \\ J_- &= u - \int \frac{dp}{\rho c} = u - \int c\,\frac{d\rho}{\rho}, \end{aligned} \tag{1.43}$$

which are called the Riemann invariants* (see, e.g., [14]). By means of the thermodynamic relations the integral quantities $\int dp/\rho c = \int c\, d\rho/\rho$ can, in principle, be expressed in terms of the thermodynamic variables, let us say, the speed of sound c. For example, in a perfect gas with constant specific heats, we have

$$p = const\ \rho^{\gamma}, \qquad c^2 = \gamma\ const\ \rho^{\gamma-1},$$

and

$$J_{\pm} = u \pm \frac{2}{\gamma - 1} c. \tag{1.44}$$

The Riemann invariants are determined to within an arbitrary constant, which can always be dropped for convenience, as was done above in (1.44).

Equations (1.40) and (1.41) show that in isentropic flow the Riemann invariants are constant along characteristics

$$\begin{aligned} &dJ_+ = 0, \quad J_+ = const \qquad \text{along } C_+ : \frac{dx}{dt} = u + c\,; \\ &dJ_- = 0, \quad J_- = const \qquad \text{along } C_- : \frac{dx}{dt} = u - c. \end{aligned} \tag{1.45}$$

This statement can be regarded as a generalization of relations which hold for the case of acoustic waves propagating through a gas with constant velocity, density, and pressure. These relations may be obtained from the general expressions for the invariants as a first approximation. Setting $u = u_0 + \Delta u$, $p = p_0 + \Delta p$, we obtain in first approximation

$$J_{\pm} = u_0 + \Delta u \pm \int \frac{d\,\Delta p}{\rho_0 c_0} = \Delta u \pm \frac{\Delta p}{\rho_0 c_0} + const. \tag{1.46}$$

The equations of the characteristics are given in first approximation by

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = u_0 \pm c_0, \qquad x = (u_0 \pm c_0)t + const.$$

Thus, the quantity $\Delta u + \Delta p/\rho_0 c_0$ is conserved along the path $x = (u_0 + c_0)t + const$. This shows that it can be represented as a function of the constant in the equation $x = (u_0 + c_0)t + const$ in the following way:

$$\Delta u + \frac{\Delta p}{\rho_0 c_0} = 2f_1[x - (u_0 + c_0)t].$$

* In nonisentropic flow ρ and c are functions of the two variables p and S, and the expressions $du + dp/\rho c$ are no longer total differentials. In this case the combinations (1.43) do not have a precise physical meaning.

Along the path $x = (u_0 - c_0)t + const$ the quantity

$$\Delta u - \frac{\Delta p}{\rho_0 c_0} = -2f_2[x - (u_0 - c_0)t]$$

is conserved. Changes in velocity and pressure are represented as a superposition of the two waves f_1 and f_2 traveling in opposite directions $\Delta u = f_1 - f_2$, $\Delta p = \rho_0 c_0(f_1 + f_2)$, where the variables in each equation are related by the relations given previously

$$\Delta_1 u = \frac{\Delta_1 p}{\rho_0 c_0} = f_1, \qquad \Delta_2 u = -\frac{\Delta_2 p}{\rho_0 c_0} = -f_2.$$

The Riemann invariants J_+ and J_- may be used to describe the motion of a gas in place of the old variables—the velocity u and one of the thermodynamic quantities (e.g., the speed of sound c). They are uniquely related to the variables u and c by equations (1.43). By solving these equations for u and c, we can transform back from the functions J_+ and J_- to the functions u and c. For example, for a perfect gas with constant specific heats, we have, from (1.44),

$$u = \frac{J_+ + J_-}{2}; \qquad c = \frac{\gamma - 1}{4}(J_+ - J_-).$$

Considering the invariants as functions of the independent variables x and t, the equations of the characteristics can be expressed as

$$C_+ : \frac{dx}{dt} = F_+(J_+, J_-); \qquad C_- : \frac{dx}{dt} = F_-(J_+, J_-). \tag{1.47}$$

Here F_+ and F_- are known functions, whose form is determined only by the thermodynamic properties of the fluid. For a perfect gas with constant specific heats, we have

$$F_+ = \frac{\gamma + 1}{4} J_+ + \frac{3 - \gamma}{4} J_-; \qquad F_- = \frac{3 - \gamma}{4} J_+ + \frac{\gamma + 1}{4} J_-.$$

Equations (1.45) show that the characteristics have a property that permits them to preserve a constant value of one of the invariants. Since $J_+ = const$ along a specified C_+ characteristic, a change in the slope of a characteristic is determined only by the change in the invariant J_-. Similarly, J_- is constant along a C_- characteristic and the change in slope in going from one point in the x, t plane to another is determined only by the change in the J_+ invariant.

The flow equations when written in characteristic form make the causal connection of phenomena in gasdynamics quite apparent. Let us consider any plane isentropic gas flow in an infinite space. We assume that at

the initial time $t = 0$ the distributions of flow variables are specified along the x coordinate: $u(x, 0)$ and $c(x, 0)$ or, equivalently, that the distributions of the invariants $J_+(x, 0)$ and $J_-(x, 0)$ are specified. A set of C_+ and C_- characteristics, originating from different points on the x axis, exists in the x, t plane (Fig. 1.9)*. The values of the flow variables at any point $D(x, t)$

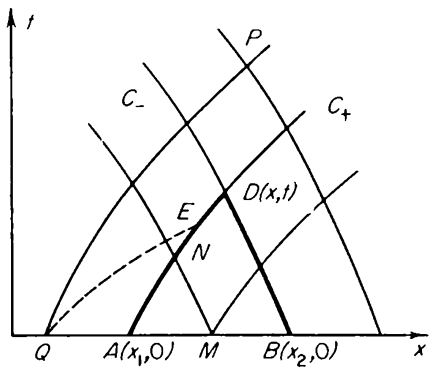


Fig. 1.9. An x, t diagram, illustrating the domain of dependence.

(the coordinate point x at the time t) are determined only by the values of the quantities at the initial points $A(x_1, 0)$ and $B(x_2, 0)$:

$$J_+(x, t) = J_+(x_1, 0); \qquad J_-(x, t) = J_-(x_2, 0).$$

For example, solving these equations for u and c for a perfect gas with constant specific heats, we can write the physical variables at the point D in the explicit form

$$\begin{aligned} u(x, t) &= \frac{u_1 + u_2}{2} + \frac{2}{\gamma - 1}\frac{c_1 - c_2}{2}, \\ c(x, t) &= \frac{c_1 + c_2}{2} + \frac{\gamma - 1}{2}\frac{u_1 - u_2}{2}, \end{aligned} \tag{1.48}$$

where u_1 and c_1 are values at the point $A(x_1, 0)$ and u_2 and c_2 refer to the point $B(x_2, 0)$.

Obviously, we cannot claim that the state of the gas at point D depends on the given initial conditions at points A and B alone, because the position of the point D as the point of intersection of the C_+ and C_- characteristics, originating from the points A and B, depends on the paths of these characteristics. These paths are determined by imposing initial conditions along the entire segment AB of the x axis. For example, the slope of the C_+ characteristic AD at the intermediate point N (see Fig. 1.9) is determined not only by the invariant $J_+(A)$, but also by the value of the invariant $J_-(M)$ which has been propagated to N from the intermediate point M of the segment AB.

* Such a family of curves can be constructed only after the problem is solved.

The state of the gas at the point D is, however, completely determined by the initial conditions on the segment AB of the x axis and is absolutely independent of the initial values outside this segment. A slight change in the initial conditions at the point Q will have no effect on the state of the gas at the point D simply because the disturbance created by this change will not be able to reach the point x at the time t. It will arrive at this point at a later time (at the point P along the C_+ characteristic QP). In the same way, the initial state of the gas along the segment AB of the x axis can influence the state of the gas at subsequent times only at those points inside the region bounded by the C_- characteristic AP and the C_+ characteristic BQ (Fig. 1.10). There is no

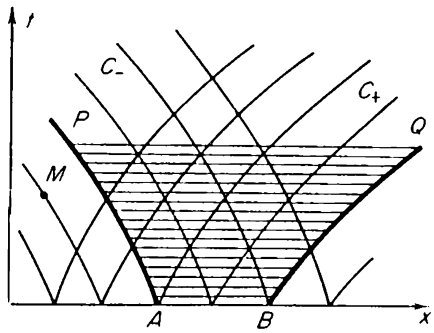


Fig. 1.10. An x, t diagram, illustrating the region of influence.

influence on the state at M, since the "signals" from the initial conditions along the segment AB will not be able to arrive at the point x_M at the time t_M.

Let us emphasize that the above discussion of the causality of phenomena in gasdynamics is valid only when the characteristics of one family do not intersect each other. For example, if the C_+ characteristic originating from Q (see Fig. 1.9) were to trace the path QE, shown by the dashed line, then the state of the gas at Q would affect the state at D. However, in regions of continuous flow characteristics of the same family never intersect, since such intersection would lead to a nonuniqueness in the flow variables. Actually, the invariant J_+ would have two different values at the point of intersection of two C_+ characteristics, corresponding to the values of J_+ associated with both characteristics. On the other hand, to every point in the x, t plane there can be only one value of J_+ and J_-, which derive from the unique values of the velocity and speed of sound at the point. As we shall see below, the intersection of characteristics of the same family leads to the breakdown of the continuity of the flow and to the formation of the discontinuities in the flow variables which are called shock waves.

It is possible to draw characteristic curves over the entire x, t plane only if the solution to the gasdynamic problem is known. If the solution is not known, then it is not possible to give the exact position of the point D in Fig. 1.9 as

the point of intersection of two characteristics originating from A and B. It is possible, however, to find the approximate point of intersection by replacing the actual curved paths AD and BD by straight lines whose slopes correspond to the initial values u_1, c_1 and u_2, c_2 at points A and B (or $J_+(A)$, $J_-(B)$) (Fig. 1.11). Having chosen points A and B sufficiently close together

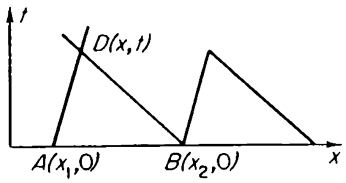


Fig. 1.11. Local approximation of the characteristics by straight lines.

that the error caused by replacing the actual characteristics by straight lines is small, we can find the position of the point of intersection from

$$x - x_1 = (u_1 + c_1)t, \qquad x - x_2 = (u_2 - c_2)t.$$

The values of u and c at the point of intersection are determined by (1.48). This procedure is actually the simplest method for the numerical integration of equations (1.45). By covering the x, t plane with a grid of triangles similar to ADB it is possible to move successively through the solution of the equations with respect to time, starting with the initial conditions $u(x, 0)$, $c(x, 0)$ or $J_+(x, 0)$, $J_-(x, 0)$.

§7. Plane isentropic gas flow in a bounded region

Let us consider any plane isentropic gas flow in a bounded region. Let the gas occupy the space between two plane surfaces—pistons—whose motions are described by $x_1 = \psi_1(t)$ and $x_2 = \psi_2(t)$. The coordinates of the pistons at the initial time $t = 0$ are x_{10} and x_{20}. The distributions of the velocity u and the thermodynamic variable c along the x coordinate in the interval $x_{10} < x < x_{20}$ at the initial time $u(x, 0)$ and $c(x, 0)$ are specified or, equivalently, the distributions of the invariants $J_+(x, 0)$ and $J_-(x, 0)$ are given.

We sketch in Fig. 1.12 the characteristics net and the boundaries of the pistons in the x, t plane. Points such as F, through which pass the C_+ and C_- characteristics originating from points inside the interval O_1O_2 of the x axis, do not differ from points in a gas in an unbounded medium. As previously discussed, the initial values of the invariants J_+ and J_- are transferred to these points.

Let us now consider a point on the boundary of a piston, the point D on the left piston, for example. Only one invariant J_- is transferred to the point D from the "past"; it is transferred along the C_- characteristic originating from the point A of the initial segment O_1O_2 in such a way that $J_-(D) = J_-(A)$.

The second invariant J_+ is not transferred to D because the C_+ characteristic does not reach D (from the "past"). Instead, a C_+ characteristic emerges from D (into the "future") carrying with it the value of the invariant J_+ "generated" at this point. The state of the gas at the point D is determined by the value of the invariant J_- and one other quantity. The other quantity is the velocity u, which by virtue of the boundary conditions coincides at the

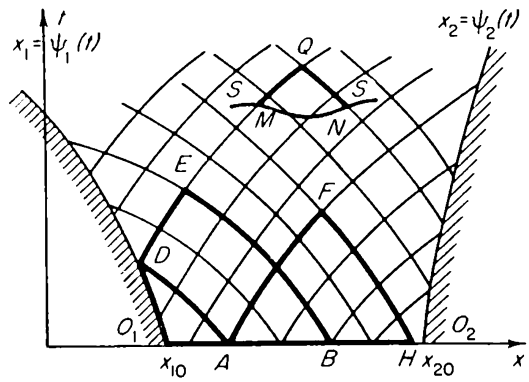


Fig. 1.12. Sketch of characteristics for plane isentropic gas flow between two pistons.

point D with the known velocity of the left piston $u_1(D)$. This pair of quantities $J_-(D) = J_-(A)$ and $u = u_1(D)$ now replaces the pair of quantities J_+ and J_-, which arrives at points in the gas that are not in contact with the pistons. At point D the second invariant J_+ is determined by the quantities $J_-(D)$ and $u_1(D)$ following the relation $J_+(D) = 2u_1(D) - J_-(D)$. This invariant is carried away by the C_+ characteristic. Now, for example, the C_- characteristic arriving at the point E originates at the point B of the initial segment of the x axis and carries with it the invariant $J_-(B)$, so that $J_-(E) = J_-(B)$. On the other hand, the C_+ characteristic arriving from the point D on the boundary of the piston brings with it the invariant J_+ equal to $J_+(D)$, so that $J_+(E) = J_+(D)$. Thus, the state of the gas at E depends only on $J_-(B)$, $u_1(D)$, and $J_-(A)$, hence on conditions at A, B, and D. But the location of E depends on the intervals O_1D, O_2B. We conclude that in the case of a gas flow in a bounded region, the state of the gas at any given point depends not only on the initial conditions, but also on the boundary conditions.

In general, the state of the gas at an arbitrary point of the x, t plane is determined by specifying the values of u and c or of J_+ and J_- on a segment of an arbitrary curve which is cut off by the C_+ and C_- characteristics passing through the point under consideration. For example, the state at the point Q is determined by the state on the segment MN of a curve S (see Fig. 1.12).

In a similar manner the invariant J_+ is transferred from the "past" to the

right piston along the C_+ characteristics, and the C_- characteristics begin at the points on the trace of the piston and carry away into the "future" the invariant J_-. The values of the J_- invariant are determined by the values of the arriving J_+ invariant and the values of the piston velocity u (which equals the velocity of the gas layer adjacent to the piston).

The pressure on the piston is uniquely determined by one of the arriving invariants and by the piston velocity. Let us consider, for example, the point D on the left piston. We assume the gas to be perfect with constant specific heats. The initial gas velocity and the speed of sound at the point A are denoted by u_A and c_A, respectively, and the velocity of the piston at the point D by u_{1D}. The gas velocity and the speed of sound at D are obtained from

$$u_D = u_{1D}, \qquad J_- = u_D - \frac{2}{\gamma - 1} c_D = u_A - \frac{2}{\gamma - 1} c_A,$$

whence

$$c_D = c_A + \frac{\gamma - 1}{2} (u_{10} - u_A)$$

or in terms of the invariant

$$c_D = \frac{\gamma - 1}{2} [u_{10} - J_-(A)].$$

The pressure at the piston p_D is related to the speed of sound c_D in a purely thermodynamic manner with $p_D = const\ c_D^{2\gamma/(\gamma-1)}$.

From the above considerations we can give a clear physical meaning to the Riemann invariants. Let us consider the following experiment. We introduce at a particular time t and at a point x a flat plate parallel to the piston surface. We then place a pressure gauge on the left side of the plate sensitive to the changes in gas pressure on that side.

The invariant $J_+ = u + \int dp/\rho c = u + w(p)$ arrives at the left of the gauge at a time t at a point x. Here u and p are the velocity and pressure in the gas undisturbed by the plate ($w(p)$ is a function of the pressure which depends only on the thermodynamic properties of the gas and on its entropy). At the time t the gas slows down near the plate and stops, since the plate is at rest. The new pressure to the left of the plate, corresponding to the gas at rest ($u = 0$), is denoted by p_1. Then $J_+ = u + w(p) = w(p_1)$. The gauge will register the reflected pressure p_1. Since the function w is known, the gauge scale can be calibrated to give directly the value of the invariant J_+. In a similar manner, a pressure gauge placed on the right side of the plate will measure the invariant J_- arriving from the right.

If we place a very thin plate perpendicular to the piston surface and parallel

to the direction of the flow velocity so that the gas flows freely past the plate without changing its velocity, the gauge will then register the pressure p of the undisturbed flow. By calibrating the gauge to give directly the value of $w(p)$, the gauge will measure the combination of the invariants

$$w(p) = \tfrac{1}{2}(J_+ - J_-).$$

§8. Simple waves

Equation (1.46) describing the propagation of small disturbances (acoustic waves) in a gas shows that if the wave is propagated in one direction only, then one of the invariants is constant in both space and time. Thus, if the wave travels to the right and $\Delta u(x,t) = \Delta p(x,t)/\rho_0 c_0 = f_1[x - (u_0 + c_0)t]$, then the invariant J_- is constant:

$$J_- = \Delta u - \frac{\Delta p}{\rho_0 c_0} + const = const.$$

If the wave travels to the left, then the J_+ invariant is constant.

We shall prove that the existence of waves propagating in one direction is not limited to those cases in which the amplitude of the waves is small, for which we have seen that one of the Riemann invariants remains constant. First we observe that it is possible to achieve practically the constancy of one of the invariants, for example of J_-. If the gas occupies an unbounded region, it is sufficient to give the initial distributions $u(x, 0)$ and $c(x, 0)$ in such a manner that $J_-(x, 0) = const$ at the initial time. Since this constant value of J_- is carried along the C_- characteristics originating from all points on the x axis, the invariant J_- also remains constant at subsequent times; thus, $J_-(x, t) = const$.

Let the gas occupy a half space bounded on the left by a piston moving according to the equation $x_1 = \psi_1(t)$. If, at the initial time $J_-(x, 0) = const$ in the entire region occupied by the gas, $x > x_{10}$ (x_{10} is the initial coordinate of the piston), then at subsequent times J_- will also remain constant in the entire region bounded by the piston $x > x_1 = \psi_1(t)$. Actually, the left piston, as has been shown in the preceding section, "excites" only the C_+ characteristics; the C_- characteristics arrive at the boundary of the piston from the "past" and they terminate their existence there, because the piston sends into the "future" only the invariant J_+ and not the J_-. The values of the invariant J_- in the entire region of the x, t plane which correspond to the gas (this region is bounded by the piston boundary $x_1 = \psi_1(t)$) are determined by the initial values of J_- on the x axis, that is, they are constant. On the other hand, if the gas occupies a half space bounded from the right by a moving piston (the piston boundary is $x_2 = \psi_2(t)$, $x_{20} = \psi_2(0)$), and at the initial

instant $J_+(x, 0) = const$ for $x < x_{20}$, then the J_+ invariant is constant over that part of the x, t plane where $x < x_2 = \psi_2(t)$.

We return now to the original problem, assuming that $J_-(x, t) = const$. It follows from the equation for the characteristics, written in the form (1.47), that the C_+ characteristics constitute a family of straight lines ($F_+ = const$ because $J_+ = const$ along the characteristics and $J_- = const$ in general). Integrating the equations for the C_+ characteristics, we can write

$$x = F_+(J_+, J_-)\,t + \varphi(J_+), \tag{1.49}$$

where $\varphi(J_+)$ is a constant of integration, regarded as a function of that value of J_+ which is propagated along the characteristic. This constant is determined by the initial and boundary conditions of the problem. For example, if the given characteristic originates from the initial interval of the x axis, then φ is the coordinate of that point on the x axis from which the characteristic starts, and for which the value of J_+ defining the argument of φ has been given. Equation (1.49), together with the imposed condition

$$J_-(x, t) = const, \tag{1.50}$$

represents the general solution of the gasdynamic equations for the case considered. Equation (1.49) determines implicitly the other desired function, $J_+(x, t)$. (We recall that the function F_+ is specified by the thermodynamic properties of the fluid which are assumed known.)

The solutions (1.49) and (1.50) can be written in the form of equations involving the usual gasdynamic variables, the gas velocity and the speed of sound. It follows from (1.50)

$$J_- = u - \int \frac{dp}{\rho c} = const$$

that the speed of sound or any other thermodynamic variable, say the pressure, is a function of the velocity u alone, with $c = c(u)$ and $p = p(u)$, and does not explicitly contain the independent variables x and t. Equation (1.49) is equivalent to

$$x = [u + c(u)]t + \varphi(u), \tag{1.51}$$

where the constant of integration φ is expressed as a function of u. This equation determines u as an implicit function of x and t. It is evident from (1.51) that the given values of u and $c(u)$ are carried through the gas along the x axis with a constant velocity $u + c(u)$. In other words, the solution is a wave, traveling to the right, which is defined by the functional relation

$$u = f\{x - [u + c(u)]t\}, \qquad c = g\{x - [u + c(u)]t\}.$$

Here the form of the functions f and g is determined by the boundary and

initial conditions of the problem. However, in contrast to a traveling wave of small amplitude, different values of the gas velocity and thermodynamic variables are propagated with different velocities, so that the initial profiles of $u(x, 0)$ and $c(x, 0)$ become distorted with time. This is a result of the nonlinearity of the gasdynamic equations. The solution we have obtained in the form of a traveling wave is called a simple wave.

A simple wave traveling in the opposite direction can be obtained in a similar manner. It has a constant invariant J_+, and the C_- characteristics are straight lines. The general solution in this case is

$$J_+ = const, \qquad x = F_-(J_+, J_-)t + \varphi_1(J_-)$$

or

$$J_+ = u + \int \frac{dp}{\rho c} = const, \qquad x = [u - c(u)]t + \varphi_1(u),$$

$$u = f_1\{x + [c(u) - u]t\}, \qquad c = g_1\{x + [c(u) - u]t\}.$$

We note that the simple wave solution is a particular solution of the equations of one-dimensional isentropic flow. It is possible to find a general integral of these equations for an arbitrary flow (see [1]). The particular solution is not directly contained in the general solution.

§9. Distortion of the wave form in a traveling wave of finite amplitude. Some properties of simple waves

We shall use the solution obtained for the simple wave to explain what happens with an acoustic-type wave if we do not limit ourselves to the first approximation, as was done in §3, but instead start with the exact gasdynamic equations. We shall not present here an analytic solution, but will explain the qualitative character of the phenomena by graphical means. The gas will be taken to be a perfect one with constant specific heats.

Let the initial profiles of the velocity and of the speed of sound $u(x, 0)$ and $c(x, 0)$ be as shown in Fig. 1.13 and, in addition, let the variables be related to each other in such a way that $J_-(x, 0) = const$ (we consider a wave traveling to the right). According to (1.44) we have $c = \frac{1}{2}(\gamma - 1)u + c_0$, where the constant value of the invariant J_- has been chosen in accordance with the condition that $u = 0$ and $c = c_0$ in the undisturbed gas. Since $p \sim c^{2/(\gamma-1)}$, $\rho \sim c^{2\gamma/(\gamma-1)}$ (for $c = c_0$, $p = p_0$, $\rho = \rho_0$), both the pressure and density profiles are completely similar qualitatively to the profile of the speed of sound.

The invariant $J_-(x, t)$, which is constant initially, is also constant during the entire time following, so that the motion is a simple wave traveling to the

right. Characteristics of the C_+ family are the straight lines $dx/dt = u + c = \frac{1}{2}(\gamma + 1)u + c_0$. They are depicted in Fig. 1.13. They emerge parallel to each other from the points A_0, B_0, and D_0, where $u = 0$ so that $dx/dt = c_0$ (and also parallel to the C_+ characteristics, emerging from points on the x axis corresponding to the undisturbed region). In order not to complicate Fig. 1.13

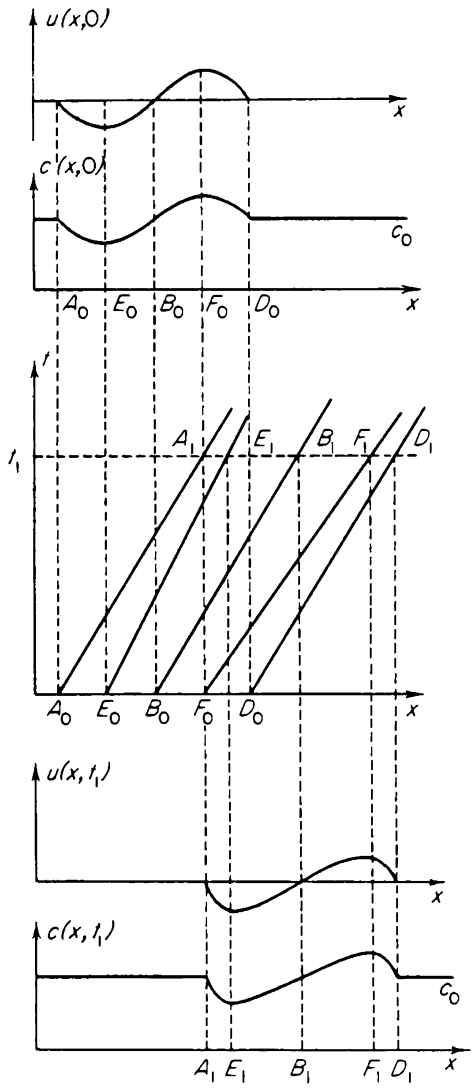


Fig. 1.13. Propagation of a wave traveling to the right. A graphical construction which permits the determination of the wave form distortion. Top, initial velocity and speed of sound profiles. Bottom, distorted profiles at time t_1. Center, sketch of the C_+ characteristics.

we draw only two more C_+ characteristics, those from the points E_0 and F_0 corresponding to the minima and maxima of the initial distributions of $u(x, 0)$ and $c(x, 0)$.

We now construct the velocity and speed of sound profiles $u(x, t_1)$ and $c(x, t_1)$ at a time t_1. Since the values of u and c are constant along the C_+

characteristics, the values of u and c at the points A_1, E_1, etc., are equal to the corresponding values at the points A_0, E_0, etc. Carrying out the graphical construction as shown in Fig. 1.13, we find the profiles of u and c at the time t_1. We see that the "head" (D) and the "tail" (A) of the wave, adjacent to the undisturbed regions where $u = 0$ and $c = c_0$, have been displaced along the x axis through distances equal to $c_0 t_1$ (they have been propagated along the characteristics $D_0 D_1$ and $A_0 A_1$ in the x, t plane). The heights of the maxima and minima of u and c have not changed, but the relative positions of the maxima and minima are different, and the profiles have been distorted.

In acoustics, where the gasdynamic equations are linearized, such distortion does not take place and the profiles are displaced as a "frozen picture". The distortion of the wave forms is a result of the nonlinearity of the gasdynamic equations. The physical reason for the distortion lies in the fact that the wave crests travel relatively faster, due to the higher velocity with which they are propagated through the fluid (higher speed of sound), as well as due to the fact that they are carried forward faster together with the fluid (higher gas velocity). On the other hand, the valleys travel relatively slower, since in this region both velocities are lower.

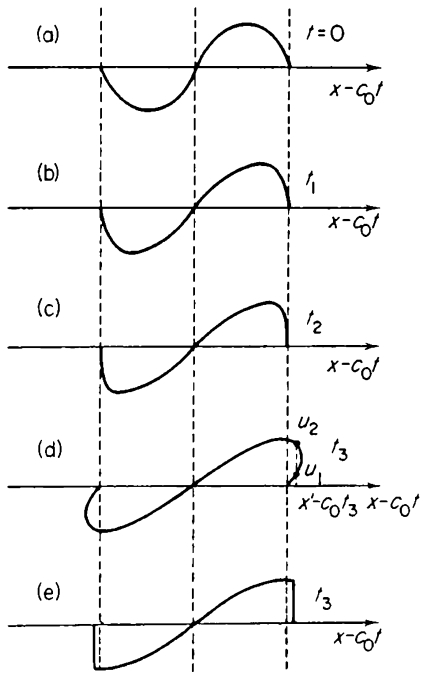


Fig. 1.14. Diagram showing the steepening and "overshooting" of a finite amplitude wave in the nonlinear theory. The figure shows velocity profiles at successive instants of time. To compare these waves at different instants of time the combination $x - c_0 t$ has been plotted along the abscissa. The wave form (d) corresponds to a physically unrealistic condition. Actually, the wave has the form (e) with discontinuities at the time t_3.

Figure 1.14 shows that the wave forms become increasingly distorted with time. If we formally extend the analytic solution over a sufficiently long period, then an "overshooting" of the wave, shown in Fig. 1.14d, will occur.

This picture has no physical meaning, however, since it does not give a unique solution. For example, at the point $x = x'$ three values of the velocity $u = 0$, u_1, and u_2 exist at the same time. This nonuniqueness is mathematically attributable to the intersection of the characteristics of one family (C_+); such a tendency can be seen from an examination of Fig. 1.13. In reality the "overshooting" does not take place, and when the front and rear parts of the wave become extremely steep, discontinuities (i.e., shock waves) are formed as shown in Fig. 1.14e (we shall discuss this below). Thus, the solution in the form of a simple wave is, in this case, valid only for a limited period, up to the time when discontinuities are formed. The solution is always valid whenever the wave has the character of a rarefaction wave throughout the region, that is, whenever there are no segments where the velocity, pressure, and density of the gas decrease in the direction of wave propagation. The segments AE and FD shown in Fig. 1.13 constitute compression waves. The simple rarefaction wave will be considered in the next section.

We note an important property of the simple wave illustrated by the above example. The head of a simple wave is always propagated along a characteristic (in our example along the characteristic D_0D_1). The quantities u and c are continuous at the forward edge of the simple wave at the point D but their derivatives with respect to x are discontinuous (this is apparent from Fig. 1.13, where the profiles of u and c show breaks). A discontinuity in which the quantities themselves are continuous but their derivatives are not is called a weak discontinuity. A weak discontinuity may be imagined as a small disturbance in the continuous progress of the flow variables. This is shown in Fig. 1.15

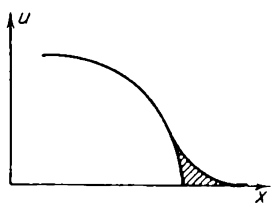


Fig. 1.15. Illustration of a weak discontinuity.

which depicts two wave forms, one smoothed out and the other with a discontinuity in the derivative. The shaded segment may be regarded as a small disturbance. We know, however, that small disturbances are propagated in a medium with the speed of sound. Therefore weak discontinuities are always propagated along characteristics.

If the isentropic flow has a common boundary with a region of uniform flow, then this flow is necessarily a simple wave, and, conversely, only a simple wave can have a mutual boundary with a region of uniform flow. Actually, the C_+ and C_- characteristics in the uniform flow region represent families of parallel straight lines, and the invariants $J_+(x, t)$ and $J_-(x, t)$ are constant. One of the characteristics (let us say a C_+ characteristic) serves as the interface

of an isentropic flow region I with a uniform flow region II (Fig. 1.16). Then the C_- characteristics extending from region II into region I carry the constant value of J_-, so that $J_-(x, t) = const$ in region I as well. Consequently, this

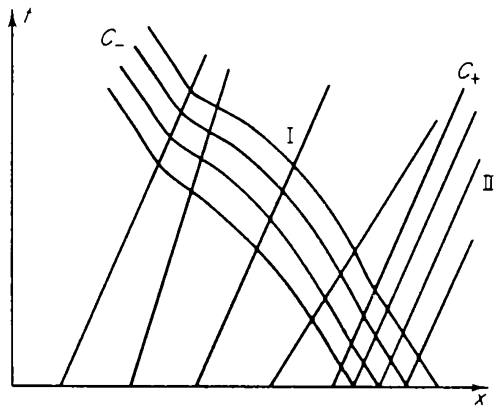


Fig. 1.16. Illustration of the two families of characteristics for the wave shown in Fig. 1.13.

region is a simple wave traveling to the right. Figure 1.16 illustrates the characteristics for the case of an impulse of one "wavelength" used as an example in the above discussions.

§10. The rarefaction wave

Let us consider the motion of a gas caused by the action of a receding piston. Let the gas initially have constant density, pressure, and speed of sound ρ_0, p_0, c_0 and occupy a half space $x > 0$, which is bounded on the left by a stationary piston whose initial position is $x = 0$. At the time $t = 0$ the piston begins to move to the left, gradually accelerating from zero velocity to a certain constant velocity U. The equation of motion of the piston is $x = X(t)$. When the speed of the piston becomes constant, the line $X(t)$ becomes a straight line described by $X(t) = -Ut + const$.

As shown in the preceding section, the motion of a gas for $t > 0$ is a simple wave traveling to the right. The head of the wave, that is, the initial disturbance imparted by the piston, propagates to the right with the speed of sound along the C_+ characteristic OA, whose path is $x = c_0 t$ (Fig. 1.17). Also shown in Fig. 1.17 are the piston path $X(t)$ and the characteristics of the C_+ and C_- families. The gas contained in the region I between the x axis and the C_+ characteristic OA is undisturbed. In this region the characteristics are straight lines whose slopes are $(dx/dt)_+ = c_0$ and $(dx/dt)_- = -c_0$. Intersecting the straight line OA, the C_- characteristics are extended to the piston trace, where they terminate. For the sake of simplicity we shall assume the gas to

be a perfect one with constant specific heats. We emphasize, however, that qualitatively the picture remains the same for a gas with other thermodynamic properties. The invariant J_- is constant over the entire physical part of the x, t plane and is equal to

$$J_- = u - \frac{2}{\gamma - 1} c = -\frac{2}{\gamma - 1} c_0 .$$

From this we have

$$u = -\frac{2}{\gamma - 1}(c_0 - c), \qquad c = c_0 + \frac{\gamma - 1}{2} u.$$

At the gas-piston interface the gas velocity is the same as the velocity of the piston $w(t)$, which is negative. Hence the speed of sound, and also the pressure and the density of the gas at the piston have values lower than their

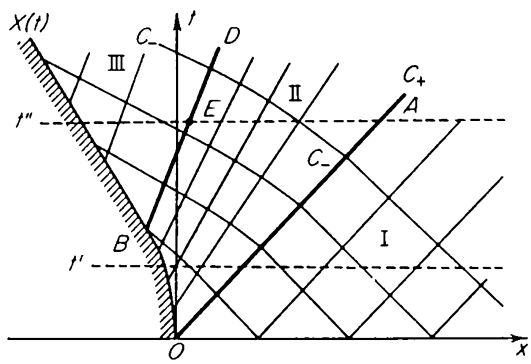


Fig. 1.17. An x, t diagram with a plot of the characteristics for a rarefaction wave arising from the motion of a receding piston which first accelerates and then moves with a constant velocity.

initial values; furthermore, they decrease in proportion to the increase in piston velocity. The slopes of the C_+ characteristics, which are straight lines emanating from the piston path, are given by

$$\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)_+ = u + c = c_0 + \frac{\gamma + 1}{2} u = c_0 - \frac{\gamma + 1}{2} |w|.$$

Since the piston only accelerates and does not decelerate, all the C_+ characteristics emanating from the piston path are divergent, as shown in Fig. 1.17. The C_+ characteristics emanating from that section of the piston path where the piston has already reached a constant velocity have the same slopes $(dx/dt)_+ = c_0 - \frac{1}{2}(\gamma + 1)U$, so that they are parallel to each other. Suppose for example, that starting at time t_1 (point B on the piston path) the piston velocity becomes strictly constant and equal to $w = -U$ $(U > 0)$. In region

III of the x, t plane, which is bounded by the piston path and the C_+ characteristic BD, all the flow variables are constant with $u = -U$, $c = c_0 - \frac{1}{2}(\gamma - 1)U = c_1$ *. In this region J_- is constant by virtue of its general constancy and J_+ is constant because the gas velocity on the piston path from which all the C_+ characteristics emerge is the same at all points, with

$$J_+ = u + \frac{2}{\gamma - 1} c = \frac{2}{\gamma - 1} c_0 + 2u = \frac{2}{\gamma - 1} c_0 - 2U.$$

The flow variables in the region II lying between the C_+ characteristics OA and BD and the segment OB of the piston path are the same functions of x and t as obtained for the simple wave. The C_+ characteristics emerging from the segment OB of the piston path carry with increasing time decreasing values of the speed of sound and of the gas velocity (increasing absolute values of the gas velocity). Hence, the distribution of u and c in the gas at any given time $t' < t_1$ (corresponding to the horizontal line $t = const = t'$ in the x, t plane) is that shown in Fig. 1.18a. Because of the direct relationship

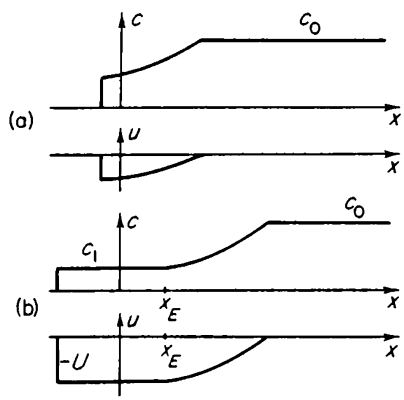


Fig. 1.18. Distribution of the speed of sound and gas velocity in a rarefaction wave arising from the motion of a piston (see Fig. 1.17): (a) up to the time when the piston velocity becomes constant $t' < t_1$; (b) after the piston velocity becomes constant $t'' > t_1$.

between p, ρ, and c the density and pressure distributions are qualitatively similar to the distribution of the speed of sound. The distributions of the flow variables at a still later time $t'' > t_1$ (the line $t = const = t''$ in the x, t plane) are shown in Fig. 1.18b. In this case a uniform flow region $u = -U$, $c = c_1$ is adjacent to the piston. The coordinate x_E of the point separating the constant and variable flow regions III and II corresponds to the point E on the characteristic BD.

Starting with a concrete example of a relationship governing the motion of a piston, we can find the solution to the problem in analytic form. Let us

* These equations are valid only if c_1 is a positive quantity; this imposes a limitation on the final velocity of the piston, that $U < [2/(\gamma - 1)]c_0$. The case where $U > [2/(\gamma - 1)]c_0$ will be considered in §11.

assume that the velocity of the piston varies with time according to

$$w = -U(1 - e^{-t/\tau}), \qquad \tau > 0$$

and approaches the constant value $-U$ asymptotically for $t \to \infty$. The piston path is described by

$$X(t) = \int_0^t w\, dt = -U\tau\left[\frac{t}{\tau} - (1 - e^{-t/\tau})\right],$$

and asymptotically approaches the straight line $X = -U(t - \tau)$. The desired solution is found by applying the boundary condition $u = w(t)$ for $x = X(t)$ to the general solution (1.51). This condition defines the arbitrary function $\varphi(u)$ as

$$\varphi(w) = X(t) - [w + c(w)]t,$$

where

$$c(w) = c_0 + \frac{\gamma - 1}{2} w \qquad \text{and} \qquad w = w(t).$$

Substituting $X(t)$ into this equation and expressing time in terms of w from the equation of motion of the piston $t = -\tau \ln(1 + w/U)$, we find the form of the function φ to be

$$\varphi(w) = -w\tau + \tau\left(c_0 + \frac{\gamma + 1}{2} w + U\right) \ln\left(1 + \frac{w}{U}\right).$$

The velocity distribution with respect to x at different times is given by the implicit function

$$x = \left(c_0 + \frac{\gamma + 1}{2} u\right)t - u\tau + \tau\left(c_0 + \frac{\gamma + 1}{2} u + U\right) \ln\left(1 + \frac{u}{U}\right),$$

which is valid in the interval $X(t) < x < c_0 t$.

Let us again assume that the velocity of the piston becomes strictly constant at a certain time t_1. We fix the constant value of the final velocity of the piston $-U$; we consider that the initial acceleration of the piston becomes greater and greater, while the constant final velocity is approached faster and faster ($t_1 \to 0$). Segment OB of the piston path where the piston velocity is not constant becomes smaller and smaller (see Fig. 1.17). Points B and O, where the C_+ characteristics BD and OA which bound the variable flow region II originate, will therefore approach each other. In the limit $t_1 = 0$ when the points B and O coincide (corresponding to the piston reaching the constant velocity $w = -U$ instantaneously) both the characteristics BD and OA originate from the same point. This point is the origin of the coordinate system $x = 0$ and $t = 0$ in the x, t plane. All the other C_+ characteristics

covering the variable flow region II also fan out from the origin O. Thus, in the limiting case when the piston begins to move with the constant velocity $w = -U$ at the time $t = 0$, the picture in the x, t plane takes the form shown in Fig. 1.19.

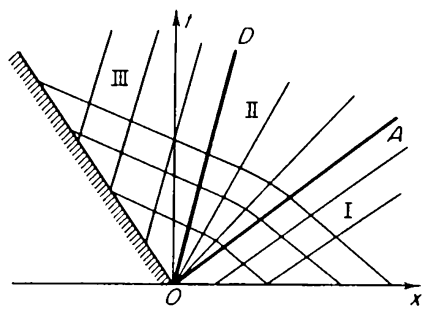


Fig. 1.19. An x, t diagram showing the characteristics for a centered rarefaction wave.

The three special lines, the line of the "head" rarefaction wave OA, the line of the "tail" wave OD beyond which the flow parameters take on their constant and final values, and the piston path, all originate from the "center" O. All the C_+ characteristics which are between the C_+ characteristics OA and OD also originate from this "center". This type of wave is called a centered simple wave. Since all the C_+ characteristics in a centered simple wave, those in the variable flow region II, originate from the point $x = 0$, $t = 0$, the function $\varphi(u)$ will vanish in the solution (1.51); this solution is at the same time the equation for these characteristics. The solution for the centered wave takes the form

$$x = [u + c(u)]t. \tag{1.52}$$

This solution can also be obtained formally by taking the limit $\tau \to 0$ in the example considered above. The function φ is proportional to τ, so that for $\tau \to 0$, $\varphi(u) \to 0$.

Let us write an explicit solution for the centered rarefaction wave for the case of a perfect gas with constant specific heats. The relationship between the thermodynamic variables and the gas velocity u is given by the result derived earlier from the constancy of the invariant J_-

$$c = c_0 - \frac{\gamma - 1}{2}|u|, \qquad u < 0. \tag{1.53}$$

Since $p = p_0(\rho/\rho_0)^\gamma$, $c^2 = \gamma p/\rho = c_0^2(\rho/\rho_0)^{\gamma-1}$, we have

$$\rho = \rho_0\left[1 - \frac{\gamma - 1}{2}\frac{|u|}{c_0}\right]^{2/(\gamma-1)}, \tag{1.54}$$

$$p = p_0\left[1 - \frac{\gamma - 1}{2}\frac{|u|}{c_0}\right]^{2\gamma/(\gamma-1)}. \tag{1.55}$$

In order to express these quantities as functions of x and t, it is necessary to substitute here the value of $|u|$ found by elimination of c between (1.52) and (1.53), or

$$|u| = \frac{2}{\gamma + 1}\left(c_0 - \frac{x}{t}\right). \tag{1.56}$$

The gas velocity in a centered rarefaction wave is thus a linear function of x. The wave "head", where $u = 0$, moves along the line $x = c_0 t$, while the wave "tail", where $u = w = -U$, moves along the line $x = (c_1 - U)t = (c_0 - \frac{1}{2}(\gamma + 1)U)t$. The density and velocity profiles are shown in Fig. 1.20.

§11. The centered rarefaction wave as an example of self-similar gas motion

The one-dimensional plane motion of a gas considered in the preceding section resulting from the influence of a piston receding with a constant velocity exhibits a special property. All the flow variables describing the motion $u(x, t)$, $c(x, t)$, $\rho(x, t)$, and $p(x, t)$ do not depend upon the x coordinate and time independently but are functions only of the combination x/t. For the region II, where these quantities are changing, this is directly evident from (1.53)–(1.56). This also applies to the regions of uniform flow I and III bounded in the x, t plane by the straight lines $x/t = c_0 = const$ (region I) and $x/t = w = const$, $x/t = w + c_1 = const$ (region III), which are also described by equations containing x and t only in the combination x/t. In other words, the distributions of all quantities with respect to the x coordinate, as shown in Fig. 1.20, change with time without changing their form; they remain similar

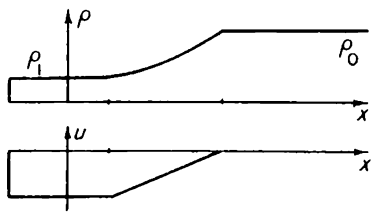


Fig. 1.20. Density and velocity profiles in a centered rarefaction wave.

to themselves. If we were to draw the distributions of u, c, ρ, and p using as the abscissa not x but the ratio x/t (or one of the dimensionless quantities $x/c_0 t$, x/wt), we would obtain a "frozen" picture, one which does not vary with time. This type of motion in which the distributions of the flow variables remain similar to themselves with time and vary only as a result of changes in scale is called self-similar. (In the case being considered the scale is the length $c_0 t$ or wt.) In §25 we shall consider a more complicated example of self-similar motion, where not only the length scale but also the flow variable

scales change. In this case the similarity variable has the more general form $\xi = xt^{\alpha}$, where $\alpha = const$. The centered rarefaction wave is an elementary example of a self-similar motion, where $\alpha = -1$, $\xi = x/t$, and the scales of the flow variables remain constant. With time the flow profiles $u(x, t)$ and $c(x, t)$ move in a self-similar fashion with respect to the abscissa but do not change with respect to the ordinate (the scales of u, c, ρ, and p remain unchanged).

The physical reason for the self-similar character of a centered rarefaction wave can be explained by dimensional considerations. If we neglect the dissipative processes associated with viscosity and heat conduction, then the gasdynamic equations and also the relations describing the thermodynamic properties of the fluid do not contain any characteristic length or time scales. The only length and time scales in the gas are the length and time of a mean free path of molecular motion, with which the coefficients of viscosity and thermal conductivity are related. However these scales characterize only the microprocesses, which take place in distances and times of the order of those of the mean free path of the molecules, but not the macroscopic motion. Fluids do possess a dimensional parameter, the speed of sound, which together with the velocity of the fluid enters the description of the fluid flow. Thus, if the boundary and initial conditions of the problem do not contain any characteristic length or time scales, then the flow can depend on the coordinate and time only in the combination x/t, which has the dimension of a velocity. This is precisely the problem of the rarefaction wave which results from the motion of a piston receding with a constant velocity w. The initial and boundary conditions introduce only the velocity scales c_0 and w (and, obviously, also density and pressure scales ρ_0 and p_0, but not length nor time scales*).

Self-similar motion is of great importance in gasdynamics. In this case the flow variables do not depend on the coordinates and time separately, but depend only on particular combinations of them. This decreases by one the number of independent variables in the system of equations. In particular, for one-dimensional motions, only one independent variable ($\xi = x/t$ in our problem) appears instead of the two variables x and t (or r and t in the case of spherical or cylindrical symmetry). Therefore, the flow can be described by

* If the piston velocity is not a constant, but a function of time, then the time or length scales will appear immediately. In this case the problem of the rarefaction wave will no longer be a self-similar one. Mathematically this follows from (1.51): if $\varphi(u) \neq 0$, then u becomes a function of x and t separately. However, if the piston velocity tends to become constant in time, as in the problem considered in the preceding section, then the actual solution will asymptotically approach the self-similar solution. For $t \gg \tau$ ($t/\tau \to \infty$), the function $\varphi(u) \sim \tau$ can be omitted in the solution. Physically, this corresponds to the fact that the parameter τ becomes small in comparison with the characteristic time t of the problem and its role becomes increasingly less. For a more detailed discussion of the asymptotic approach of actual solutions to self-similar solutions, see Chapters X and XII.

ordinary rather than by partial differential equations, and this simplifies the problem considerably from a mathematical point of view.

In view of the importance of self-similar flows, of which the centered simple wave appears as an example, we again solve the piston problem, using the general system of flow equations and taking advantage of the possibility of reducing the number of independent variables. To do this we express the Euler equations in terms of a new independent variable $\xi = x/t$. If $f(x, t)$ is some function of x and t which depends only on the ratio $\xi = x/t$ we obtain

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = \frac{1}{t}\frac{df}{d\xi},$$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} = -\frac{x}{t^2}\frac{df}{d\xi} = -\frac{\xi}{t}\frac{df}{d\xi},$$

$$\frac{Df}{Dt} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + u\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = \frac{u-\xi}{t}\frac{df}{d\xi}.$$

Using these relations we can rewrite the equations of continuity, motion, and entropy for the plane case as

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{D\rho}{Dt} = -\rho\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \quad &\rightarrow \quad (u-\xi)\frac{d\rho}{d\xi} = -\rho\frac{du}{d\xi}, \\ \rho\frac{Du}{Dt} = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} \quad &\rightarrow \quad (u-\xi)\rho\frac{du}{d\xi} = -\frac{dp}{d\xi}, \\ \frac{DS}{Dt} = 0 \quad &\rightarrow \quad (u-\xi)\frac{dS}{d\xi} = 0. \end{aligned} \tag{1.57}$$

As expected, the variables x and t are eliminated from the equations. In this form the equations immediately yield the trivial solution $u = const$, $p = const$, $\rho = const$, and $S = const$, corresponding to a uniform flow of the gas.

To obtain a nontrivial solution, we eliminate $du/d\xi$ from the first pair of equations, and note that the third equation gives $S = const$*; thus, the self-similar flow is isentropic. Replacing in (1.57) the pressure derivative by the density derivative $dp/d\xi = (dp/d\rho)(d\rho/d\xi) = c^2\, d\rho/d\xi$ (since the flow is isentropic $dp/d\rho = (\partial p/\partial\rho)_S = c^2$), we obtain

$$[(u-\xi)^2 - c^2]\frac{d\rho}{d\xi} = 0,$$

* The assumption that $u - \xi = 0$ rather than $dS/d\xi = 0$ contradicts the first equation in (1.57).

whence

$$u - \xi = \pm c, \qquad \xi = \frac{x}{t} = u \mp c. \tag{1.58}$$

Substituting this relationship into equations (1.57), we find

$$du \pm c\frac{d\rho}{\rho} = du \pm \frac{dp}{\rho c} = 0$$

or

$$J_{\pm} = u \pm \int \frac{dp}{\rho c} = const. \tag{1.59}$$

We have thus arrived at the solution found previously for the problem of a centered rarefaction wave. The lower sign in (1.58) and (1.59) refers to waves traveling to the right, while the upper sign refers to waves traveling to the left. Again, the entire flow picture can be constructed from the solutions (1.58) and (1.59) and the trivial solutions $u = const$, $c = const$ which also satisfy the self-similar equations. The solutions must be combined in such a manner so as to satisfy the boundary condition $u = w$ at the piston.

Let us consider certain properties of the rarefaction wave in somewhat greater detail. The character of the solution shows that it remains valid even if the gas does not extend from the piston to infinity, $x \to \infty$. The presence of the boundary does not affect the flow in any way until such time as the head of the rarefaction wave (which travels through the undisturbed gas to the right with the speed of sound c_0) reaches the right-hand boundary of the gas $x = x_1 > 0$, that is, until $t_1 = x_1/c_0$*. Therefore, the solution obtained will always describe the initial stage of the gas motion caused by a receding piston, even when the gas occupies a finite region.

Let us follow a gas particle whose initial coordinate is, say, x_0. The particle is at rest up to the time $t = t_0 = x_0/c_0$, that is, before the arrival of the rarefaction wave. Then the particle begins to move to the left, accelerating and expanding at the same time. After the particle density decreases to its limiting value ρ_1, and the particle velocity becomes equal to the velocity of the piston w, further acceleration and expansion stop and the particle then moves with a constant velocity w. Some particle paths in the x, t plane are shown in Fig. 1.21. The equations of these lines in the expansion region II can be easily obtained by integrating the streamline equation $dx/dt = u = [2/(\gamma - 1)] \times (c_0 - x/t)$ with the initial condition $x = x_0$ at $t = t_0 = x_0/c_0$.

Let us now examine what happens with larger and larger values of the

* We recall here the discussion of the regions of influence in §6.

piston speed $|w|$. It is evident from (1.53)–(1.56) that the higher is $|w|$, the lower are the speed of sound, the density, the pressure, and temperature ($T \sim \sqrt{c}$) of the gas in the final state ($c_1 = c(w)$, $\rho_1 = \rho(w)$, etc.). Finally, at the particular piston velocity $|w|_m = [2/(\gamma - 1)]c_0$, the final values of c_1, ρ_1, and p_1 become zero. If the piston recedes even faster, then the solutions (1.53)–(1.56) lose their meaning, because for $|u| > |w|_m$ the value of c_1 is negative,

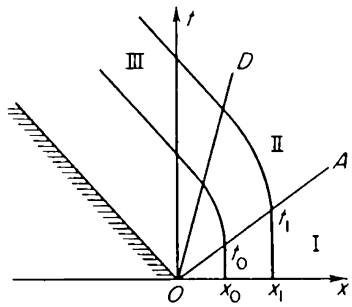


Fig. 1.21. Particle paths in x, t diagram for a centered rarefaction wave; OA is the wave head and OD is the wave tail.

while ρ_1 and p_1 are complex. Physically this means that a vacuum region is created between the piston and the left boundary of the gas when $|w| > |w|_m$. In this case the system behaves as if the piston were altogether "withdrawn" at the initial time $t = 0$, and as if the gas then flows into the vacuum left. The gas expands until its density, pressure, and temperature (speed of sound) reach zero, and its boundary moves to the left with the velocity

$$u = -\frac{2}{\gamma - 1} c_0, \qquad |u|_{\max} = \frac{2}{\gamma - 1} c_0. \tag{1.60}$$

The velocity and density profiles for unsteady flow into a vacuum are shown in Fig. 1.22. For example, for air at ordinary temperatures $\gamma = 7/5$ and

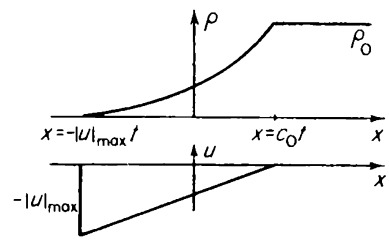


Fig. 1.22. Density and velocity profiles in plane unsteady gas flow into a vacuum.

$|u|_{\max} = 5c_0$. This value is more than twice the limiting velocity for a steady flow expanding from a large reservoir into a vacuum; here the Bernoulli equation $h + u^2/2 = h_0 = c_0^2/(\gamma - 1)$ holds and $u_{\max} = [2/(\gamma - 1)]^{1/2} c_0 \approx 2.2c_0$ for $\gamma = 1.4$ (h denotes the specific enthalpy, $h = \varepsilon + p/\rho$). In steady flow the particle only acquires a kinetic energy per unit mass of $u_{\max}^2/2$ equal to its

initial enthalpy h_0. In the case of unsteady flow into a vacuum, the kinetic energy is larger than the initial enthalpy h_0 (by a factor of five for $\gamma = 1.4$). The additional kinetic energy is acquired at the expense of heat energy in the neighboring particles. The total energy, equal to the sum of the kinetic and internal energies in the region occupied by the rarefaction wave, is conserved and is equal to the initial internal energy in that region.

Spherically or cylindrically symmetric rarefaction waves, created when "spherical" or "cylindrical" pistons are suddenly withdrawn from a gas occupying the space $r > r_0$ or $r < r_0$, can be considered in a manner analogous to the plane case. A rarefaction wave, whose head travels through the undisturbed gas with the speed of sound c_0, is also formed in this case. However, in these cases the regions between the piston and the tail of the rarefaction wave are not ones of uniform flow. We note that spherical and cylindrical rarefaction waves, in contrast to their plane counterpart, are not self-similar; in this problem there is a characteristic length scale—the initial radius of the piston r_0.

§12. On the impossibility of the existence of a centered compression wave

It would seem that the solution to the problem of a piston moving with a constant velocity is equally applicable regardless of whether the piston is pushed into or is withdrawn from the gas, whether it causes an expansion or a compression. The motions with expansion are self-similar, and their solutions can be constructed from trivial regions corresponding to uniform flow and a nontrivial region corresponding to a centered simple wave. Let us attempt to construct formally a continuous solution for a self-similar compression wave formed by a piston pushed into the gas with a constant initial velocity $w > 0$ (the gas is to the right of the piston). The "head" of the wave travels through the gas with the speed of sound c_0 along the line $x = c_0 t$ in the x, t plane. The piston is contiguous to the uniform flow region where $u = w$ and $c = c_1$, and both of the uniform flow regions (I and III in accordance with the terminology introduced in the preceding sections) are divided by the centered simple wave region II, where $J_- = u - [2/(\gamma - 1)]c = const = -[2/(\gamma - 1)]c_0$. It follows that $c_1 = c_0 + \frac{1}{2}(\gamma - 1)w$, so that the "tail" of the wave travels along the line $x = (w + c_1)t = [\frac{1}{2}(\gamma + 1)w + c_0]t$. The velocity distribution with respect to the x coordinate in region II is described by an equation similar to (1.56)

$$u = \frac{2}{\gamma - 1}\left(\frac{x}{t} - c_0\right).$$

The result is obtained that the "tail" of the wave propagates at a higher speed than the "head" of the wave, with $\frac{1}{2}(\gamma + 1)w + c_0 > c_0$, and that the

velocity and density profiles are of the shapes shown in Fig. 1.23. This result has no physical meaning and the solution is not single-valued in region II. However, this is the only continuous solution that follows from the gasdynamic equations. Consequently, a continuous solution for the given case simply does not exist. Historically speaking, this difficulty was one of the starting points for the development of discontinuous solutions to the equations of gasdynamics, that is, for the development of shock wave theory.

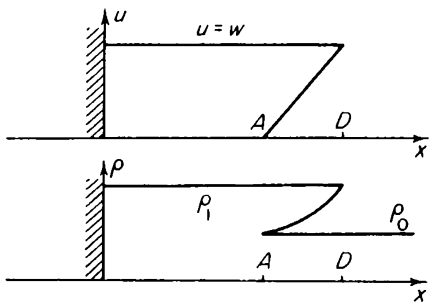
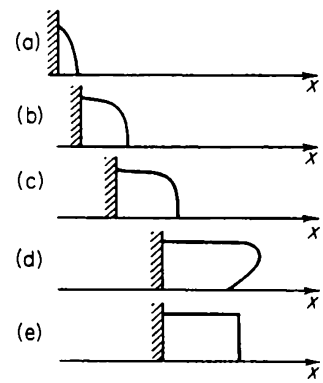


Fig. 1.23. Velocity and density profiles corresponding to a continuous solution for a self-similar (centered) compression wave. A is the wave head and D is the wave tail. The solution is not single-valued and has no physical meaning.

We note that if the piston, instead of moving into the gas with a constant velocity, gradually accelerates from rest, it is possible to find a continuous solution for a simple (but no longer centered) compression wave which describes the initial stage of the motion. The situation in this case is completely analogous to that for sound waves of finite amplitude (see §7). Characteristics of the C_+ family (if the piston is to the left of the gas) approach each other and tend to intersect. The steepness of the compression wave form increases with time (Fig. 1.24) and at a certain instant of time "overshooting"

Fig. 1.24. Gradual steepening of the velocity profile in a compression wave generated by an accelerating piston. (d) corresponds to a physically meaningless solution with "overshooting" of the wave; (e) shows the actual profile with a discontinuity after the occurrence of the "overshooting".



takes place and the solution becomes multi-valued in a manner analogous to that described above and in §7. Essentially, this means that a discontinuity, i.e., a shock wave, has been formed.

2. *Shock waves*

§13. Introduction to the gasdynamics of shock waves

Let us examine a gas initially at rest, with constant density and pressure ρ_0, p_0, bounded on the left by a plane piston. Let us further assume that the gas is compressed at an initial time by the piston moving into the gas with a constant velocity, which we shall denote by u. As shown in the preceding section, an attempt to find a continuous solution to this problem leads to a physically meaningless result. Since the problem is self-similar, the only solutions satisfying the gasdynamic equations are the trivial solutions, in which the quantities u, ρ, and p are constant, and the centered simple wave solution. Thus, there remains only one possibility for constructing a solution that would satisfy the boundary conditions of the problem in the undisturbed gas, $u = 0$, $p = p_0$, and $\rho = \rho_0$, while having in the region next to the piston the gas velocity equal to the piston velocity. This solution eliminates the physically unreal region II and brings together the uniform flow regions I and III with the assumption that the flow variables are discontinuous at the boundary between these regions; the solution is shown in Fig. 1.25.

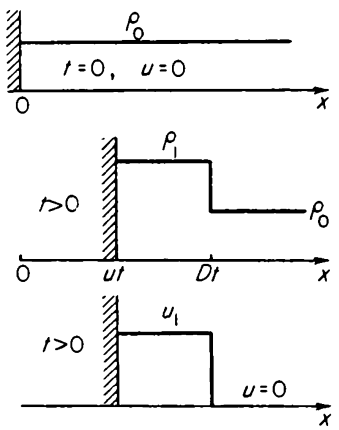


Fig. 1.25. Density and velocity profiles in a shock wave. The wave is produced by a piston which moves into the gas with a constant initial velocity. The top figure shows the initial state.

Generally speaking, the laws of conservation of mass, momentum, and energy that form the basis for the equations of inviscid flow of a nonconducting gas do not necessarily assume continuity of the flow variables. These laws were originally formulated in the form of differential equations simply because it was assumed at the beginning that the flow is continuous. These laws, however, can also be applied to those flow regions where the variables undergo a discontinuous change. From a mathematical point of view, a discontinuity can be regarded as the limiting case of very large but finite gradients in the

flow variables across a layer whose thickness tends to zero. Since in the dynamics of an inviscid and nonconducting gas (with molecular structure disregarded) there are no characteristic lengths, the possibility of the existence of arbitrarily thin transition layers is not excluded. In the limit of vanishing thickness these layers reduce to discontinuities. Such discontinuities represent shock waves.

Let us apply the general laws of conservation of mass, momentum, and energy to find the unknown quantities: the density ρ_1, and the pressure p_1 in the compressed region, and the propagation velocity of the discontinuity through the undisturbed fluid D. The parameters of the undisturbed gas ρ_0 and p_0 and the piston velocity u (which is equal to the gas velocity) are assumed to be known. A mass of gas equal to $\rho_0 Dt$ contained in a column of unit cross-sectional area is set in motion at the time t. This mass occupies a volume $(D-u)t$, that is, the density of the compressed gas ρ_1 satisfies the condition

$$\rho_1(D-u)t = \rho_0 Dt.$$

The mass $\rho_0 Dt$ acquires a momentum $\rho_0 Dt \cdot u$ which, according to Newton's law, is equal to the impulse due to the pressure forces. The resultant force acting on the compressed gas is equal to the difference between the pressure on the piston side and on the side of the undisturbed fluid, that is,

$$\rho_0 Dut = (p_1 - p_0)t.$$

Finally, the increase in the sum of the internal and kinetic energies of the compressed gas is equal to the work done by the external force acting on the piston, $p_1 ut$,

$$\rho_0 Dt\left(\varepsilon_1 - \varepsilon_0 + \frac{u^2}{2}\right) = p_1 ut.$$

Dividing these equations by t, we obtain a system of three algebraic equations which can be used to express the three unknown quantities p_1, ρ_1, and D in terms of the known quantities u, ρ_0, and p_0 (the thermodynamic relationship $\varepsilon(p, \rho)$ is assumed to be known).

Let us rearrange these equations so that the right-hand sides contain only those quantities pertaining to the region in front of the discontinuity, and the left-hand sides only those quantities pertaining to the region behind the discontinuity. We note that if D is the propagation velocity of the discontinuity through the stationary gas, then $u_0 = -D$ is the velocity at which the undisturbed gas flows into the discontinuity. Likewise, $D-u$ is the propagation velocity of the discontinuity with respect to the gas moving behind it, and $u_1 = -(D-u)$ is the velocity of the gas flowing out of the discontinuity. With this notation we can rewrite the law of conservation of mass as

$$\rho_1 u_1 = \rho_0 u_0 . \tag{1.61}$$

Using (1.61), the law of conservation of momentum takes the form

$$p_1 + \rho_1 u_1^2 = p_0 + \rho_0 u_0^2. \tag{1.62}$$

Using (1.61) and (1.62), the law of conservation of energy becomes

$$\varepsilon_1 + \frac{p_1}{\rho_1} + \frac{u_1^2}{2} = \varepsilon_0 + \frac{p_0}{\rho_0} + \frac{u_0^2}{2}. \tag{1.63}$$

Introducing the specific enthalpy $h = \varepsilon + p/\rho$, we can rewrite this equation as

$$h_1 + \frac{u_1^2}{2} = h_0 + \frac{u_0^2}{2}. \tag{1.64}$$

These equations, expressed above in their simplest form, relate the flow variables at the surface of the discontinuity into which the gas is flowing normal to the surface. It is important to note that these equations do not require any assumptions regarding the properties of the fluid and express only the general laws of conservation of mass, momentum, and energy. Equations (1.61)-(1.63) can also be derived directly by treating the discontinuity in a coordinate system in which it is stationary. Since the discontinuity is infinitesimally thin, no accumulation of mass, momentum, or energy can take place within it. Consequently, the fluxes of these quantities on both sides of the discontinuity are equal. If a gas with density ρ_0 and velocity u_0 flows normally to the surface, then the mass flux or mass flow per unit area per unit time into the discontinuity is equal to $\rho_0 u_0$ and is also equal to the mass flux $\rho_1 u_1$ on the other side of the discontinuity. We thus obtain the result (1.61). The momentum of the mass $\rho_0 u_0$ per unit area per unit time is $\rho_0 u_0 \cdot u_0$. The increase in momentum after passing through the discontinuity $\rho_1 u_1^2 - \rho_0 u_0^2$ is equal to the impulse due to the pressure force per unit time $p_0 - p_1$; or, equivalently, the momentum fluxes $p + \rho u^2$ are equal on each side of the discontinuity (the fact that the quantity $p + \rho u^2$ is the momentum flux density for plane motion is evident from (1.7) and (1.8)). We thus obtain the result (1.62).

The increase in the total (internal and kinetic) energy of the gas flowing per unit area of the discontinuity surface per unit time $\rho_0 u_0[(\varepsilon_1 + \frac{1}{2}u_1^2) - (\varepsilon_0 + \frac{1}{2}u_0^2)]$ is equal to the work done by the pressure forces per unit area of the same surface per unit time. This work is equal to $p_0 u_0 - p_1 u_1$. To clarify the derivation of the latter quantity let us imagine a gas flowing from right to left through a pipe and passing through a discontinuity somewhere in the middle of the

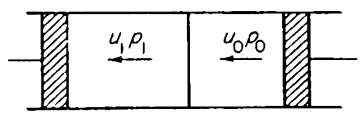


Fig. 1.26. Experiment to clarify the derivation of the work equation.

pipe (Fig. 1.26). Pistons placed at each side of the tube move with velocities u_0 and u_1 in such a manner that the discontinuity surface is at rest. The pressure at the right piston p_0 pushes the gas through the tube, doing the work p_0u_0 per unit time per unit area. The work done by the gas on the left piston is p_1u_1 (the piston "performs" negative work $-p_1u_1$ on the gas). The total work done on the gas is therefore $p_0u_0 - p_1u_1$. Equating the total work to the increase in the gas energy we obtain (1.63). This equation can also be interpreted in a different manner by noting that the total energy fluxes $\rho u(\varepsilon + \frac{1}{2}u^2 + p/\rho)$ are equal on both sides of the discontinuity. (The expression for the energy flux follows from the energy equation written in the form of (1.10).)

Equations (1.61)–(1.63) describing the conservation of mass, momentum, and energy through a discontinuity surface can also be obtained formally from the differential equations (1.2), (1.7), and (1.10). Let us write these equations for the plane case

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial x}(\rho u),$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}(\rho u) = -\frac{\partial}{\partial x}(p + \rho u^2), \tag{1.65}$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\rho\varepsilon + \frac{\rho u^2}{2}\right) = -\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left[\rho u\left(\varepsilon + \frac{u^2}{2} + \frac{p}{\rho}\right)\right].$$

First, we shall formally consider the discontinuity as a thin layer containing large gradients of all parameters and integrate the equations from x_0 to x_1. For example,

$$\int_{x_0}^{x_1} \frac{\partial}{\partial t}(\rho u)\, dx = -\int_{x_0}^{x_1} \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(p + \rho u^2)\, dx.$$

We then take the limit, letting the thickness of the layer $x_1 - x_0$ go to zero. The integrals on the left-hand side are proportional to $x_1 - x_0 \to 0$, and vanish (which corresponds to the absence of mass, momentum, and energy accumulation in the discontinuity). The integrals on the right-hand side give the difference between the various fluxes on each side of the discontinuity, that is, we arrive again at (1.61)–(1.63).

We should emphasize the formal nature of the last derivation of (1.61)–(1.63). This formalism indicates only that the expressions for the mass, momentum, and energy fluxes under the divergence signs in the differential equations are entirely general, regardless of whether the flow is continuous or not. If we consider the discontinuity not as a mathematical surface, but as a thin

layer of finite thickness where the flow variables change exceedingly sharply, but continuously, we can no longer apply equations (1.65), which do not take either viscosity or heat conduction into account. It will be shown later that the entropy of the gas on each side of the discontinuity is different, while the differential equations (1.65) are subject to the condition that the entropy is constant along streamlines (the flow is adiabatic). We note the outward similarity of the energy equation at the shock discontinuity (1.64) and the Bernoulli equation for steady flow

$$h + \frac{u^2}{2} = const,$$

which holds along streamlines.

§14. Hugoniot curves*

Equations (1.61)–(1.63) relating the flow variables on each side of the discontinuity form a system of three algebraic equations with six variables u_0, ρ_0, p_0, u_1, ρ_1, and p_1. It is assumed that the thermodynamic properties of the fluid (the function $\varepsilon(p, \rho)$ or $h(p, \rho)$) are known. Knowing the thermodynamic properties of the gas ahead of the discontinuity ρ_0, p_0 and assuming that the value of a parameter describing the strength of the shock wave is known (for example, the pressure behind the wave front p_1 or the velocity of the "piston" creating the wave $|u| = u_0 - u_1$), we can calculate all the remaining variables. Let us derive some general relationships which follow from the conservation laws (1.61)–(1.63). In place of density we introduce the specific volumes $V_0 = 1/\rho_0$ and $V_1 = 1/\rho_1$. From (1.61), we obtain

$$\frac{V_0}{V_1} = \frac{u_0}{u_1}. \tag{1.66}$$

Eliminating the velocities u_0 and u_1 from (1.61)–(1.62), we find

$$u_0^2 = V_0^2 \frac{p_1 - p_0}{V_0 - V_1}, \tag{1.67}$$

$$u_1^2 = V_1^2 \frac{p_1 - p_0}{V_0 - V_1}. \tag{1.68}$$

If the shock wave is created in the undisturbed gas by the motion of a piston, we obtain the following equation for the flow velocity of the compressed gas (equal to the "piston" velocity) with respect to the undisturbed gas:

$$|u| = u_0 - u_1 = [(p_1 - p_0)(V_0 - V_1)]^{1/2}. \tag{1.69}$$

* *Editors' note.* Termed shock adiabatics by the authors.

We note here a useful formula for the difference between the kinetic energy of the gas on each side of the discontinuity in a coordinate system in which the shock is at rest

$$\tfrac{1}{2}(u_0^2 - u_1^2) = \tfrac{1}{2}(p_1 - p_0)(V_0 + V_1). \tag{1.70}$$

Substituting (1.67) and (1.68) into the energy equation (1.63) we obtain a relationship between the pressure and the specific volume on each side of the discontinuity

$$\varepsilon_1(p_1, V_1) - \varepsilon_0(p_0, V_0) = \tfrac{1}{2}(p_1 + p_0)(V_0 - V_1). \tag{1.71}$$

Replacing the specific internal energies by the specific enthalpies according to the definition $h = \varepsilon + pV$, we can rewrite (1.71) as

$$h_1 - h_0 = \tfrac{1}{2}(p_1 - p_0)(V_0 + V_1). \tag{1.72}$$

By analogy with the equation relating the initial and final pressures and volumes during adiabatic compression of a fluid, relation (1.71) or its equivalent (1.72) is termed the shock adiabatic or the Hugoniot relation. The Hugoniot curve is represented by the function

$$p_1 = H(V_1, p_0, V_0), \tag{1.73}$$

which in many practical cases, when the thermodynamic function $\varepsilon = \varepsilon(p, V)$ has a simple form, can be found in an explicit form.

Hugoniot curves differ appreciably from ordinary isentropes* or isentropic adiabatics. While the ordinary isentrope belongs to a one-parameter family of curves $p = P(V, S)$, where the only parameter is the entropy S, the Hugoniot curve is a function of two parameters, the initial pressure p_0 and volume V_0. In order to cover all the curves $p = P(V, S)$ it is sufficient to traverse a one-dimensional series of values of the entropy S. In order to cover all the curves $p = H(V, p_0, V_0)$ it is necessary to construct an "infinity squared" of curves corresponding to all possible values of p_0 and V_0.

§15. Shock waves in a perfect gas with constant specific heats

The shock wave equations for a perfect gas with constant specific heats are particularly simple. It is convenient to use this case to explain all the basic qualitative relationships governing the changes in the variables across a shock wave. Let us substitute the following relationships into the Hugoniot relations (1.71) and (1.72):

$$\varepsilon = c_v T = \frac{1}{\gamma - 1} pV\,; \qquad h = c_p T = \frac{\gamma}{\gamma - 1} pV. \tag{1.74}$$

* *Editors' note.* Termed Poisson's adiabatics by the authors.

We can now obtain the equation of the Hugoniot curve in the explicit form

$$\frac{p_1}{p_0} = \frac{(\gamma+1)V_0 - (\gamma-1)V_1}{(\gamma+1)V_1 - (\gamma-1)V_0} \tag{1.75}$$

from which the specific volume ratio is given by

$$\frac{V_1}{V_0} = \frac{(\gamma-1)p_1 + (\gamma+1)p_0}{(\gamma+1)p_1 + (\gamma-1)p_0}. \tag{1.76}$$

The temperature ratio follows from

$$\frac{T_1}{T_0} = \frac{p_1 V_1}{p_0 V_0}. \tag{1.77}$$

Using (1.76) we can express the velocities in the formulas (1.67) and (1.68) as a function of the pressures and the initial volume

$$u_0^2 = \frac{V_0}{2}[(\gamma-1)p_0 + (\gamma+1)p_1], \tag{1.78}$$

$$u_1^2 = \frac{V_0}{2}\frac{[(\gamma+1)p_0 + (\gamma-1)p_1]^2}{[(\gamma-1)p_0 + (\gamma+1)p_1]}. \tag{1.79}$$

Considering a perfect gas with constant specific heats as an example, we can clarify certain relationships governing the behavior of shock waves. The Hugoniot curve is a curve on the p, V diagram passing through the initial state p_0, V_0. This curve is shown in Fig. 1.27. In principle, (1.75) can be also

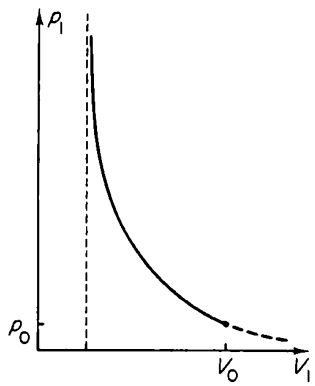


Fig. 1.27. Hugoniot curve.

extended to pressures lower than the initial pressure $p_1 < p_0$. As we shall see in §17, this part of the curve corresponds to physically unattainable states. Hence, it is sketched in Fig. 1.27 by a dashed line. It is evident from (1.76) that the density ratio across a very strong shock wave, where the pressure behind the wave front is much higher than the initial pressure, does not

increase with increasing strength indefinitely, but approaches a certain finite value. This limiting density or volume ratio across the shock wave is a function of the specific heat ratio only, and is equal to

$$\frac{\rho_1}{\rho_0} = \frac{V_0}{V_1} = \frac{\gamma+1}{\gamma-1}. \tag{1.80}$$

The limiting density ratio for a monatomic gas with $\gamma = 5/3$ is equal to 4. For a diatomic gas $\gamma = 7/5$ (assuming that the vibrational modes have not been excited) and the limiting density ratio is 6; if, on the other hand, full vibrational excitation is assumed, then $\gamma = 9/7$ and the density ratio is 8. In reality, at high temperatures and pressures, the specific heats and the specific heat ratio are no longer constant because of molecular dissociation and of ionization. Hugoniot curves taking these processes into account will be considered in Chapter III. Even in this case, however, the density ratio remains finite and does not increase without limit; generally it does not exceed 11–13. The increase in density across a shock wave in a perfect gas with a high pressure ratio is greater the higher are the specific heats and the lower is the specific heat ratio.

At high pressures p_1 the density increases very slowly with increasing pressure and consequently the increase in temperature of the compressed gas is proportional to the pressure (see (1.77) for $V_1 \approx const$). In the limit of a strong shock, when $p_1/p_0 \gg 1$, and $V_1/V_0 \approx (\gamma - 1)/(\gamma + 1)$,

$$\frac{T_1}{T_0} = \frac{\gamma - 1}{\gamma + 1}\frac{p_1}{p_0}. \tag{1.81}$$

In the limit, as $p_1/p_0 \to \infty$ the velocities increase as the square root of the pressure. Equations (1.67) and (1.68) show that for $p_1 \gg p_0$

$$u_0 = \left(\frac{\gamma + 1}{2} p_1 V_0\right)^{1/2}, \qquad u_1 = \left(\frac{(\gamma - 1)^2}{2(\gamma + 1)} p_1 V_0\right)^{1/2}. \tag{1.82}$$

Important results are obtained by comparing the gas velocities on both sides of the discontinuity with the corresponding speeds of sound. In a perfect gas with constant specific heats

$$c^2 = \left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial \rho}\right)_s = \gamma \frac{p}{\rho} = \gamma p V.$$

The gas velocities with respect to the discontinuity divided by the speed of sound are then given by

$$\left(\frac{u_0}{c_0}\right)^2 = \frac{(\gamma - 1) + (\gamma + 1)p_1/p_0}{2\gamma}, \tag{1.83}$$

$$\left(\frac{u_1}{c_1}\right)^2 = \frac{(\gamma - 1) + (\gamma + 1)p_0/p_1}{2\gamma}. \tag{1.84}$$

In the limiting case of a weak shock wave the pressures on both sides of the discontinuity are close to each other, so that $p_1 \approx p_0$, $(p_1 - p_0)/p_0 \ll 1$. From (1.76) the density increase is also small, so that $V_1 \approx V_0$, and the sound speeds are almost equal, so that $c_1 \approx c_0$. It becomes obvious from (1.83) and (1.84) that in this case $u_0 \approx c_0 \approx c_1 \approx u_1$. However u_0 is the propagation velocity of the discontinuity through the undisturbed gas. Therefore, a weak shock wave travels through the gas with a velocity which is very close to the speed of sound; thus, the weak shock wave is practically the same as an acoustic compression wave. This is not surprising since the difference between p_1 and p_0 is small; we are dealing with a small disturbance.

Equations (1.83) and (1.84) also show that with a shock wave, across which the gas is compressed ($V_1 < V_0$, $p_1 > p_0$), the gas flows into the discontinuity with a supersonic velocity $u_0 > c_0$ and flows out with a subsonic velocity $u_1 < c_1$. The fact that $V_1 < V_0$, $\rho_1 > \rho_0$ for $p_1 > p_0$ follows from the general relations (1.67) and (1.68). We can formulate this statement in a different manner: The shock wave propagates at a supersonic velocity with respect to the undisturbed gas and at a subsonic velocity with respect to the compressed gas behind it. The stronger is the shock wave (i.e., the larger is the ratio p_1/p_0), the higher is the velocity of the wave front u_0 in comparison with the speed of sound c_0 in the undisturbed gas. On the other hand, in the limiting case of a strong shock ($p_1 \gg p_0$) the ratio u_1/c_1 approaches a constant value, $u_1/c_1 \to [(\gamma - 1)/2\gamma]^{1/2} < 1$.

Let us examine what happens to the entropy of a gas compressed by a shock wave. To within an arbitrary constant the entropy of a perfect gas with constant specific heats is given by $S = c_v \ln pV^\gamma$. The difference between the entropy on each side of the shock front, as derived from (1.76), is

$$S_1 - S_0 = c_v \ln \frac{p_1 V_1^\gamma}{p_0 V_0^\gamma} = c_v \ln \left\{ \frac{p_1}{p_0} \left[\frac{(\gamma - 1)(p_1/p_0) + (\gamma + 1)}{(\gamma + 1)(p_1/p_0) + (\gamma - 1)} \right]^\gamma \right\}. \tag{1.85}$$

In the limiting case of a weak wave ($p_1 \approx p_0$) the expression in braces is close to unity and $S_1 \approx S_0$. As the strength of the wave increases, that is, as the ratio p_1/p_0 increases beyond unity, the expression in braces increases monotonically, and, as can be easily verified, approaches infinity as $p_1/p_0 \to \infty$. Thus, the entropy jump of a gas compressed by a shock increases with the strength of the shock wave. The increase in entropy indicates that irreversible dissipative processes (which can be traced to the presence of viscosity and heat conduction in the fluid) occur in the shock wave. A theory that does not take into account these processes is not capable of describing either the mechanism

of shock compression or the structure of the very thin but finite layer where the gas undergoes a transition from the initial to the final state. Indeed, such a theory formally represents a shock discontinuity as a mathematical surface of zero thickness. As previously noted, this theory does not include any characteristic length that could serve as a scale for the thickness of the discontinuity. This scale appears when the molecular structure of the gas, in terms of the viscosity and thermal conductivity, is taken into account. It is the molecular mean free path, which is proportional to the viscosity and the thermal conductivity, which serves as a measure of the width of the discontinuity. It is significant, however, that the entropy increase across a compression shock is entirely independent of the dissipative mechanism and is defined exclusively by the conservation laws of mass, momentum, and energy. Only the thickness of the discontinuity, which depends upon the rate of the irreversible heating of the gas experiencing the shock compression, depends on the dissipative mechanism. Analogously, a glass of hot water will invariably cool to a given room temperature, independently of the mechanism of heat exchange with the surrounding medium, while the mechanism determines only the rate of cooling.

The dissipative mechanism controls only the values of the gradients of the flow variables in the transition layer, but does not affect the jumps in these quantities between the initial and the final states. These changes are determined solely by the conservation laws. For example, if $\Delta p = p_1 - p_0$ is the pressure jump across the shock wave and Δx is the thickness of the transition layer, then Δx and $dp/dx \sim \Delta p/\Delta x$ change with both the viscosity and the thermal conductivity, while the product $\Delta x\, dp/dx \approx \Delta p$ remains unchanged. In the limit, when the coefficients of viscosity and thermal conductivity tend to zero, $\Delta x \to 0$ and $dp/dx \sim 1/\Delta x \to \infty$, so that the gradients become infinite corresponding to a discontinuity.

The gasdynamic equations which do not take into account either viscosity or thermal conductivity admit the existence of discontinuities, but are not capable of describing the continuous transition from the initial to the final state. These equations are based on the assumption that the process is adiabatic, that $DS/Dt = 0$, which is equivalent to the energy equation. The gasdynamic equations describe four conservation laws: conservation of mass, momentum, energy, and entropy. Only the first three of these equations, but not the entropy equation, are satisfied across the discontinuity.

We shall return to the problem of the thickness of a shock front in §23. This problem can be solved only when the molecular structure of the fluid is taken into account, that is, the shock compression process is subjected to a careful "microscopic" examination. At present, we shall continue the "macroscopic" description of the shock compression phenomena based on the conservation laws of mass, momentum, and energy.

§16. Geometric interpretation of the laws governing compression shocks

The p, V diagram is very useful for clarifying the theoretical relations governing shock waves and the properties of Hugoniot curves. A Hugoniot curve HH(Fig. 1.28) is drawn through the point A on the p, V plane. This

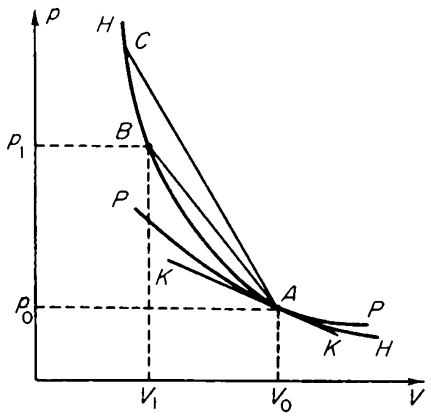


Fig. 1.28. A p, V diagram. HH is a Hugoniot curve, PP is an isentrope, and KK is a tangent to both the Hugoniot and isentrope at the initial state represented by the point $A(V_0, p_0)$.

point denotes the initial state of the fluid p_0, V_0. We assume that the character of this curve is similar to the Hugoniot curve for a perfect gas with constant specific heats, that is, the curve is everywhere convex downward, the second derivative d^2p/dV^2 being positive at all points. For clarity we shall illustrate some statements by specific calculations using a perfect gas with constant specific heats as an example. It can be shown, however, that the nature of the behavior is quite general and applicable to fluids with other thermodynamic properties. The only imposed condition is that the Hugoniot curve must be convex downward.

Let the fluid be transformed by the shock compression from the state $A(p_0, V_0)$ to a state $B(p_1, V_1)$ represented by the point B on the Hugoniot curve. According to (1.67), the propagation velocity of a shock wave through the undisturbed fluid is given by

$$D^2 = u_0^2 = V_0^2 \frac{p_1 - p_0}{V_0 - V_1}.$$

This velocity can be determined graphically from the slope $((p_1 - p_0)/(V_0 - V_1))$ of the straight line AB, drawn between the initial and the final states. It is clear from Fig. 1.28 that the higher the final pressure (the stronger the shock wave), the larger the slope and the higher the wave velocity. Two straight lines AB and AC are shown in Fig. 1.28 to illustrate the above statement.

Let us examine what determines the initial slope of the Hugoniot curve at the point A. We calculate the derivative dp_1/dV_1 from formula (1.75) for a

perfect gas with constant specific heats

$$\frac{dp_1}{dV_1} = -\frac{(\gamma-1)p_0}{(\gamma+1)V_1-(\gamma-1)V_0} - \frac{p_0[(\gamma+1)V_0-(\gamma-1)V_1](\gamma+1)}{[(\gamma+1)V_1-(\gamma-1)V_0]^2}.$$

Evaluating the derivative at the point A by setting $V_1 = V_0$, we obtain $(dp_1/dV_1)_0 = -\gamma p_0/V_0$. This quantity is simply the slope of the isentrope $p \sim V^{-\gamma}$ passing through the point A, since $(\partial p/\partial V)_S = -\gamma p/V$. Thus, the Hugoniot curve is tangent to the isentrope at the point A. The ordinary isentropic curve PP corresponding to the initial entropy of the gas $S_0 = S(p_0, V_0)$ is also shown in Fig. 1.28. The tangency of the Hugoniot curve and the isentrope at the initial point is also illustrated by the general equation (1.67) for the shock wave velocity. In the limit of a weak shock, when $(p_1 - p_0)/p_0 \to 0$, the shock wave is the same as a sound wave; the entropy change approaches zero and the wave velocity coincides with the speed of sound

$$D^2 = V_0^2\frac{p_1-p_0}{V_0-V_1} \quad \to \quad -V_0^2\left(\frac{\Delta p}{\Delta V}\right)_S \quad \to \quad c_0^2.$$

Generally, however, the slope of the straight line AB is always greater than the slope of the tangent to the Hugoniot curve at the point A, so that we always have $D = u_0 > c_0$.

The initial slope of the Hugoniot curve is determined by the speed of sound in the initial state. This will be proven rigorously for the general case of an arbitrary fluid in §18. Direct calculation using the formulas for a perfect gas with constant specific heats shows that not only the first, but also the second derivatives of the Hugoniot and isentropic curves coincide at the point A, that there is a second-order tangency at this point. This result is also one of a general nature (see §18).

As indicated in Fig. 1.28, the Hugoniot curve always passes above the ordinary isentrope emanating from the initial point. Indeed, the entropy increases during the shock compression from the volume V_0 to the volume $V_1 < V_0$, while, of course, it remains constant during the isentropic compression. With the volume fixed, the pressure increases with increasing entropy*.

Equation (1.71) for the Hugoniot curve shows that the increase in the specific internal energy $\varepsilon_1 - \varepsilon_0$ during the shock compression from the state A to the state B is numerically equal to the area of the trapezoid $MABN$, shaded horizontally in Fig. 1.29. If the gas is compressed isentropically from state A to a volume V_1 (state Q) then the work performed is numerically equal to the area $MAQN$ (shaded vertically) bounded by the ordinary isen-

* *Editors' note.* In applying this reasoning to a fluid with a general equation of state, we must assume the coefficient of thermal expansion at constant pressure $V^{-1}(\partial V/\partial T)_p$ is positive.

trope P on the top and by the V axis on the bottom (Fig. 1.29). This area also gives the increase in the internal energy of the gas $\varepsilon' - \varepsilon_0 = -\int_{V_0}^{V_1} p\,dV$ (the integration is performed for $S = S_0$). In order to bring the gas to the final state B it is necessary to heat it at constant volume V_1, transferring an amount of heat numerically equal to the difference between the horizontally and vertically shaded areas, that is, to the area ABQ. The latter area also determines the entropy increase of the gas due to the shock compression. The area is equal to $\varepsilon_1 - \varepsilon' = \int_{S_0}^{S_1} T\,dS = \overline{T}(S_1 - S_0)$, where $\overline{T}$ is a certain average temperature lying in the segment QB (at $V = V_1 = const$).

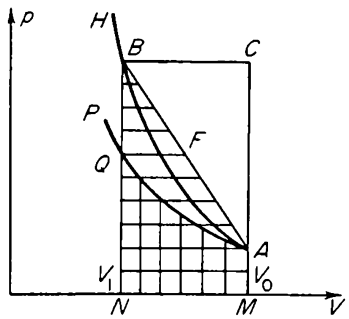


Fig. 1.29. Geometrical interpretation of the energy increase across a shock wave. H is the Hugoniot curve and P is the corresponding isentrope.

In a coordinate system where the gas is initially at rest, the kinetic energy per unit mass acquired by the gas from the compression is equal to

$$\frac{u^2}{2} = \frac{(u_0 - u_1)^2}{2} = \tfrac{1}{2}(p_1 - p_0)(V_0 - V_1).$$

This energy is numerically equal to the area of the triangle ABC in Fig. 1.29, which is the complement of the trapezoid $MABN$ (whose area corresponds to $\varepsilon_1 - \varepsilon_0$) with respect to the rectangle $MCBN$. The area of this rectangle, $p_1(V_0 - V_1)$, represents the total energy transmitted by the "piston" to a unit mass of gas initially at rest. Across a strong shock wave, where $p_1 \gg p_0$, this energy is divided equally between the increase in the internal energy and the increase in the kinetic energy, and the area $MABN$ is approximately equal to the area ABC:

$$\varepsilon_1 - \varepsilon_0 \approx \frac{u^2}{2} \approx \tfrac{1}{2}p_1(V_1 - V_0).$$

Using the p, V diagram let us examine the relationship between the gas velocity and the speed of sound in the final state (Fig. 1.30). On the Hugoniot curve H_A (corresponding to the initial state A) we draw a new Hugoniot curve H_B through point B, where the point B is the initial point of this new curve. The symmetry of the equation for the Hugoniot curve with respect

to the permutation of the subscripts "0" and "1" shows that if $p_1 = H(V_1, p_0, V_0)$ then $p_0 = H(V_0, p_1, V_1)$. In other words, the Hugoniot curve H_B formally extended in the direction of decreasing pressure intersects the Hugoniot curve H_A at the point A. The relative location of the Hugoniot curves H_A and H_B is as shown in Fig. 1.30, and this relationship can be easily checked

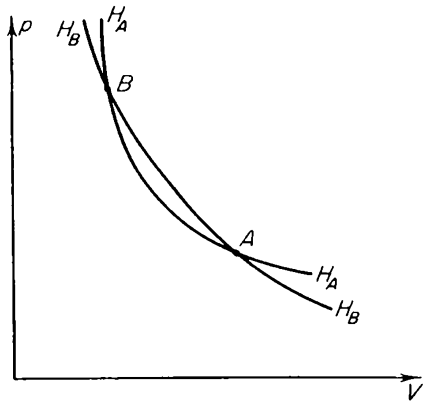


Fig. 1.30. A p, V diagram, illustrating the relationship between the gas velocity and the speed of sound in a shock wave.

using the example of a perfect gas with constant specific heats*. The propagation speed of the wave with respect to the compressed gas is determined by (1.68),

$$u_1^2 = V_1^2 \frac{p_1 - p_0}{V_0 - V_1}.$$

The square of the speed of sound in the compressed gas at the point B is

$$c_1^2 = -V_1^2 \left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial V}\right)_S.$$

The first of these quantities is proportional to the slope of the line BA, and the second to the slope of the Hugoniot curve H_B at the point B (the Hugoniot curve H_B and the isentrope passing through B are tangent). The relative positions of the line BA and the Hugoniot curve H_B correspond to the fact that $u_1 < c_1$.

* The fact that the Hugoniot curve H_B passes to the left of H_A at pressures higher than p_B can be explained as follows: If point B corresponds to compression of the gas from the state A by a very strong shock wave, then the Hugoniot curve H_A becomes almost vertical for $p > p_B$, corresponding to the limiting compression with the volume $[(\gamma - 1)/(\gamma + 1)]V_A$. At the same time, a second shock wave passing through the gas in the state B can cause a compression to the volume

$$\frac{\gamma - 1}{\gamma + 1} V_B = \left(\frac{\gamma - 1}{\gamma + 1}\right)^2 V_A.$$

It was noted at the end of §12 that the Hugoniot curve in contrast to the isentrope is a function of two parameters. By virtue of this fact it is impossible to reach the same final state by compressing the gas by means of several shock waves as is reached by compression with a single shock wave, assuming that both processes start from the same initial state. For example, a strong shock wave propagating through a monatomic gas will yield a density ratio of 4, while two successive strong shock waves will result in a density ratio of 16 with the final pressure remaining the same. At the same time, however, if the final pressure is maintained the same, the same density will be obtained regardless of the number of individual stages of an isentropic process. This

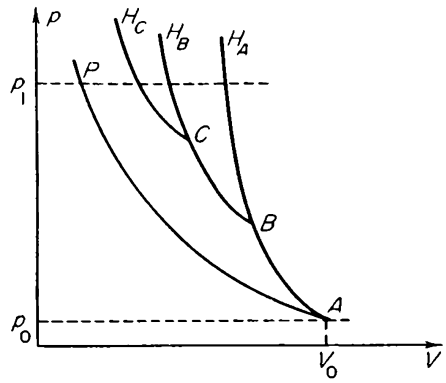


Fig. 1.31. Single and multiple shock and isentropic compression of a gas to the same final pressure p_1. H_A, H_B, and H_C are Hugoniot curves with the initial states A, B, and C, respectively. P is an isentrope.

situation is illustrated on the p, V diagram of Fig. 1.31, in which are shown an isentrope and several Hugoniot curves corresponding to the compression of a gas by successive shock waves.

§17. Impossibility of rarefaction shock waves in a fluid with normal thermodynamic properties

In §15 we presented the equations relating the various flow quantities across a shock wave for the case of a perfect gas with constant specific heats. These equations show that the following inequalities are satisfied across a compression shock wave:

$$p_1 > p_0, \quad \rho_1 > \rho_0, \quad V_1 < V_0, \quad u_0 > c_0, \quad u_1 < c_1, \quad S_1 > S_0. \tag{1.86}$$

The entropy of the fluid increases along with the increase in pressure and density; the wave travels with respect to the undisturbed gas with a supersonic velocity, and with respect to the compressed gas behind it with a subsonic velocity. This situation is represented schematically in Fig. 1.32a.

Let us now extend the relations (1.75) for the Hugoniot curve to include

pressures lower than the initial pressure, and let us assume the existence of discontinuities in which an expansion of the gas occurs rather than a compression, with $V_1 > V_0$, $p_1 < p_0$. The conservation laws of mass, momentum, and energy used to derive the equations relating velocities, densities, and pressures on both sides of the discontinuity do not in any way exclude the

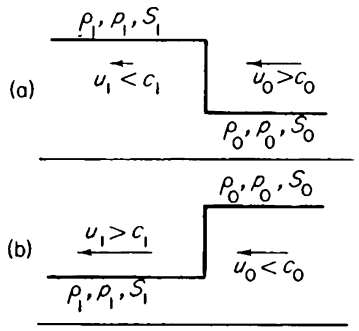


Fig. 1.32. Schematic representation of (a) compression and (b) rarefaction shock waves. The gas flows into the discontinuity from right to left.

possibility of the existence of such discontinuities. It is evident from (1.83) and (1.84) that in this case $u_0 < c_0$, and $u_1 > c_1$. Equation (1.85) for the entropy jump across the discontinuity shows that the entropy of the gas decreases (the expression in braces is less than unity for $p_1 < p_0$). Thus, we arrive at a rarefaction shock wave, where the following inequalities are simultaneously satisfied:

$$p_1 < p_0, \quad \rho_1 < \rho_0, \quad V_1 > V_0, \quad u_0 < c_0, \quad u_1 > c_1, \quad S_1 < S_0. \tag{1.87}$$

This situation is depicted in Fig. 1.32b.

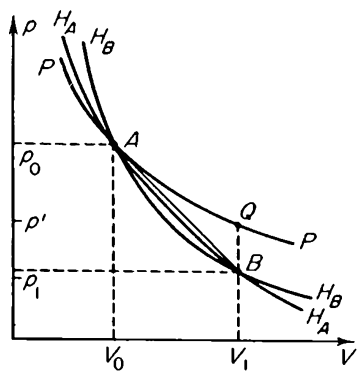


Fig. 1.33. Geometric interpretation of inequalities in a "rarefaction shock wave". H_A is the Hugoniot curve, P is the isentrope passing through the initial state A, and H_B is the Hugoniot curve drawn from the final state B.

The geometric interpretation of these inequalities is similar to that presented in §16 and is shown in Fig. 1.33. The slope of the line AB is less than the slope of the Hugoniot curve H_A at the initial state A ($u_0 < c_0$) and greater than

the slope of the second Hugoniot curve H_B in the final state B ($u_1 > c_1$). The isentrope P passing through the point A in the region $p_1 < p_0$ lies above the Hugoniot curve H_A, thus explaining the decrease in entropy across a rarefaction shock. For an isentropic expansion to the same volume V_1, the pressure p' is higher than the final pressure p_1. In order to arrive at B from Q it is necessary to cool the gas at a constant volume, and thus to decrease its entropy.

According to the second law of thermodynamics the entropy of a substance cannot be decreased by internal processes alone, without the transfer of heat to an external medium. This shows that it is impossible for a rarefaction wave to propagate in the form of a discontinuity. Therefore, the requirement that the entropy must increase permits only one of the two possibilities permitted by the conservation laws of mass, momentum, and energy—the compression shock wave. This statement is quite general*. In the next section we shall show that in a weak wave, when the second derivative $(\partial^2 p/\partial V^2)_S > 0$, the inequalities (1.86) or (1.87) are satisfied independently of the thermodynamic properties of the fluid. The validity of this statement for strong waves and for an arbitrary fluid can also be proved. The only condition imposed on the fluid properties is that the Hugoniot curve must be convex downward at all points, that $(d^2p/dV^2)_H > 0$, in the same manner as for a perfect gas with constant specific heats. Indeed, the overwhelming majority of real fluids possess such properties, and therefore the statement regarding the impossibility of the existence of rarefaction shock waves is quite general (certain exceptions will be discussed below).

The impossibility of the existence of a rarefaction shock wave can be explained as follows. Such a wave would propagate through the undisturbed gas with the subsonic velocity $u_0 < c_0$. This means that if a situation similar to that depicted in Fig. 1.32b should arise at any instant of time, any disturbances induced by the density and pressure jumps will begin to travel to the right with the speed of sound c_0, and will outrun the "shock wave". After a certain time the rarefaction region will include the gas in front of the "discontinuity", and the discontinuity will simply disappear. In other words, a rarefaction shock wave is mechanically unstable. Conversely, a compression shock wave propagates through the undisturbed gas at the supersonic speed $u_0 > c_0$; the state behind the wave front can in no way affect the state of the gas ahead of the wave and the discontinuity remains stable.

The compression shock wave is propagated with respect to the compressed gas with a subsonic velocity $u_1 < c_1$, and therefore conditions behind the shock front do affect the strength of the wave. If the gas behind the wave front is either heated or compressed, then the shock wave will be strengthened

* *Editors' note.* Referred to by the authors as Champlain's theorem.

and, conversely, if the gas behind the shock front is either cooled or expanded, then rarefaction disturbances will overtake the shock wave and weaken it. In a rarefaction shock wave the situation would have been exactly opposite: since the rarefaction wave would be propagated through an expanded gas with supersonic velocity, it would not be influenced by any processes occurring behind it, that is, the wave would be "uncontrollable".

It is quite significant that the condition of mechanical stability for a shock wave corresponds with the thermodynamic condition of increasing entropy. Mechanical stability can be present only when the wave is propagated through the undisturbed fluid with supersonic speed, otherwise disturbances induced by the shock wave would penetrate the initial gas at the speed of sound, overtake the shock wave, and thus "wash out" the sharp wave front. The condition of an increase in entropy agrees also with our interpretation of the causality of the phenomena. Namely, with an entropy increase, the compression shock wave propagates through the disturbed gas with a subsonic speed, that is, external factors, such as a piston pushed into the gas, can induce the appearance of a shock wave and subsequently influence its propagation.

Compression shock waves, which correspond to an entropy increase in a fluid with normal thermodynamic properties where $(\partial^2 p/\partial V^2)_S > 0$, turn out to be mechanically stable and affected by external actions. The existence of a rarefaction shock wave is impossible from the points of view of both thermodynamics and stability, and a steep rarefaction front, had such been induced,

Table 1.1

ATTAINABLE STATES BY MEANS OF COMPRESSION AND RAREFACTION WAVES FOR NORMAL FLUIDS

	Compression wave	Rarefaction wave
Discontinuity	Possible; entropy increases; mechanically stable	Impossible; entropy decreases; mechanically unstable
Smooth distribution	Impossible[a]; unlimited increase in the steepness of the wave front with the final result of "overshooting"	Possible; the distribution becomes increasingly smoother with time

[a] *Editors' note.* In the sense of a condition valid for all time.

would disappear with time. In concluding this section we present in Table 1.1 the possibilities of attaining different states through compression and rarefaction waves.

§18. Weak shock waves

Let us consider a weak shock wave, where the jumps in the flow variables can be regarded as small quantities. We shall refrain temporarily from making any assumptions regarding the thermodynamic properties of the fluid and base our discussion upon the conservation laws. Considering the internal energy to be a function of entropy and specific volume, we describe the energy increase in the shock wave as an expansion in terms of small changes in the independent variables with respect to the initial state

$$\varepsilon_1 - \varepsilon_0 = \left(\frac{\partial \varepsilon}{\partial S}\right)_V (S_1 - S_0) + \left(\frac{\partial \varepsilon}{\partial V}\right)_S (V_1 - V_0) + \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\partial^2 \varepsilon}{\partial V^2}\right)_S (V_1 - V_0)^2 + \frac{1}{6}\left(\frac{\partial^3 \varepsilon}{\partial V^3}\right)_S (V_1 - V_0)^3.$$

All derivatives in this expansion are evaluated at the initial state V_0, S_0. By regarding $V_1 - V_0$ as a small quantity of first order, we shall shortly see that $S_1 - S_0$ is a small quantity of third order. Thus in restricting the expansion for the internal energy to third-order quantities, we can drop terms proportional to $(S_1 - S_0)(V_1 - V_0)$, $(S_1 - S_0)^2$, etc.

According to the thermodynamic identity $d\varepsilon = T\,dS - p\,dV$,

$$\left(\frac{\partial \varepsilon}{\partial S}\right)_V = T, \qquad \left(\frac{\partial \varepsilon}{\partial V}\right)_S = -p.$$

Hence,

$$\varepsilon_1 - \varepsilon_0 = T_0(S_1 - S_0) - p_0(V_1 - V_0) - \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial V}\right)_S (V_1 - V_0)^2 - \frac{1}{6}\left(\frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial V^2}\right)_S (V_1 - V_0)^3.$$

We substitute this expression into the Hugoniot equation (1.71) and expand the pressure p_1 on the right-hand side in powers of $(V_1 - V_0)$. Since the left-hand side of the equation is expanded up to quantities of third order, it is sufficient to restrict the expansion of the pressure terms to second-order terms and to neglect the term containing the entropy increase. The latter will yield on the right-hand side a term proportional to $(S_1 - S_0)(V_1 - V_0)$, which is of higher order than $(V_1 - V_0)^3$. We obtain

$$p_1 = p_0 + \left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial V}\right)_S (V_1 - V_0) + \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial V^2}\right)_S (V_1 - V_0)^2.$$

Substituting into (1.71) and simplifying we obtain for the relationship between

the entropy and volume changes

$$T_0(S_1 - S_0) = \frac{1}{12}\left(\frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial V^2}\right)_S (V_0 - V_1)^3. \tag{1.88}$$

If we start with the Hugoniot equation in the form (1.72), where the internal energy has been replaced by the enthalpy, we similarly get

$$T_0(S_1 - S_0) = \frac{1}{12}\left(\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial p^2}\right)_S (p_1 - p_0)^3. \tag{1.89}$$

The identity of these two equations can be easily shown by substituting the expansion $(p_1 - p_0) = (\partial p/\partial V)_S(V_1 - V_0)$ into (1.89) and noting that

$$\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial p^2} = \frac{\partial}{\partial p}\frac{\partial V}{\partial p} = \frac{\partial}{\partial p}\left(\frac{1}{\partial p/\partial V}\right) = \frac{1}{\partial p/\partial V}\frac{\partial}{\partial V}\left(\frac{1}{\partial p/\partial V}\right) = -\left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial V}\right)^{-3}\left(\frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial V^2}\right).$$

Equations (1.88) and (1.89) show that the entropy increase in a weak shock wave is a small quantity of third order with respect to the differences $p_1 - p_0$ or $V_0 - V_1$, which characterize the strength of the wave. It is obvious from (1.88) and (1.89) that the sign of the entropy increase in a shock wave is determined by the sign of the second derivatives $(\partial^2 p/\partial V^2)_S$ or $(\partial^2 V/\partial p^2)_S$. If the isentropic compressibility of the fluid $-(\partial V/\partial p)_S$ decreases with pressure, that is, $(\partial^2 V/\partial p^2)_S > 0$ and $(\partial^2 p/\partial V^2)_S > 0$, then the ordinary isentrope is convex downward in the p, V plane (as in the case of a perfect gas with constant specific heats). In this case, when $p_1 > p_0$ and $V_1 < V_0$ the entropy increases $(S_1 > S_0)$ in a compression shock wave and decreases in a rarefaction shock wave. If, however, $(\partial^2 V/\partial p^2)_S < 0$ or $(\partial^2 p/\partial V^2)_S < 0$, then the opposite is true, that is, when $p_1 < p_0$ and $V_1 > V_0$ the entropy increases in a rarefaction shock wave and decreases in a compression shock wave. Since for the overwhelming majority of real fluids $(\partial^2 V/\partial p^2)_S > 0$, the impossibility of the existence of rarefaction shock waves follows from the impossibility of an entropy decrease. This postulate has already been formulated above and demonstrated for a perfect gas with constant specific heats.

Let us expand the pressure $p = p(S, V)$ about the initial point S_0, V_0 up to third order in $V_1 - V_0$ and first order in $S_1 - S_0$

$$p_1 - p_0 = \left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial V}\right)_S (V_1 - V_0) + \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial V^2}\right)_S (V_1 - V_0)^2 + \frac{1}{6}\left(\frac{\partial^3 p}{\partial V^3}\right)_S (V_1 - V_0)^3 + \left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial S}\right)_V (S_1 - S_0).$$

We shall use this expansion to describe the initial segments of the Hugoniot

and isentropic curves passing through the point S_0, V_0. The terms of first and second order in $V_1 - V_0$ of both curves coincide, that is, the shock and ordinary isentrope have common tangents and common centers of curvature at the initial point (second-order tangency or osculation). The third-order terms are different for both curves. The third term on the right-hand side of the expansion is common to both curves. The fourth and last term disappears for the ordinary isentrope, since $S_1 - S_0 = 0$ ($S = const$), while according to (1.88), for the Hugoniot curve it is equal to

$$\left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial S}\right)_V (S_1 - S_0) = -\frac{1}{12T_0}\left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial S}\right)_V \left(\frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial V^2}\right)_S (V_1 - V_0)^3.$$

The pressure of all normal fluids* increases with entropy at constant volume (during heating at constant volume), that is, $(\partial p/\partial S)_V > 0$ and $(\partial^2 p/\partial V^2)_S$ is also positive. Consequently, the last term is negative when $V_1 > V_0$, and positive when $V_1 < V_0$; when $V_1 > V_0$ the Hugoniot curve passes below the isentrope, and when $V_1 < V_0$ it passes above the isentrope. Thus, at the initial point we have a second-order tangency at the intersection of the two curves. The relative positions of the Hugoniot curve H and the isentrope P are shown in Fig. 1.34. We note that the segment CD is a first-order quantity in $V_0 - V_1$, DE is a second-order quantity, and EF is a third-order quantity.

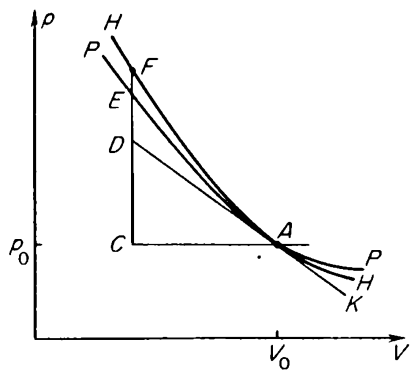


Fig. 1.34. Relative position of the shock H and ordinary isentrope P. DK is the tangent to the curves at the initial state A. In a weak shock wave the segment CD is a quantity of first, DE of second, and EF of third order.

Let us return to the geometric interpretation of the entropy increase across a shock wave (Fig. 1.35). As shown in §16, the quantity $\overline{T}\Delta S$ is described by the area of the figure $AFBCEA$. Let us divide it by the straight line AC into two parts, the segment $ACEA$ and the triangle ABC. The area of the triangle ABC is equal to one half of the product of the base BC and the altitude $V_0 - V_1$. With small changes of all parameters, in a weak wave, the segment

* *Editors' note.* For which the coefficient of thermal expansion at constant pressure $V^{-1}(\partial V/\partial T)_p$ is positive.

BC is equal to $(\partial p/\partial S)_V \Delta S$, and

$$\overline{T}\,\Delta S = F_{\text{segm}} + \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial S}\right)_V (V_0 - V_1)\,\Delta S,$$

where F_{segm} is the area of the segment $ACEA$. Hence,

$$\Delta S = \frac{F_{\text{segm}}}{\overline{T} - \alpha}, \qquad \alpha = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial S}\right)_V (V_0 - V_1).$$

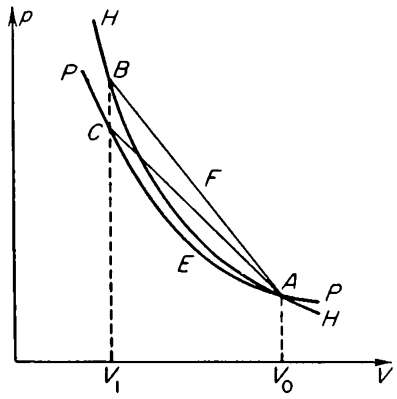


Fig. 1.35. Geometrical interpretation of the entropy increase in a shock wave.

For small volume changes $\alpha \to 0$ and $\overline{T}\,\Delta S \to F_{\text{segm}}$, that is, the correction for the area of the triangle is small. In fact, it is of a higher order than the area of the segment, which is of the order of $\overline{T}\,\Delta S$. Expressing the area of the segment as

$$\overline{T}\,\Delta S = \frac{p_0 + p'}{2}(V_0 - V_1) - \int_{V_1}^{V_0} (p\,dV)_{S=S_0}$$

and substituting the expansions for weak waves we obtain, as expected, the relation (1.88). The geometrical interpretation also shows that the sign of ΔS depends on the sign of the area of the segment, that is, on whether the chord AC passes above or below the isentrope or, what is the same, whether the curve is convex upward or downward.

Let us compare the velocities u_0 and u_1 with the sound speeds c_0 and c_1. As we know, the ratio u_0/c_0 is determined by the ratio of the slope of the line AB (see Fig. 1.28) and of the tangent to the isentrope at the point A. The ratio u_1/c_1 is determined by the ratio of the slope of the line AB and of the tangent to the isentrope at the point B. We write the expressions for the slopes of all three straight lines in the form

$$\frac{p_1 - p_0}{V_1 - V_0} = \left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial V}\right)_{S_0} + \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial V^2}\right)_{S_0} (V_1 - V_0)$$

for the line AB,

$$\left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial V}\right)_{S_A} = \left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial V}\right)_{S_0}$$

for the tangent to the isentrope at the point A, and

$$\left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial V}\right)_{S_B} = \left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial V}\right)_{S_0} + \left(\frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial V^2}\right)_{S_0} (V_1 - V_0)$$

for the tangent to the isentrope at the point B. The last equation follows from the fact that the isentrope $S_1 = const$ is parallel to the isentrope $S_0 = const$ up to third-order terms in $V_1 - V_0$. Noting that

$$\left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial V}\right)_{S_0} < 0, \qquad \left(\frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial V^2}\right)_{S_0} > 0, \qquad V_1 - V_0 < 0,$$

we see that the straight line AB is steeper than the tangent at the point A, but is less steep than the tangent at point B. Hence, it follows that $u_0 > c_0$ and $u_1 < c_1$. This is directly evident from Fig. 1.30.

Of importance is the inner connection between the condition for entropy increase and that for mechanical stability of the discontinuity $u_0 > c_0$. Both conditions follow directly from the fact that the slope of the isentropic and Hugoniot curves starting at the point A increases with decreasing volume.

Thus, by considering weak shock waves in a fluid with arbitrary thermodynamic properties we have obtained from the conservation laws all the results which were demonstrated previously for a perfect gas with constant specific heats. The only additional necessary condition was that the second derivative $(\partial^2 p/\partial V^2)_S$ should be positive.

§19. Shock waves in a fluid with anomalous thermodynamic properties

Let us now consider a fluid with anomalous thermodynamic properties, where the second derivative $(\partial^2 p/\partial V^2)_S$ is negative at least over some part of the isentropic curve. The ordinary isentrope for such a fluid in the corresponding pressure-volume diagram is convex upward, as shown in Fig. 1.36. It follows from the discussion in the preceding section that if the pressure changes are small, the Hugoniot curve almost coincides with the isentrope (with an accuracy to third order in either $V_1 - V_0$ or $p_1 - p_0$). In this case the area of the figure $APBMNA$ bounded on the top by the isentrope is greater than the area of the trapezoid $AEBMNA$ bounded on the top by the chord AEB, and hence the entropy decreases across the compression shock wave (this is also shown by (1.88)). At the same time, since the slope of the chord is smaller than the slope of the tangent at the point A, the propagation velocity of the shock wave through the undisturbed gas is less than the speed of sound. Also, since

the slope of the chord AEB is larger than the slope of the tangent at the point B, the velocity behind the discontinuity is supersonic. Conversely, the entropy of a rarefaction shock increases (see (1.88)). The comparison of the slopes of the chord AC and of the tangents at the points A and C shows that the velocity is supersonic ahead of the discontinuity and subsonic behind it.

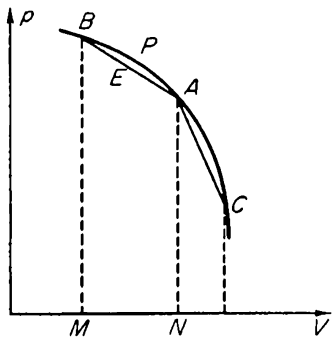


Fig. 1.36. Isentrope for a fluid with anomalous properties and the geometrical interpretation of the relation for compression and rarefaction shock waves.

Thus the entropy increase in a fluid with anomalous properties coincides with the condition of mechanical stability $u_0 > c_0$ and agrees with the condition allowing external factors to influence the wave propagation $u_1 < c_1$. Compression shock waves are impossible, while rarefaction shock waves can occur in such an anomalous fluid. Compression of such a fluid induced by a piston takes place by means of a gradually widening wave similar to rarefaction waves in an ordinary gas. No shock discontinuity is formed and the motion is isentropic. The rarefaction wave, however, is propagated as a steep front, which does not expand with time and whose thickness is determined by the viscosity and thermal conductivity.

Under normal conditions all substances—gaseous, solid, and liquid—have normal properties and their isentropic compressibility decreases with pressure. Anomalous behavior of a fluid can be expected near the gas-liquid critical point. Actually, long before the critical point is reached the gas isotherms show an inflection (at the critical point the inflection becomes horizontal). For a fluid with a sufficiently high specific heat and with the specific heat ratio close to unity, the isentropes and the isotherms do not differ appreciably from each other. We can therefore expect that the isentropes will have an inflection outside the two-phase region, that there will exist a region where the second derivative will have an anomalous sign. This region is shown in Fig. 1.37 (taken from Zel'dovich [2]). Curve I in Fig. 1.37 is the boundary of the two-phase region and curve II is the locus of the points of inflection of the isentropes $(\partial^2 p/\partial V^2)_S = 0$. Curve II bounds a region where $(\partial^2 p/\partial V^2)_S < 0$. An anomalous isentrope is also shown in Fig. 1.37. The curves were calculated using van der Waals' equation of state for the case when the specific heat $c_v = 40$ cal/deg-mole.

The relationship between the sign of the entropy change and the inequalities relating to the gas velocities and the sound speeds, corresponding to the coincidence of the entropy increase with the condition of mechanical stability, can be negated only if for the range of pressures for the particular case considered the sign of $\partial^2 p/\partial V^2$ is both positive and negative, so that the isentrope

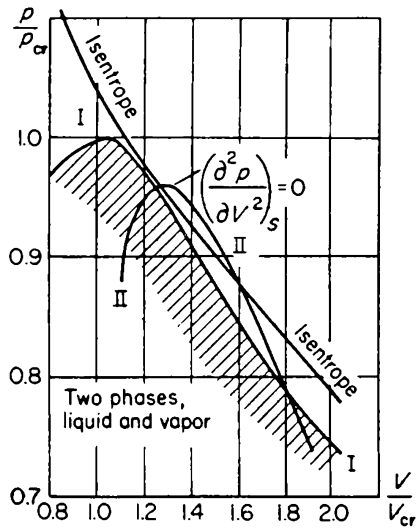


Fig. 1.37. Isentrope with anomalous convexity in a van der Waals' gas with a specific heat $c_v = 40$ cal/deg-mole. The shaded area is a two-phase region. Curve II bounds the region of anomalous convexity of the isentrope. Under curve II $(\partial^2 p/\partial V^2)_S < 0$.

intersects the chord more than twice. This may give rise to more complex conditions with discontinuities and adjoining decaying waves existing together. Another case of anomalous behavior will be considered in Chapter XI; the anomalies in this case are attributable to polymorphous transformations (phase transitions) of solids at the high pressures that are encountered in shock waves. Chapter XI will also deal with the other complex conditions mentioned above.

3. *Viscosity and heat conduction in gasdynamics*

§20. Equations of one-dimensional gas flow

The dissipative processes—viscosity (internal friction) and heat conduction —are attributable to the molecular structure of a fluid. These processes create an additional, nonhydrodynamic transfer of momentum and energy, and result in nonadiabatic flow and in the thermodynamically irreversible transformation of mechanical energy into heat. Viscosity and heat conduction appear only when there are large gradients in the flow variables, which occur, for example, in the boundary layers in flows past solid bodies or within a shock front. In this book we shall consider viscosity and heat conduction principally from the point of view of their effects on the internal structure of shock

fronts in gases. In studying this structure we can consider the flow as a function of a single x coordinate only (plane flow), since the thickness of a shock front is always much smaller than the radius of curvature of its surface. We shall therefore not dwell extensively on the derivation of the general flow equations for a viscous fluid or gas, as can be found, for example, in the book by Landau and Lifshitz [1]. We shall only explain the manner in which the equations can be obtained for the one-dimensional, plane case.

Let us write the law of conservation of momentum for an inviscid gas (1.7) in the plane case, where all the parameters are functions of the x coordinate alone, and the velocity has only the x component u

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}(\rho u) = -\frac{\partial \Pi_{xx}}{\partial x}, \qquad \Pi_{xx} = p + \rho u^2.$$

We now consider the fact that the gas consists of molecules colliding with each other. We select an area of unit cross section perpendicular to the x axis. This area is penetrated from both sides by molecules moving in definite directions after having suffered their most recent collision. The molecules may be considered to emerge from layers whose thickness is of the order of magnitude of the mean free path l. These layers are adjacent to both sides of the area considered (Fig. 1.38). If n is the number of molecules per unit volume and $\bar{v}$ is

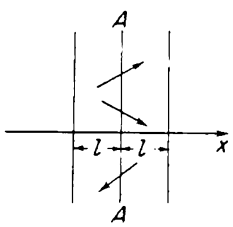


Fig. 1.38. Schematic illustration for the derivation of the equations for the molecular transport of momentum.

their average thermal velocity, then $n\bar{v}$ molecules will pass per unit time through the area from left to right. Each molecule carries through the area the hydrodynamic momentum mu, where m is the mass of the molecule. The total flux density of the hydrodynamic momentum from left to right is, therefore, of the order of $n\bar{v} \cdot mu$. Similarly, the flux density of the hydrodynamic momentum from right to left is approximately equal to $n\bar{v}m(u + \Delta u)$, where Δu is the increase in the hydrodynamic velocity during passage from the left layer to the right one; that is, $\Delta u \approx (\partial u/\partial x)l$. The flux density of the x component of momentum in the x direction caused by the molecular transfer is equal to the difference between the fluxes from left to right and from right to left, or $-n\bar{v}ml(\partial u/\partial x)$. This is the quantity expressing the additional momentum transfer caused by internal friction; it should be added to the momentum flux density $\Pi_{xx} = p + \rho u^2$.

A more rigorous analysis, based on three-dimensional considerations, shows that a numerical coefficient of the order of unity should be introduced into the above expressions. The equation of conservation of momentum for the plane case (for a monatomic gas, *eds.*), including the viscous term, is of the form

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}(\rho u) = -\frac{\partial \Pi_{xx}}{\partial x}, \qquad \Pi_{xx} = p + \rho u^2 - \sigma', \qquad \sigma' = \frac{4}{3}\mu \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}, \quad (1.90)$$

where μ is the coefficient of viscosity. This coefficient for gases (in the absence of relaxation processes, see below) is of the order of

$$\mu \sim n\bar{v}ml = \rho \bar{v} l.$$

The quantity σ' is the xx component of the viscous stress tensor. Its appearance in the equation for the momentum flux is equivalent to the appearance of an additional "pressure" created by internal friction forces. With the help of the continuity equation, (1.90) can be easily transformed to the equation of motion

$$\rho \frac{Du}{Dt} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial x}(p - \sigma'), \quad (1.91)$$

where $\partial\sigma'/\partial x$ is the internal friction force per unit volume of gas.

With dissipative processes present, additional terms appear in the energy equation. The additional energy flux is related to the added "viscous" pressure. A quantity $-\sigma' u$, analogous to pu, should be added to the expression for the energy flux density, the divergence of which appears in (1.10). In addition, the energy flux transferred by heat conduction

$$J = -\kappa \frac{\partial T}{\partial x}, \quad (1.92)$$

where κ is the coefficient of thermal conductivity, must be introduced into this expression. Equation (1.92) can be easily obtained by the same approach used in deriving the viscous momentum flux. The result is that for gases the coefficient of thermal conductivity is of the order of $\rho c_p \bar{v} l$.

Taking into account the two dissipation terms, the energy equation (1.10) for the plane case becomes

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\rho\varepsilon + \frac{\rho u^2}{2}\right) = -\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left[\rho u\left(\varepsilon + \frac{u^2}{2}\right) + pu - \sigma' u + J\right]. \quad (1.93)$$

Rearranging this equation with the aid of the equations of motion and continuity and the thermodynamic identity $T\,dS = d\varepsilon + p\,dV$, we obtain an

expression for the rate of change of entropy of the fluid particle

$$\rho T \frac{DS}{Dt} = \sigma' \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial J}{\partial x} = \frac{4}{3}\mu\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)^2 + \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\kappa \frac{\partial T}{\partial x}\right). \tag{1.94}$$

The first term on the right-hand side represents the mechanical energy dissipated by viscosity per unit volume per unit time. This term is always positive, since $\mu > 0$ and $(\partial u/\partial x)^2 > 0$; consequently, the internal frictional forces lead to a local increase in the fluid entropy. The second term corresponds to heating or cooling of the fluid by heat conduction. It can be either positive or negative, because conduction results in a heat transfer from the region of higher to the region of lower enthalpy. However, the entropy of the fluid as a whole will always increase as a result of heat conduction. This can be shown by dividing (1.94) by T and integrating over the entire volume. The entropy change caused by heat conduction of a fluid occupying a volume bounded by the surfaces x_1 and x_2 is

$$\int_{x_1}^{x_2} \frac{1}{T}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\kappa \frac{\partial T}{\partial x}\right) dx = \frac{1}{T}\kappa \frac{\partial T}{\partial x}\Bigg|_{x_1}^{x_2} + \int_{x_1}^{x_2} \frac{\kappa}{T^2}\left(\frac{\partial T}{\partial x}\right)^2 dx.$$

If the boundaries x_1 and x_2 are thermally insulated then there is no heat flow through the boundaries (the first term on the right-hand side vanishes), and only the second term, which is always positive ($\kappa > 0$), will remain.

Gasdynamic equations including the viscous and heat conduction terms allow us to determine the conditions under which the dissipative effects become important. To do this we equate the inertial forces in the equation of motion to the viscous forces. If U is the scale of the flow velocity and d is a characteristic dimension of the flow region, then the time scale is of the order of d/U and the inertial term $\rho\, Du/Dt$ is of the order of $\rho U^2/d$. The viscous term in the equation $\partial(\frac{4}{3}\mu\, \partial u/\partial x)/\partial x$ is of the order of $\mu U/d^2$, and its ratio to the inertial term is of the order of

$$\frac{1}{\mathrm{Re}} = \frac{\mu}{\rho U d} = \frac{\nu}{Ud} \sim \frac{l}{d}\frac{c}{U}.$$

The reciprocal of this ratio is called the Reynolds number ($\nu = \mu/\rho \sim l\bar{v} \sim lc$ is the kinematic viscosity and $c \sim \bar{v}$ is the speed of sound). Similarly, comparing the heat transferred by conduction with the mechanical energy transfer, we find their ratio to be of the order of

$$\frac{1}{\mathrm{Pe}} = \frac{\kappa}{\rho c_p U d} \sim \frac{\chi}{Ud} \sim \frac{l}{d}\frac{c}{U},$$

where Pe is the Peclet number. This number for gases is numerically close to the Reynolds number, because the thermal diffusivity $\chi = \kappa/\rho c_p$ is numerically

close to the kinematic viscosity ν. (For example, for air at standard conditions $\nu \approx \chi \approx 0.15$ cm^2/sec.)

Thus, the viscous and heat conduction terms can be neglected for $\mathrm{Re} \approx \mathrm{Pe} \gg 1$. If we consider a flow with velocities smaller than, or close to, the speed of sound, the dimensions of the system must be much greater than the molecular mean free path, $d/l \gg 1$. As we shall see, this condition is not satisfied in a shock front, the thickness of which is comparable to the mean free path. Dissipative processes must appear within the shock front. These processes are responsible for the increase in entropy across a shock wave.

§21. Remarks on the second viscosity coefficient

In writing down the gasdynamic equations and utilizing the thermodynamic relationships between pressure and the other thermodynamic variables of the fluid we have implicitly assumed that the pressure $\bar{p}$ which determines the forces in a moving gas does not differ from the static pressure p_{st} for a gas at rest under the same thermodynamic conditions, for the same composition, density, internal energy, and temperature. The pressure is a scalar quantity independent of the coordinate system, of the direction of flow velocity, and of the velocity gradient. This requirement that the pressure be a scalar quantity invariant with respect to the coordinate system permits us to make an assumption which is much more general than the assumption that the pressure depends only upon the thermodynamic state of the fluid. The pressure can in general depend on the scalar quantity—the divergence of the velocity. With moderate gradients, and with the restriction to the first terms in the appropriate expansion (as in the derivation of the viscous stresses), we can write the general expression

$$p_{st} = \bar{p} + \mu' \nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}, \tag{1.95}$$

where the coefficient μ' characterizes the dependence of the forces acting in the fluid upon the scalar quantity $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}$. The coefficient μ' is termed the second viscosity coefficient*. On the other hand, the coefficient μ, the first or ordinary viscosity coefficient, characterizes the forces which depend on the directions and the gradient of the velocity.

The ordinary viscosity coefficient for a gas is related to the translational motion of the molecules. If the time required for establishing the static pressure is of the order of the free time of a molecule l/c, then μ' is of the order of μ. In the plane case when this condition is satisfied, both the ordinary and the second viscosity terms are combined into a single term. In certain cases,

* *Editors' note.* This quantity is generally termed the bulk viscosity coefficient or the dilatational viscosity coefficient. The term second viscosity coefficient is often used for the quantity $\lambda = \mu' - \frac{2}{3}\mu$.

however, μ' takes on an anomalously large value. According to the continuity equation $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u} = -(1/\rho)D\rho/Dt$, and the coefficient μ' characterizes the dependence of the pressure upon the rate of change of density. In the presence of slowly excited internal degrees of freedom (for example, molecular vibrations) and rapid changes in the state of the fluid, the pressure cannot follow the changes in density and differs from its value for thermodynamic equilibrium. This effect may be described by the second viscosity coefficient (see [1]). The more difficult it is to excite the internal degrees of freedom, the more pronounced is the "inconsistency" between the changes in pressure, the changes in density, and internal state of the fluid, and the larger is the second viscosity. In very fast processes, when this "inconsistency" (deviation from thermodynamic equilibrium) is especially high, the linear relation (1.95) may be inadequate and it may become necessary to introduce an explicit description of the relaxation processes into the gasdynamic equations, to introduce the kinetics of the excitation of the internal degrees of freedom. We shall become more familiar with this phenomenon in Chapters VI, VII, and VIII which consider relaxation processes and their effect on the structure of shock fronts and the absorption of ultrasound.

§22. Remarks on the absorption of sound

As an example of the effect of viscosity and heat conduction in hydrodynamics let us consider the propagation of sound waves. The presence of viscosity and heat conduction leads to the dissipation of sound wave energy by the irreversible conversion of the energy into heat, to absorption of the sound and a decrease in its intensity. The sound absorption coefficient can be found by obtaining the solution to the one-dimensional linearized gasdynamic equations, containing the viscous and heat conduction terms, for plane harmonic waves of the type $\exp[i(kx - \omega t)]$, where k is the wave vector. In this case k has a complex value, whose real part gives the wavelength and whose imaginary part gives the absorption coefficient

$$k = k_1 + ik_2; \qquad \exp[i(kx - \omega t)] = \exp[-k_2 x] \exp[i(k_1 x - \omega t)].$$

The absorption coefficient can also be evaluated from physical considerations. According to (1.94), the energy dissipation per unit volume per unit time is composed of two parts, corresponding to viscous and heat conduction effects. In a sound wave of wavelength λ these quantities are of the order of $\mu u^2/\lambda^2$ and $\kappa(\Delta T)^2/\lambda^2 T$, respectively. Here u is the amplitude of the velocity and ΔT is the amplitude of the temperature change in the wave (the latter is proportional to u). The sound energy per unit volume is $\rho_0 u^2$. The fraction of energy absorbed per unit time is also made up of two parts. The part associated with the viscosity is of the order of $(\mu u^2/\lambda^2)/\rho_0 u^2 \sim \mu/\rho_0 \lambda^2 \sim \mu\omega^2/c^2\rho_0$.

However, the distance traveled by the sound per unit time is c, so that the viscous part of the absorption coefficient per unit length γ_1 is of the order of $\mu\omega^2/c^3\rho_0$. Similarly, the absorption coefficient per unit length associated with heat conduction γ_2 is of the order of $(\kappa/c_p)(\omega^2/c^3\rho_0)$. (This result is easy to understand in the case of gases; we note that $\kappa/c_p \approx \mu$, because of the approximate equality between the kinematic viscosity $\nu = \mu/\rho$ and the thermal diffusivity $\chi = \kappa/\rho c_p$, thus for gases $\gamma_1 \approx \gamma_2$). These expressions are valid for weak sound absorption, where the amplitude decrease over distances of the order of one wavelength is small, i.e., where $\gamma\lambda \ll 1$ ($\gamma = \gamma_1 + \gamma_2$). For gases this condition simply means that

$$\gamma\lambda \sim \frac{\mu\omega^2\lambda}{c^3\rho_0} \sim \frac{\nu}{\lambda^2}\frac{\lambda}{c} \sim \frac{l}{\lambda}\frac{\bar{v}}{c} \sim \frac{l}{\lambda} \ll 1.$$

This means that the expression for the absorption coefficient is valid for wavelengths much larger than the molecular mean free path, which is the case most frequently met with.

Other cases of anomalously large absorption and dispersion of sound (dependence of the speed of sound on frequency) arise in a fluid with slow excitation of the internal degrees of freedom (with a high value of the second viscosity). This problem will be considered in Chapter VIII.

§23. The structure and thickness of a weak shock front

Let us examine the internal structure and thickness of the thin layer representing the shock wave across which the gas undergoes the transition from the initial to the final state; we refer to this layer as the shock front. In this layer occur such phenomena as an increase in density of the fluid, pressure and velocity changes, and, as has been shown by calculations based only on the application of the conservation laws, an increase in entropy. The entropy increase indicates that there is dissipation of mechanical energy and that an irreversible conversion of mechanical energy into heat takes place in the transition layer. Hence, in order to understand the detailed nature of the shock transition it is necessary to account for the dissipative processes, for viscosity and heat conduction.

Let us consider the one-dimensional plane flow of a viscous and heat conducting gas in a coordinate system in which the shock front is at rest. The front thickness is very small in comparison with the characteristic length scales for the gasdynamic process as a whole, for example, in comparison with the distance between the shock front and the piston which acts on the gas and creates the wave. Even if the piston moves with a variable velocity and the strength of the shock wave changes with time, the strength of the wave will remain practically unchanged during the small time interval Δt required

to traverse a distance of the order of the front width Δx. Hence, during a certain time interval, which is small in comparison with the overall time scale of the gasdynamic process, but large in comparison with Δt, the entire picture of the distributions of the flow variables across the wave front propagates through the gas as though "frozen". In other words, using a coordinate system in which the gas is at rest, the flow can be considered as steady at any given time.

Let us write the equations of continuity, momentum, and entropy for the steady plane case with the viscous and heat conduction terms included. Since the process is steady, we can drop terms in partial derivatives with respect to time $\partial/\partial t$, and can replace the partial derivative $\partial/\partial x$ by the total derivative d/dx. We obtain*

$$\begin{gathered} \frac{d}{dx}(\rho u) = 0, \\ \frac{d}{dx}\left(p + \rho u^2 - \frac{4}{3}\mu\frac{du}{dx}\right) = 0, \\ \rho u T \frac{dS}{dx} = \frac{4}{3}\mu\left(\frac{du}{dx}\right)^2 + \frac{d}{dx}\left(\kappa\frac{dT}{dx}\right). \end{gathered} \tag{1.96}$$

Using the second law of thermodynamics $T\,dS = dh - V\,dp$ together with the equations of continuity and momentum, we can rewrite the entropy equation in the form of an energy equation

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[\rho u\left(h + \frac{u^2}{2}\right) - \frac{4}{3}\mu u\frac{du}{dx} - \kappa\frac{dT}{dx}\right] = 0. \tag{1.97}$$

We now impose appropriate boundary conditions on the solution of these equations, by requiring the gradients of all quantities to vanish ahead of the front at $x = -\infty$ and behind the front at $x = +\infty$. At these limits the variables assume their initial and final values, designated, as before, by the subscripts "0" and "1" (Fig. 1.39).

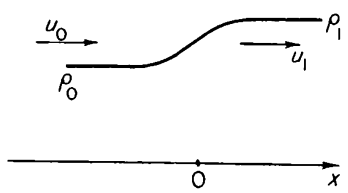


Fig. 1.39. Sketch illustrating the structure of a shock front.

* *Editors' note.* The equations and results of this section remain valid in a gas with a non-negligible second or bulk coefficient of viscosity μ', provided that $\frac{4}{3}\mu$ is replaced by the "longitudinal" coefficient of viscosity $\mu'' = \frac{4}{3}\mu + \mu'$.

First integrals of the system of mass, momentum, and energy equations are readily obtained, and are

$$\rho u = \rho_0 u_0, \tag{1.98}$$

$$p + \rho u^2 - \frac{4}{3}\mu\frac{du}{dx} = p_0 + \rho_0 u_0^2, \tag{1.99}$$

$$\rho u\left(h + \frac{u^2}{2}\right) - \frac{4}{3}\mu u\frac{du}{dx} - \kappa\frac{dT}{dx} = \rho_0 u_0\left(h_0 + \frac{u_0^2}{2}\right). \tag{1.100}$$

The constants of integration are expressed here in terms of the initial values of the variables p, ρ, T, and u, and are considered as functions of the x coordinate*. Equation (1.99) shows that the presence of viscosity, the term containing du/dx, causes the distribution of the flow variables with respect to x in the shock front to be continuous (otherwise, the gradient du/dx would go to infinity, which would contradict the fact that the variables are finite).

In order to understand better the roles of viscosity and heat conduction let us first consider the shock front structure in two particular cases: (1) when viscosity is absent and there is only heat conduction; (2) when there is only viscosity and heat conduction is absent. We shall not seek here exact solutions of the equations (this problem is left to Chapter VII, which is devoted specifically to the structure of shock wave fronts). We shall only explain the qualitative features of the phenomenon and evaluate the front thickness.

(1) HEAT CONDUCTION IS PRESENT BUT THERE IS NO VISCOSITY: $\mu = 0$.

In this limiting case the momentum equation (1.99) becomes

$$p + \rho u^2 = p_0 + \rho_0 u_0^2,$$

which is analogous to the equation relating the final and initial values of these quantities. This equation, however, now also describes all the intermediate states in the wave front. Using the equation of continuity (1.98), we obtain

$$p = p_0 + \rho_0 u_0^2\left(1 - \frac{V}{V_0}\right). \tag{1.101}$$

Thus, the point describing the state of the gas within the shock front goes from the initial point A in the p, V plane to the final point B along the straight line AB. The line AB has already been discussed in the description of a Hugoniot curve.

* At $x = +\infty$, $du/dx = 0$, $dT/dx = 0$, $p = p_1$, $\rho = \rho_1$, $u = u_1$ and we arrive at the conservation laws of mass, momentum, and energy across the discontinuity, (1.61), (1.62), and (1.64).

Let us draw the isentropes through the initial and final points in the p, V plane (Fig. 1.40; the Hugoniot curve is not shown). Drawing a series of isentropes, it is evident that one of the curves will be tangent to AB at some point M, as shown in Fig. 1.40. At this point the entropy along the line AB is at its

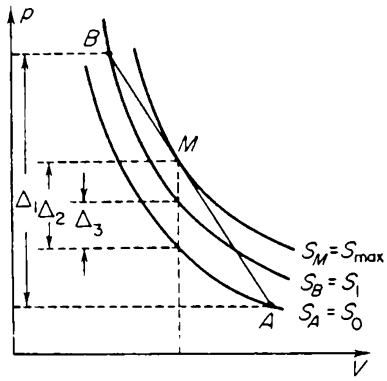


Fig. 1.40. p, V diagram illustrating the structure of shock fronts in the absence of viscosity. The state of the gas in the wave changes along the straight line AB. Segments Δ_1, Δ_2, and Δ_3 are of first, second, and third order, respectively, with respect to the wave strength.

maximum ($S_0 < S_1 < S_M$). It follows from (1.98) and (1.101) that the gas velocity u at the point of tangency M is exactly equal to the local speed of sound ($u = c$ at the point M; we note that $u_0 > c_0$ at point A and $u_1 < c_1$ at point B).

We now wish to determine the maximum value of the entropy $S_{\max}$ from the condition of tangency between the isentrope $S = S_{\max}$ and the straight line AB. As we shall soon see, the quantity $S_{\max} - S_0$ is proportional to either $(V_1 - V_0)^2$ or $(p_1 - p_0)^2$; hence we shall write the equations for the family of isentropes $p(V, S)$ and for the line AB in terms of expansions about the point A, neglecting third-order terms (in this approximation the isentropes S_0 and S_1 coincide; see §18). The equation for the isentrope is

$$p - p_0 = \left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial V}\right)_{S_A}(V - V_0) + \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial V^2}\right)_{S_A}(V - V_0)^2 + \left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial S}\right)_{V_A}(S - S_0).$$

The equation for the straight line is

$$p - p_0 = \frac{p_1 - p_0}{V_1 - V_0}(V - V_0)$$

$$= \left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial V}\right)_{S_A}(V - V_0) + \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial V^2}\right)_{S_A}(V_1 - V_0)(V - V_0).$$

The tangency condition is given by the equality $(\partial p/\partial V)_{\text{isent}} = (\partial p/\partial V)_{\text{str. line}}$, which provides an equation for the determination of the volume V_M at the point of tangency M. It can be shown that the point M is situated exactly half way between points A and B, i.e., $V_M - V_0 = \frac{1}{2}(V_1 - V_0)$. Substituting

this expression into the equation for the straight line, we find the pressure p_M at the point M. Next, substituting p_M and V_M into the equation for the isentrope and solving for the entropy at the point M, we obtain

$$S_M - S_0 = S_{\max} - S_0 = \frac{1}{8}\frac{(\partial^2 p/\partial V^2)_{S_A}}{(\partial p/\partial S)_{V_A}}(V_1 - V_0)^2.$$

The maximum entropy change within the shock front, taking into account heat conduction alone, is a second-order quantity with respect to the quantity $V_0 - V_1$ or $p_1 - p_0$, in contrast to the total entropy change $S_1 - S_0$ which is third order. This can also be shown on the basis of geometrical arguments: the maximum distance between the straight line AB and the isentropes $S = S_0$ in the p, V plane is proportional to $(V_1 - V_0)^2$ or $(p_1 - p_0)^2$. Thus, the difference between the pressure at the point M and the pressure on the isentrope S_A (or S_B) at the same volume V_M is equal to

$$p_M(V_M) - p_{S_A}(V_M) = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial V^2}\right)_{S_A}(V_M - V_0)(V_1 - V_M)$$

$$= \frac{1}{8}\left(\frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial V^2}\right)_{S_A}(V_1 - V_0)^2 \qquad (1.102)$$

(the pressure difference between points on the isentropes S_B and S_A at the same volume V_M is a third-order quantity).

The presence of an entropy maximum within the front indicates that the temperature profile $T(x)$ is inflected at the point of maximum entropy; thus, the temperature and entropy distributions in a weak shock wave, considering heat conduction only, can be described by the curves shown in Fig. 1.41. This

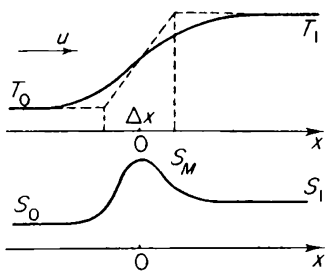


Fig. 1.41. Temperature and entropy distribution in a weak shock front in the absence of viscosity. Δx is the effective front thickness.

conclusion follows from the entropy equation (1.37), which, in the absence of viscosity, takes the form

$$\rho u T \frac{dS}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx}\kappa\frac{dT}{dx} = \kappa\frac{d^2T}{dx^2} \qquad (1.103)$$

(the temperature in a weak wave changes only very slightly and we can assume

that the thermal conductivity is constant). The existence of the entropy maximum is attributable to the fact that conductive heat transfer takes place from a high-temperature region to a low-temperature region. Therefore, the gas flowing into the wave is first heated by heat conduction (with an increase in entropy), and is then cooled (with a decrease in entropy). In the end state, the entropy is obviously greater than its initial value. This is illustrated in Fig. 1.41, where flow along the x axis with a velocity $u(x)$ corresponds to the change in state of a given gas particle with time.

Let us now evaluate the thickness of the shock front. We divide (1.103) by T and integrate with respect to x from the initial state A ($x = -\infty$), where $dT/dx = 0$, to any point x in the wave (we also use the fact that $\rho u = \rho_0 u_0 = const$)

$$\rho_0 u_0 (S - S_0) = \kappa \int_{-\infty}^{x} \frac{1}{T} \frac{d^2 T}{dx^2}\, dx = \kappa \left\{ \frac{1}{T} \frac{dT}{dx} + \int_{T_0}^{T} \frac{dT}{dx} \frac{1}{T^2}\, dT \right\}. \quad (1.104)$$

If we apply this equation to the final state B ($x = +\infty$), where $dT/dx = 0$, then the first term in braces disappears and

$$\rho_0 u_0 (S_1 - S_0) = \kappa \int_{T_0}^{T_1} \frac{1}{T^2} \frac{dT}{dx}\, dT.$$

We now define the effective thickness of the shock front Δx, in which there is only heat conduction, by

$$\frac{T_1 - T_0}{\Delta x} = \left| \frac{dT}{dx} \right|_{\max},$$

where the geometric meaning is clear from Fig. 1.41. In order to estimate the integral we set $dT/dx \sim (T_1 - T_0)/\Delta x$, from which

$$\rho_0 u_0 (S_1 - S_0) \sim \kappa \frac{1}{T_0^2} \frac{(T_1 - T_0)^2}{\Delta x}.$$

Expressing the jump in temperature in terms of the jump in the pressure, we get

$$T_1 - T_0 = \left(\frac{\partial T}{\partial p} \right)_S (p_1 - p_0) = \frac{V_0}{c_p} (p_1 - p_0),$$

where c_p is the specific heat at constant pressure. Using (1.89) for the entropy jump and recalling that approximately $(\partial^2 V/\partial p^2)_S \sim V_0/p_0^2$, $\kappa \sim \rho_0 c_p l c_v$, and that $u_0 \approx c_0$, we obtain from (1.104) for an estimate of the front thickness

$$\Delta x \sim l \frac{p_0}{p_1 - p_0}. \quad (1.105)$$

The front thickness is inversely proportional to the wave strength, and the scale factor, as shown by (1.105), is the molecular mean free path l.

Equation (1.104) can also be used to estimate the maximum entropy increase. At the point of maximum entropy $dS/dx = 0$ and the gradient dT/dx is also a maximum. The dominant term in the expression in braces in (1.104) is the first term which is proportional to $\Delta T/\Delta x \sim \Delta p/\Delta x \sim (\Delta p)^2$, while the second term is proportional to $(\Delta T)^2/\Delta x \sim (\Delta p)^3$. It is therefore evident that $S_{\max} - S_0 \sim (\Delta p)^2$, while $S_1 - S_0 \sim (\Delta p)^3$.

Considering the internal structure of the shock front (taking into account heat conduction alone), we can only claim that the temperature in the wave changes continuously, while the other quantities, such as density, velocity, and pressure may, in general, be discontinuous. Indeed, the study of shock wave structure (without considering viscosity) shows that it is impossible to construct a continuous distribution of all wave parameters for a sufficiently strong wave. This difficulty had already been pointed out by Rayleigh (Chapter VII, §3), and indicates the important part played by viscosity in achieving the irreversible compression of a fluid across a shock wave.

Let us now consider the second case.

(2) VISCOSITY IS PRESENT BUT THERE IS NO HEAT CONDUCTION: $\kappa = 0$.

In this case we must retain the complete form of the momentum equation (1.99). A point describing the state of the gas in the wave moves in the p, V plane, from point A to point B along some curve (shown in Fig. 1.42 by a dashed line) rather than along the straight line AB. From the entropy equation without the heat conduction term, we find

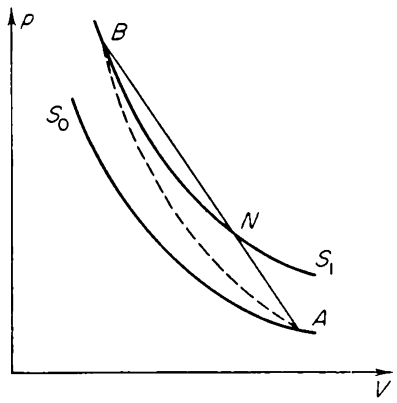


Fig. 1.42. p, V diagram for the structure of a shock front neglecting heat conduction. The state of the gas in the wave changes along the dashed curve AB.

$$\rho u T \frac{dS}{dx} = \mu \left(\frac{du}{dx}\right)^2, \tag{1.106}$$

which shows that the wave entropy increases monotonically from the initial value $S_0 = S_A$ to the final value $S_1 = S_B$; thus the dashed line is entirely contained between the isentropes S_0 and S_1 (see Fig. 1.42). Since the isentropes are convex downward $(\partial^2 p/\partial V^2)_S > 0$, the dashed line lies entirely below the straight line AB*. The equation of the curve describing the transition from point A to point B is given by

$$p = p_0 + \rho_0 u_0^2\left(1 - \frac{V}{V_0}\right) + \frac{4}{3}\mu\frac{du}{dx}. \tag{1.107}$$

Since the curve lies entirely below the straight line, then $du/dx < 0$ at all points within the wave. If the x axis is parallel to the flow then $u > 0$, that is, the gas in the wave only decelerates and, as a result, is compressed monotonically. Thus, consideration of the structure of a shock front including viscosity leads to the conclusion that with $(\partial^2 p/\partial V^2)_S > 0$, the gas in the shock wave can only be compressed. The density and velocity distributions through the wave have the form shown in Fig. 1.43.

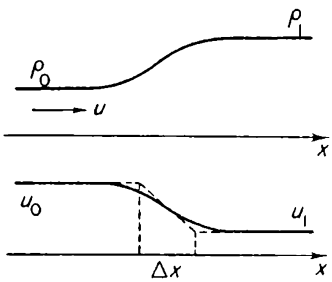


Fig. 1.43. Density and velocity profiles in a shock front. Δx is the effective front thickness.

Let us define the effective front thickness by †

$$\frac{u_0 - u_1}{\Delta x} = \left|\frac{du}{dx}\right|_{\max}. \tag{1.108}$$

The geometrical meaning of the equation is clear. The maximum absolute value of the gradient $|du/dx|_{\max}$ is defined, according to (1.107), by the maximum vertical deviation of the straight line AB from the dashed line, that is, from the isentropes S_0 or S_1. This deviation corresponds to the midpoint of the segment AB and is given by (1.102). Thus,

$$\frac{4}{3}\mu\left|\frac{du}{dx}\right|_{\max} = \frac{1}{8}\left(\frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial V^2}\right)_{S_A}(V_1 - V_0)^2.$$

* Actually, the vertical distance between the isentropes S_1 and S_0 is proportional to $S_1 - S_0 \sim (p_1 - p_0)^3$, while the vertical distance between points A and B is $p_1 = p_0$. Hence, that part of AN, where the dashed line could, in principle, pass above the straight line, is small in comparison with the main part of the straight line AN.

† Δx is sometimes called the Prandtl front thickness.

Substituting this expression for $|du/dx|_{\max}$ into (1.108) and noting that $\mu = \rho_0 \nu \sim \rho_0 l\bar{v} \sim \rho_0 l c_0$ (ν is the kinematic viscosity), and also that

$$u_0 - u_1 = [(p_1 - p_0)(V_0 - V_1)]^{1/2} \sim \left[(p_1 - p_0)^2 \left|\frac{\partial V}{\partial p}\right|\right]^{1/2} \sim \frac{p_1 - p_0}{p_0} c_0,$$

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial V^2}\right)_S \sim \frac{p_0}{V_0^2},$$

we arrive again at formula (1.105) for the front thickness

$$\Delta x \sim l \frac{V_0}{V_0 - V_1} \approx l \frac{p_0}{p_1 - p_0}.$$

The front thickness can also be estimated from the entropy equation (1.106) by a procedure similar to that used for the first case:

$$\rho_0 u_0 T_0 \frac{S_1 - S_0}{\Delta x} \sim \mu \frac{(u_0 - u_1)^2}{\Delta x^2}.$$

Substituting (1.89) for the entropy jump and rearranging, we arrive at the previous equation for Δx.

The difficulties which arise in constructing a continuous solution with only heat conduction are not encountered in constructing a continuous solution which takes into account only viscosity. This fact, as has been previously mentioned, has a deep physical meaning and indicates the importance of viscosity in a compression shock. Indeed, it is the viscous mechanism that converts a portion of the kinetic energy of the gas flowing into the discontinuity into heat; this conversion is equivalent to the transformation of the energy of ordered motion of gas molecules into the energy of random motion by the dissipation of molecular momentum. In this respect heat conduction has an indirect effect on the conversion process since it only participates in the transfer of the energy of random motion of the molecules from one point to another, but does not directly affect the ordered motion.

If we consider shock waves of moderate strength in an ordinary gas, where the transfer coefficients, the kinematic viscosity ν and the thermal diffusivity χ, are approximately equal to each other and are determined by the same molecular mean free path l ($\nu \approx \chi \sim lc$), we again obtain formula (1.105) for the front thickness. We can easily show that this is true by considering the general entropy equation (1.98) which contains both the viscous and heat conduction terms.

Equation (1.105) shows that if the pressure jump in the wave is of the order of magnitude of the pressure ahead of the front, then the front thickness will be approximately equal to the molecular mean free path. If the strength

of the wave increases further, the same equation shows that the thickness becomes smaller than the molecular mean free path. This result, obviously, has no physical significance. If the flow variables change rapidly over distances of the order of the mean free path, then the hydrodynamic treatment of viscosity and heat conduction, which depends upon the assumption that the gradients are small, can no longer apply. The thickness of an arbitrarily strong shock wave cannot, obviously, become smaller than the molecular mean free path, as indicated by studies based on the kinetic theory of gases (see Chapter VII).

Under certain conditions the front of a strong shock wave can become as thick as several mean free paths and it is then possible to divide it into regions of smooth and abrupt changes of the flow variables. In particular, this occurs in a gas with delayed excitation of certain molecular degrees of freedom, or when a reversible chemical reaction takes place in the wave. These problems, as well as many others arising in the detailed study of the internal structure of the front, will be considered in Chapter VII.

4. Various problems

§24. Propagation of an arbitrary discontinuity

The flow variables on both sides of a shock front are not independent. They are related by definite equations expressing the conservation laws of mass, momentum, and energy. Furthermore, the discontinuity—the compression shock wave in fluids with ordinary thermodynamic properties—is propagated through the fluid as a stable, nonspreading formation. However, the problem can be formulated to include the existence of a discontinuity surface at the initial time. The flow variables on both sides of such a discontinuity are arbitrary and completely unrelated to each other. Such discontinuities are termed arbitrary discontinuities.

Let us indicate some practical examples which illustrate how arbitrary discontinuities may arise. Imagine a tube filled with gas and divided by a thin partition. Suppose that the density, pressure, and, in general, the gas composition are different on each side of the partition. Let the partition be rapidly removed at some instant of time. At that instant the two regions with entirely arbitrary densities and pressures come into contact at the previous location of the partition. Since the pressures of both gases were different, the pressure jump will cause the gases to move once the partition has been removed. As a second example, let us assume that two shock waves of arbitrary strengths enter from both sides into a tube filled with gas. At the moment of collision of the two waves somewhere in the middle of the tube, a surface is formed

separating gases of different pressures, velocities, and temperatures (the possible density differences in this example are somewhat limited; we can say that if the waves are strong, then the densities are the same and equal to the limiting value). After the collision the gas motion will be altered.

Let us consider still a third example. We have approached the theory of shock waves by examining the flow resulting from a piston which is pushed into the gas at a constant velocity. In this case the shock wave was formed immediately at the piston and was propagated through the gas with a constant speed. Actually, however, the piston has a finite mass and cannot instantaneously acquire the final velocity. The piston is, therefore, gradually accelerated by the applied force. As a result, the shock wave will not form immediately but only at some distance away from the piston. We can replace the smooth variation in piston velocity $U(t)$ by some stepped function. This may be done by dividing the time scale into infinitesimal intervals and by assuming that the piston velocity during each of these intervals is constant. We assume further that after each time interval the velocity changes abruptly by a small amount. The piston path in the x, t plane will be a broken curve consisting of very small linear segments. During each small time interval the piston sends a compression disturbance ahead, in the form of a weak shock wave. This wave travels through the gas with a speed slightly exceeding the speed of sound, while the preceding weak shock wave, induced by the preceding abrupt change in piston velocity is propagated relative to the gas moving behind it with a velocity slightly less than the speed of sound (see Fig. 1.44). Hence, each successive

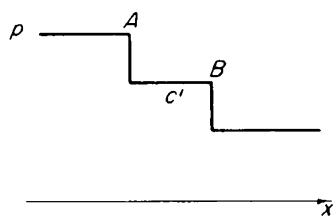


Fig. 1.44. Pressure distribution in a system of two successive weak compression shocks. Wave A travels through the gas ahead of the wave with a speed higher than the speed of sound c' in this gas. Wave B travels through the gas behind it with a subsonic velocity lower than c'. Hence, shock A will eventually overtake shock B.

shock wave overtakes the preceding one and the compressive effects of the individual waves thereby accumulate. If we draw the characteristics in the x, t plane originating from the piston path, they will intersect (Fig. 1.45). It turns out that it is possible to specify the piston acceleration in such a way that all these weak shock waves overtake one another at the same time and at one point. Here all the many small compression pulses coalesce into a single large pressure jump. (All the characteristics intersect at a single point.) The state of the gas across this discontinuity changes from the undisturbed to the final condition almost isentropically. Indeed, if the entire compression of the gas to the pressure p is broken up into n stages, that is, into n weak shock

waves with pressure jumps $\Delta p = (p - p_0)/n$, then the entropy increase ΔS at each stage will be proportional to $(\Delta p)^3 \sim 1/n^3$, and the total entropy increase for the sum of the n waves will be proportional to $n\,\Delta S \sim 1/n^2 \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$. Thus, the state of the gas on each side of the discontinuity, which results from the coalescence of n weak shock waves, can be related by the isentropic

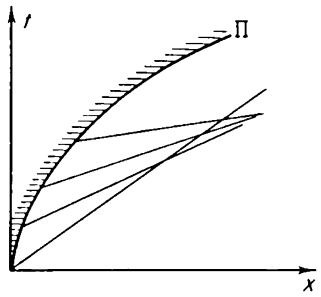


Fig. 1.45. Intersection of characteristics in a gas compressed by an accelerating piston. П is the piston path.

relation. We know, however, that the states on each side of a shock discontinuity are related not by the isentropic relation but by the Hugoniot equations. It follows that the quantities on both sides of the discontinuity do not satisfy the conservation laws and the discontinuity is an arbitrary one.

Generalizing the cases represented by the above examples we can set up an idealized problem in which we seek a solution for the motion of a gas containing an arbitrary discontinuity. Suppose that at the initial time $t = 0$ in the plane $x = 0$ all the flow variables are discontinuous, the pressure, density, velocity, and the temperature. These quantities are, however, uniform on each side of the discontinuity. In addition, the gas on each side may be of different composition. The greater the distance from the discontinuity surface for which all the flow variables may still be regarded as constant, the longer will be the time during which the desired solution will apply (this problem was first solved by Kochin [3]). Since the conditions of the problem do not include either a characteristic length or time, we should seek for a solution which depends only upon the ratio x/t. It was shown in §11 that self-similar plane flow of a gas can be described in terms of only two types of solutions, those with centered simple rarefaction waves and those with flows in which all the variables are constant. In addition, discontinuities, i.e., shock waves, are also possible. Thus, the desired flow should be constructed from three elements: rarefaction waves, uniform flow regions, and shock discontinuities.

The set of possible flows is limited by the fact that only one wave can move in one direction (regardless of whether the wave is a rarefaction or a shock wave). Indeed, a shock wave propagates with respect to the undisturbed gas at a supersonic speed, and with respect to the compressed gas at a subsonic speed, while the rarefaction wave travels through the gas at the speed of sound. If, for example, a shock wave moves to the right, then a rarefaction

wave (and even more so another shock wave) following it in the same direction will always overtake it after a certain time. Since, however, the motion is self-similar, both waves will originate from the same point $x = 0$ and at the same time $t = 0$. Hence, one wave acts as if it had already overtaken the other one at the initial time, and both of them propagate as a single wave. Therefore, it is impossible for a second wave to follow a rarefaction wave. A shock wave would have overtaken the rarefaction wave, while a second rarefaction wave would move at a fixed distance from the first one. Since, however, the motion is self-similar, this distance is equal to zero and the distinction between the two waves disappears.

From the above discussion we see that the desired solution can be constructed only by some combination of two waves, shock and rarefaction, propagating in opposite directions from the initial discontinuity and separated by regions of uniform flow. In general, there are two such regions. They are divided by a plane separating the two gases that were initially located on the opposite sides of the arbitrary discontinuity. Since the hydrodynamics of ideal fluids does not take molecular diffusion into account, the gases do not diffuse into each other and the boundary between them is maintained intact, moving with the gases. The case when the gases are of the same kind is, obviously, not much different (we can imagine that the gas molecules on one side of the initial discontinuity were labeled with a "dye"). This plane boundary between the two gases, which may be called a contact boundary or contact discontinuity, possesses special properties. Obviously, the pressures and velocities are equal on the two sides of the contact discontinuity. Otherwise, a flow in the neighborhood of the discontinuity would take place and the regions on both sides would cease to be uniform flow regions. However, the densities, temperatures, and entropies of the gases on the two sides of the contact discontinuity can have arbitrary values, determined by their arbitrary initial values. Differences in these quantities, at equal pressures and velocities, cannot result in the gases being set into relative motion (assuming, of course, that both diffusion and heat conduction are absent; these effects will be discussed later). The contact discontinuity is stationary with respect to the gas and does not send out disturbances that could affect the waves (shock and rarefaction) traveling in either direction away from it.

Let us list the possible types of flow after the creation of an arbitrary discontinuity, the possible cases of the breaking apart of the discontinuity into different combinations of rarefaction and shock waves. Three typical cases can arise: (1) shock waves are propagated in both directions away from the discontinuity; (2) a shock wave propagates in one direction and a rarefaction wave in the other; and (3) rarefaction waves travel in both directions. Let us look at these cases in more detail using the convenient p, V diagram (Fig. 1.46). First of all, let us fix on the diagram the initial states of the fluid. Point

A represents the gas to the left and point B the gas to the right of the discontinuity. Let the pressure at point A (p_a) be lower than p_b and draw from these points upward the Hugoniot curves characterizing shock compression, and downward the isentropes along which the gas expands in rarefaction waves.

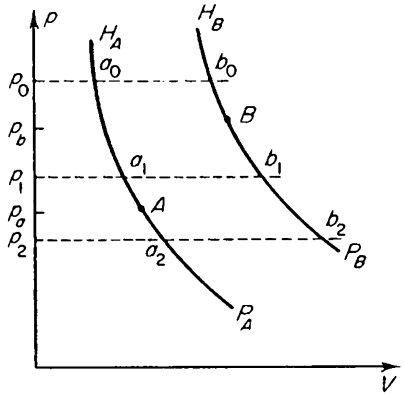


Fig. 1.46. A p, V diagram illustrating different cases of break-up of an arbitrary discontinuity. Points A and B characterize the initial states of the gases A and B. H_AA and H_BB are Hugoniot curves; AP_A and BP_B are isentropes for the gases A and B.

After the discontinuity breaks apart, the pressures in both gases will equalize in the regions affected by the waves.

1. Let this new pressure p_0 be greater than the initial pressures p_a and p_b. In this first case (Fig. 1.47a) compression shocks travel both to the left and to the right of the arbitrary discontinuity (or contact surface). The gases behind these waves are in the states a_0 and b_0 and at the same pressure p_0 and velocity. The gas in the state a_0 moves to the left relative to the gas initially in the state A, and gas b_0 moves to the right relative to the gas initially in the state B. Since the gases a_0 and b_0 move with the same velocity, it is necessary that the gases A and B initially move toward each other. Two shock waves are formed upon collision of two masses of gas moving toward each other at high velocities. The lower the collision velocity, the lower the pressure p_0 behind the shock waves. The second example discussed at the beginning of this section yields this case.

2. At a certain low collision velocity a new condition will arise in which the pressure p_1 is still higher than the pressure p_a but lower than the pressure p_b. In this second case after the discontinuity breaks apart, a shock wave is propagated through the gas A and a rarefaction wave travels through the gas B (Fig. 1.47b). Such conditions will exist when the initial velocities of both gases A and B are equal to zero, that is, when a pressure discontinuity exists initially, as in the example with the partition, and the gas begins to move in the direction of the lower pressure region. This case has important practical applications, since it forms the principle for the operation of shock tubes. Here strong shock waves are obtained under laboratory conditions and can heat the gas A to high temperatures. The shock tube is divided by a thin partition

(diaphragm). On one side of the diaphragm the tube contains at a low pressure the test gas A, while the driver gas B is pumped into the other side—the so-called high pressure chamber. After the diaphragm disintegrates, gas B expands in the direction of the low pressure chamber, sending a strong

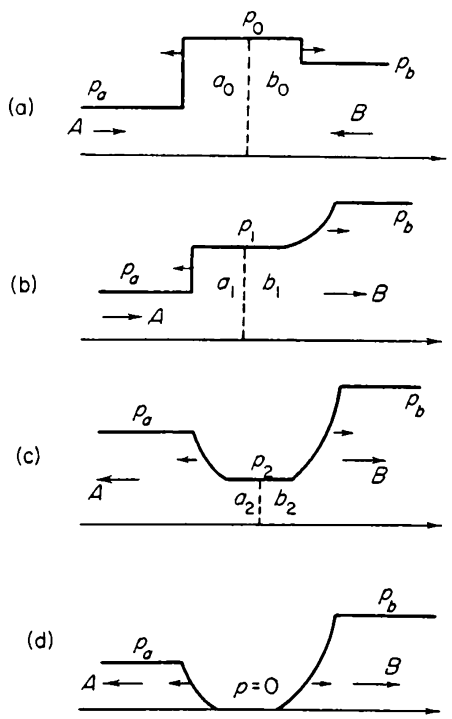


Fig. 1.47. Pressure distributions for different cases of the break-up of a discontinuity. Long arrows with the letters A and B denote the initial velocities of the gases A and B before the discontinuity breaks up. The small arrows show the directions of propagation of the waves through the gas (the direction of propagation in physical space can sometimes be different).

shock wave into gas A. The resulting state, illustrated in Fig. 1.47b, will be considered in detail in Chapter IV, where the operation of shock tubes is examined. An appropriate choice of the gases A and B and of the pressure drop makes it possible to achieve extremely strong shock waves and to heat the test gas to very high temperatures. One of the methods for obtaining even higher temperatures is provided by the collision of two shock waves. A special case of the latter is the reflection of a shock wave from the end wall of a shock tube, which is a means also used for obtaining high temperatures in the laboratory. Reflection of a shock wave by a solid wall is equivalent to a special case of collision of two gas streams. If two completely identical streams collide with one another, the contact discontinuity will remain at rest after the collision, and the situation is the same as in the case where a stationary solid wall replaces the contact discontinuity. The problems of collision of incident and reflected shock waves will be considered in Chapter IV.

3. If after the discontinuity breaks up, the pressure p_2 is lower than p_a and p_b, then we will obtain a rarefaction wave which travels to the right and to the left through each gas. This situation, depicted in Fig. 1.47c, is achieved when both gases A and B are initially moving in opposite directions away from the discontinuity at sufficiently high velocities.

If the initial relative velocity with which the gases A and B move away from each other is very high, namely greater than the sum of the maximum velocities (into vacuum) of the gases A and B, $2c_a/(\gamma_a - 1) + 2c_b/(\gamma_b - 1)$, then a vacuum ($p = 0$) will be formed between the two gases. Here c_a and c_b are the initial sound speeds and γ_a and γ_b are the specific heat ratios of gases A and B (see (1.60) in §11). This situation, which can be regarded as the limit of the third case, is shown in Fig. 1.47d.

In actual calculations related to the break-up of arbitrary discontinuities it is convenient (in addition to the p, V diagrams) to use the so-called p, u diagrams in which one plots the pressure p against the velocity in the laboratory coordinate system u. The Hugoniot relation $p_H(V)$ can be represented in terms of a functional relationship between the pressure behind the wave front and the jump in the gas velocity, i.e., the velocity of the compressed gas with respect to the undisturbed gas. In a similar manner, the pressure in a rarefaction wave is uniquely related to the velocity by virtue of the constancy of the Riemann invariant (see §§10 and 11). The convenience of p, u diagrams in description of the break-up of a discontinuity lies in the fact that the pressure and velocity of both gases are identical in the final state, that the final states are given by the same point on the diagram. The p, u diagrams for the break-ups illustrated in Figs. 1.47a–d are shown in Figs. 1.48a–d, respectively.

Having clarified the types of flow arising in the break-up of an arbitrary discontinuity, we can now verify the initial assumption that such flows depend only on the ratio x/t. In the discussion of the rarefaction wave in §11 this assumption was based on the fact that the width of the rarefaction wave, which is the only scale length in a problem in which dissipative processes are neglected, increases with time as $x \sim ct$. The relative effect of viscosity and heat conduction, which is proportional to l/x, decreases with time and becomes negligibly small in macroscopic flows, when $x \gg l$. Consequently, the only constant scale, the molecular mean free path, will also disappear.

In flows with shock waves, both viscosity and heat conduction, which introduce the length scale l into the equations, are important only in the thin layer of the wave front whose thickness is of the order of l. The thickness of the contact discontinuity is also small. It decays with time due to molecular diffusion and heat conduction. These two mechanisms lead to a discontinuity thickness Δx of the order of $(\chi t)^{1/2} \sim (Dt)^{1/2}$ (where D is the diffusion coefficient, which is approximately equal to the thermal diffusivity $D \sim \chi \sim lc$).

The distance x traveled by the shock and rarefaction waves in a time t is of the order of ct, so that $\Delta x \sim (lx)^{1/2}$. The ratio of the dimensions of the region in which the dissipative forces are not negligible to the dimensions of the entire region occupied by the flow is therefore of the order of l/x for the shock wave and of the order of $(l/x)^{1/2}$ for the contact discontinuity. Both quantities are small in a macroscopic flow where $x \gg l$.

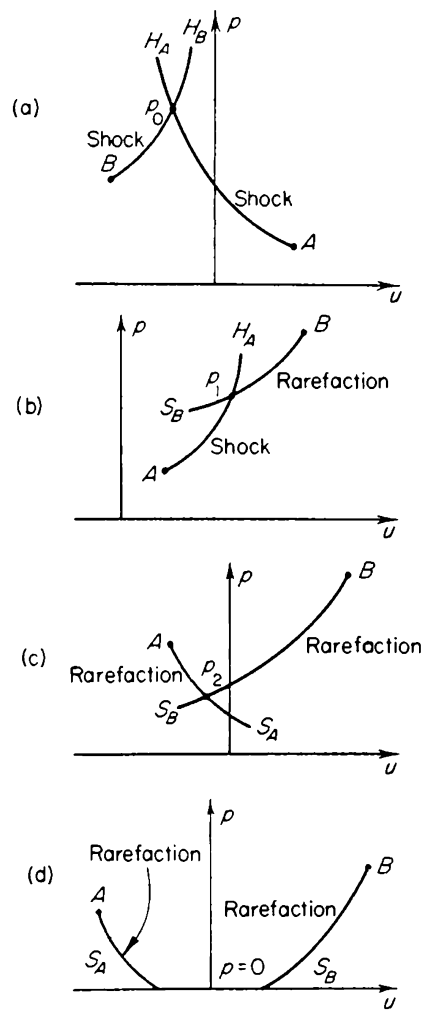


Fig. 1.48. A series of p, u diagrams for the different cases of discontinuity break-up shown in Fig. 1.47. Curves H are Hugoniot curves as a function of p and u; curves S are isentropes as a function of p and u.

Let us return to the third example presented at the beginning of this section and investigate the general conditions which result from the break-up of a discontinuity created by the accumulation of compression waves which were, in turn, produced by an accelerating piston. When two separate waves combine we have on one side of the discontinuity the undisturbed gas A, and on the other, gas in the state B, which has been compressed practically isentropically. We can show that the flow velocity, acquired by the gas as a result

of successive compressions by a large number of shock waves, is lower than the velocity acquired as a result of compression to the same pressure by a single shock. It follows, therefore, that the discontinuity breaks up as in case 2. A rarefaction wave travels toward the piston through the compressed gas and a shock wave travels through the undisturbed gas. The pressure p turns out to be lower than the pressure at the piston p_b. Due to the entropy increase across the shock wave, however, this lower pressure corresponds to a higher temperature, so that the gas behind the shock wave undergoes a larger heating than does the gas which underwent the almost isentropic heating induced by the coalescence of weak waves. Figure 1.49 shows the distributions of p and T

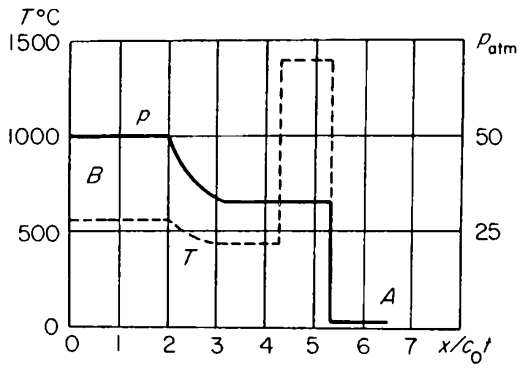


Fig. 1.49. Propagation of a discontinuity resulting from the coalescence of successive compression waves. The temperature behind the generated shock wave is considerably higher than the maximum temperature reached by the superposition of weak compression waves. On the other hand, the pressures are lower, since rarefaction waves move in a direction opposite to the compression waves. The pressure distribution is shown by a solid line, and the temperature distribution by a dashed line.

after the break-up of a discontinuity generated by the coalescence of weak compression waves. The air has been compressed by a piston whose velocity has gradually reached $4.44c_0 = 1500$ m/sec, with the pressure at the piston reaching $p_b = 50p_a = 50$ atm. The distance coordinate and time in the figure are measured with respect to the point and time of coalescence.

The case considered above is of considerable interest in detonation theory. The results obtained explain how a flame, acting on a gas in a manner similar to a piston, can cause the creation of a shock wave at a large distance from the flame by means of successive compressions. By compressing the gas gradually to a moderate temperature (630°C in Fig. 1.49), we can obtain a sharp heating to 1450°C a considerable distance away, and can achieve a "remote ignition" at the time of coalescence. Apparently, this is often the mechanism of detonation in gases.

§25. Strong explosion in a homogeneous atmosphere

The idealized problem of a strong explosion in a homogeneous atmosphere represents a typical example of a self-similar flow, in which the flow variables change with time in such a manner that their distributions with respect to the coordinate variable always remain similar in time. The self-similar problem of a strong explosion was formulated and solved by Sedov [4, 5]. Using a brilliant method, which employed the energy integral, Sedov succeeded in finding an exact analytic solution to the equations of self-similar motion. The same problem was also considered by Stanyukovich (in his dissertation, see [15]) and by Taylor [6], both of whom formulated the equations for the problem and obtained numerical but not analytic solutions. We shall discuss the solution to this problem and some of its consequences, since they will be useful in Chapters VIII and IX where we shall examine certain physical-chemical and optical phenomena accompanying strong explosions in air.

We consider a perfect gas with constant specific heats and density ρ_0, in which a large amount of energy E is liberated in a small volume during a short time interval. A shock wave will propagate through the gas starting from the point where the energy is released. We shall consider the process at the stage when the shock wave has moved through a distance which is extremely large in comparison with the dimensions of the region in which the energy was originally released, when the mass of gas that has been set in motion by the explosion is large in comparison with the mass of the explosion products. In this case, to a very high degree of accuracy, the energy release can be assumed to be both instantaneous and occurring at a point. We shall also assume that this stage of the process is sufficiently early that the shock wave has not moved too far away from the source, so that its strength is still sufficiently large that it is possible to neglect the initial gas pressure or counterpressure p_0 in comparison with the pressure behind the shock wave. This is equivalent to neglecting the initial internal energy of the gas which has been set in motion in comparison with the explosion energy E and to disregarding the initial speed of sound c_0 in comparison with the velocities of both the gas and the wave front.

The gas motion is determined by two dimensional parameters, the energy of the explosion E, and the initial density ρ_0. These parameters cannot be combined to yield scales with dimensions of either length or time. Hence the motion will be self-similar, that is, will be a function of a particular combination of the coordinate r (distance from the center of the explosion) and the time t. In contrast to the self-similar motion considered in §11, this problem does not contain a characteristic velocity. The initial speed of sound c_0 cannot be used to characterize the process; whenever we set $p_0 = 0$ in a particular approximation, c_0 will also be equal to zero to the same degree of

approximation*. Hence, the quantity r/t cannot serve as the similarity variable, as was the case in the self-similar rarefaction wave in §11. In this case the only dimensional combination which contains only length and time is the ratio of E to ρ_0, with the dimensions $[E/\rho_0] = [\text{cm}^5 \cdot \text{sec}^{-2}]$. Hence, the dimensionless quantity

$$\xi = r\left(\frac{\rho_0}{Et^2}\right)^{1/5} \tag{1.109}$$

can serve as the similarity variable.

The shock front is defined by a given value of the independent variable ξ_0. The motion of the wave front $R(t)$ is governed by the relationship

$$R = \xi_0\left(\frac{E}{\rho_0}\right)^{1/5} t^{2/5}. \tag{1.110}$$

The propagation velocity of the shock wave is

$$D = \frac{dR}{dt} = \frac{2}{5}\frac{R}{t} = \xi_0 \frac{2}{5}\left(\frac{E}{\rho_0}\right)^{1/5} t^{-3/5} = \frac{2}{5}\xi_0^{5/2}\left(\frac{E}{\rho_0}\right)^{1/2} R^{-3/2}.$$

We can express the parameters behind the front in terms of its velocity using the limiting formulas for a strong shock wave

$$\rho_1 = \rho_0 \frac{\gamma+1}{\gamma-1}, \qquad p_1 = \frac{2}{\gamma+1}\rho_0 D^2, \qquad u_1 = \frac{2}{\gamma+1} D. \tag{1.111}$$

The density behind the wave front stays constant and equal to its limiting value. The pressure decreases with time according to the relation

$$p_1 \sim \rho_0 D^2 \sim \rho_0\left(\frac{E}{\rho_0}\right)^{2/5} t^{-6/5} \sim \frac{E}{R^3}. \tag{1.112}$$

The physical meaning of the equations governing the propagation of a strong explosion is easily understood. At a time t the wave reaches a radius R and encompasses a volume $\frac{4}{3}\pi R^3$, whose mass is $M = \frac{4}{3}\pi R^3 \rho_0$. The pressure is proportional to the average energy per unit volume, that is, $p \sim E/R^3$. The gas and shock front velocities are proportional and $D \sim u \sim (p/\rho)^{1/2} \sim (E/\rho_0 R^3)^{1/2}$. Integrating $dR/dt = D$, we find the radius of the front as a func-

* This condition actually determines the limits of applicability of the solution. We impose specific requirements on the accuracy of the solution by comparing the pressure p_1 behind the wave front and the propagation velocity of the wave D, with p_0 and c_0, and find the time when the approximation $p_1 \gg p_0$ is no longer satisfied. It should be noted, however, that the condition for neglecting the counterpressure is stricter, namely: $p_1 \gg [(\gamma+1)/(\gamma-1)]p_0$. This is evident from (1.76); with this condition the density ratio across a shock wave is equal to its limiting value $(\gamma+1)/(\gamma-1)$.

tion of time $R \sim (E/\rho_0)^{1/5} t^{2/5}$ (to within a factor of the order of the numerical coefficient ξ_0). Equation (1.112) demonstrates the similarity law for different explosive energies. The pressure behind the front has a fixed value at distances proportional to $E^{1/3}$, or at times proportional to $E^{1/3}$.

The distributions of pressure, density, and gas velocity with respect to the radius are determined as functions of the one dimensionless variable ξ, which can be written as $\xi = \xi_0 r/R$. Since the motion is self-similar, the shapes of the distributions do not change with time, while the scales for the variables p, ρ, and u are exactly the same functions of time as at the shock front. In other words, the solution can be expressed in the form

$$p = p_1(t)\,\tilde{p}(\xi), \qquad u = u_1(t)\,\tilde{u}(\xi), \qquad \rho = \rho_1\,\tilde{\rho}(\xi).$$

Here $p_1(t)$, $u_1(t)$, and ρ_1 are the pressure, velocity, and density behind the shock front, and are functions of time as given by (1.111) and (1.112), while $\tilde{p}(\xi)$, $\tilde{u}(\xi)$, $\tilde{\rho}(\xi)$ are new, dimensionless functions. Substituting these expressions into the gasdynamic equations for the spherically symmetric case and transforming from differentiation with respect to r and t to differentiation with respect to ξ (by using (1.109) in a manner similar to that of §11) we obtain a system of three ordinary first-order differential equations for the three unknown functions $\tilde{p}$, $\tilde{u}$, and $\tilde{\rho}$. The solution of this system must satisfy the conditions at the wave front $\tilde{p} = \tilde{u} = \tilde{\rho} = 1$, for $\xi = \xi_0$.

We shall not present here the detailed solution and the resulting formulas which may be found in the book by Sedov [5] or the one by Landau and Lifshitz [1]. We note, however, that the only dimensionless parameter ξ_0 included in the solution is determined from the condition of conservation of energy

$$E = \int_0^R 4\pi r^2 \left(\varepsilon + \frac{u^2}{2}\right)\rho\, dr, \tag{1.113}$$

evaluated with the solution obtained. This parameter also depends, as does the entire solution, on the specific heat ratio γ.

The specific heat ratio for atmospheric air is not constant and is a function of both temperature and density, as a result of the dissociation and ionization which take place at high temperatures (see Chapter III). However, it is always possible to select some approximate effective value of the ratio and assume it to be constant. In this way the solution to the idealized strong explosion problem can be applied to describe the actual process. For air we can assume a value of γ to be approximately equal to 1.2 to 1.3.

In Fig. 1.50 are plotted the distributions of the functions p/p_1, ρ/ρ_1, u/u_1, T/T_1 with respect to r/R for $\gamma = 1.23$; the parameter ξ_0 is equal here to 0.930. It is characteristic of a strong explosion that the gas density decreases extremely rapidly behind the front of the shock wave to the center. Practically the

entire mass of the gas that was at first uniformly distributed inside a sphere of radius R is now contained within a thin layer near the front surface. In the vicinity of the front the pressure decreases as we move toward the center by a factor of 2 to 3, and then remains approximately constant over almost all the sphere. The temperature increases as we move away from the front to the center. The increase is rather smooth at first, while the pressure is still decreasing; then, in the constant pressure region, the temperature increases very rapidly. This increase in temperature as we move toward the center is due to the fact that the particles which are near the center were heated by a very strong shock wave and have, as a result, a very high entropy. For an isentropic expansion to the same pressure, the temperature is higher the greater is the entropy of the particles, that is, the closer they are to the center. The abrupt density decrease toward the center is, in turn, due to the increase in temperature (the pressure is constant).

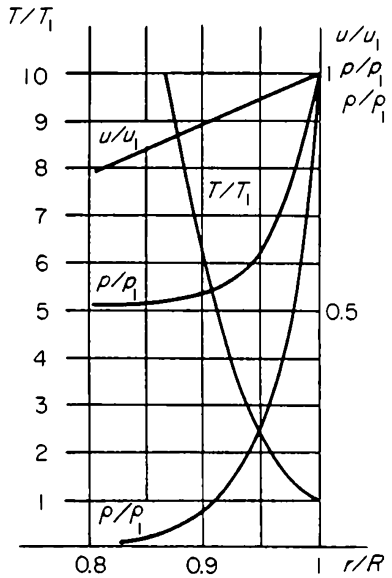


Fig. 1.50 Pressure, density, velocity, and temperature distributions for a point explosion in a gas with $\gamma = 1.23$.

Since the pressure is constant with respect to the radius everywhere except in the region close to the front, we can find the asymptotic distributions of the flow variables as $r \to 0$. It follows from the equation of motion with $p(r) = const$, $\partial p/\partial r = 0$, that $\partial u/\partial t + u\,\partial u/\partial r = 0$, i.e., that $u = r/t$*. To find the asymptotic behavior of the density we carry out a transformation to Lagrangian coordinates (see §2) and characterize the given gas particle by its initial radius r_0 (by "particle" we mean an elementary spherical layer of volume $4\pi r_0^2\, dr_0$). At the time when the shock front passes through the particle, the pressure at the particle p_1 is proportional to $R^{-3} = r_0^{-3}$. Starting at this time, the

* *Editors' note.* This argument is not complete, as $\rho \to 0$ in the limit. A more detailed calculation gives $u = (2/5\gamma)\, r/t$.

particle r_0 expands isentropically so that its density at a later time t is

$$\rho(r_0 t) = \rho_1 \left[\frac{p(r_0 t)}{p_1(r_0)}\right]^{1/\gamma}$$

However, at the given time t the pressure of all the particles in the "cavity" near the center are the same and $p_1(t)$ is proportional to $t^{-6/5}$. Hence, in Lagrangian coordinates the asymptotic result for the density is $\rho \sim r_0^{3/\gamma} t^{-6/5\gamma}$. Let us make a transformation to Eulerian coordinates by means of equation (1.24), $\rho r^2\, dr = \rho_0 r_0^2\, dr_0$. Substituting for the density and integrating, we obtain the Eulerian radius as a function of time $r \sim r_0^{(\gamma-1)/\gamma} t^{2/5\gamma}$. Eliminating r_0 from this expression by means of the function $\rho(r_0 t)$, we obtain the desired asymptotic behavior for the density

$$\rho \sim r^{3/(\gamma-1)} t^{-6/5(\gamma-1)} \qquad \text{as} \quad r \to 0.$$

The asymptotic behavior for the temperature is

$$T \sim \frac{p_c}{\rho} \sim r^{-3/(\gamma-1)} t^{(6/5)(2-\gamma)/(\gamma-1)} \qquad \text{as} \quad r \to 0.$$

§26. Approximate treatment of a strong explosion

The basic relationships governing a strong explosion can be obtained by a simple approximate method proposed by Chernyi [7]. Let us assume that the entire mass of gas encompassed by the explosion wave is concentrated in a thin layer behind the front surface; the density inside the layer is constant and equal to the density behind the front $\rho_1 = (\gamma+1)/(\gamma-1)\rho_0$. The thickness of the layer Δr is determined from conservation of mass

$$4\pi R^2\, \Delta r\, \rho_1 = \frac{4\pi R^3}{3}\rho_0; \qquad \Delta r = \frac{R}{3}\frac{\rho_0}{\rho_1} = \frac{R}{3}\frac{\gamma-1}{\gamma+1}.$$

For example, for $\gamma = 1.3$, $\Delta r/R = 0.0435$.

Since the layer is very thin, the gas velocity inside it remains approximately constant and coincides with the gas velocity behind the front u_1. Let us assume that the density in the layer is infinitely large and that the thickness is, correspondingly, infinitesimally small, while the mass is finite and equal to the mass M contained initially in the sphere of radius R: $M = \frac{4}{3}\pi R^3 \rho_0$. We denote the pressure at the inner side of the layer p_c and let it be the fraction α of the pressure behind the wave front $p_c = \alpha p_1$. Newton's law for the mass M becomes

$$\frac{d}{dt} M u_1 = 4\pi R^2 p_c = 4\pi R^2 \alpha p_1.$$

The mass $M = \frac{4}{3}\pi R^3 \rho_0$ is a function of time so that we differentiate the

momentum Mu_1 with respect to time, rather than the velocity. An external force $4\pi R^2 p_c$ acts on the mass from the inside, since p_c is the force per unit area of the surface; the external force is equal to zero since the initial gas pressure is neglected. Expressing u_1 and p_1 in terms of the front velocity $D = dR/dt$, and using (1.111), we get

$$\frac{1}{3}\frac{d}{dt}R^3 D = \alpha D^2 R^2.$$

Noting that

$$\frac{d}{dt} = \frac{dR}{dt}\frac{d}{dR} = D\frac{d}{dR}$$

and integrating the equation, we find

$$D = aR^{-3(1-\alpha)},$$

where a is a constant of integration.

To determine the quantities a and α we use the principle of conservation of energy. The kinetic energy of the gas is equal to $E_k = Mu_1^2/2$. The internal energy is concentrated in the "cavity" bounded by our infinitesimally thin layer, and the pressure inside this "cavity" is equal to p_c (this means that although most of the mass is contained in the layer, the "cavity" also contains a small amount of the fluid). The internal energy is $E_T = [1/(\gamma - 1)] \times \frac{4}{3}\pi R^3 p_c$. Therefore,

$$E = \frac{1}{\gamma - 1}\frac{4\pi R^3}{3} p_c + M\frac{u_1^2}{2}.$$

Writing again $p_c = \alpha p_1$, expressing u_1 in terms of D, and then substituting the expression for D, we obtain

$$E = \frac{4\pi}{3}\rho_0 a^2\left[\frac{2\alpha}{\gamma^2 - 1} + \frac{2}{(\gamma + 1)^2}\right]R^{3-6(1-\alpha)}.$$

Since the explosion energy E is constant, the exponent of the variable R must vanish. This gives $\alpha = \frac{1}{2}$. The equation thus obtained defines the constant a

$$a = \left[\frac{3}{4\pi}\frac{(\gamma - 1)(\gamma + 1)^2}{(3\gamma - 1)}\right]^{1/2}\left(\frac{E}{\rho_0}\right)^{1/2}.$$

From the equation $D \sim R^{-3(1-\alpha)}$ with $\alpha = \frac{1}{2}$ and from (1.111) we obtain the following familiar relationships:

$$D \sim R^{-3/2}, \qquad p_1 \sim R^{-3}, \qquad u_1 \sim R^{-3/2}, \qquad R \sim t^{2/5}.$$

Using the expression for a we can find the coefficient of proportionality in the relation $R \sim t^{2/5}$ from

$$R = \left(\frac{5}{2}a\right)^{2/5} t^{2/5} = \left[\frac{75}{16\pi}\frac{(\gamma-1)(\gamma+1)^2}{(3\gamma-1)}\right]^{1/5}\left(\frac{E}{\rho_0}\right)^{1/5} t^{2/5} = \xi_0\left(\frac{E}{\rho_0}\right)^{1/5} t^{2/5}.$$

Let us compare the approximate solution with the exact solution. The pressure at the center obtained by the approximate method is one-half of the pressure behind the front, regardless of the specific heat ratio. In the exact solution $p_c = 0.35p_1$ for $\gamma = 1.4$ and $p_c = 0.41p_1$ for $\gamma = 1.2$. The approximate numerical values of the coefficient ξ_0 in the equation for the shock radius (1.110) are: $\xi_0 = 1.014$ for $\gamma = 1.4$ and $\xi_0 = 0.89$ for $\gamma = 1.2$. In the exact solution and for the same values of γ, $\xi_0 = 1.033$ and 0.89, respectively. It is thus evident that the approximate solution yields quite accurate results.

Concepts close in spirit to those described above were used by Kompaneets [13] in an approximate treatment of the problem of a strong explosion in an inhomogeneous atmosphere. This problem is treated in Part 5 of Chapter XII.

§27. Remarks on the point explosion with counterpressure

At a later stage of propagation of an explosion wave, when the pressure behind the wave front becomes comparable to the pressure ahead of it (to be more precise, when p_1 becomes of the order of $[(\gamma+1)/(\gamma-1)]p_0$; see footnote in §25), the self-similar solution to the problem of a strong explosion no longer holds. At this stage the process is no longer self-similar, because the problem now contains characteristic length and time scales, which can be constructed from the total explosion energy E and the parameters characterizing the undisturbed gas. The length scale can be represented by the radius of a sphere $r_0 = (E/p_0)^{1/3}$, whose initial energy is comparable to the explosion energy. The time scale is given by the time for a sound wave to travel through this distance $t_0 = r_0/c_0$, where $c_0 = (\gamma p_0/\rho_0)^{1/2}$. Thus, for example, the length and time scales for an explosion in atmospheric air ($\rho_0 = 1.25 \cdot 10^{-3}$ g/cm^3, $p_0 = 1$ atm, and $c_0 = 330$ m/sec) with a liberation of energy $E = 10^{21}$ ergs (approximately equivalent to the energy liberated in exploding 20,000 tons of TNT) are $r_0 = 1$ km and $t_0 = 3$ sec.

The solution to the problem of the propagation of a point explosion with counterpressure has been obtained in a number of papers [8–10] by numerically integrating the appropriate partial differential equations. Numerical results, tables, and graphs of the distributions of the flow variables at different times can be found in these references and in the book of Sedov [5]. We shall limit our discussion here to some qualitative aspects of the process.

The shock wave becomes increasingly weaker with time and the pressure behind the front asymptotically approaches the initial atmospheric pressure.

There is a corresponding decrease in the density behind the wave front and in its propagation velocity, which asymptotically approaches the speed of sound c_0. The relationship governing the shock propagation $R \sim t^{2/5}$ is gradually transformed into the relationship $R = c_0 t$. When the pressure in the central region becomes close to atmospheric, the expansion of the gas in this region stops and the gas stops moving. The region in which the gas does move is found closer to the shock front, which gradually transforms into a spherical wave of acoustic type. The compression zone across such a wave is followed by a rarefaction zone, after which the air arrives at its final state. The final state of the layers that are far from the center and through which only a weak shock wave has passed differs little from the initial undisturbed state. The pressure, velocity, and density distributions with respect to the radius are shown in Fig. 1.51. If we follow the pressure change with time at a

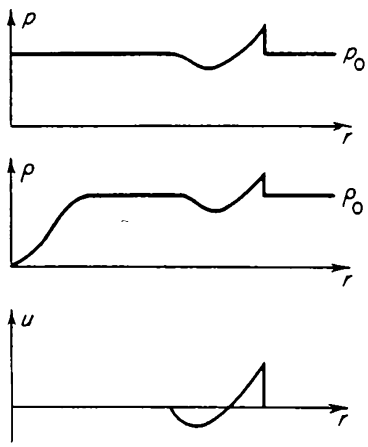
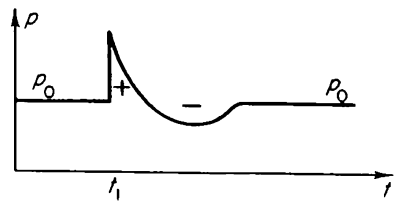


Fig. 1.51. Pressure, density, and velocity distributions at a later stage of an explosion, when the shock wave has become weak.

fixed large distance from the explosion center, we get the picture shown in Fig. 1.52. At the time t_1, when the shock front approaches a given point, the pressure undergoes a discontinuous jump above atmospheric, then decreases below atmospheric (the positive and negative pressure phases), and finally returns to its initial value.

Fig. 1.52. The time dependence of the pressure at a fixed point far from the explosion source.



As previously noted, the final state of the gas far from the explosion source is almost the same as the undisturbed state. At small distances, however, the gas in its final state is very rarefied and heated to a high temperature. This is

due to the fact that a strong shock wave passed through the particles located near the center and the entropy of these particles has become much higher than the initial entropy. The asymptotic distributions of the final densities and temperatures with respect to the radius in the vicinity of the center can be found by considering the isentropic expansion to atmospheric pressure of the particles heated in the front of a strong shock wave. Repeating the calculations presented at the end of §25, with p_c no longer a function of t but a constant $p_c = p_0$, we find the same distributions with respect to the radius for $r \to 0$ as we did in the strong explosion problem, $\rho \sim r^{3/(\gamma-1)}$, $T \sim r^{-3/(\gamma-1)}$. The final distributions of $\rho(r)$ and $T(r)$ are shown in Fig. 1.53. A considerable

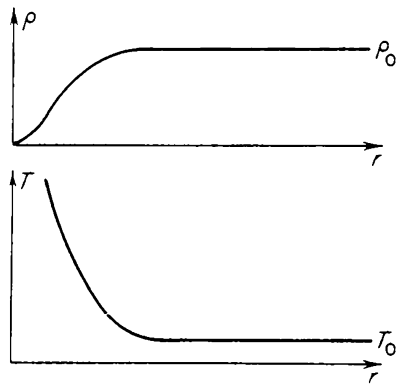


Fig. 1.53. Final density and temperature distributions ($t \to \infty$) for a strong explosion (assuming that the process is adiabatic).

fraction of the explosion energy (dependent on γ, but of the order of several times 10%) is concentrated in the heated region. This energy was spent in irreversibly heating the gas during the shock compression. The remaining energy is carried away by the shock wave and is dissipated in space. In Chapter IX we shall discuss the fate of the energy left behind in the central region (the air in this region is cooled by radiative emission).

The later stage of propagation of an explosion wave has been studied theoretically and experimentally by many authors. Limiting relations governing the wave propagation at large distances were found by Landau [11]. Of great practical importance is the empirical formula of Sadovskii [12], which expresses the pressure behind the wave front as a function of distance from the explosion center. We note that the similarity relationship $p_1 = f(E^{1/3}/R)$ is also valid at a later stage of shock wave propagation, when $p_1 - p_0$ is of the same order as p_0 or less.

§28. Sudden isentropic expansion of a spherical gas cloud into vacuum

Let us consider another gasdynamic problem, the problem of the sudden expansion of a gas cloud into vacuum. This problem will be dealt with in

more detail in Chapter VIII. We imagine a gas occupying initially a spherical volume of radius R_0. We suppose that initially the gas has the uniform density ρ_0 and is at rest (the total gas mass is $M = \frac{4}{3}\pi R_0^3 \rho_0$). The initial pressure in the cloud is also assumed to be constant and equal to p_0, so that the total energy of the gas is $E = [1/(\gamma - 1)]\frac{4}{3}\pi R_0^3 p_0$ (it is assumed that the gas is perfect with constant specific heats). The partition containing the gas is removed at $t = 0$ and the cloud starts expanding into a vacuum.

After the partition has been removed, the discontinuity breaks up and a rarefaction wave propagates through the gas toward the center. The front layers of the cloud expand into the vacuum with the maximum escape velocity $u_{max} = [2/(\gamma - 1)]c_0$. When the rarefaction wave arrives at the center, all the fluid has been disturbed and set in motion. In the process of sudden isentropic expansion, work is done by the expanding gas, the gas is accelerated, and its initial internal energy E is gradually transformed into kinetic energy of radial motion. The motion is an isentropic one, since the initially constant pressure and density along the radius result in the entropy of all the particles being identical. It can be shown (see [15]) that during the isentropic expansion the disturbances originating in the interior regions of the spherical cloud do not reach the boundary. Hence this surface moves with the constant velocity $u_{max} = [2/(\gamma - 1)]c_0$. The relationship governing the motion of the boundary of the cloud is $R = [2/(\gamma - 1)]c_0 t + R_0$. It is not possible to find an exact analytic solution to this problem, since the flow is not self-similar and the solution of a system of partial differential equations is required; this can be done analytically only in a very few exceptional cases. We can convince ourselves that the problem is not self-similar by noting that it contains a characteristic length scale, that is, the initial radius of the cloud R_0.

This problem, however, has the property that the flow asymptotically approaches a self-similar one with time. The role of the initial length parameter R_0 becomes less and less important during the later highly expanded stage where $R \gg R_0$, since the length scale R_0 becomes very small in comparison with the characteristic flow scale, the actual radius of the spherical cloud R. The flow "forgets" about the initial radius R_0 with time. However, not all parts of the flow solution completely "forget" the initial conditions, and this is an evidence of the fact that the flow is not self-similar in at least some essential aspects.

Let us examine the asymptotic behavior of the solution as $t \to \infty$. In this limit the force acting on a unit mass of the gas approaches zero. The force $-(1/\rho)\,\partial p/\partial r$ has the order of magnitude of $-p/\rho R$, where p and ρ are the pressure and density at the time t, averaged over the mass. But the average pressure p is proportional to the ratio of the thermal energy of the entire gas to its volume $p \sim E_{heat}/R^3$ and it is in any case lower than E/R^3. The average density $\rho \sim 1/R^3$, and therefore the force tends to zero at least as fast as $1/R$.

Actually, as $R \to \infty$ the force decreases faster than $1/R$ since the thermal part of the energy decreases during the isentropic expansion: $E_{\text{heat}} \sim M\varepsilon \sim Mp/\rho \sim \rho^{\gamma-1} \sim R^{-3(\gamma-1)}$. Hence, $p \sim E_{\text{heat}}/R^3 \sim R^{-3\gamma}$, and the force decreases as $R^{-3\gamma+2} = R^{-1-3(\gamma-1)}$. The equation of motion for the limits $t \to \infty$ and $R \to \infty$ takes the asymptotic form

$$\frac{Du}{Dt} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + u\frac{\partial u}{\partial r} = -\frac{1}{\rho}\frac{\partial p}{\partial r} \sim \frac{1}{R^{1+3(\gamma-1)}} \to 0, \tag{1.114}$$

that is, the velocities of the fluid particles approach constant values and $u = r/t$.

The sudden expansion becomes inertial as $t \to \infty$. This also follows directly from the condition of conservation of the total energy E, which is made up of the thermal and kinetic energies. The thermal portion of the energy, however, approaches zero asymptotically during the expansion and, consequently, the kinetic energy approaches E. The average (root mean square) velocity of the mass of gas asymptotically approaches the constant limiting value $u_\infty = (2E/M)^{1/2}$, which is a specific numerical fraction of the boundary velocity

$$u_{\max} = \frac{2}{\gamma-1}c_0 = \frac{2}{\gamma-1}\left(\gamma\frac{p_0}{\rho_0}\right)^{1/2} = \frac{2}{\gamma-1}[\gamma(\gamma-1)\varepsilon_0]^{1/2}$$
$$= \left(\frac{4\gamma}{\gamma-1}\frac{E}{M}\right)^{1/2} = \left(\frac{2\gamma}{\gamma-1}\right)^{1/2} u_\infty$$

(for example, in a monatomic gas $\gamma = 5/3$ and $u_{\max} = 2.9u_\infty$). Substituting the asymptotic solution for the velocity $u = r/t$ into the continuity equation, we see that it is satisfied by the density function

$$\rho = \frac{f(r/t)}{t^3}, \tag{1.115}$$

where f is a completely arbitrary function of r/t. Since the radius of the spherical boundary is $R = u_{\max}t$, we can rewrite this equation in the form

$$\rho = \frac{\varphi(r/R)}{R^3}.$$

The asymptotic distribution of the density with respect to the radius does not change with time; it changes in the same ratio as R increases, remaining similar to itself. In the absence of any forces acting on the gas, each particle will indeed move with a constant inertial velocity, there will be no redistribution of mass, and the density profile will remain unchanged. The fact that the problem is not internally self-similar makes it impossible to find the asymptotic density distribution from the equations for the asymptotic flow, as these

equations permit any type of distribution. The density distribution is formed in an earlier stage, when the pressure forces are acting on the gas. By the time the gas is strongly expanded, the distribution "freezes". The density distribution depends on the initial conditions and can be found only on the basis of a complete solution of the problem.

As mentioned previously, it is impossible to find an exact analytic solution to the problem with the initial conditions $\rho_0(r) = const$ and $p_0(r) = const$. We can only construct an approximate solution on the basis of the analogous and solvable plane problem of the sudden expansion into vacuum of a gas layer with a finite mass and constant initial distributions. This approximate solution is presented in the book by Stanyukovich [15] and is of the form

$$\rho = \frac{A}{R^3}\left(1 - \frac{r^2}{R^2}\right)^{\alpha}, \qquad \alpha = \frac{3-\gamma}{2(\gamma-1)}, \qquad R = u_{\max} t.$$

This solution is valid only for integral values of $\alpha = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$, which correspond, respectively, to values of the specific heat ratio $\gamma = 3, 5/3, 7/5, 9/7, \ldots$. The constant A can be determined from conservation of mass by integrating the density over the entire volume of the sphere. The appropriate equation is presented in [15].

§29. Conditions for the self-similar sudden expansion of a gas cloud into vacuum

There exists a class of solutions to the problem of the sudden expansion of a spherical gas cloud into vacuum, where the distributions of all flow variables are self-similar, and are from the very beginning functions of r/R alone, where R is the radius of the spherical cloud. The initial distributions of flow variables with respect to the radius, which lead to these solutions, cannot be arbitrarily set but must satisfy particular conditions. The above class of solutions is characterized by a linear velocity distribution with respect to the radius (these solutions were investigated by Sedov [5]),

$$u = rF(t) = \dot{R}\frac{r}{R}, \tag{1.116}$$

where the function of time $F(t)$ is expressed in terms of the velocity of the spherical boundary of the cloud $\dot{R} = dR/dt$ *. Substituting this expression into the equation of motion we get

$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial r} = -\rho r(\dot{F} + F^2), \tag{1.117}$$

* *Editors' note.* The asymptotic solutions of §28 are of this form, with $F = t^{-1}$.

which must be satisfied by the distributions of p and ρ with respect to the radius during the entire process, including the initial time. Only under this condition will the solution belong to the class under consideration.

Let us consider two specific examples of such solutions.

1. Let the density ρ be constant over the entire volume and independent of the radius

$$\rho = f(t) = \frac{M}{\frac{4}{3}\pi R^3}. \tag{1.118}$$

We can easily check that the specification of density and velocity in the form of (1.118) and (1.116) automatically satisfies the continuity equation for an arbitrary function $R(t)$. Substituting (1.118) into (1.117) and integrating, we obtain a pressure distribution parabolic with respect to the radius

$$p = p_0(t)\left(1 - \frac{r^2}{R^2}\right), \tag{1.119}$$

which then must be specified as an initial condition in order to satisfy (1.117). It is evident that the problem is not isentropic, since the density of all the particles is the same while the pressures are different. Substitution of p and ρ into the entropy equation gives a relationship between the unknown functions: pressure at the center $p_0(t)$ and the radius of the spherical cloud $R(t)$

$$p_0(t) = A\rho^\gamma = A\left(\frac{3M}{4\pi}\right)^\gamma \frac{1}{R^{3\gamma}}, \tag{1.120}$$

where A is a constant depending on the initial entropy at the center of the cloud. Finally, substituting (1.118), (1.119), and (1.120) into the equation of motion (1.117) we get a second-order ordinary differential equation governing the motion of the boundary of the cloud $R(t)$. Solving this equation with the initial conditions $t = 0$, $R = R_0$, and $\dot{R} = \dot{R}_0$, we can find the complete solution to the problem. In particular, we can assume that the gas is initially at rest, with $\dot{R}_0 = 0$.

If we are interested in the asymptotic result as $t \to \infty$, we can set $\dot{R} = const = u_1$, where u_1 is the limiting velocity of the spherical boundary (the solution of the differential equation gives, as expected, $\dot{R} \to const$ as $t \to \infty$). The value of u_1 can be calculated from the condition of conservation of energy using the radial distributions of ρ and u and noting that the total energy is converted into kinetic energy as $t \to \infty$. Thus we get

$$u_1 = \left(\frac{5}{3}\right)^{1/2}\left(\frac{2E}{M}\right)^{1/2} = \left(\frac{5}{3}\right)^{1/2} u_\infty, \tag{1.121}$$

where u_∞ is again defined as the square root of the square of the velocity

averaged over the entire mass (root mean square velocity)

$$u_\infty = (\overline{u^2})^{1/2} = (2E/M)^{1/2}.$$

2. Let the entropy of all the particles be identical (isentropic flow), so that $S(r, t) = const$, $p/\rho^\gamma = A = const$ (A is the isentropic constant). Substitution of $p = A\rho^\gamma$ into (1.117) gives the pressure and density distributions

$$\rho = \rho_c\left(1 - \frac{r^2}{R^2}\right)^{1/(\gamma-1)}, \tag{1.122}$$

$$p = A\rho_c^\gamma\left(1 - \frac{r^2}{R^2}\right)^{\gamma/(\gamma-1)}, \tag{1.123}$$

which, of course, must be specified as initial conditions.

The density at the center ρ_c can be determined by integrating the density over the volume and equating the resulting integral to the total mass. As usual this gives $\rho_c \sim M/R^3$, with a proportionality coefficient which is a function of γ. Equation (1.117) reduces after substitution of (1.122) and (1.123) to a second-order equation in $R(t)$. The limiting value for the velocity of the boundary u_1 can be obtained from conservation of energy

$$E = \int_0^R \frac{\rho u^2}{2} 4\pi r^2 \, dr,$$

if the expression for ρ given by (1.122) and $u = u_1 r/R$ are substituted into the above integral. This yields the relationship between u_1 and $u_\infty = (2E/M)^{1/2}$ in terms of a function of γ, as was the proportionality coefficient. Both coefficients are given by definite integrals that are calculated with the aid of gamma functions. Let us present some numerical results. For $\gamma = 5/3$, $\rho_c = 3.4\bar{\rho}$, $u_1 = 1.64u_\infty$; for $\gamma = 4/3$, $\rho_c = 6.6\bar{\rho}$, $u_1 = 1.92u_\infty$, where $\bar{\rho} = M/\frac{4}{3}\pi R^3$ is the density averaged over the volume. In the limit, as $t \to \infty$, $R \approx u_1 t$ *.

We note that Imshennik [16] considers the problem of the sudden isothermal expansion of a gas cloud into vacuum. We also note the paper of Nemchinov [18] which treats the sudden expansion into vacuum of a gas in which a gradual release of energy takes place.

* Reference [17] contains some numerical solutions to the problem of the sudden isentropic expansion of a gas cloud into vacuum for homogeneous initial conditions and $\gamma = 5/3$ (at $t = 0$ the gas in the sphere is at rest with no variation in density with respect to the radius). Unfortunately, the reference does not present the asymptotic density distribution and only gives a plot of $\rho_c(t)$. It is evident that the function approaches $\rho_c \sim 1/t^3$ with time, and the coefficient in this limiting relation turns out to be higher than in the self-similar solution described above by a factor of only 1.22.

II. Thermal radiation and radiant heat exchange in a medium

§1. Introduction and basic concepts

Until recently high temperatures of the order of tens and hundreds of thousands or even millions of degrees had been mainly of interest in the study of astrophysics. The theory of radiative transfer and radiant heat exchange was created and developed in order to understand processes which take place in stellar media and to explain the observed luminosity of stars. To a large extent, this theory can be also applied to other high-temperature systems considered in modern physics and engineering. In this chapter we shall be concerned with the principles of thermal radiation, the theory of radiant energy transfer, and the theory of luminosity of heated bodies; we shall also derive the equations describing the motion of a fluid in the presence of a strong radiation field. In presenting this material we shall be mainly concerned with terrestrial applications and shall emphasize certain topics that are of little or no importance in astrophysics*.

Let us recall the basic concepts and definitions of thermal radiation. Radiation is characterized by the frequency ν of oscillation of an electromagnetic field or by the wavelength λ related to the frequency and the speed of light c by the relation $\lambda = c/\nu$. In what follows we shall always be dealing with media whose indices of refraction are very close to unity, and we can therefore assume that c is the speed of light in vacuum, equal to $3 \cdot 10^{10}$ cm/sec. From the quantum mechanical point of view radiation can be considered as a collection of particles, photons, or light quanta, whose energy is related to the frequency of the equivalent field by the Planck constant $h = 6.62 \cdot 10^{27}$ erg·sec. It is customary to express a quantum of energy† $h\nu$ in electron volts. One electron volt is the energy acquired by an electron moving through a potential difference of one volt; 1 electron volt (1 ev) is equal to $1.6 \cdot 10^{-12}$ erg. Temperature is also frequently expressed in electron volts. The energy of $kT = 1.6 \cdot 10^{-12}$

* More detailed discussions of the theory of radiative transfer and its applications to astrophysics are given by Ambartsumian *et al.* [1], Unsöld [2], and Mustel' [3].

† In quantum theory it is customary to use the "angular" frequency $\omega = 2\pi\nu$ instead of the frequency ν and, consequently, to use the modified Planck constant $\hbar = h/2\pi$. In this book we shall follow the practice of radiative transfer theory and astrophysics and use the quantities ν and h.

erg, where $k = 1.38 \cdot 10^{-16}$ erg/deg is the Boltzmann constant, corresponds to the temperature T of one electron volt. In general, we define

$$T_{ev} = \frac{kT^\circ}{1.6 \cdot 10^{-12}} = \frac{T^\circ}{11{,}600};$$

thus, 1 ev of temperature is equal to 11,600°K.

The electromagnetic frequency (or wavelength) scale, also termed the radiation spectrum, is conventionally divided into several not too sharply defined bands that have been assigned particular names: radio wave, infrared, visible, ultraviolet, x-ray, and gamma-ray. This division is entirely historical in nature and has no rational physical basis. Some intermediate frequencies are even difficult to classify as belonging to any particular part of the spectrum. An exception is the more or less defined visible part of the spectrum: $\lambda \sim 7500$–4000 Å, $h\nu \sim 1.7$–3.13 ev. It has been shown from the theory of thermal radiation that for thermodynamic equilibrium between the radiation and the medium the frequency distribution of energies has a clearly defined maximum, corresponding to a particular ν which is related to the temperature by the relation $h\nu = 2.82\,kT$. We can say that the most characteristic frequency for a body at a temperature $T = h\nu/2.82\,k$ is ν; hence the frequency range immediately provides some idea about the temperatures corresponding to any given spectral region. Visible radiation is characteristic of bodies whose temperatures are of the order of 7000–13,000°K.

The electromagnetic field or light quanta are characterized not only by their energy but also by their momentum. The absolute value of the momentum of a quantum $h\nu$ is equal to $h\nu/c$. The direction of motion of a quantum is given by the vector representing the energy flux in the electromagnetic field—the Poynting vector.

A radiation field in space is described by the distribution of the intensity of radiation with respect to frequency, to space, and to the direction of the radiant energy transfer. If we consider radiation as a collection of particles —photons—then the field can be described by a photon distribution function which is, to a large extent, analogous to any other particle distribution function. Let $f(\nu, \mathbf{r}, \boldsymbol{\Omega}, t)\, d\nu\, d\mathbf{r}\, d\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ be the number of photons in the frequency interval ν to $\nu + d\nu$, contained at the time t in the volume element* $d\mathbf{r}$ about the point $\mathbf{r}$, and having a direction of motion within an element of solid angle $d\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ (scalar) about a unit vector $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$. The function f is called the distribution function.

Each photon possesses an energy $h\nu$ and moves with the speed c. Hence the quantity

$$I_\nu(\mathbf{r}, \boldsymbol{\Omega}, t)\, d\nu\, d\boldsymbol{\Omega} = h\nu c f(\nu, \mathbf{r}, \boldsymbol{\Omega}, t)\, d\nu\, d\boldsymbol{\Omega}$$

* The linear dimensions of the volume element $d\mathbf{r}$ are assumed to be much greater than the wavelength λ.

represents a radiant energy in the spectral interval dv, passing per unit time through a unit area, with directions of energy propagation contained within the element of solid angle $d\Omega$ about the vector Ω. The area is located at the point $\mathbf{r}$ and is oriented perpendicular to Ω. The quantity I_v is called the spectral radiation intensity. The radiation field is essentially fully defined by specifying either the function I_v or f. The radiant energy of frequency v included in a unit spectral interval of frequency and contained in a unit volume at the point $\mathbf{r}$ at the time t is termed the spectral radiant energy density and is given by

$$U_v(\mathbf{r}, t) = hv \int_{(4\pi)} f \, d\Omega = \frac{1}{c} \int_{(4\pi)} I_v \, d\Omega. \tag{2.1}$$

Let us imagine a unit area with the normal unit vector $\mathbf{n}$. The photons are passing through this area from left to right and from right to left. The amount of radiant energy in the interval dv, passing from left to right per unit time, is equal to $hvc \int_{2\pi} f \cos \vartheta \, d\Omega$, where ϑ is the angle between the directions of motion of the photons Ω and the normal $\mathbf{n}$; the integral is taken over the right hemisphere, having this area as a base (Fig. 2.1). The integral over the left hemisphere is equal to the energy flowing from right to left. The difference between the individual fluxes from left to right and from right to left gives the

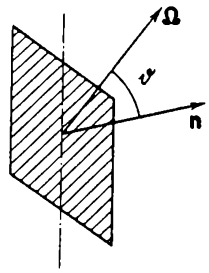


Fig. 2.1. Illustration for the derivation of the relation for radiant energy flux.

net spectral radiant energy flux through the given area. Since $\cos \vartheta$ has different signs in the right and left hemispheres, the spectral radiant energy flux through an area with normal $\mathbf{n}$ is

$$S_v(\mathbf{r}, t, \mathbf{n}) = hvc \int_{(4\pi)} f \cos \vartheta \, d\Omega = \int_{(4\pi)} I_v \cos \vartheta \, d\Omega, \tag{2.2}$$

where the integral is taken over the entire solid angle. The energy flux is a vector quantity. Equation (2.2) represents the component of the flux vector in the direction $\mathbf{n}$. The spectral energy flux vector is given by

$$\mathbf{S}_v = \int I_v \Omega \, d\Omega, \tag{2.3}$$

where Ω is the unit vector in the direction of motion of the photons.

For an isotropic distribution of radiation, where the distribution function f and the intensity function I_ν are independent of the direction Ω, the radiant energy density is equal to

$$U_\nu = 4\pi h\nu f = \frac{4\pi}{c} I_\nu . \tag{2.4}$$

In this case there is no flux and $\mathbf{S}_\nu = 0$; the components in any direction are equal to zero (since equal amounts of energy are transferred in any two opposite directions).

The integrated intensity, density, and flux of radiation are obtained from their spectral counterparts by integrating over the entire frequency spectrum

$$I = \int_0^\infty I_\nu \, d\nu, \qquad U = \int_0^\infty U_\nu \, d\nu, \qquad \mathbf{S} = \int_0^\infty \mathbf{S}_\nu \, d\nu. \tag{2.5}$$

Let us now introduce the concept of the optical characteristics of a material*. The amount of energy of frequency ν which is spontaneously emitted by a unit volume of matter per unit time in a unit spectral interval of frequency is called the emission coefficient J_ν. Usually, because of the random orientation and chaotic motion of atoms, molecules, etc., gases radiate uniformly in all directions (isotropically). Therefore, the amount of energy radiated into a solid angle $d\Omega$ in any direction is simply equal to $j_\nu \, d\Omega = J_\nu \, d\Omega/4\pi$ (j_ν is per unit solid angle). Sometimes the emission coefficient is not defined per unit volume, but per unit mass. To obtain the corresponding quantities it is, obviously, necessary to divide J_ν or j_ν by the density of the matter ρ.

When a beam of light rays passes through matter it is attenuated. This attenuation is due to the absorption of photons as well as to their scattering, that is, deviation from their original direction. The relative weakening of a parallel beam along a path element dx is proportional to this element, following the law

$$dI_\nu = -\mu_\nu I_\nu \, dx. \tag{2.6}$$

On traversing the distance x, from the point $x = 0$ to the point x, the beam intensity is decreased exponentially according to the relation

$$I_\nu = I_{\nu 0} \exp\left[-\int_0^x \mu_\nu \, dx \right]. \tag{2.7}$$

The attenuation (total absorption) coefficient μ_ν is composed of the absorption coefficient $\kappa_{\nu a}$ † and the scattering coefficient $\kappa_{\nu s}$. The reciprocals of these

* Here and in what follows the terms "light", "light quanta" or "photons", and "optical" properties will be applied not only to the visible part of the spectrum, as is usually done, but to any frequency.

† We do not consider here the process of stimulated emission, which will be discussed later, and denote the true absorption coefficient by $\kappa_{\nu a}$.

quantities are the mean free paths of light. Thus, $l_\nu = 1/\mu_\nu$ is the total mean free path, $l_{\nu a} = 1/\kappa_{\nu a}$ is the absorption mean free path, and $l_{\nu s} = 1/\kappa_{\nu s}$ is the scattering mean free path ($l_\nu = (l_{\nu a}^{-1} + l_{\nu s}^{-1})^{-1}$). These mean free paths characterize the attenuation per unit length of a beam of light rays relative to the corresponding process. The coefficients defined per unit of mass rather than per unit of path are termed mass coefficients. The mass coefficients are equal to μ_ν/ρ, $\kappa_{\nu a}/\rho$, and $\kappa_{\nu s}/\rho$, respectively. The mean free path represents an average distance traversed by a photon before it is absorbed, scattered, etc. However, the photon travels with the speed c, and hence the average "lifetime" of a photon in a given process is equal to the length of the path divided by the speed of light l/c. For example, if a fraction of photons $dx/l_{\nu a}$ is absorbed along a path element dx, then $c\,dt/l_{\nu a}$ photons are absorbed in a time dt.

The attenuation of a light beam is described by the product of the attenuation coefficient and the path length. The dimensionless quantity

$$\tau_\nu = \int_0^x \mu_\nu\,dx, \qquad d\tau_\nu = \mu_\nu\,dx \tag{2.8}$$

is called the optical thickness of a layer x with respect to light of frequency ν. A light beam passing through a unit optical thickness is attenuated by a factor of e. In the case when photon scattering can be neglected, the optical thickness becomes

$$\tau_\nu = \int_0^x \kappa_{\nu a}\,dx, \qquad d\tau_\nu = \kappa_{\nu a}\,dx. \tag{2.9}$$

§2. Mechanisms of emission, absorption, and scattering of light in gases

Photons are emitted and absorbed during electronic transitions from one energy state to another in atomic systems (atoms, molecules, ions, electron-ion plasmas). The absorption of a photon is accompanied by the excitation of an atom, molecule, etc. In order to emit a photon the atom must first be excited; the atom loses its excitation energy in transferring it to the emitted photon. The emission coefficient is higher the greater is the number of excited atoms, and thus the higher is the temperature.

Figure 2.2 shows an energy level diagram of the most elementary atomic system consisting of a proton and electron, which in the bound state constitutes the hydrogen atom. As usual, the zero energy level separates the free and bound states of the electron with the energy in the bound states negative. In the bound states the electron energy can assume only certain discrete values. The energy of the ground state of the proton-electron system is $E_1 = -13.5$ ev, and its absolute value equals the ionization potential of the hydrogen atom. In the free state with positive energy (hydrogen ion) the electron energy can assume any value and the energy spectrum is continuous.

The energy spectrum of complex atomic systems does not differ qualitatively from the spectrum of elementary systems. All electronic transitions can be divided (as is done in astrophysics) into three groups using the continuity criterion or the discreteness of the energy spectrum of the initial and final states of the atomic system. These groups are bound-bound, bound-free, and free-free (all allowed transitions are shown by arrows in Fig. 2.2).

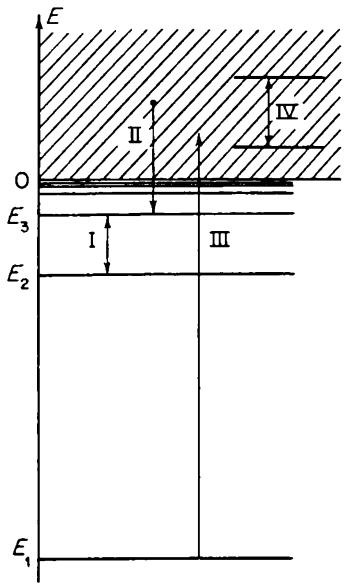


Fig. 2.2. Energy level diagram for proton-electron system. $E_1 = -13.5$ ev is the ground state of the hydrogen atom, E_2 and E_3 are the levels with principal quantum numbers $n = 2$ and 3. $E = 0$ corresponds to the boundary between discrete and continuous spectra. The arrows show the allowed types of transitions: I—bound-bound, II—electron capture by a proton, III—ionization of the atom, and IV—free-free transition.

The bound-bound transitions correspond to electronic transitions in atoms, molecules, and ions from one discrete level to another. By virtue of the discreteness of the energy levels of the bound electronic states, these transitions result in the emission or absorption of line spectra. In molecules where the electronic transitions are accompanied by changes in the vibrational and rotational modes, band spectra are obtained*.

During a bound-free transition resulting from photon absorption, the electron acquires an energy exceeding its binding energy to the atom, molecule, or ion and becomes free—photoionization takes place. The excess of the photon energy over the binding energy is transformed into kinetic energy of the free electron. Reverse transitions, that is, the capture of free electrons by ions in an ionized gas (photorecombination), result in the emission of photons. Since the energy of a free electron can assume any positive value the bound-free transition have continuous absorption and emission spectra. We should

* Transitions in molecules are sometimes associated with changes in the vibrational and rotational states only, without any change in the electronic states. In this case the emitted or absorbed photons have very low energy, lying in the infrared part of the spectrum; at temperatures of the order of several thousand degrees and above their role is insignificant.

note that not any arbitrary photon can produce a photoelectric effect in an atom in a given state. The energy of the photon must exceed the binding energy of the electron in this state. However, even a photon of very low energy can remove the electron from a sufficiently strongly excited atom, because the binding energy of the electron becomes increasingly less as the degree of excitation increases.

A free electron traveling through the electric field of an ion in an ionized gas (plasma) can either emit a photon without losing all its kinetic energy and remain free, or it can absorb a photon and acquire additional kinetic energy. These free-free transitions are usually called *bremsstrahlung* (from the German: *Bremse*—brake, and *Strahlung*—radiation, *eds.*), since the electron is slowed down in the field of the ion and loses a part of its energy in the radiation process. Bremsstrahlung has a continuous emission and absorption spectrum. Bremsstrahlung can also occur when an electron passes through the field of a neutral atom. In contrast to the field of an ion, the field of a neutral atom decreases rapidly with distance, and therefore the electron must pass very close to the atom to ensure the emission or absorption of light. The probability of bremsstrahlung with the participation of a neutral atom is much smaller than the probability of this process with an ion.

The coefficients of bound-bound and bound-free absorption are proportional to the number N of absorbing atoms per unit volume of gas. The value of the coefficient per absorbing atom depends only on the internal properties of the atom, its degree of excitation, and the frequency of the photon; it is a characteristic of the atom itself. This quantity $\kappa_{\nu a}/N = \sigma_\nu$ has the dimensions of a length squared ($\kappa_{\nu a}^{-1}$ has the dimensions of length and N^{-1} of length cubed) and is called the *absorption cross section*. Its physical meaning can be easily understood from the following considerations. Consider a parallel beam of light rays of frequency ν and unit cross-sectional area traveling through an absorbing gas. Let us replace each atom by a small opaque disc placed perpendicular to the direction of the beam. We can now visualize absorption as a process of the capture of the photons which strike the discs. If the area of each disc is equal to σ_ν and the number of discs (atoms) per unit volume is N, then the total area of all the discs in a cylinder of gas of thickness dx and unit base area will be equal to $N\sigma_\nu\, dx$. We choose dx small enough that the discs in the gas layer do not overlap. Then, obviously, the fraction of photons "captured" during the passage of light through this layer is equal to the ratio of the opaque area $N\sigma_\nu\, dx$ to the total area; we have $dI_\nu = -I_\nu N\sigma_\nu\, dx$. Recalling the definition of the absorption coefficient (equation (2.6)) we see that $\kappa_\nu = N\sigma_\nu$, and that we can identify the cross section σ_ν as the area of the opaque (to frequency ν) disc which corresponds to one absorbing atom. In the same manner we can speak of the cross section of an atom or any other particle for the scattering of photons.

Bound-bound transitions are caused by photons with a strictly defined energy $h\nu$, lying within extremely narrow limits. This energy corresponds to the difference between two energy levels in the atom. This absorption is therefore termed selective absorption. The absorption cross sections of "isolated" atoms for these "selected" photons are extremely large. For visible light they are of the order of 10^{-9} cm^2 at the center of the spectral line (in the middle of a narrow band of selective absorption)*. These cross sections correspond to very short photon mean free paths. For example, for a density $N \sim 10^{19}$ cm^{-3} (the order of the density of atmospheric air) the mean free path of a photon would be of the order of $l = 1/\kappa = 1/N\sigma \sim 10^{-10}$ cm.

Cross sections for bound-free absorption, i.e., for the photoelectric effect, are much smaller, of the order of 10^{-17} to 10^{-20} cm^2 ($l \sim 10^{-2}$ to 10 cm for $N \sim 10^{19}$ cm^{-3}). These values apply, of course, only to those photons capable of removing an electron from the atom, photons whose energies are higher than the binding energy of the electron.

In the free-free transitions a photon can be absorbed only if the electron passes very close to the ion at the instant of absorption, i.e., it must "collide" with the ion (a free electron is not capable of absorbing a photon, it can only serve as a scattering center). Hence, the coefficient of bremsstrahlung absorption is proportional to the number of ions as well as to the number of free electrons contained per unit volume; $\kappa_{\text{brems}} \sim N_+ N_e$. We may speak about the cross section of an ion $\sigma_{\text{brems}} = \kappa_{\text{brems}}/N_+$ (with $N_+ \sim N_e$) only in a restricted sense, since this cross section is proportional to the density of the free electrons. It turns out, however, that the bremsstrahlung absorption coefficient in the case of partial ionization is proportional only to the first power of the gas density, since the product $N_+ N_e$ is also proportional to the density. For the photons most frequently occurring at a given temperature, the coefficient of bremsstrahlung absorption is approximately an order of magnitude smaller than the coefficient of bound-free absorption. For complete ionization, however, when only nuclei and electrons are present in the gas (and bound-free absorption is totally absent), the coefficient of bremsstrahlung absorption is proportional to the square of the density.

The photons are scattered mainly by free electrons† (if the photon energy

* The absorption cross section at the center of a line with a certain natural line width is of the order of λ^2, where λ is the photon wavelength. On the wavelength scale, the natural line width in the visible part of the spectrum is of the order of 10^{-4} Å $= 10^{-12}$ cm (1 angstrom (Å) is equal to 10^{-8} cm). (*Editors' note.* Independent of the wavelength.) The width of the spectral lines in gases is usually greater than the natural line width, so that the cross section at the line center based on the natural line width is, correspondingly, smaller than λ^2. For a more detailed discussion see Chapter V, §9.

† We note the existence of resonant scattering in which the absorption of a photon by a bound electron is accompanied by its transition to a bound excited state with the subsequent emission of a photon in a random direction. The resonant scattering cross section at the center of a line, like the absorption cross section, is of the order of λ^2.

is large in comparison with the binding energy of an electron in the atom, then such a bound electron can also be considered as "free"). Photons of intermediate energy, that is, with energies much smaller than the rest mass energy of the electron $m_e c^2 = 500$ ev (these are the usual photon energies in the temperature range under consideration) are scattered without any energy change. The scattering cross section is defined here by the classical electron radius r_0 and is equal to $\sigma_s = \frac{8}{3}\pi r_0^2 = 6.65 \cdot 10^{-25}$ cm^2 (this is the so-called Thomson scattering cross section). This cross section is quite small and corresponds to a scattering mean free path $l_s \sim 10^5$ cm for an electron density $N_e \sim 10^{19}$ cm^{-3}. In estimating the scattering mean free path of high-energy photons, for which conditions all the electrons in the atoms and molecules can be considered as free, it is understood that N_e denotes the total number of electrons in the atoms. For example, in air at standard density $N_{\text{molec}} = 2.67 \cdot 10^{19}$ cm^{-3}, while the total number of electrons is approximately 14.4 times greater. The scattering mean free path is equal to 37 meters. It should be noted that the cross section for very high energy photons (energies measured in Mev) is different from the Thomson cross section.

The scattering mean free path of a photon belonging to a continuous spectrum in a partially ionized gas is always much longer than the corresponding absorption mean free path. The scattering becomes considerable only in a very rarefied and fully ionized gas, when the bremsstrahlung absorption, which is proportional to N^2, becomes small. The scattering of light under terrestrial conditions can always be neglected in comparison with absorption*. Therefore, in our subsequent development we shall drop the subscript "a" on the quantities κ_ν, l_ν, and it is to be understood that these quantities denote the absorption coefficient and the absorption mean free path, respectively.

This concludes our general survey of the mechanisms of interaction between radiation and matter. Explicit expressions for the absorption coefficients are not required now. Chapter V is devoted to a detailed consideration of these problems.

§3. Equilibrium radiation and the concept of a perfect black body

Let us imagine an infinite medium in thermodynamic equilibrium at a constant temperature T. Under steady state conditions the radiation field will also be in equilibrium. Thermal radiative equilibrium is characterized by the fact that the number of photons or amount of radiant energy emitted by the medium per unit time per unit volume in a given frequency interval $d\nu$ and in a given differential solid angle $d\Omega$ is exactly equal to the number of absorbed photons or to the radiant energy absorbed by the medium in the same intervals $d\nu$ and $d\Omega$. The equilibrium radiation field is isotropic, is

* Under conditions encountered in astrophysics, scattering is sometimes even greater than absorption.

independent of both the direction and specific properties of the medium; the field is a universal function of the frequency and temperature.

The spectral energy density function for radiative equilibrium U_{vp} was derived by Planck early in the development of the quantum theory. The most natural way to obtain this function is to apply the laws of quantum statistics which govern the behavior of a "photon gas" (see, for example, [4]). The

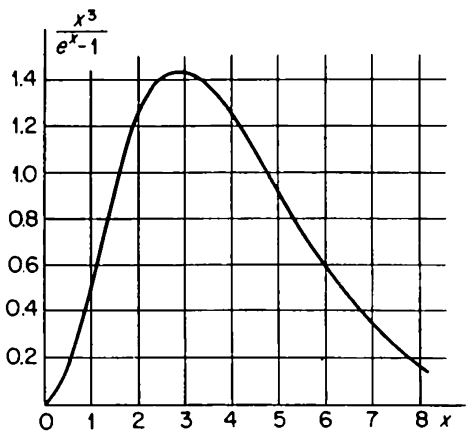


Fig. 2.3. The Planck function $x^3(e^x - 1)^{-1}$, where $x = h\nu/kT$.

amount of energy per unit volume radiated at equilibrium with a frequency ν per unit frequency interval is

$$U_{\nu p} = \frac{8\pi h\nu^3}{c^3} \frac{1}{e^{h\nu/kT} - 1}. \tag{2.10}$$

As a result of the isotropy, the spectral intensity for radiative equilibrium is*

$$I_{\nu p} = \frac{cU_{\nu p}}{4\pi} = \frac{2h\nu^3}{c^2} \frac{1}{e^{h\nu/kT} - 1}. \tag{2.11}$$

The energy distribution for radiative equilibrium as a function of frequency is given by the Planck function (2.10), which is plotted in Fig. 2.3. The maximum of this distribution occurs at a photon energy $h\nu_{\max} = 2.822\, kT$. As the temperature increases the maximum is displaced toward the higher frequencies. In the low frequency region $h\nu \ll kT$, the Planck formula reduces to the classical Rayleigh–Jeans law

$$U_{\nu p} = \frac{8\pi kT}{c^3} \nu^2, \qquad h\nu \ll kT. \tag{2.12}$$

In the high frequency region $h\nu \gg kT$ we get Wien's displacement law

$$U_{\nu p} = \frac{8\pi h\nu^3}{c^3} e^{-h\nu/kT}, \qquad h\nu \gg kT. \tag{2.13}$$

* In astrophysics the symbol B_ν is ordinarily used in place of $I_{\nu p}$.

The integrated equilibrium radiant energy density is obtained by integrating the spectral energy density (2.10) over all frequencies from 0 to ∞. This yields the well-known expression

$$U_p = \int_0^\infty U_{\nu p}\, d\nu = \frac{4\sigma T^4}{c}, \tag{2.14}$$

where $\sigma = 2\pi^5 k^4/15h^3c^2 = 5.67 \cdot 10^{-5}\,\mathrm{erg/cm^2 \cdot sec \cdot deg^4}$ is the Stefan–Boltzmann constant ($U_p = 7.57 \cdot 10^{-15}\, T^{\circ 4}\,\mathrm{erg/cm^3}$).

The fact that the integrated equilibrium radiant energy density is proportional to the fourth power of the temperature follows directly from the second law of thermodynamics and from the well-known result of classical electrodynamics that the pressure of an isotropic radiation field is equal to one-third of the energy density, i.e., $p_\nu = U_p/3$. Substituting this expression into the general thermodynamic relationship $T\,dS = d\varepsilon + p\,dV$ *, where the internal energy is understood to denote the product of the radiant energy density and the volume ($\varepsilon = U_p V$), and noting that dS is a total differential, we obtain $U_p = const\ T^4$. We note that the relation $p_\nu = U_p/3$ is an evidence of the fact that equilibrium radiation can be considered from a thermodynamic point of view as a perfect gas with a specific heat ratio $\gamma = 4/3$.

Since an equilibrium radiation field is isotropic the net radiant energy flux at any point inside a body is zero. This means that if we visualize a plane surface drawn inside a body, then the one-sided radiant energy fluxes through the surface from right to left and from left to right are exactly equal in magnitude and opposite in direction. The one-sided flux itself, that is, the amount of radiant energy passing (for example) from left to right per unit time per unit area, can be obtained by substituting (2.11) for the equilibrium intensity into (2.2) and integrating over a hemisphere (rather than over the entire solid angle). The result is the one-sided spectral radiant energy flux

$$S_{\nu p} = \frac{cU_{\nu p}}{4} = \frac{2\pi h\nu^3}{c^2} \frac{1}{e^{h\nu/kT} - 1}. \tag{2.15}$$

The one-sided flux integrated over all frequencies is

$$S_p = \int_0^\infty S_{\nu p}\, d\nu = \frac{cU_p}{4} = \sigma T^4. \tag{2.16}$$

Let us imagine a body of material at a constant temperature T containing a cavity filled with equilibrium radiation. The radiant energy flux delivered by the cavity to a unit area of surface material per unit time is $S_{\nu p}$. This flux is, in general, partially reflected from the walls of the cavity and partially transmitted into the body and finally absorbed by the body (we assume that the

* Here S is the entropy of radiation.

body is of infinite extent and that the flux does not emerge from the body). Let us denote the reflectivity and absorptivity by R_ν and A_ν, respectively, with $A_\nu = 1 - R_\nu$. The radiation transmitted from the cavity into the body and absorbed by it is equal to $S_{\nu p} \cdot A_\nu$. As a consequence of equilibrium the same amount of radiation $J'_\nu = S_{\nu p} \cdot A_\nu$ is emitted by the body per unit time per unit area of surface. The absorptivity, the reflectivity, and the amount of radiation emitted by the surface are characteristics of the material and of its thermodynamic state. Nevertheless, the relationship

$$\frac{J'_\nu}{A_\nu} = S_{\nu p} = \frac{2\pi h\nu^3}{c^2} \frac{1}{e^{h\nu/kT} - 1} \tag{2.17}$$

is independent of the specific properties of the body and is a universal function of the frequency and temperature. This statement is called Kirchhoff's law.

A body which completely absorbs the entire radiation incident upon it is called a perfect black body. By definition, for a perfect black body $R_\nu = 0$ and $A_\nu = 1$. It follows from (2.17) that a spectral energy flux equal to $S_{\nu p}$ emanates from its surface and that the flux integrated over the spectrum is equal to $S_p = \sigma T^4$.

Let us consider an unbounded continuous medium at a constant temperature T in which the radiation is in equilibrium with the matter, and let us again divide the medium by an imaginary plane. One-sided energy fluxes through the surface are equal to $S_{\nu p}$. Photons passing through the surface from left to right are "born" to the left of the surface, while those traveling from right to left are "born" to the right of the surface. We imagine that the matter is removed from one side of the surface, let us say from the right side, and assume that the temperature of the matter to the left remains unchanged. In addition, let us assume that the index of refraction of the medium is equal to unity (the same as the empty space which is created to the right), and thus that the interface boundary does not reflect light. Then after the matter has been "removed" from the right side, there will be no photon flux from that side, while the photon flux from the left side will obviously remain the same and equal to $S_{\nu p}$. Therefore, a half-space filled with matter with an index of refraction equal to unity and at a constant temperature T emits from the surface a radiant energy flux equal to $S_{\nu p}$, that is, it radiates as a perfect black body at a temperature T.

§4. Induced emission

Let us consider the balance between the absorption and emission of light in material placed in a radiation field I_ν. The radiant energy in the frequency

interval dv and in the element of solid angle $d\Omega$ absorbed per unit volume per unit time is

$$\kappa_\nu I_\nu \, dv \, d\Omega = \textit{absorption per unit volume per unit time.} \qquad (2.18)$$

The amount of energy spontaneously emitted per unit volume of the material per unit time in the same interval $dv \, d\Omega$ is

$$j_\nu \, dv \, d\Omega = \textit{spontaneous emission per unit volume per unit time.}$$

The magnitude of the spontaneous emission (the emission coefficient j_ν) is determined only by the properties and the state of the material, i.e., the type of atoms, the temperature (which affects the degree of excitation of the atoms), and so forth, and is absolutely independent of any radiation which may or may not be present in space. This, however, does not exhaust the total amount of radiation emitted by the material.

There also exists the so-called stimulated or induced emission. The probability of an induced emission of a photon with a given frequency and direction is proportional to the radiation intensity of the same frequency and direction present at the given point in space. The existing photons "facilitate" the transitions of excited atomic systems, which are accompanied by the emission of the same types of photons. The quantum theory shows that the total probability of emission of a photon is proportional to $1 + n$, where n is the number of photons with a definite direction of polarization and located in the same phase cell which admits the emitted photon. This number is equal to $n = c^2 I_\nu / 2h\nu^3$ *. Therefore the total radiation emitted per unit time per unit volume in the interval $dv \, d\Omega$ is

$$j_\nu \, dv \, d\Omega \left(1 + \frac{c^2}{2h\nu^3} I_\nu \right) = \textit{total emission per unit volume per unit time.} \qquad (2.19)$$

The first term in parentheses corresponds to the spontaneous emission and the second to the induced emission†.

In a state of thermodynamic equilibrium the emission and absorption of photons of given frequencies and directions are exactly compensated by each

* The phase volume corresponding to an element $dv \, d\Omega \, d\mathbf{r}$, containing $f \, dv \, d\Omega \, d\mathbf{r}$ photons, is equal to $d\mathbf{p} \, d\mathbf{r}$, where $d\mathbf{p}$ is a volume element in the momentum space. Since the momentum of a photon is equal to $\mathbf{p} = h\nu\Omega/c$, $d\mathbf{p} = p^2 \, dp \, d\Omega = h^3\nu^2 \, dv \, d\Omega/c^3$. The number of phase cells in an element of phase space $d\mathbf{p} \, d\mathbf{r}$ is equal to $d\mathbf{p} \, d\mathbf{r}/h^3$ and, consequently, the number of photons in one cell is $f \, dv \, d\Omega \, d\mathbf{r} \, h^3/d\mathbf{p} \, d\mathbf{r} = c^2 f/\nu^2 = c^2 I_\nu / h\nu^3$. The number of photons with a specific polarization direction is equal to one half of this number, or $c^2 I_\nu / 2h\nu^3$.

† *Editors' note.* This rule for induced emission depends upon an assumption as to the independence of the emitting atoms in responding to the stimulating radiation. The rule may fail to apply in certain cases as, for example, that of a laser with a very high emission rate.

other, so that (2.18) and (2.19) should be set equal, and the radiation intensity I_ν should be replaced by the equilibrium value $I_{\nu p}$. Using (2.11) for the equilibrium intensity, we find that the ratio of the emission coefficient of any substance to its absorption coefficient is a universal function of frequency and temperature

$$\frac{j_\nu}{\kappa_\nu} = \frac{I_{\nu p}}{1 + (c^2/2h\nu^3)I_{\nu p}} = \frac{2h\nu^3}{c^2} e^{-h\nu/kT}. \tag{2.20}$$

This relation is one form of Kirchhoff's law. It is convenient to rewrite (2.20) as

$$j_\nu = I_{\nu p}\kappa_\nu(1 - e^{-h\nu/kT}). \tag{2.21}$$

The total emission coefficient in all directions is equal to

$$J_\nu = 4\pi j_\nu = cU_{\nu p}\kappa_\nu(1 - e^{-h\nu/kT}). \tag{2.22}$$

Kirchhoff's law expresses the general principle of detailed balancing applied to the emission and absorption of light. It allows us to calculate the emission coefficient of a substance if the absorption coefficient is known (and vice versa)*.

* *Editors' note.* The principle of detailed balancing underlies much of the physics presented in this text. It is important to understand the nature of this principle. As used by the authors and by most other authors the principle refers to a balance between a particular process and its reverse process in a system which is in thermodynamic equilibrium. When results of the principle (such as Kirchhoff's law above) are applied to a system which is not in strict thermodynamic equilibrium, it is essential that an appropriately defined thermodynamic quasi or restricted equilibrium apply, so that an appropriate temperature is definable.

A quasi equilibrium in a thermodynamic system appears when certain energy modes in the system equilibrate rapidly, where the interaction between these modes and other energy modes is very weak. The restricted system in which only these rapidly equilibrating modes are taken into account can be approximately in thermodynamic equilibrium and possess a definable temperature. This concept is essential in the theory of radiative transfer, and in the theory of relaxation processes treated in Chapter VI.

In the theory of radiative transfer treated in this chapter from §5 on, Kirchhoff's law is fundamental. The quantities j_ν, κ_ν, and $I_{\nu p}$ are functions of the temperature of the medium. With the radiation not in equilibrium, with $I_\nu \neq I_{\nu p}$, this temperature is definable only if the medium is in a quasi equilibrium; this restricted equilibrium must be maintained, for example, through collisions. Kirchhoff's law does not apply where such a quasi equilibrium does not hold, as with the lasers discussed in §4a.

The principle of detailed balancing rests upon the fundamental physical principle of microscopic reversibility, and some authors use the term for a microscopic statement of balance which does not involve the concept of equilibrium (cf. Landau and Lifshitz [15]). Some results classically derived using the principle of detailed balancing, in particular the Einstein relation of Chapter V, (5.71), rest directly upon microscopic reversibility and do not involve the concepts of equilibrium or temperature. For a discussion of the microscopic basis of detailed balancing see Reif [16].

The existence of induced emission (atomic transitions whose probability depends on the number of "particles"—photons—already present in the final state of the atom-plus-photon system) is characteristic of processes in which "particles" (the photons) obeying Bose quantum statistics take part. Indeed, it is due to the presence of these processes that the distribution function for the photon gas differs from the distribution function for a gas governed by classical Boltzmann statistics. With Boltzmann statistics the number of particles with energy ε is proportional to $e^{-\varepsilon/kT}$ and not to $(e^{\varepsilon/kT}-1)^{-1}$, as for the photons where $\varepsilon = h\nu$. In order to clarify this statement let us consider a simple case where the atom has only two energy levels ε_1 and ε_2 ($\varepsilon_2 > \varepsilon_1$), and where the transition from the upper to the lower energy level is accompanied by the emission of a photon $h\nu = \varepsilon_2 - \varepsilon_1$ while the transition from the lower to the upper level is accompanied by an absorption of a photon $h\nu$. The probability of absorption κ_ν is proportional to the number of atoms in the lower energy state which, according to Boltzmann statistics, is proportional to $\exp(-\varepsilon_1/kT)$. The probability of spontaneous emission j_ν is proportional to the number of atoms in the upper energy state, that is, to $\exp(-\varepsilon_2/kT)$. Let us assume that there is no induced emission. Then, at equilibrium the total number of emitted photons will be equal to the total number of absorbed photons, that is, relation (2.20) or (2.21) can be replaced by

$$\frac{j_\nu}{\kappa_\nu} = I_{\nu p}, \qquad j_\nu = I_{\nu p}\kappa_\nu, \tag{2.23}$$

but $j_\nu \sim \exp(-\varepsilon_2/kT)$, $\kappa_\nu \sim \exp(-\varepsilon_1/kT)$, so that

$$\frac{j_\nu}{\kappa_\nu} = I_{\nu p} = const \cdot e^{-\frac{\varepsilon_2-\varepsilon_1}{kT}} = const \cdot e^{-\frac{h\nu}{kT}}.$$

Thus we have obtained Boltzmann's law for the equilibrium radiation intensity, or in other words, the photon distribution function turns out to be the same as for "ordinary" particles. Actually, Boltzmann's law applies only to the high-energy photons $h\nu \gg kT$ in the Wien region.

The correct description of the equilibrium between the emission and absorption, leading to the Planck distribution function, is obtained only by taking into account the phenomenon of induced emission. In our example of an atomic system with two energy levels we obtain

$$\frac{j_\nu}{\kappa_\nu} = \frac{I_{\nu p}}{1 + (c^2 I_{\nu p}/2h\nu^3)} = const \cdot e^{-\frac{\varepsilon_2-\varepsilon_1}{kT}} = const \cdot e^{-\frac{h\nu}{kT}},$$

which gives us the Planck equation for the intensity $I_{\nu p}$ (with the *const* above equal to $2h\nu^3/c^2$).

The above discussion shows that the induced emission becomes negligible in comparison with the spontaneous emission under equilibrium conditions

as $h\nu/kT \to \infty$, that is, in the Wien region of the spectrum. This is directly evident from (2.19), if we note that at equilibrium and in the limit as $h\nu/kT \to \infty$,

$$I_\nu = I_{\nu p} \sim e^{-h\nu/kT} \to 0.$$

On the other hand, in the Rayleigh–Jeans region of the spectrum, where $h\nu \ll kT$, the relative role of the induced emission becomes dominant; in (2.19) we find

$$1 + \frac{c^2}{2h\nu^3} I_{\nu p} = 1 + \frac{1}{e^{h\nu/kT} - 1} \approx \frac{kT}{h\nu} + \frac{1}{2},$$

so that the ratio of probabilities of induced and spontaneous emissions is equal to $kT/h\nu \gg 1$.

It should be noted that in the case when the radiation field is not in equilibrium, the above considerations about the relative roles of spontaneous and induced emissions are generally invalid. The induced emission is proportional to the actual radiation intensity, which in the absence of equilibrium can be arbitrary.

§4a. Induced emission of radiation in the classical and quantum theories and the laser effect

In recent years there has been a great deal of attention paid to the phenomenon of induced emission of radiation, because of the fact that it serves as the basis of laser and maser operation. In order to explain this phenomenon in physical terms we shall first describe it from the classical point of view. As is well known, in the classical model of a radiating atom the atom is represented with an elastically bound electron, that is, as a harmonic oscillator. Let the electric field of a light wave act on this oscillator as an inducing force, with the wave frequency the same as the natural frequency of the oscillator. If the oscillator was initially at rest at $t = 0$, then under the action of the field it will go into resonant oscillations, with the amplitude increasing as t and the energy as t^2. However, if initially the oscillator already possessed a certain amount of energy, then the force which acts with resonance frequency can excite the oscillator even more or, conversely, can damp the oscillations so that the oscillator will lose energy. Which process occurs depends upon the relationships between the phases of the oscillator and the alternating force. Let us emphasize that in this case the inducing force must be in proper resonance with the oscillator frequency, not only in order to reinforce but also in order to damp the vibrations. This classical concept of resonance energy transfer serves as the basis for the concept of induced emission of radiation.

An oscillator which possesses energy and which is in the required phase

relationship with the light wave in which it is situated will give up its energy to reinforce the passing light wave. Such an oscillator will increase the energy of a coherent wave. In classical language we can say that E_s, the electric field of the oscillator, is added to the wave field E_0. The oscillator field has a suitable angular distribution. But the energy flux is proportional to the square of the field. For this reason the energy flux of the oscillator in the direction of the passing wave is proportional to $E_s E_0$ and is greater if E_0 is greater; this corresponds to the fact that the intensity of the induced radiation increases with an increase in the intensity of the wave which produces it.

However, this classical picture has a flaw which leads to an incorrect form of the equations. In the classical theory a combination of oscillators with arbitrary phases always absorbs more energy on the average than it emits by induced radiation. In order to obtain correct results this problem must be considered quantum-mechanically. We turn to the quantum treatment and its effect on the harmonic oscillator. It is of extreme importance here that the energy levels of the harmonic oscillator are equidistant from one another (the interval is $h\nu$, where ν is the natural frequency). An oscillator situated at the nth level can, under the action of the resonance force, move to either the $(n+1)$th or the $(n-1)$th level. In this case the transition to the upper $(n+1)$th state, with absorption of energy, is more probable than the transition to the lower $(n-1)$th state, with emission of energy. As is known from quantum mechanics, the ratio between the probabilities of these transitions is $(n+1)/n$. This is precisely the fact which shows that a combination of harmonic oscillators absorbs (rather than emits) light on the average.

The decisive prerequisite for obtaining the laser effect, for the predominance of induced emission of radiation, is that the oscillator be anharmonic, and that consequently the energy intervals between neighboring levels should be unequal. If the levels are situated at unequal intervals, then we can have a frequency which is resonant for the transition $n \to n-1$, but is not resonant for the transition $n \to n+1$. Then it is clear that an oscillator in the nth state will only give up energy under the action of light with frequency ν. This is precisely the situation when, with the levels inversely populated (the nth level is full, while the $(n-1)$th level is not), energy is given up and the wave goes into negative absorption; these are the conditions for laser generation*.

* It is of interest that we encounter the effect of anharmonicity in the case of the radiation from electrons in a magnetic field. In the nonrelativistic approximation the electron gyrates with constant angular frequency. A result of this is that the quantum levels of the energy of transverse electron motion in the magnetic field are equidistant. No such distribution of energy in a magnetic field in this approximation can produce a negative absorption coefficient or generate coherent light. Taking into account relativistic corrections, it may be shown that the levels are actually not equidistant and thus at the same time that it is possible to have electron energy distributions which can produce laser generation.

A population consisting of N atoms with two levels each (and which do not interact with one another, such as the chromium atoms in the lattice of ruby) can also be regarded as a single system with equidistant levels; its energy is $E_n = nh\nu$, where n is the number of excited atoms. Unlike an oscillator, where the spectrum of energy states is unbounded above (and the statistical weight of all the states is the same), here the spectrum is bounded not only below ($n = 0$, $E_n = 0$), but also above ($E_{\max} = Nh\nu$). The statistical weight for different n is different, and the maximum statistical weight is obtained at $n = N/2$. This is the reason that in this system absorption predominates at $n < N/2$, while induced emission predominates at $n > N/2$*.

As we stated in the beginning of this section, the concept of induced emission of radiation can be clearly expressed in classical terms. As expected, induced radiation is completely contained in Newton's and Maxwell's equations; it is not without reason that the Rayleigh–Jeans formula (2.12) for the spectral density in the low-frequency range does not contain the Planck constant—after all, induced emission must be taken into account in the quantum-mechanical derivation of the Rayleigh–Jeans formula.

After the discovery of lasers, which have directed the attention of physicists to the phenomenon of induced emission, it has been shown that a large number of processes are most conveniently described in terms of absorption and induced emission. As a remarkable example we can quote the phenomenon of electron scattering from a standing light wave. This phenomenon was predicted by Kapitsa and Dirac [11] more than 30 years ago. A monochromatic light wave, after being reflected by a mirror, creates in space periodically situated regions in which the electric field is small (nodes) and in which it is large (antinodes). The electrons should be scattered at specific "Bragg" angles in the same manner in which electrons are scattered by the periodic field of a crystal lattice. This effect was observed [12] only very recently by using a powerful monochromatic light pulse produced by a laser.

The scattering of electrons by the field of a standing wave may be described quantitatively in new terms as an "induced Compton effect". In fact, the Compton effect is a process of interaction of a γ-photon with an electron

$$\gamma + e = \gamma' + e'.$$

For a given energy and momentum of a photon and an electron before scattering the conservation laws allow any direction (in the center-of-inertia system) for the photon γ' and electron e' after scattering. Thus, under ordinary conditions, the Compton effect produces a statistical distribution in direction of the electrons. Let us return to electron scattering from a standing wave.

* We point out that in [9] the laser effect is considered on the basis of semiclassical concepts, and that in [10] the quantum-mechanical and semiclassical treatments are compared.

A standing wave represents a superposition of an incident wave γ_1 and of a reflected wave γ_2. This means that the Compton scattering can take place as

$$\gamma_1 + e = e' + \gamma_3, \qquad \gamma_2 + e = e'' + \gamma_4.$$

But when the light flux is very powerful, then the law of induced emission predicts the likelihood of the emission of a photon which is the same as the photons already existing, that is, the likelihood of the processes

$$\gamma_1 + e = e_{12} + \gamma_2, \qquad \gamma_2 + e = e_{21} + \gamma_1,$$

which it is natural to term the "induced Compton effect". Since the direction and frequency of both photons (hence their energy and momentum) both before and after scattering have been specified, then the change in the electron direction is fully defined. The electron energy evidently does not change. Moreover, it follows from the conservation laws that this process is possible only when the incident electron has a particular momentum. All the relationships governing diffraction scattering are thus very explicitly obtained from the induced Compton effect concept. A very important general principle is realized in this example, that any action exerted on a system by an external periodic force must, in quantum-mechanical terms, be considered as a combination of absorption and induced emission of appropriate energy quanta by the system. This principle also pertains to problems in which the external force can be regarded as being classical, and implies that we can in this case ignore the reaction of the system on the force, as in the example presented above, the action of an electron on the field of a standing wave. However, even if we consider this force from the classical point of view, its action on the system of photons should, or can*, be considered as absorption and emission of photons. The consideration of a force as classical implies that the induced emission of photons with a frequency determined by the external force is greater by far than the spontaneous emission of any other photons which differ in their frequency, direction, or polarity.

When a system is subjected to a periodic external action, its Hamiltonian can no longer be considered as being independent of time. However, the Hamiltonian is then periodic, $H(t) = H(t + nT)$, which means that there should exist solutions which, after a single period of the acting force, revert to their previous form multiplied by a phase factor

$$\psi_k(t + T) = a_k \psi(t), \qquad |a_k| = 1,$$
$$a_k = e^{i\alpha_k}.$$

Let us introduce the concept of quasi-energy ε_k, where

$$\alpha_k = 2\pi\varepsilon_k T/h, \qquad \psi_k(t + nT) = \psi_k(t) \exp(2\pi i \varepsilon_k n T/h).$$

* We note the paper by Keldysh [13], in which use is made of exact wave functions of an electron in the field of a classical light wave.

This entity is related to the energy in the same way as is the quasi-momentum of an electron in a space-periodic lattice to the proper electron momentum. In this way it is possible to develop an ordered theory of systems subjected to the action of periodic external forces. According to what we have seen this will, at the same time, be the theory of the phenomena of absorption and induced emission.

A second example of the application of the induced emission concept is the theory of the harmonic oscillator. It is well known that the width of a spectral line radiated on transition from state A to state B is the sum of the widths Γ_A and Γ_B of these states. As applied to an oscillator for which the matrix element of the transition from the nth to the $(n-1)$th state is proportional to $n^{1/2}$, we will find that $\Gamma_n = kn$ and $\Gamma_{n-1} = k(n-1)$. It follows from here that the width of the line emitted on transition from the nth to the $(n-1)$th state is proportional to $(2n-1)$. On the other hand, in the classical theory the width of a line emitted by a harmonic oscillator is independent of its amplitude. The radiation intensity is proportional to the square of the amplitude*; consequently, the oscillator energy decreases exponentially $E \sim e^{-\gamma t}$, and the amplitude of its oscillations also decreases exponentially $x = a_0 e^{-\gamma t/2} \cos 2\pi\nu t$. The expansion of this expression in a Fourier integral gives the Lorentz form for the line (see Chapter V)

$$|b(\nu)|^2 = \frac{1}{(\nu - \nu_0)^2 + (\gamma_0/4\pi)^2},$$

with a width which is independent of the amplitude. The paradox of this disagreement between the classical and quantum-mechanical theories for high quantum numbers was noted already by Weisskopf and Wigner [14], and also by Pauli (cited in [14]) at the beginning of the thirties. Reference [14] shows that this paradox is related to a specific property of the harmonic oscillator, the fact that its levels are equidistant, so that the frequencies emitted by transitions between any pair of neighboring levels are strictly identical. Reference [14] considers three states A, B, and C, with cascade emission of two photons $A^{h\nu_1} \to B^{h\nu_2} \to C$. If the levels are not equidistant, then $E_A - E_B \neq E_B - E_C$, $\nu_1 \neq \nu_2$, and we get the standard answer for the line ν_1—its width is proportional to $\Gamma_A + \Gamma_B$.

However, if the levels are equidistant (for example, if C is the ground or zero level, B is the first level, and A is the second level of a harmonic oscillator) the situation becomes more complicated, because the emission of two photons of the same frequency can take place also through a second process, $A^{h\nu_2} \to B^{h\nu_1} \to C$. To calculate the probability of the entire process of the emission of

* Consequently, the time needed for the emission of one energy quantum is inversely proportional to the energy of the oscillator itself; this conclusion, based on the calculation of the value of the matrix element giving the probability of emission, is beyond doubt.

two photons we must add the amplitudes along both processes, with a resultant change in the width and shape of the line. Using current terminology we may say, without referring to the numbers (1st, 2nd) of the photons, that a photon emitted by the transition $A \to B$ produces induced emission from the transition $B \to C$ *. The harmonic oscillator in a state of large quantum number radiates a cascade of photons; in this case the role of induced emission, in comparison with spontaneous emission, is greater the higher is the average number of the state n. The reference here is to emission induced not by external radiation but by the radiation from the oscillator itself. Only by considering the entire cascade process including induced emission will we obtain results which are in agreement with the classical theory.

At any given time the state of the oscillator consists of a superposition of many excited levels. It is also of importance that with induced transitions specific phase relationships between successive levels are obtained, and the state of the system cannot be specified by the same probabilities for the different levels. This situation is also natural: In the classical picture the electron is localized. It is obvious from the uncertainty principle that the description of a localized electron requires taking the superposition of several eigenfunctions (their number being greater the more precise the localization) which must have specific phase relationships. We may ask if the reasoning given applies only to the idealized case of a strictly harmonic oscillator, for which the energy states are equidistant, or also to any anharmonic oscillator? What is the criterion for the application of customary concepts about discrete quantum jumps? Discrete levels themselves may be considered only to the extent that the width of the level Γ_n connected with spontaneous emission is small compared with the distance between the levels, i.e., with the transition frequency,

$$\Gamma_n \ll \nu_{n,n-1} = \frac{E_n - E_{n-1}}{h}.$$

The criterion for the applicability of the customary quantum concepts of the line width (without considering induced emission) has a different form, and is that the width must be small compared with the difference of frequencies

$$\Gamma_n \ll \nu_{n,n-1} - \nu_{n-1,n-2} = \frac{E_n - 2E_{n-1} + E_{n-2}}{h}.$$

It would be very interesting to observe experimentally the effects of "internal" induced emission at high vibrational levels of molecules.

* This point of view is also substantiated by the fact that, according to [14], the spectrum changes when both photons are emitted in the same direction.

The examples presented above show that the concept of induced emission of radiation makes it possible to interpret anew many facts and paradoxes; this concept is an integral part of the interpretation of quantum mechanics.

§5. The radiative transfer equation

Let us set up the kinetic equation for the distribution function of photons of a given frequency. Since this function, to within the constant factor hvc, is identical with the radiation intensity, we can write down the equation for the intensity directly. The kinetic equation written in this form is usually called the radiative transfer equation.

We shall be interested in radiation of frequency ν in a unit frequency interval propagated within a unit solid angle in the direction $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$. Let us consider the

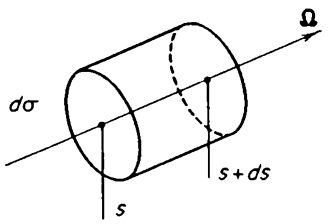


Fig. 2.4. Illustration for the derivation of the radiative transfer equation.

balance of radiation in an elementary cylinder of base area $d\sigma$ and height ds, located at a point in space in such a way that the direction $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ coincides with the axis of the cylinder and is therefore perpendicular to its bases (Fig. 2.4). An amount of radiation $I_\nu(\boldsymbol{\Omega}, \mathbf{r}, t)\, d\sigma\, dt$ flows into the left base during the time dt. An amount of radiation $(I_\nu + dI_\nu)\, d\sigma\, dt$ flows out from the right base during the same time interval dt. The intensity I_ν is a function of both position and time. The change in intensity of the light beam as a result of its passage from the left base to the right one is composed of the local change during the time of passage through the distance ds plus the increment arising from the change in position coordinate from s to $s + ds$ at fixed time,

$$dI_\nu = \frac{\partial I_\nu}{\partial t}\frac{ds}{c} + \frac{\partial I_\nu}{\partial s}\, ds.$$

But within the cylinder the intensity of the beam must change as a result of the emission and absorption of the light of the specified characteristics. (We recall here the remark made at the end of §2 about disregarding scattering of light.) The amount of radiation emitted in the cylinder during the time dt is, according to (2.19),

$$j_\nu\left(1 + \frac{c^2}{2h\nu^3} I_\nu\right) d\sigma\, ds\, dt.$$

On the other hand, the radiation absorbed during the same time interval is $\kappa_\nu I_\nu \, d\sigma \, ds \, dt$. Setting up a balance for the cylinder and dividing the resulting expression through by the product of the differentials $d\sigma \, ds \, dt$, we get

$$\frac{1}{c}\left(\frac{\partial I_\nu}{\partial t} + c\boldsymbol{\Omega} \cdot \nabla I_\nu\right) = j_\nu\left(1 + \frac{c^2}{2h\nu^3} I_\nu\right) - \kappa_\nu I_\nu . \tag{2.24}$$

We have here replaced on the left-hand side the directional partial derivative $\partial I_\nu / \partial s$ by the equivalent vector expression $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \cdot \nabla I_\nu$. The term in parentheses on the left-hand side of (2.24) simply represents the total derivative of the intensity with respect to time, i.e., the time derivative of the intensity of a given photon packet (cf. the hydrodynamic equation of motion (1.16)).

Let us rearrange the right-hand side of (2.24) by collecting together the absorption and induced emission terms, since they are both proportional to an unknown function of position and time—the radiation intensity. Let us also express the emission coefficient j_ν in the induced emission term in terms of the absorption coefficient as defined by (2.21) and substitute into the latter the equilibrium intensity from (2.11). The right-hand side of (2.24) then becomes

$$j_\nu - \kappa_\nu(1 - e^{-h\nu/kT}) I_\nu . \tag{2.25}$$

It now becomes evident that the induced emission can be treated as a decrease in the absorption: some of the photons act as if they were absorbed and immediately re-emitted again with the same frequency and in the same direction; the probability of this "re-radiation" is equal to $e^{-h\nu/kT}$. Physically such "re-radiation" does not occur and it can be excluded from our considerations by considering the absorption coefficient to have the slightly lower value

$$\kappa'_\nu = \kappa_\nu(1 - e^{-h\nu/kT}). \tag{2.26}$$

The interaction between radiation and matter can therefore be represented as if there existed only spontaneous emission and an effective absorption described by the coefficient κ'_ν, which has been corrected for the induced emission in the system. Using this modified representation, Kirchhoff's law (2.21) becomes

$$j_\nu = \kappa'_\nu I_{\nu p}, \qquad \kappa'_\nu = \kappa_\nu(1 - e^{-h\nu/kT}). \tag{2.27}$$

Introducing this expression into the right-hand side of the transfer equation (2.24), we obtain the final form

$$\frac{1}{c}\frac{\partial I_\nu}{\partial t} + \boldsymbol{\Omega} \cdot \nabla I_\nu = \kappa'_\nu(I_{\nu p} - I_\nu). \tag{2.28}$$

Integrating equation (2.28) with respect to all directions Ω (over the entire solid angle) and recalling the definitions of radiation density and flux (2.1) and (2.2), respectively, we obtain

$$\frac{\partial U_\nu}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{S}_\nu = c\kappa'_\nu(U_{\nu p} - U_\nu). \tag{2.29}$$

This equation can be considered as the equation of continuity for radiation of a given frequency. It is an expression of the law of conservation of radiant energy which is completely analogous to the hydrodynamic energy equation written in the "divergence" form (1.10).

The radiative transfer equation (2.28) is a partial differential equation for the intensity as a function of position, time, and direction $I_\nu(\mathbf{r}, t, \Omega)$, and describes a nonequilibrium radiation field. Thermodynamic equilibrium in matter is usually established very rapidly, and it is therefore possible to consider the material to be in a state of thermodynamic equilibrium at each point of space and at each instant of time. The state of the material can then be described by two parameters, such as, temperature and density. The radiative transfer equation includes quantities dependent on the nature and state of the material, in particular the absorption coefficient κ'_ν, which depends on the nature and state of the material, and the equilibrium intensity $I_{\nu p}$, which is a function of the temperature only.

Equation (2.28) also describes, in particular, the history of establishment of equilibrium between the radiation and the matter. Let us imagine an infinite constant density medium. The medium is initially cold, so that radiation is absent. Assume that at the initial time $t = 0$ the matter is "instantaneously" heated and then maintained at a constant temperature T. Let us now examine how the radiation intensity changes with time. Obviously, the spatial gradients in this case are all equal to zero, $\kappa'_\nu = const$ and $I_{\nu p} = const$. The solution of equation (2.28) in this case takes the form

$$I_\nu(t) = I_{\nu p}(1 - e^{-c\kappa'_\nu t}). \tag{2.30}$$

The radiation intensity asymptotically approaches the equilibrium intensity, and the relaxation time required for establishing equilibrium between the radiation and the material is $t_p = 1/c\kappa'_\nu = l'_\nu/c = l_\nu/(1 - e^{-h\nu/kT})c$. For example, with $l_\nu = 1$ cm, in the maximum part of the Planck spectrum $h\nu = 2.8\,kT$ we would have $t_p = 3 \cdot 10^{-11}$ sec.

§6. Integral expressions for the radiation intensity

Let us now obtain a formal solution of the radiative transfer equation by considering those quantities which depend only upon the state of the material $I_{\nu p}(T)$, $\kappa'_\nu(T, \rho)$ to be known functions of position and time. For simplicity,

we consider first the steady state case, where the temperature and density distributions and also the radiation field are independent of time. We shall be concerned with the radiation at a point **r** of a body of matter or fluid, propagating in the direction Ω (Fig. 2.5). We draw a ray through the given point in the given direction. The coordinate along the ray we denote as s. Noting that the differential expression on the left-hand side of the transfer equation (2.28) represents the total derivative of the intensity of a photon packet along the direction of propagation, we can rewrite this equation as

$$\frac{dI_\nu}{ds} + \kappa'_\nu I_\nu = \kappa'_\nu I_{\nu p}. \tag{2.31}$$

This equation may be considered as an ordinary linear equation for the intensity along the direction of propagation. Its solution is

$$I_\nu(s) = \int_{s_0}^{s} \kappa'_\nu I_{\nu p} \exp\left[-\int_{s'}^{s} \kappa'_\nu \, ds''\right] ds' + I_{\nu_0} \exp\left[-\int_{s_0}^{s} \kappa'_\nu \, ds''\right]. \tag{2.32}$$

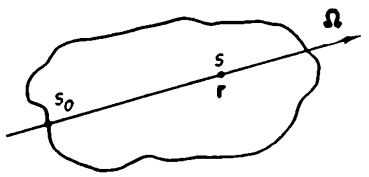


Fig. 2.5. Diagram showing the limits of integration in (2.32).

Here $I_\nu(s)$ is the intensity $I_\nu(\mathbf{r}, \Omega)$, considered as a function of the coordinate s along the ray. The integration along the ray is in general carried out from "$-\infty$", although actually it is from the boundary of the body of matter s_0 (as shown in Fig. 2.5). The constant of integration is denoted by $I_{\nu 0}$.

Let us clarify the physical meaning of the above solution. Radiation passing per unit time through a unit cross-sectional area at the point s (per unit solid angle) is made up of all photons "born" in a cylinder of unit cross section along the ray. An amount of radiation $j_\nu \, ds' = \kappa'_\nu I_{\nu p} \, ds'$ is "born" at the point s' on the ray segment ds' and is propagated along the ray Ω within a unit solid angle. Only the fraction $\exp\left[-\int_{s'}^{s} \kappa'_\nu \, ds''\right]$ of this radiation arrives from the point s' to the point s while the rest is absorbed along the way. The total intensity is made up of photons "born" in all elementary segments ds', that is, it is equal to the integral along the ray. If the radiating body of matter has finite dimensions, then the integration must be carried out from the boundary of the body s_0 to the point s. In this manner we obtain the first term in (2.32). The second term represents the radiation that entered the body at the boundary s_0 from external sources. The constant of integration $I_{\nu 0}$ is the intensity of this external radiation entering the body. The factor $\exp\left[-\int_{s_0}^{s} \kappa'_\nu \, ds''\right]$ accounts for the decrease in intensity along the interval

from s_0 to s caused by absorption. The absorption coefficient κ'_ν and the equilibrium intensity $I_{\nu p}$ are functions of position along the ray, because of their dependence on temperature and density which are distributed in some manner along the ray. If these functions are known, then the determination of the intensity at any point of the body of matter reduces, as is easily seen from (2.32), simply to a quadrature, to an integration along the ray.

Let us generalize the solution (2.32) to the unsteady case, where the temperature and density and, consequently $I_{\nu p}$, κ'_ν as well as the intensity I_ν are functions of time. It is obvious that at the time t and the point s photons arrive from the point s' which were born at an earlier time $t - (s - s')/c$. As before, the photons are absorbed by the material at a point s'' along the ray. This absorption is determined by the magnitude of the absorption coefficient at the time $t - (s - s'')/c$. It follows that the unsteady solution of the transfer equation can be written in the form

$$I_\nu(s, t) = \int_{s_0}^{s} (\kappa'_\nu I_{\nu p})_{s', t-(s-s')/c} \exp\left[-\int_{s'}^{s} (\kappa'_\nu)_{s'', t-(s-s'')/c}\, ds'' \right] ds' + (I_{\nu 0})_{s_0, t-(s-s_0)/c} \exp\left[-\int_{s_0}^{s} (\kappa'_\nu)_{s'', t-(s-s'')/c}\, ds'' \right], \qquad (2.33)$$

where the coordinate of the boundary s_0 is taken at the time $t - (s - s_0)/c$. It is easy to show by direct substitution that the solution (2.33) satisfies the unsteady transfer equation. It is evident from (2.32) or (2.33) that the contribution of the far sources in a highly absorptive medium to the total intensity at a given point decreases exponentially with distance. Photons arriving at point s are "born" in the immediate vicinity at distances not exceeding several radiation mean free paths or, more precisely, at distances not exceeding several optical thicknesses. This situation is particularly easy to see in the case when the absorption coefficient is constant along the ray. Then the exponential factors become

$$\exp\left[-\int_{s'}^{s} \kappa'_\nu\, ds'' \right] = \exp\left[-\kappa'_\nu(s - s')\right] = \exp\left[-\frac{s - s'}{l'_\nu} \right]; \qquad l'_\nu = \frac{1}{\kappa'_\nu}.$$

The case of sharp temperature gradients constitutes an exception. Here, the effect of the increase in the emission coefficient $j_\nu = \kappa'_\nu I_{\nu p}$ with distance from a point may be greater than the effect of the absorption over the same path. This, however, almost never occurs in practice, and the main contribution to the integrals in (2.32) and (2.33) is provided by the segment of the ray in the vicinity of the point considered. The length of this segment is of the order of several (two or three) radiation mean free paths. Light, however, traverses this distance within a very short time interval l'_ν/c which, as a rule, is much shorter than the characteristic times required to produce any significant change in

the state (temperature and density) of the material. For example, for a mean free path $l'_\nu = 3$ cm this time is $l'_\nu/c \approx 10^{-10}$ sec, which is much shorter than the characteristic times encountered in ordinary flows. This is simply a consequence of the fact that the fluid velocity is ordinarily much less than the speed of light.

The fact noted above is quite important. It indicates that the radiation field in practically all cases can be regarded as quasi-steady at any instant of time. This condition corresponds to an instantaneous distribution of emission and absorption sources, that is, a distribution of temperature and density in the fluid. As a result, we can neglect the derivative of the intensity with respect to time in the radiative transfer equation and consider time as a parameter upon which the temperature and density (and therefore, $I_{\nu p}$ and κ'_ν) will depend. Henceforth we shall always use the simplified transfer equation

$$\Omega \cdot \nabla I_\nu = \kappa'_\nu (I_{\nu p} - I_\nu) \tag{2.34}$$

or its solution in the form (2.32).

§7. Radiation from a plane layer

In general, radiative transfer and radiant heat exchange have an influence on the state of the fluid, on its motion, or on the steady state temperature distribution. This influence is caused by the fact that the fluid by emitting or absorbing light either loses or gains energy, so that it is either cooled or heated. In general the state of the fluid can be described by the hydrodynamic equations which, in the presence of radiant heat exchange, must be generalized to include the interaction between the radiation and the fluid. Since the radiative transfer is also a function of the state of the fluid, of the temperature, and of density, then a system of equations describing both the fluid and the radiation generally consists of a properly generalized set of hydrodynamic equations together with a generalized radiative transfer equation.

In many cases, however, the "reciprocal" effect of the radiation on the fluid is either not too great, or may be accounted for by some approximate method. For example, at sufficiently low temperatures the radiant heat exchange and the energy losses suffered by the fluid from radiation are unimportant. In this case, the state of the fluid is practically independent of the radiation and the problem of determining the radiation field and the state of the fluid may be treated separately. The state of the fluid is described, for example, by the hydrodynamic equations, while the radiation field at any time may then be found from the known temperature and density distributions and the known absorption coefficients.

As a rule, in this case we are not interested in determining the entire radiation field in the medium (since it does not affect the state of the medium), but we are interested rather in determining the radiation emitted from the surface of the body of fluid, that is, the luminosity of the heated body, the surface brightness, the radiation spectrum, the angular distribution of flux, and so forth. If the optical properties of the fluid are known, that is, the absorption coefficient κ'_ν * is given as a function of frequency and of the temperature and density distribution in the body of fluid, then the answer to all of these problems is given by the integral formula for the intensity (2.32).

Considering the radiation emitted from the surface of a body of fluid, we can, without loss of generality, measure the distance s along the ray from the surface into the body of fluid (changing the sign of s) and extend the integration along the ray to infinity,

$$I_\nu(\Omega) = \int_0^\infty I_{\nu p}[T(s)] \exp\left(-\int_0^s \kappa'_\nu \, ds'\right) \kappa'_\nu(s) \, ds. \tag{2.35}$$

If the body has finite dimensions then the coefficient of absorption outside its boundary is equal to zero and the corresponding segment of integration will vanish. If "external" radiation penetrates a body of finite dimensions from "behind" (through its "back" surface) then by extending the integration along the ray to infinity we will also include the effect of these "external" sources.

Let us consider some simple examples that are of practical interest. Let the body of matter occupy an infinite half-space $x > 0$ and be bounded by a plane surface. The temperature of the body is constant while the absorption coefficient can vary arbitrarily from point to point (but in such a manner that the optical thickness of the body $\int_0^\infty \kappa'_\nu \, dx$ remains infinite). The radiation intensity at the surface is, in this case, simply $I_{\nu p}(T)$, since

$$I_\nu(\Omega) = \int_0^\infty I_{\nu p} e^{-z} \, dz = I_{\nu p}; \qquad dz = \kappa'_\nu \, ds, \qquad z = \int_0^s \kappa'_\nu \, ds.$$

The body radiates as a perfect black body at the temperature T. The intensity I_ν is the amount of radiant energy passing per unit time through a unit solid angle and through a unit area perpendicular to the direction of the photon beam†. For a radiating black body this intensity is independent of angle. The radiant energy passing per unit time through a unit area of the surface per unit solid angle and at an angle ϑ to the normal (let us call this quantity the emittance of the body i_ν ‡) is

$$i_\nu = I_\nu(\vartheta) \cos \vartheta. \tag{2.36}$$

* We recall that we are considering here media with indices of refraction equal to unity, such as gases.

† The dimensions of I_ν are energy/cm^2·sec·sterad·frequency = erg/cm^2·sterad.

‡ This should not be confused with the emission coefficient of a medium j_ν or J_ν.

For a radiating black body

$$i_\nu = I_{\nu p} \cos \vartheta. \tag{2.37}$$

Let us consider the radiation of a plane layer of finite thickness d at a constant temperature T and with an absorption coefficient κ'_ν. The radiation intensity at the surface in a direction which makes an angle ϑ with the normal (Fig. 2.6) is

$$I_\nu(\vartheta) = \int_0^{d/\cos\vartheta} I_{\nu p} e^{-\frac{\kappa'_\nu x}{\cos\vartheta}} \kappa'_\nu \frac{dx}{\cos\vartheta} = \int_0^{\kappa'_\nu d/\cos\vartheta} I_{\nu p} e^{-\frac{\tau_\nu}{\cos\vartheta}} \frac{d\tau_\nu}{\cos\vartheta}$$

$$= I_{\nu p}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{\kappa'_\nu d}{\cos\vartheta}}\right) = I_{\nu p}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{\tau_\nu}{\cos\vartheta}}\right), \tag{2.38}$$

where $\tau_\nu = \int_0^d \kappa'_\nu \, dx$ is the optical thickness of the layer in the direction normal to the surface.

Equation (2.38) shows that the radiation intensity for a layer of finite thickness is always lower than the equilibrium intensity. The spectrum differs from the Planck spectrum $I_{\nu p}(T)$ by the factor $[1 - \exp(-\tau_\nu/\cos\vartheta)]$. This factor is a function of the frequency because of the frequency dependence of the absorption coefficient and it approaches unity only as $d \to \infty$. The difference between this intensity and the Planck intensity is strongest in the direction normal to the surface, where the ray segment containing the sources has a minimum length (equal to d). The intensity spectrum approaches the Planck spectrum at large angles to the normal, when $\vartheta \to \pi/2$ and $\cos\vartheta \to 0$.

The greatest difference between this spectrum and the Planck spectrum as a function of the layer thickness d is observed in the limit of an optically thin layer, at such angles that $\kappa'_\nu d/\cos\vartheta \ll 1$. Expanding the exponential factor we find that to second order

$$I_\nu = I_{\nu p} \frac{\kappa'_\nu d}{\cos\vartheta} \ll I_{\nu p}. \tag{2.39}$$

The intensity at the surface is proportional to $1/\cos\vartheta$, and the emittance of the layer is independent of the angle

$$i_\nu = I_\nu \cos\vartheta = I_{\nu p} \kappa'_\nu d \qquad \text{for} \quad \cos\vartheta \gg \tau_\nu. \tag{2.40}$$

It should be noted that the applicability of the concept of the optical thickness of a layer depends upon the angle; that is, it is always possible to find large enough angles ($\vartheta \approx \pi/2$, $\cos\vartheta \ll 1$), for which the layer will be "optically thick". Thus at an angle $\vartheta \approx \pi/2$, even a layer with $\tau_\nu \ll 1$ will radiate as a black body. For small angles, where $\tau_\nu/\cos\vartheta \ll 1$ and the layer is optically thin, the body will radiate as a volume radiator, and photons "born" at any point emerge from the layer without any absorption in transit. There is no

self-absorption in the layer and each volume element contributes equally to the total radiation emanating from the surface. It is for this reason that we use the term "volume radiator". An optically thick body radiates "from the surface", because the photons born deep within the body are absorbed during transit and are not emitted.

In many cases we are not interested in the radiation intensity at a given angle but in the radiant energy flux from the surface of the body, that is, in the amount of energy passing per unit time per unit area of surface in all directions. This quantity is called the surface brightness (spectral or integrated). The spectral surface brightness is, obviously, equal to

$$S_\nu = \int_{\text{over a hemisphere}} \cos\vartheta \, I_\nu(\Omega)\, d\Omega, \tag{2.41}$$

where $I_\nu(\Omega)$ is given by (2.35), and ϑ is the angle between the direction of propagation of the radiation and the normal to the surface.

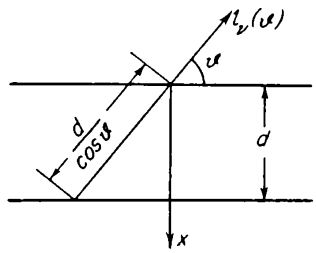


Fig. 2.6. Diagram illustrating the problem of radiation by a plane layer.

Let us find the surface brightness of a plane layer; we shall assume that the temperature and the absorption coefficient are variable but are functions of the x coordinate only (Fig. 2.6). We replace ds in (2.35) by $dx/\cos\vartheta$, and introduce the optical thickness

$$d\tau'_\nu = \kappa'_\nu \, dx, \qquad \tau'_\nu = \int_0^x \kappa'_\nu \, dx. \tag{2.42}$$

Then

$$I_\nu(\vartheta) = \int_0^\infty I_{\nu p} e^{-\frac{\tau'_\nu}{\cos\vartheta}} \frac{d\tau'_\nu}{\cos\vartheta}, \qquad \frac{\pi}{2} > \vartheta > 0. \tag{2.43}$$

Substituting this expression into (2.41) and integrating over all angles ($d\Omega = 2\pi \sin\vartheta \, d\vartheta$)

$$S_\nu = 2\pi \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos\vartheta \sin\vartheta \, d\vartheta \int_0^\infty I_{\nu p} e^{-\frac{\tau'_\nu}{\cos\vartheta}} \frac{d\tau'_\nu}{\cos\vartheta}$$

$$= 2\pi \int_\nu^\infty I_{\nu p} \, d\tau'_\nu \int_0^1 d(\cos\vartheta) e^{-\frac{\tau'_\nu}{\cos\vartheta}}.$$

We next introduce the variable $w = 1/\cos\vartheta$ and take into account the definition of the tabulated exponential integral,

$$E_n(z) = \int_1^\infty e^{-zw} \frac{dw}{w^n}, \qquad n = 1, 2, \ldots . \tag{2.44}$$

On replacing the equilibrium intensity by the equilibrium energy density through the relation $I_{\nu p} = cU_{\nu p}/4\pi$, we obtain

$$S_\nu = \frac{c}{2} \int_0^\infty U_{\nu p}[T(\tau'_\nu)] E_2(\tau'_\nu)\, d\tau'_\nu \tag{2.45}$$

or, for a layer of finite optical thickness $\tau_\nu = \int_0^d \kappa'_\nu\, dx$,

$$S_\nu = \frac{c}{2} \int_0^{\tau_\nu} U_{\nu p} E_2(\tau'_\nu)\, d\tau'_\nu . \tag{2.46}$$

Using the known property of the exponential integral

$$\int_0^\infty E_2(z)\, dz = \tfrac{1}{2},$$

we get, for a semi-infinite body at constant temperature,

$$S_\nu = \frac{cU_{\nu p}}{4} = S_{\nu p} . \tag{2.47}$$

As should have been expected, the spectral surface brightness is equal to the brightness of a perfect black body. The brightness of a finite thickness layer at a constant temperature is given by

$$S_\nu = \frac{cU_{\nu p}}{2} \int_0^{\tau_\nu} E_2(\tau'_\nu)\, d\tau'_\nu = \frac{cU_{\nu p}}{4} [1 - 2E_3(\tau_\nu)] = S_{\nu p}[1 - 2E_3(\tau_\nu)]. \tag{2.48}$$

This brightness is always lower than the brightness of a perfect black body at the same temperature, and approaches the latter as $\tau_\nu \to \infty$. For an optically thin layer

$$\tau_\nu \ll 1, \qquad E_2(\tau'_\nu) \approx E_2(0) = 1, \qquad 2E_3(\tau_\nu) \approx 1 - 2\tau_\nu \tag{2.49}$$

and

$$S_\nu = \frac{cU_{\nu p}}{2} \tau_\nu = S_{\nu p} \cdot 2\tau_\nu , \qquad 2\tau_\nu \ll 1. \tag{2.50}$$

§8. The brightness temperature of the surface of a nonuniformly heated body

The spectral surface luminosity of a nonuniformly heated body is most conveniently characterized by the brightness temperature* $T_{\nu\,\mathrm{br}}$. The latter denotes the temperature of a perfect black body emitting from its surface the same amount of radiation in a given frequency range as the actual body under consideration. Equating (2.46) and (2.47) we obtain an expression for the brightness temperature in the plane case

$$U_{\nu p}(T_{\nu\,\mathrm{br}}) = 2\int_0^{\tau_\nu} U_{\nu p}[T(\tau'_\nu)]E_2(\tau'_\nu)\,d\tau'_\nu, \tag{2.51}$$

or, substituting the Planck function for $U_{\nu p}$,

$$\frac{1}{e^{h\nu/kT_{\nu\,\mathrm{br}}}-1} = 2\int_0^{\tau_\nu} \frac{1}{e^{h\nu/kT}-1} E_2(\tau'_\nu)\,dt'_\nu. \tag{2.52}$$

The brightness temperature is a function of the frequency. Only in the case of a perfect black body is it the same for all frequencies, and is then equal to the temperature of the material.

One can also introduce a brightness temperature for the integrated radiation by means of the definition

$$S = \sigma T_{\mathrm{br}}^4 \tag{2.53}$$

where S is the integrated energy flux emerging from the surface of the body. Obviously, the brightness temperature for the integrated radiation is some mean value with respect to the spectral brightness temperatures.

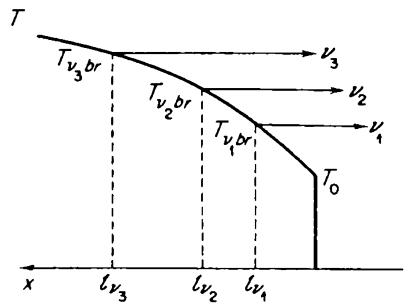


Fig. 2.7. Temperature profile for a radiating body whose temperature decreases toward the surface.

Let us examine the relationship between the radiation spectrum of a body and the frequency dependence of the absorption coefficient. Consider an optically thick body and let the radius of curvature of the surface be large in comparison with the radiation mean free path, so that the body can be regarded as a plane. Let the temperature decrease toward the surface as shown in Fig. 2.7.

* *Editors' note.* Termed effective temperature by the authors.

The radiant energy flux of frequency ν emerging from the surface is determined by the integral over all sources (see (2.45)). Since the exponential integral decreases rapidly with τ'_ν for self-absorption, the main contribution to the integral will come from a layer of the order of the radiation mean free path l'_ν in the neighborhood of the surface (with an optical thickness τ'_ν of the order of unity). In other words, photons, emitted from the surface of the body, are born mainly in a layer near the surface with an optical thickness of the order of unity (to be more precise, of two or three). This layer can be called the radiating layer. Photons born in layers farther removed from the surface are almost totally absorbed before reaching the surface. The brightness temperature, as follows from equation (2.52), is therefore equal to some average temperature of the radiating layer.

Photons emerging from the surface at frequencies for which the absorption is stronger and the radiation mean free path is shorter, are radiated in the less heated layers closer to the surface. Conversely, frequencies at which the absorption is weaker emerge from the deeper and more heated layers. Thus, if the temperature of the fluid decreases toward the surface (as is usually the case), the brightness temperature for the strongly absorbed frequencies is less than that for the weakly absorbed frequencies. This is represented schematically in Fig. 2.7 by the arrows indicating the "spots" from which the photons of different frequencies may be considered to be emitted. These "spots" are located relative to the surface at distances of the order of the photon mean free paths.

The radiation spectrum for a nonuniformly heated body is different from the Planck spectrum; the difference is the more pronounced the stronger is the dependence of the absorption coefficient upon frequency and temperature, and the steeper is the temperature gradient near the surface (at distances of the order of the photon mean free paths). Figure 2.8 is a schematic

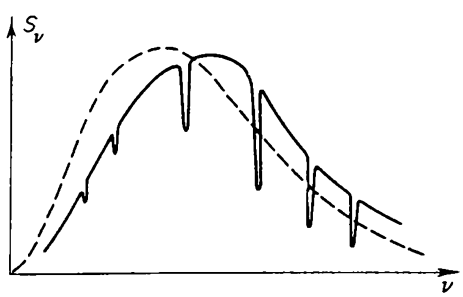


Fig. 2.8. Schematic diagram of the radiation spectrum of a body with a temperature which decreases toward the surface. Low frequencies are absorbed more strongly than high frequencies. The dashed curve shows the Planck spectrum corresponding to the mean brightness temperature of the radiation. Selective absorption lines are "cut" into the spectrum. The flux at the line centers is practically equal to the Planck flux which corresponds to the surface temperature of the body.

representation of the radiation spectrum of a body with a temperature decreasing toward the surface and with an absorption coefficient that varies inversely with the frequency, i.e., with the lower frequencies absorbed more strongly than the higher ones. Discrete lines, corresponding to the bound-bound transitions in atoms or ions, have been superimposed on the continuous spectrum. The absorption coefficients of these lines are always very high, much higher than in the continuous spectrum. Hence, the brightness temperature of these lines almost exactly coincides with the temperature close to the surface of the body (the lines are "cut" into the radiation spectrum of the body). For comparison, the dashed curve in Fig. 2.8 shows the Planck spectrum corresponding to the integrated brightness temperature, which is an average of the spectral temperatures. By virtue of the definition of the integrated brightness temperature, the areas bounded by the solid and dashed curves are exactly equal.

We shall show in Chapter V that the continuum absorption coefficients are not smooth functions of frequency but that they undergo discontinuous jumps at high temperatures. This results in corresponding jumps in the radiation spectrum of the body. (This is not shown in Fig. 2.8, which assumes a smooth dependence of κ'_ν on ν.)

The concept of color temperature is frequently employed in optical measurements of the luminosity of heated bodies. The term color temperature is used to describe the temperature of a perfect black body, which would yield a ratio of brightness in two different spectral regions (for example, in the red and violet regions of the spectrum) equal to the experimentally measured ratio. Using the definitions of brightness and color temperatures, we can easily find their mutual relationship. Let the brightness temperatures at frequencies ν_1 and ν_2 be T_1 and T_2 and let the color temperature be T_{12}. Assuming, for simplicity, that both lines ν_1 and ν_2 lie in the Wien spectral region, that is, $h\nu_1/kT_1 \gg 1$, $h\nu_2/kT_2 \gg 1$, we obtain

$$S_{\nu 1} \sim \nu_1^3 \exp\left(-\frac{h\nu_1}{kT_1}\right), \qquad S_{\nu 2} \sim \nu_2^3 \exp\left(-\frac{h\nu_2}{kT_2}\right);$$

$$\frac{S_{\nu 1}}{S_{\nu 2}} = \frac{\nu_1^3}{\nu_2^3} \exp\left(-\frac{h\nu_1}{kT_1} - \frac{h\nu_2}{kT_2}\right) = \frac{\nu_1^3}{\nu_2^3} \exp\left(-\frac{h\nu_1 - h\nu_2}{kT_{12}}\right),$$

from which

$$\frac{\nu_1 - \nu_2}{T_{12}} = \frac{\nu_1}{T_1} - \frac{\nu_2}{T_2}. \tag{2.54}$$

If the temperature of the body is approximately constant in the radiating layers near the surface throughout the entire basic spectrum, then the color

temperature will frequently be closer to the true temperature of the body than is the brightness temperature. This condition is utilized in pyrometry for optical measurement of temperatures. We may note that in the case of a non-uniformly heated "gray" body, one whose absorption coefficient κ'_ν is independent of frequency or $\kappa'_\nu \equiv \kappa'$, the brightness temperature for different frequencies remains a function of the frequency. Only for low-energy photons (in the Rayleigh-Jeans spectral region $h\nu/kT \ll 1$) does the frequency drop out from (2.52) and the brightness temperature remain the same for all frequencies.

§9. Motion of a fluid taking into account radiant heat exchange

We have given above the methods of determining the radiation field in a body of fluid, or the radiation emerging from the surface, when the state of the fluid, i.e., the temperature and density distributions in the medium, is known. Let us now formulate the problem for the simultaneous determination of the state and motion of the fluid and of the radiation field. We shall consider the case when the radiative transfer and the interaction between the radiation and the fluid have a substantial effect on both the state and the motion of the medium (gas). The motion will always be considered as nonrelativistic, that is, we shall assume that the flow velocities are much less than the speed of light.

If the temperature is not too high, and the gas density is not too low, then the radiant energy density and the radiation pressure are negligibly small in comparison with the energy and pressure of the fluid. Let us estimate and compare the equilibrium radiant energy density $U_p = 4\sigma T^4/c$ and the thermal energy contained in a unit volume of monatomic gas $E = \frac{3}{2}nkT$ (n is the number of particles per unit volume). For example, for $n = 2.67 \cdot 10^{19}$ per cm^3 (which corresponds to the number of molecules in air at standard density), both energies are equal at a temperature of 900,000°K. Actually the radiant energy becomes comparable to the energy of the fluid only at even higher temperatures. The heating of the fluid results in ionization of the atoms, which leads first to an increase in the number of particles per unit volume and second to the addition of the ionization energy to the thermal energy*. Thus, the radiant energy in real air at standard density conditions becomes comparable with the internal energy of the air only at temperatures of approximately 2,700,000°K. In a highly rarefied gas the equilibrium radiant energy becomes comparable with the energy of the fluid at much lower temperatures (roughly speaking, the temperature at which both energies are equal is proportional to $n^{1/3}$). However, one must be very careful in comparing the

* Thermodynamic properties of gases at high temperatures are discussed in Chapter III.

energies in this case, since the radiation mean free path in a highly rarefied gas is very long and if the dimensions of the gaseous body are not sufficiently large, then the radiant energy density may turn out to be much lower than the equilibrium energy density (see discussion below).

The radiation pressure and the fluid pressure are related in approximately the same manner as the energies. Actually the radiation pressure (for an isotropic radiation field) is $p_v = U/3$ and the fluid pressure is $p = (\gamma - 1)E$. At high temperatures the value of the specific heat ratio lies between 5/3 and ~ 1.15, depending on the composition of the gas, its temperature, and its density.

Thus, at not too high temperatures and not too low densities, the radiant energy density and the radiation pressure have no effect on either the energy balance or the motion of the fluid. The effect of the radiation on the energy balance and motion of the gas manifests itself in another way: The radiant energy lost by the heated body of fluid and the radiant heat transfer in the medium can, generally, turn out to be quite appreciable. These effects frequently play an important role even at much lower temperatures, when both the energy and the radiation pressure are very small.

The cause of the above phenomenon under ordinary conditions is the marked difference between the fluid velocity u and the speed of light c; $u \ll c$. As a result, the energy flux in the fluid and the radiant energy flux can become comparable, even if the radiant energy density is much less than the energy density of the fluid. For example, in the limiting case when all the photons are moving in one direction, the radiant energy flux is $S = Uc$, while the flux of energy of the fluid is of the order of Eu, that is, Uc can be of the order of and even greater than Eu even with $U \ll E$, because $c \gg u$. The radiant energy flux and the flux of energy of the fluid are frequently comparable even in actual cases where the radiation field is relatively isotropic and the resultant net radiant energy flux S (equal to the difference of one-sided fluxes) is considerably smaller than its maximum limiting value Uc (which corresponds to an extreme anisotropy of the radiation field). As we shall presently prove, the amount of energy lost or, conversely, the energy released in the fluid as a result of the interaction with the radiation is given by the divergence of the radiation flux. Thus, a comparison of the radiant energy flux and the flux of energy of the fluid can be used to characterize the importance of the radiant heat transfer in the medium.

Let us find the energy q lost by radiation in a unit volume of the fluid per unit time. This energy represents the difference between the energy emitted by the fluid and the radiation energy absorbed by it. The difference between the emission and absorption of radiation of frequency ν (per unit frequency interval) and direction $\mathbf{\Omega}$ (per unit solid angle) per unit time per unit volume is given by the right-hand side of the radiative transfer equation (2.28). The

total energy q lost per unit volume of fluid per unit time can be found by integrating over the entire solid angle and over all frequencies,

$$q = \int_0^\infty d\nu \int \kappa'_\nu (I_{\nu p} - I_\nu)\, d\Omega = c \int_0^\infty \kappa'_\nu (U_{\nu p} - U)\, d\nu. \tag{2.55}$$

The first term in parentheses corresponds to spontaneous emission, and the second to absorption corrected for "re-radiation". Using the equation of continuity for radiation (2.29) in which, according to our earlier statements on the quasi-steady character of the radiative transfer, we can neglect the derivative with respect to time, we find that the resultant energy loss is equal to the divergence of the integrated radiation flux:

$$q = \int_0^\infty \nabla \cdot \mathbf{S}_\nu\, d\nu = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{S}. \tag{2.56}$$

If the fluid radiates more energy than it absorbs, then the energy is lost in radiation (radiation cooling), and $q > 0$; if, however, more energy is absorbed than emitted, then the fluid is heated by radiation and the energy loss is negative, $q < 0$.

Let us now write the gasdynamic equations including radiant heat transfer, but disregarding the radiation energy and pressure. The first of these equations —the continuity equation—remains unchanged. The equation of motion also remains unchanged, because we are neglecting the radiation pressure. Only the energy equation requires the introduction of a term describing the energy losses by radiation (the radiant energy density and the work done by the radiation pressure forces are neglected). The energy equation (1.10) then becomes*

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\rho\varepsilon + \frac{\rho u^2}{2}\right) = -\nabla \cdot \left[\rho \mathbf{u}\left(\varepsilon + \frac{p}{\rho} + \frac{u^2}{2}\right)\right] - q, \tag{2.57}$$

or replacing q by the divergence of the flux $\mathbf{S}$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\rho\varepsilon + \frac{\rho u^2}{2}\right) = -\nabla \cdot \left[\rho \mathbf{u}\left(\varepsilon + \frac{p}{\rho} + \frac{u^2}{2}\right) + \mathbf{S}\right]. \tag{2.58}$$

Thus, the radiant energy flux is added to the total hydrodynamic energy flux. By writing the gasdynamic energy equation in the form of an entropy equation (see §1, Chapter I), we obtain

$$\rho T \frac{d\Sigma}{dt} = -q = -\nabla \cdot \mathbf{S}, \tag{2.59}$$

where Σ is the specific entropy of the fluid.

* It is assumed that no other energy sources and no other irreversible processes besides the radiant heat transfer are present.

Serious mathematical difficulties are encountered in finding the radiation field and the temperature distribution in a medium when radiant heat transfer has a large effect on the energy balance. The spatial derivative in the transfer equation (2.34) which describes the radiation field is formulated for a spectral radiation intensity propagated in a given direction. The energy balance equation (2.57) contains, however, the quantities q or $\mathbf{S}$ which are obtained from integrals over frequency and over the entire solid angle. Therefore, together, the transfer and energy equations have an integro-differential character requiring a double integration with respect to frequency and angle. Mathematical simplifications of this integro-differential system are based on approximate descriptions of the spectral and angular distributions, in order to eliminate the "integro" part.

The influence of the spectral distribution on the energy balance arises as a result of the frequency dependence of the absorption coefficient. The spectral characteristics can be excluded from consideration only when the absorption coefficient κ'_ν is independent of frequency, that is, $\kappa'_\nu \equiv \kappa'$. In the case of a "gray" body, the transfer equation (2.34), upon integration over all frequencies, can be written directly for the integrated intensity $I = \int_0^\infty I_\nu \, d\nu$,

$$\boldsymbol{\Omega} \cdot \nabla I = \kappa'(I_p - I). \tag{2.60}$$

It also becomes possible to find the energy loss by integrating over the spectrum in (2.55)

$$q = \kappa' \int (I_p - I) \, d\boldsymbol{\Omega} = c\kappa'(U_p - U). \tag{2.61}$$

In general, the absorption coefficients in gases at high temperatures are strongly dependent on frequency, and the concept of a "gray body" represents a considerable idealization. This idealization is very useful for clarifying the relationships governing those phenomena that are not related to the spectral distribution of the radiation. However, in certain important limiting cases, which will be discussed later, we shall introduce an absorption coefficient κ' averaged in the proper manner with respect to frequency; in this approach the spectral characteristics of the radiation can be neglected and equations (2.60) and (2.61) can be used.

The next two sections deal with approximate descriptions of the angular distribution of the radiation field.

§10. The diffusion approximation

It is evident from (2.55) and (2.56) that the radiant energy loss q is not an explicit function of the angular distribution of the radiation, but is defined only by integrals over direction, by the radiant energy density or flux. If it

were possible to replace the radiative transfer equation, which depends upon direction, by some other equations directly governing the spectral density and flux, then in general the problem of the angular distribution of the radiation would not arise in considering the effect of radiation on the state and the motion of the fluid. Such an equation exists in the continuity equation (2.29), which for the quasi-steady case is

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{S}_\nu = c\kappa'_\nu(U_{\nu p} - U_\nu). \tag{2.62}$$

A second equation relating the radiant energy flux and density to complete the system of equations can be obtained in an approximate form only. Equation (2.62) was found by integrating the transfer equation (2.34) over all angles. Let us now multiply the transfer equation (2.34) by a unit direction vector $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ and integrate again over all angles. Noting that the integral of the $\kappa'_\nu I_{\nu p}$ term, which is independent of direction, vanishes, and recalling the definition of flux (2.3), we obtain

$$\int \boldsymbol{\Omega}(\boldsymbol{\Omega} \cdot \nabla I_\nu)\, d\boldsymbol{\Omega} = -\kappa'_\nu \mathbf{S}_\nu. \tag{2.63}$$

The flux $\mathbf{S}_\nu = \int \boldsymbol{\Omega} I_\nu \, d\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ vanishes in an isotropic radiation field. The integral on the left-hand side can be easily evaluated if the intensity I_ν is independent of angle*

$$\int \boldsymbol{\Omega}(\boldsymbol{\Omega} \cdot \nabla I_\nu)\, d\boldsymbol{\Omega} = \frac{1}{3} \int \nabla I_\nu \, d\boldsymbol{\Omega} = \frac{c}{3} \nabla U_\nu. \tag{2.64}$$

The vanishing of this expression means that the isotropy of the radiation field requires the constancy in space of the radiant energy density. If the radiation field is anisotropic, then the flux and the integral (2.63) are both different from zero. However, in the case of weak anisotropy the integral can be again represented to a first approximation in the form of (2.64), by assuming the intensity to be very weakly dependent on angle so that it may be taken independent of angle in the integral. This yields an approximate relationship between the flux and the radiation density

$$\mathbf{S}_\nu = -\frac{l'_\nu c}{3} \nabla U_\nu, \tag{2.65}$$

* Let us find the ith component of the vector integral, replacing the vector operator $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \cdot \nabla$ by $\Omega_k \, \partial/\partial x_k$ and bearing in mind the summation convention for repeated subscripts

$$\int \Omega_i \Omega_k \frac{\partial I_\nu}{\partial x_k} d\boldsymbol{\Omega} = \frac{\partial I_\nu}{\partial x_k} \int \Omega_i \Omega_k \, d\boldsymbol{\Omega} = \frac{\partial I_\nu}{\partial x_k} \frac{4\pi}{3} \delta_{ik} = \frac{4\pi}{3} \frac{\partial I_\nu}{\partial x_i} = \frac{c}{3} \frac{\partial U_\nu}{\partial x_i},$$

since $\int I_\nu \, d\boldsymbol{\Omega} = 4\pi I_\nu = cU_\nu$; (2.64) follows.

where $l'_\nu = 1/\kappa'_\nu$ is the absorption mean free path (corrected for induced emission).

Dividing both sides of (2.65) by the energy of a photon $h\nu$ we obtain the usual particle diffusion relation between the photon flux $\mathbf{J}_\nu$ and the photon density N_ν

$$\mathbf{J}_\nu = -D_\nu \nabla N_\nu, \qquad D_\nu = \frac{l'_\nu c}{3}.$$

The "diffusion" coefficient for the photons D_ν is analogous to the diffusion coefficient for atoms or molecules; c is the speed of the photons and l'_ν is their mean free path. An important difference, however, exists between the diffusion of atoms and the "diffusion" of photons. The atom does not vanish upon a collision, it only changes the direction of its motion (in a random manner in the case of isotropic scattering); the mean free path appearing in the equation for the diffusion coefficient is the collisional mean free path. The photon, however, after traversing an average distance l'_ν, is absorbed by the fluid and, if the fluid is in a state of thermodynamic equilibrium, the photon's energy, as a result of collisions between atoms, electrons, and so on, is distributed in accordance with the laws of statistical equilibrium. At the place of absorption new photons are emitted with different frequencies and in random directions. In considering the "diffusion" of photons of a given frequency, among all newly born photons we look only at those which are at the same frequency. The process progresses as if the photon traveled, became absorbed, and then is "born" again. After being "reborn", the photon has an equal probability of traveling in any direction, and this corresponds to the isotropic scattering of atoms following a collision*.

As with the diffusion of atoms, the diffusion approximation is applicable only to small gradients of the radiation density. The latter should change little over a distance of the order of the radiation mean free path l'_ν. The radiation field for small gradients is almost isotropic, and it was this condition which was used as the basis of the derivation of the diffusion equation (2.65). In point of fact, the photons arriving at a given point originate primarily in a region with dimensions of the order of the mean free path. If the radiation density in this region is almost constant, then the photons arrive at the given point uniformly from all directions and this leads to the conclusion that the radiation field at this point is isotropic.

* If photon scattering is taken into account in the radiative transfer, then for weak anisotropy we again obtain a diffusion relation of the type (2.65). This relation contains the mean free path corresponding to a total decay coefficient which is equal to the sum of the absorption and scattering coefficients. If the scattering is anisotropic, then, as in the case of diffusion of atoms, the scattering coefficient is replaced by the transport coefficient $\kappa_s(1 - \overline{\cos\vartheta})$, where $\overline{\cos\vartheta}$ is the average of the cosine of the scattering angle.

At a vacuum-fluid interface the density changes very rapidly over a distance of the order of the mean free path and the angular distribution of the photons is very anisotropic, that is, the photons leave the body of fluid in the direction of the vacuum, while none arrive from the vacuum. Hence, the diffusion approximation can lead to appreciable errors when applied near a vacuum interface.

In the case of optically thick bodies the density gradients are small and the diffusion approximation is valid. If x is the characteristic scale along which the radiation density has an appreciable change (x is of the order of the dimensions of the body), then the order of the diffusion flux is given by

$$\mathbf{S}_\nu = -\frac{l'_\nu c}{3}\nabla U_\nu \sim \frac{l'_\nu}{x} cU_\nu .$$

The greater is the optical thickness of the body x/l'_ν, the smaller is the change in the radiation density over a mean free path (this change is of the order of $l'_\nu \nabla U_\nu \sim (l'_\nu/x)U_\nu$), the smaller is the flux S_ν in comparison with $U_\nu c$, and the more exact is the diffusion approximation. If the optical thickness of the body is of the order of unity, then $l'_\nu/x \sim 1$, and $S_\nu \sim cU_\nu$. In the case of an optically thin body we have $l'_\nu/x > 1$, and the flux, estimated according to the diffusion formula, becomes greater than cU_ν. This is physically impossible and simply indicates the inapplicability of the diffusion approximation to optically thin bodies.

The flux S_ν can never be higher than cU_ν. The equality $S_\nu = cU_\nu$ corresponds to the case when all the photons travel in exactly the same direction, the case of maximum anisotropy. The quantity cU_ν is sometimes termed the kinetic flux. The ratio of the flux to the kinetic flux S_ν/cU_ν is a measure of the anisotropy of the radiation field and within the framework of the diffusion approximation is of the order of the reciprocal of the optical thickness of the body l'_ν/x. For complete isotropy $S_\nu/cU_\nu = 0$, while when all the photons travel in the same direction then $S_\nu/cU_\nu = 1$. Thus, this flux ratio is always contained within the limits $0 \leq S_\nu/cU_\nu \leq 1$. The dependence of the flux upon the degree of anisotropy of the angular distribution of radiation, at a given radiant energy density, is schematically illustrated in the polar diagrams of the intensity sketched in Fig. 2.9. The areas of all the diagrams are the same and characterize the radiant energy density, while the lengths of the arrows characterize the fluxes. Radiation fields of different densities are capable of giving the same energy flux. The higher the density for a given flux, the lower is the ratio S_ν/cU_ν, and the more isotropic is the radiation field.

The equations (2.62) and (2.65) for the diffusion approximation represent a system of two differential equations for two unknown functions of position, the energy density and flux of the radiation. Boundary conditions at interfaces of media with different optical properties (with different "diffusion

coefficients") must also be added to the system. It follows from the condition of continuity of the radiation intensity that both the density and flux are continuous at such interfaces. A density discontinuity in the diffusion approximation (2.65) would entail an infinite flux and a discontinuity in flux would lead to an accumulation of radiant energy, to an unsteadiness in the solution (see (2.29)).

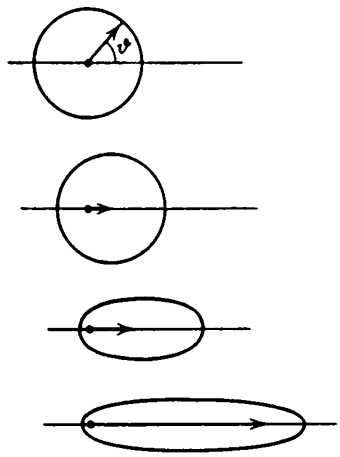
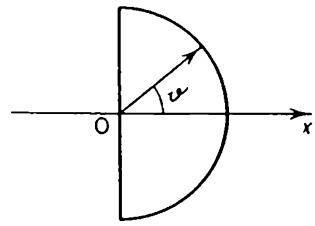


Fig. 2.9. Polar diagrams for the distribution of the radiation intensity with respect to angle for different degrees of anisotropy. The intensity at a given angle ϑ is characterized by the length of the radius vector drawn from the center. The length of the arrow characterizes the magnitude of the flux. The equality of the radiant energy densities for all cases is schematically indicated by the equal areas of the diagrams.

The interface between a fluid and a vacuum requires special examination. Since the vacuum does not supply any photons, the radiation field at the interface is strongly anisotropic (all photons travel only in the direction toward the vacuum) and, strictly speaking, the diffusion approximation is inapplicable. We can obtain an approximate boundary condition from the following considerations. Let us assume that the radiation emerging from the surface of a body into a hemispherical volume, in the direction of the vacuum, has an isotropic angular distribution (which, for optically thick bodies, is close

Fig. 2.10. Polar diagram for the intensity distribution at the interface $x = 0$, between the body and the vacuum. The vacuum is on the right, the medium on the left.



to true). The intensity in the complementary hemisphere is zero, that is, no photons arrive from the vacuum side (Fig. 2.10). Then at the vacuum interface we have

$$S_\nu = \frac{cU_\nu}{2}, \tag{2.66}$$

where the flux is in the direction of the outward normal to the surface. The factor of $\frac{1}{2}$ represents the average of the cosine of the direction angle of the photon motion for an isotropic distribution in the hemisphere. We have

$$\mathbf{S}_\nu = \int_{\text{hemisphere}} \boldsymbol{\Omega} I_\nu \, d\boldsymbol{\Omega}\,; \qquad S_\nu = \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos\vartheta \, I_\nu(\vartheta) \, 2\pi \sin\vartheta \, d\vartheta = 2\pi I_\nu \cdot \tfrac{1}{2} = \pi I_\nu,$$

but

$$cU_\nu = \int_{\text{hemisphere}} I_\nu \, d\boldsymbol{\Omega} = \int_0^{\pi/2} 2\pi \sin\vartheta \, d\vartheta \, I_\nu = 2\pi I_\nu.$$

Equation (2.66) follows.

Equation (2.66) can also be formally obtained from the equations for the diffusion approximation. It is easy to verify that the following expression for the intensity

$$I_\nu(\boldsymbol{\Omega}) = \frac{cU_\nu}{4\pi}\left[1 + \frac{3\boldsymbol{\Omega}\cdot\mathbf{S}_\nu}{cU_\nu}\right] = \frac{cU_\nu}{4\pi}\left[1 + 3\cos\vartheta\,\frac{S_\nu}{cU_\nu}\right],$$

where ϑ is the angle between the direction $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ and the direction of the flux S_ν, leads to the diffusion approximation equations (2.62) and (2.65). With the x axis in the direction of the flux we can calculate the one-sided fluxes in the positive and negative x directions. We obtain

$$S_{\nu+} = \frac{cU_\nu}{4} + \frac{S_\nu}{2}, \qquad S_{\nu-} = -\frac{cU_\nu}{4} + \frac{S_\nu}{2} \tag{2.67}$$

(as expected, $S_\nu = S_{\nu+} + S_{\nu-}$). Applying these relations to the interface between the body and the vacuum (the x axis is directed towards the vacuum) and assuming that the one-sided flux from the vacuum is $S_{\nu-} = 0$, we get $S_\nu = S_{\nu+} = cU_\nu/2$, namely, relation (2.66). Equations (2.67) are more general than the expression for the intensity. This is easily verified by applying the relation for the intensity at a point on the interface. In the negative x direction, for example, $\cos\pi = -1$ and $I_\nu = -cU_\nu/8\pi < 0$, which has no physical significance. The point is that the diffusion equation for the intensity is valid for only weak anisotropy, when the second term in the brackets above is much smaller than unity.

§11. The "forward-reverse" approximation

We now consider still another method of approximating the angular distribution of radiation, one which is sometimes used in plane problems of radiative transfer. This method is known as the Schwarzschild approximation or as the "forward–reverse" approximation. In this method we combine

into one group all photons moving in the positive x direction at angles ϑ ranging from 0 to $\pi/2$ ("forward"), and into another group all those moving in the opposite direction at angles ϑ from $\pi/2$ to π ("reverse") (Fig. 2.11). We shall assume that the angular distribution in each hemisphere is approximately isotropic and denote the intensity in the "forward" and "reverse"

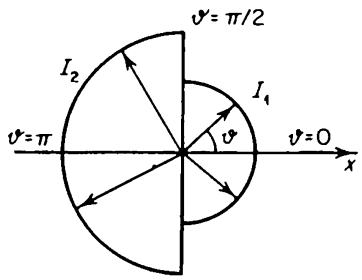


Fig. 2.11. Polar diagram for the radiation intensity distribution in the "forward-reverse" approximation. The flux is directed to the left for the case shown.

directions by I_1 and I_2, respectively (the frequency subscript is dropped to simplify the notation). The radiant energy density and flux are

$$U = \frac{1}{c}\int I\, d\Omega = \frac{2\pi}{c}\int_0^{\pi/2} I_1 \sin\vartheta\, d\vartheta + \frac{2\pi}{c}\int_{\pi/2}^{\pi} I_2 \sin\vartheta\, d\vartheta$$

$$= \frac{2\pi}{c}(I_1 + I_2), \tag{2.68}$$

$$S = \int I \cos\vartheta\, d\Omega = 2\pi \int_0^{\pi/2} I_1 \cos\vartheta \sin\vartheta\, d\vartheta$$

$$+ 2\pi \int_{\pi/2}^{\pi} I_2 \cos\vartheta \sin\vartheta\, d\vartheta = \pi(I_1 - I_2). \tag{2.69}$$

The degree of anisotropy is then given by

$$\frac{S}{cU} = \frac{I_1 - I_2}{2(I_1 + I_2)} \to 0 \qquad \text{for} \quad I_1 \approx I_2 .$$

At the interface between the medium and a vacuum, when the x axis is in the direction of the outward normal to the surface, we have $I_2 = 0$ and $S/cU = \frac{1}{2}$, in agreement with condition (2.66).

The equation for the average "one-sided" intensities I_1 and I_2 is obtained by averaging the transfer equation for the plane case

$$\cos\vartheta \frac{dI}{dx} = \kappa'(I_p - I) \tag{2.70}$$

over both hemispheres. We then obtain (with the average $\overline{\cos\vartheta} = \pm\frac{1}{2}$)

$$\frac{1}{2}\frac{dI_1}{dx} = \kappa'(I_p - I_1); \qquad -\frac{1}{2}\frac{dI_2}{dx} = \kappa'(I_p - I_2). \tag{2.71}$$

This pair of equations serves to determine the average intensities in both hemispheres. Adding and subtracting, we easily arrive at the density and flux equations ($I_p = cU_p/4\pi$):

$$\frac{dS}{dx} = \kappa' c(U_p - U); \qquad S = -\frac{l'c}{4}\frac{dU}{dx}. \tag{2.72}$$

The first equation is the exact continuity equation (2.62) and the second one is almost the same as equation (2.65) for the diffusion approximation; the only difference is that here the "diffusion coefficient" is equal to $l'c/4$ instead of $l'c/3$.

Considering (2.71) as a pair of linear differential equations in I_1 and I_2, we can write their solution in the integral form

$$I_1 = \int_0^\tau I_p e^{-2(\tau-\tau')2}\, d\tau'; \qquad I_2 = \int_\tau^\infty I_p e^{-2(\tau'-\tau)2}\, d\tau'.$$

Here, the x coordinate has been replaced by the optical thickness by means of the relation

$$d\tau = \kappa'\, dx, \qquad \tau = \int_0^x \kappa'\, dx.$$

Adding and subtracting the expressions for I_1 and I_2 and substituting $I_p = cU_p/4\pi$, we obtain the following two approximate integral expressions for the density and flux in the "forward–reverse" approximation:

$$\begin{aligned} U &= \frac{1}{2}\int_\tau^\infty U_p e^{-2(\tau'-\tau)2}\, d\tau' + \frac{1}{2}\int_0^\tau U_p e^{-2(\tau-\tau')2}\, d\tau', \\ S &= -\frac{c}{4}\int_\tau^\infty U_p e^{-2(\tau'-\tau)2}\, d\tau' + \frac{c}{4}\int_0^\tau U_p e^{-2(\tau-\tau')2}\, d\tau'. \end{aligned} \tag{2.73}$$

Generally speaking, the diffusion approximation in the case of weak anisotropy appears to be more justified, although it is not much different from the "forward–reverse" approximation.

§12. Local equilibrium and the approximation of radiation heat conduction

Steady state radiation in an infinite medium at constant temperature will be in thermodynamic equilibrium. The intensity is independent of direction and is determined by the Planck formula. Photons arriving at any point in space are born in the vicinity of that point at distances of not more than several mean free paths; photons born farther away are absorbed in transit. Consequently, only the immediate vicinity of the point "participates" in establishing the equilibrium intensity. Even if the temperature at a farther distance is

different from the temperature of this region, there is no practical effect on the radiation intensity at the point under consideration. This means that if the temperature of a sufficiently extended and optically thick medium is not constant but changes sufficiently slowly with distance, so that changes over distances of the order of a radiation mean free path are small, then the intensity will be very close to the equilibrium value corresponding to the temperature in the medium at the given point. The less pronounced is the temperature change over distances of the order of a radiation mean free path, the closer will be the intensity to the equilibrium value. In particular, the radiation will be closer to equilibrium for those frequencies that are more strongly absorbed and for which the mean free path l'_ν is smallest. If the temperature gradient is so small that the temperature changes over distances of the order of the longest mean free path l'_ν are small for all those frequencies which have a significant effect on the equilibrium radiation at the given temperature, then the radiation will be in equilibrium for practically the entire spectral interval, at the temperature corresponding to that of the point. The radiation intensity will then be described as a function of frequency by the Planck function at the temperature of the point. When the radiation at each point of a medium with a nonuniform temperature is close to equilibrium, then the medium is spoken of as being in a state of local thermodynamic equilibrium between the radiation and the fluid.

The necessary condition for the existence of local equilibrium—small gradients in an extended, optically thick medium—serves simultaneously as a justification for the use of the diffusion approximation when considering radiative transfer. In the diffusion approximation the radiation flux is proportional to the gradient of radiation density. However, if the radiation density is close to its equilibrium value, then it is possible to approximate the true density in the flux equation by the equilibrium density at the given point. Thus, for local equilibrium conditions, the spectral flux is given approximately by

$$\mathbf{S}_\nu = -\frac{l'_\nu c}{3}\nabla U_{\nu p}. \tag{2.74}$$

The total flux is

$$\mathbf{S} = \int_0^\infty \mathbf{S}_\nu \, d\nu = -\frac{c}{3}\int_0^\infty l'_\nu \nabla U_{\nu p} \, d\nu. \tag{2.75}$$

We factor out from the integrand an average value of the radiation mean free path, which we denote by l. Noting that $\int_0^\infty U_{\nu p}\, d\nu = U_p = 4\sigma T^4/c$, equation (2.75) gives

$$\mathbf{S} = -\frac{lc}{3}\nabla U_p = -\frac{16\sigma l T^3}{3}\nabla T. \tag{2.76}$$

The radiant energy flux in local equilibrium is proportional to the temperature gradient, and the radiative transfer is similar to heat conduction, and is termed radiation heat conduction. The coefficient of thermal conductivity is equal here to $16\sigma l T^3/3$, and is a function of temperature.

As in the case of ordinary molecular heat conduction, the energy loss q by the medium from radiation is equal to the divergence of the flux of radiation heat conduction (see (2.56)). These losses are determined by the temperature of the fluid at the given point, the average radiation mean free path (which for a given fluid is a function of the temperature and density), and the spatial derivatives of these quantities.

Combining equations (2.75) and (2.76), we can obtain the law for the average of the mean free path with respect to frequency which gives the correct value for the radiant energy flux in the case when the radiant heat exchange has the same character as heat conduction. Noting that both $U_{\nu p}$ and U_p depend upon position only through the temperature dependence, we obtain

$$l = \frac{\int_0^\infty l'_\nu (dU_{\nu p}/dT)\, d\nu}{dU_p/dT} = \frac{\int_0^\infty l'_\nu (dU_{\nu p}/dT)\, d\nu}{\int_0^\infty (dU_{\nu p}/dT)\, d\nu}. \tag{2.77}$$

Differentiating the equilibrium radiation density given by the Planck formula with respect to temperature, and introducing the dimensionless variable of integration $u = h\nu/kT$, we obtain the relation for the average mean free path

$$l = \int_0^\infty l'_\nu G(u)\, du, \tag{2.78}$$

where the weighting factor $G(u)$ is given by

$$G(u) = \frac{15}{4\pi^4} \frac{u^4 e^{-u}}{(1 - e^{-u})^2}. \tag{2.79}$$

The value of l obtained by averaging the radiation mean free path l'_ν using the weighting factor $G(u)$ is called the Rosseland mean free path. If the mean free path l'_ν, corrected for induced emission, is expressed in terms of the actual absorption coefficient $l'_\nu = 1/\kappa'_\nu = 1/\kappa(1 - e^{-u})$, then (2.78) and (2.79) may be rewritten as

$$l = \int_0^\infty \frac{1}{\kappa_\nu} G'(u)\, du, \qquad G'(u) = \frac{15}{4\pi^4} \frac{u^4 e^{-u}}{(1 - e^{-u})^3}. \tag{2.80}$$

The Rosseland weighting factor has a maximum at $h\nu \approx 4kT$, and this means that it is the high-energy photons (with energies several times greater than kT) which are dominant in the energy transfer process.

According to (2.76) the radiation flux is greater, the higher is the coefficient of thermal conductivity, that is, the longer the mean free path. We should not forget, however, that this relationship is valid only if the mean free path is not excessively large; otherwise local equilibrium and formula (2.76) will no longer apply. As we shall see later, in the opposite limiting case, when the radiation mean free path is larger than the characteristic dimensions of the body, the radiation flux decreases with increasing radiation mean free path.

§13. Relationship between the diffusion approximation and the radiation heat conduction approximation

It is customarily assumed in astrophysics that the concepts of the diffusion approximation and of radiation heat conduction are identical. This is due to the fact that stars and stellar photospheres, which are optically thick bodies with small gradients, always simultaneously satisfy the conditions which lead to a weak anistropy of the radiation field, i.e., to a diffusional relationship between the flux and the gradient of the radiant energy density, and to the existence of local equilibrium, i.e., to the replacement of U_ν by $U_{\nu p}$. It has been estimated that generally the deviation from local equilibrium is even less pronounced in the case of small gradients in optically thick bodies than is the degree of anisotropy, that if the diffusion approximation is valid (over the speetrum), the existence of local equilibrium is even more justified. To show this, let the dimensions of the body be of the order of x, which is a characteristic scale for temperature, density, and radiation flux gradients. It follows from the diffusion approximation (2.62) and (2.65) that

$$\frac{S_\nu}{x} \sim \frac{c(U_{\nu p} - U_\nu)}{l'_\nu}, \qquad S_\nu \sim \frac{l'_\nu}{x} cU_\nu,$$

from which

$$\frac{U_{\nu p} - U_\nu}{U_\nu} \sim \left(\frac{l'_\nu}{x}\right)^2.$$

If the degree of anisotropy, which is characterized by the ratio of the diffusion flux to the kinetic flux, $S_\nu/cU_\nu \approx l'_\nu/x$ is small and $l'_\nu/x \ll 1$, then the relative change in the radiation density from its equilibrium value is of second order in the small parameter.

However, in considering problems with more complex conditions than those prevailing in stellar photospheres, it is convenient to draw a clear distinction between the diffusion and radiation heat conduction approximations. Here by the diffusion approximation is meant the method of approximately describing the angular distribution of radiation in which the radiation flux is assumed to be proportional to the gradient of the actual energy density,

even if it differs appreciably from the equilibrium value. This may be regarded as a convenient procedure for explaining the characteristics of transfer phenomena of highly nonequilibrium radiation that are not dependent on the nature of the angular distribution of the photons. Rigorous theoretical analysis of the angular distribution of the photons would entail great mathematical difficulty. The diffusion approximation, while resulting in appreciable errors in some cases, does not as a rule alter the qualitative picture of the radiative transfer phenomena even if the angular distribution is strongly anisotropic. This characteristic of the diffusion approximation makes it suitable for the approximate solution of various problems involving nonequilibrium radiation, where the use of the radiation heat conduction approximation would impose certain requirements on the temperature of the fluid which are frequently physically meaningless.

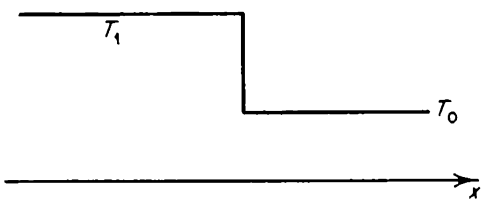


Fig. 2.12. Temperature distribution across a shock wave.

Let us illustrate these remarks by an example. Consider a radiation field in a body with a sharp temperature jump at the surface separating the hot and cold regions, with $T_1 \gg T_0$, as shown in Fig. 2.12 (a case typical of a strong shock wave). The flux density U_1 in the high-temperature region is high and of the order of its equilibrium value $U_{p1} = 4\sigma T_1'/c$. Practically no photons are emitted in the low-temperature region and its radiation density is determined by the flux emerging from the surface of the heated region. In other words, the radiation density is also proportional to U_1, and since $T_1 \gg T_0$, it is much higher than its equilibrium value $U_{p0} = 4\sigma T_0^4/c$. This case, as we shall see, is completely unlike those for which we have local equilibrium and radiation heat conduction. However, the diffusion approximation for the angular distribution gives a qualitatively correct picture, in stating that if the cold medium absorbs light the radiant energy density and flux decrease with the distance from the hot surface into the cold medium. The length scale for an appreciable decrease in these quantities is the mean free path for photon absorption in the cold medium. Thus, in the given example, the diffusion equations for the cold nonradiating medium are

$$\frac{dS_\nu}{dx} = -\frac{cU_\nu}{l_\nu'}, \qquad S_\nu = -\frac{l_\nu' c}{3}\frac{dU_\nu}{dx}.$$

In terms of the optical thickness, measured from the temperature jump, $\tau_\nu = \int_0^x \kappa'_\nu \, dx$,

$$\frac{dS_\nu}{d\tau_\nu} = -cU_\nu, \qquad S_\nu = -\frac{c}{3}\frac{dU_\nu}{d\tau_\nu}.$$

These equations yield the following solution for the radiation density and flux

$$S_\nu = \frac{cU_\nu}{\sqrt{3}} \sim e^{-\sqrt{3}\tau_\nu},$$

which gives a qualitatively correct description of the attenuation of these quantities.

A more rigorous treatment of the angular distribution, which is possible in this simple case, gives a somewhat different solution for the attenuation of the flux and density in the cold region. These quantities have an exponential integral rather than a simple exponential behavior (see [5]), and

$$S_\nu \sim E_3(\tau_\nu), \qquad U_\nu \sim E_2(\tau_\nu).$$

At distances of the order of several optical depths from the temperature jump the exact solution gives values for the physical quantities of the same order as does the diffusion approximation. If we used the radiation heat conduction approximation, the sharp temperature jump in the fluid would have to spread out, since a discontinuity in temperature would result in the flux $S \sim dT/dx$ becoming infinite.

In general, the diffusion approximation will always give a qualitatively reasonable result. For example, in the limiting case when the angular distribution of photons has a complete anisotropy and all the photons in the cold medium move in one direction, the flux is $S_\nu = cU_\nu$. From the exact continuity equation (2.62) we then see that the flux, as in the case of diffusion, is proportional to the energy density gradient $S_\nu = -l'_\nu c \, dU_\nu/dx$ (the x axis is directed along the light ray) but with a proportionality coefficient three times larger than the ordinary diffusion coefficient. This case of pure absorption of a parallel beam of light in a nonradiating medium has the exact solution

$$S_\nu = cU_\nu \sim e^{-\tau_\nu}, \qquad \tau_\nu = \int_0^x \kappa'_\nu \, dx,$$

which differs from the diffusion approximation solution only by a factor of $\sqrt{3}$ in the exponent and by a factor of $1/\sqrt{3}$ in the relation between the flux and the density.

The quantitative difference for $\tau_\nu \gg 1$ is obviously very high, but qualitatively the diffusion approximation gives a physically correct result; for $\tau_\nu \sim 1$, even the numerical error is moderate.

§14. Radiative equilibrium in stellar photospheres

The study of the temperature and radiation fields in the peripheral layers (photospheres) of stationary stars for the purpose of determining star brightness is a classical problem that served as the basis for the development of radiative transfer theory and of methods of solving the transfer equation*. This problem is of interest here not only as a classical example of the application of radiative transfer theory, but also as a model to which, as will be shown in Chapter IX, we can reduce the problem of the cooling by radiation of a large volume of heated air. Stationary stars comprise tremendous gaseous masses heated to high temperatures, varying from tens of thousands of degrees at the surface to millions and tens of millions of degrees at the center. The gas is maintained in mechanical equilibrium as a result of a balance between the pressure forces tending to burst the gas sphere, and the gravitational forces that prevent such bursting.

The hot gas sphere—a star—radiates from its surface. The energy loss is compensated by the energy released in the nuclear reactions occurring in the central regions of the star. In stationary stars the fluid is at rest and no hydrodynamic motion takes place. The energy released at the center is transferred to the periphery of the star only by radiation and is emitted into space also by radiation. Since no nuclear reaction or energy release occurs in the peripheral layers, the steady state is achieved only by the complete compensation of the emission by the absorption of light in each volume element; the energy loss by radiation q is equal to zero and the temperature at each point does not change with time†.

The equilibrium between the emission and absorption of light in the absence of radiation losses is referred to as radiative equilibrium of a star. It follows from the radiative equilibrium condition $q = 0$ that the divergence of the radiation flux $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{S}$ is also equal to zero. The total radiation flux through a spherical surface of any radius r, $4\pi r^2 S$, is constant and equal to the energy release at the center per unit time ($S \sim 1/r^2$). The temperature and density distributions in the gas as a function of the star radius are determined by simultaneously considering the mechanical equilibrium and radiative transfer. However, in determining the temperature and density distributions in the photosphere

* Detailed presentations of these problems along with bibliographies may be found in the books of Ambartsumian [1] and Unsöld [2].

† The fact that a star is in a steady state and that the distribution of temperature and other quantities with respect to the radius are invariant with time does not mean that such a star does not evolve. When a star is called stationary with reference to a radiative transfer problem, it only means that its state is constant during a time interval comparable to that necessary for the transfer of heat from the center of the star to its surface.

We note that the condition of radiative equilibrium $q = 0$ replaces in this case the hydrodynamic energy equation (2.57).

the problem is essentially broken down into two stages. The temperature distribution as a function of an optical coordinate can be found by considering the radiative transfer alone without any knowledge of the density distribution. Then, if desired, the temperature distribution as a function of radius can be found by introducing the mechanical equilibrium condition and the dependence of the coefficient of light absorption as a function of temperature and density.

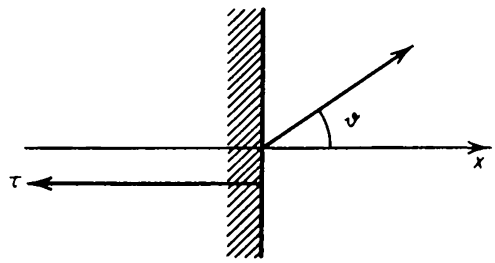


Fig. 2.13. Coordinates for the problem of radiative transfer in stellar photospheres.

Let us formulate the problem of determining the temperature distribution and radiative transfer in the photosphere of a star. Since we are interested in a surface layer whose thickness is much smaller than the radius of the star, we can disregard its curvature and consider the photosphere to be plane. We take the x axis in the direction of the outward normal to the star surface (Fig. 2.13) and write the radiative transfer equation for the plane case

$$\cos \vartheta \frac{dI_\nu}{dx} = \kappa'_\nu (I_{\nu p} - I_\nu), \tag{2.81}$$

where ϑ is the angle between the direction of propagation of the radiation and the x axis. To this equation is added the condition of radiative equilibrium

$$q = \int_0^\infty d\nu \int \kappa'_\nu (I_{\nu p} - I_\nu)\, d\Omega = c \int_0^\infty \kappa'_\nu (U_{\nu p} - U_\nu)\, d\nu = 0, \tag{2.82}$$

and the boundary condition at the surface $x = 0$, which states that no photons arrive from the vacuum side

$$I_\nu (x = 0, \vartheta) = 0 \qquad \text{for} \quad \frac{\pi}{2} < \vartheta < \pi. \tag{2.83}$$

It is usually the case that the absorption coefficient $\kappa_\nu(T, \rho)$ has the same functional dependence on the gas density at different frequencies, so that it may be expressed in the form $\kappa_\nu(T, \rho) = \varphi(\nu, T) f(\rho)$. In this case, by replacing x by the new optical coordinate y defined by $dy = f(\rho)\, dx$, we can eliminate

the need to determine directly the gas density distribution as a function of x. Instead we may first determine the temperature and radiation density distributions as a function of this new optical coordinate y. Equations (2.81)–(2.83) describe these distributions completely. The problem has only one arbitrary parameter, the radiation flux S, which in the plane case is constant ($q = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{S} = dS/dx = 0$). The flux S is equal to the energy flux from $x = -\infty$ (from within the star) and is in fact determined by the energy release at the star center. At the same time the flux S represents the total radiant energy flux emanating from the surface of the star, that is, the integrated surface brightness.

The problem as formulated generally presents considerable mathematical difficulties. The principal difficulty arises from the fact that the transfer equation is written for the spectral intensity I_ν while the condition of radiative equilibrium involves quantities integrated over the entire spectrum. To simplify the problem, we introduce an absorption coefficient averaged over the spectrum κ' (which is equivalent to assuming that we are dealing with a "gray" medium) and integrate the transfer equation (2.81) over the spectrum. We then obtain for the integrated intensity $I = \int_0^\infty I_\nu \, d\nu$ the relation

$$\cos \vartheta \frac{dI}{dx} = \kappa'(I_p - I), \qquad I_p = \int_0^\infty I_{\nu p} \, d\nu = \frac{cU_p}{4\pi} = \frac{\sigma T^4}{\pi}. \tag{2.84}$$

Transforming to an optical coordinate, measured from the surface into the photosphere, $d\tau = -\kappa' \, dx$, $\tau = -\int_0^x \kappa' \, dx$, we obtain

$$\cos \vartheta \frac{dI}{d\tau} = I - I_p(T). \tag{2.85}$$

The boundary condition (2.83) takes the form

$$I(\tau = 0, \vartheta) = 0 \qquad \text{for} \quad \frac{\pi}{2} < \vartheta < \pi, \tag{2.86}$$

and the radiative equilibrium condition (2.82) is

$$\int I \, d\Omega = \int I_p \, d\Omega, \qquad U = U_p = \frac{4\sigma T^4}{c} \tag{2.87}$$

(the constant flux S is $S = \int \cos \vartheta \, I \, d\Omega$).

Although the radiation is anisotropic, the integral with respect to angle of the integrated intensity, i.e., the integrated radiation density at each point, is equal to its equilibrium value U_p. Or, more exactly, the temperature of the fluid at each point, controlled by the radiative transfer, is determined by the

radiation density at the point $U = U_p$. Even in its simplified form the solution of the system (2.85)–(2.87) (the so-called Milne problem) is very complex from a mathematical point of view. An approximate solution of this system will be presented in the following section. However, we shall now derive an integral equation equivalent to this system, which can serve as the basis for finding an exact solution.

We employ an integral expression for the intensity of the type of (2.32), which in the plane case can be written in a form that follows directly from the differential equation (2.85) for I:

$$I(\vartheta, \tau) = \int_{\tau}^{\infty} I_p[T(\tau')] e^{-\frac{\tau' - \tau}{\cos \vartheta}} \frac{d\tau'}{\cos \vartheta}, \qquad \frac{\pi}{2} > \vartheta > 0. \tag{2.88}$$

$$I(\vartheta, \tau) = -\int_{0}^{\tau} I_p[T(\tau')] e^{-\frac{\tau' - \tau}{\cos \vartheta}} \frac{d\tau'}{\cos \vartheta}, \qquad \pi > \vartheta > \frac{\pi}{2}. \tag{2.89}$$

The first equation gives the radiation intensity propagated toward the surface. The integration is carried out from $\tau = \infty$, since the photosphere is assumed to be semi-infinite. The second equation corresponds to the radiation propagated into the star, taking into account that no photons arrive from the vacuum.

Let us calculate the radiation density $U = (1/c) \int I d\Omega$, using the first equation for the integration with respect to ϑ from 0 to $\pi/2$, and the second equation for the interval $\pi/2 < \vartheta < \pi$:

$$cU = 2\pi \int_{0}^{\pi/2} \sin \vartheta \, d\vartheta \int_{\tau}^{\infty} I_p e^{-\frac{\tau' - \tau}{\cos \vartheta}} \frac{d\tau'}{\cos \vartheta}$$
$$- 2\pi \int_{\pi/2}^{\pi} \sin \vartheta \, d\vartheta \int_{0}^{\tau} I_p e^{-\frac{\tau' - \tau}{\cos \vartheta}} \frac{d\tau'}{\cos \vartheta}.$$

Reversing the order of integration, introducing in the first integral the variable $w = 1/\cos \vartheta$ and in the second $w = -1/\cos \vartheta$, noting the definition of the exponential integral (2.44), and setting $I_p = cU_p/4\pi$, we get

$$U = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\tau}^{\infty} U_p E_1(\tau' - \tau) \, d\tau' + \frac{1}{2} \int_{0}^{\tau} U_p E_1(\tau - \tau') \, d\tau'. \tag{2.90}$$

Recalling the radiative equilibrium condition $U = U_p \sim T^4$, we obtain finally an integral equation for the integrated equilibrium density U_p, or equivalently for T^4,

$$U_p(\tau) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{0}^{\infty} U_p(\tau') E_1(|\tau' - \tau|) \, d\tau'. \tag{2.91}$$

We also write for future reference the integral expression for the flux in the plane case, which is calculated in a manner similar to the density*:

$$S = \frac{c}{2}\int_{\tau}^{\infty} U_p E_2(\tau' - \tau)\, d\tau' - \frac{c}{2}\int_{0}^{\tau} U_p E_2(\tau - \tau')\, d\tau'. \tag{2.92}$$

From (2.91) it is apparent that the solution $U_p(\tau)$ is determined to within a constant factor. This factor corresponds to the arbitrary value of the flux S.

§15. Solution to the plane photosphere problem

We now seek a solution to the problem formulated in the preceding section by use of the diffusion approximation. Averaging the diffusion approximation equations over the spectrum and introducing the average absorption coefficient κ' and the average mean free path $l' = 1/\kappa'$, we write these equations as

$$\frac{dS}{dx} = c\kappa'(U_p - U), \tag{2.93}$$

$$S = -\frac{l'c}{3}\frac{dU}{dx}. \tag{2.94}$$

On replacing the x coordinate by the optical thickness τ ($d\tau = -\kappa'\, dx$), we obtain

$$\frac{dS}{d\tau} = c(U - U_p), \tag{2.95}$$

$$S = \frac{c}{3}\frac{dU}{d\tau}. \tag{2.96}$$

Equation (2.95) demonstrates the equivalence of the radiative equilibrium condition $U = U_p$ and the condition of constancy of flux $S = const$. In the case considered the radiative equilibrium condition also leads to a rigorous equivalence between the diffusion approximation and the radiation heat conduction approximation, since by virtue of the equality $U = U_p$,

$$S = \frac{c}{3}\frac{dU_p}{d\tau} = \frac{4}{3}\sigma\frac{dT^4}{d\tau}. \tag{2.97}$$

Solving equation (2.97) and applying the boundary condition (2.66)

$$S = 2\sigma T_0^4, \tag{2.98}$$

* For the point $\tau = 0$ this equation has already been obtained in §7, equation (2.45). It is interesting to compare the exact equations for the density (2.90) and the flux in the plane case (2.92) with those obtained in the "forward-reverse" approximation (2.73). The latter differ from the former in the numerical coefficients and in the replacement of the ordinary exponentials by exponential integrals.

for the flux S in terms of the surface temperature T_0 we obtain the following temperature and radiation density distribution in terms of the optical thickness:

$$U = U_p = \frac{4\sigma T^4}{c} = \frac{4\sigma T_0^4}{c}(1 + \tfrac{3}{2}\tau). \tag{2.99}$$

The brightness temperature of the surface (from the definition $S = \sigma T_{br}^4$) is given by $T_{br} = 2^{1/4}T_0 \approx 1.2T_0$.

The brightness temperature is somewhat higher than the true surface temperature T_0. This is obvious, since the photons emerging from the surface are born in a radiating layer near the surface with a thickness of the order of a mean free path (the optical thickness is of the order of unity). The temperature of the radiating layer is slightly higher than the surface temperature (Fig. 2.14) and therefore the "temperature" of the emerging radiation is also

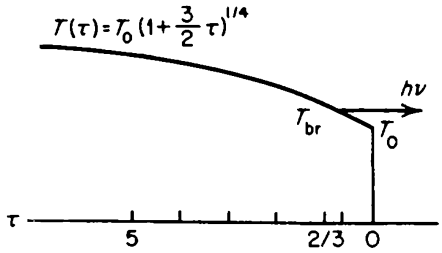


Fig. 2.14. Temperature distribution along the optical coordinate in a plane photosphere according to the diffusion approximation.

slightly higher. The brightness temperature is the same as the temperature of the medium at an optical depth $\tau = 2/3$. We can say that this depth corresponds approximately to the center of the radiating layer.

An exact analytic solution has been found for the problem of radiative equilibrium in a photosphere considered as "gray matter". This solution satisfies the exact integral equation (2.91). The problem has also been solved by various approximate methods, ones that are more exact than the diffusion approximation. (This problem, one of the few in the radiative transfer theory which can be solved exactly, usually serves as a standard for checking different approximate methods.)

The surface temperature T_0 obtained from the exact solution for the same flux S, that is, for the same brightness temperature T_{br}, turns out to be slightly lower than that given by the diffusion approximation. Namely, in the exact solution $T_0^4 = (\sqrt{3}/4)T_{br}^4$, $T_0 = 0.811T_{br}$, while in the diffusion approximation $T_0^4 = \frac{1}{2}T_{br}^4$, $T_0 = 0.841T_{br}$. The temperature distributions as functions of optical thickness are quite close to each other in the exact and the diffusion solutions (Fig. 2.15). This indicates that good accuracy can be obtained from the diffusion approximation. As expected, the error with the diffusion

approximation is smaller, the greater is the optical depth, the farther away we are from the boundary. As $\tau \to \infty$ the exact solution $U_p(\tau)$ asymptotically approaches the diffusion solution (2.99). This can be verified directly from the integral expressions for the density and the flux (2.91) and (2.92). The usefulness of such an asymptotic analysis lies in the fact that it shows the manner in which the diffusion and the radiation heat conduction approximations

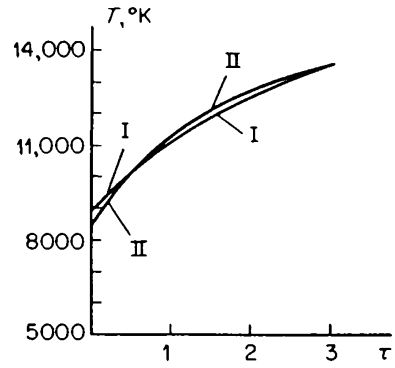


Fig. 2.15. Comparison of temperature distribution in a plane photosphere, calculated by the diffusion approximation (I) and by the exact solution (II). The brightness temperature was taken to be 10,500°K. The figure is taken from [1].

follow from the asymptotic behavior of the exact solution. The diffusion solution (2.99) shows that the relative change in the equilibrium density U_p over a mean free path decreases with the distance from the surface, as $\tau \to \infty$

$$\frac{\Delta U_p}{U_p} \approx \frac{l}{U_p}\frac{dU_p}{dx} = \frac{1}{U_p}\frac{dU_p}{d\tau} = \frac{1}{\frac{2}{3}+\tau} \approx \frac{1}{\tau}.$$

The exponential integrals E_1 and E_2 decrease rapidly with an increase in the argument, so that only the region $|\tau' - \tau| \sim 1$ about the point τ gives any significant contribution to the integrals (2.91) and (2.92). Therefore, the integration with respect to τ' from 0 to τ in the second integral of both (2.90) and (2.92) can for $\tau \gg 1$ be extended to $-\infty$ or, equivalently, the integration with respect to $\tau - \tau'$ from 0 to $\tau \gg 1$ can be extended to the range 0 to ∞. The larger the value of τ, the smaller is the error resulting from this change in the limits of integration.

Let us expand $U_p(\tau')$ about the point τ:

$$U_p(\tau') = U_p(\tau) + \frac{dU_p}{d\tau}(\tau' - \tau) + \frac{1}{2}\frac{d^2U_p}{d\tau^2}(\tau' - \tau)^2 + \cdots.$$

Since $U_p(\tau)$ is a slowly varying function as $\tau \to \infty$, the higher derivatives become smaller and smaller. Substituting this expansion into (2.90) and (2.91) and evaluating the integrals, we obtain (with an accuracy proportional

to the retained highest order derivatives of U_p with respect to τ) $S = (c/3)\,dU_p/d\tau$ from (2.92) and $d^2U_p/d\tau^2 = 0$ from (2.91). These results correspond to the diffusion and radiation heat conduction approximations.

The fact that the integrated radiation density at each point is equal to its equilibrium value corresponding to the temperature of the fluid does not mean that the same is true for the spectral densities*. However, the further away from the surface and into the photosphere we are, the less are the relative temperature changes over distances of the order of the average mean free path, and consequently over distances of the order of the frequency dependent mean free paths. Hence, local equilibrium exists for all points at a sufficient distance from the surface, for all frequencies. Here the averaged mean free path $l' = 1/\kappa'$ is the Rosseland mean free path. The Rosseland averaging method can be extended to include the entire photosphere up to the surface itself. Knowing the temperature distribution as a function of the average optical depth and knowing the relations governing the frequency dependent absorption coefficients (more exactly, their ratio to the average absorption coefficient κ'_ν/κ'), we can find the radiation spectrum of the star from the relations derived in §8 [1–3]. The spectrum, in general, does not coincide with the Planck spectrum corresponding to T_{br}, but in a number of cases it is quite close to it.

§16. Radiation energy losses of a heated body

Let us consider the energy losses resulting from the radiation from a heated body. We shall consider ordinary bodies of finite dimensions, heated non-uniformly in general. The total energy Q lost by the body per unit time is, obviously, equal to the volume integral of the energy q lost per unit volume per unit time. Noting that $q = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{S}$, we can write†

$$Q = \int q\, dV = \int S_0\, d\Sigma, \tag{2.100}$$

where dV is an element of volume of the body, $d\Sigma$ is an element of surface, and S_0 is the normal component of the radiation flux through the surface. We may also write $S_0 = \sigma T_{\text{br}}^4$ where T_{br} is the brightness temperature of the surface.

* In the same way that it does not follow from $S = const$ that $S_\nu = const$;

$$\frac{dS_\nu}{dx} = \kappa'_\nu(U_{\nu p} - U_\nu) \neq 0.$$

† The quantity q can change sign over the body, so that some parts of the body are cooled while others are heated by radiation.

The brightness temperature does not necessarily have to be close to the average temperature T of the nonuniformly heated body. In the case of an optically thick body, whose dimension x is much greater than the mean free path l (say, corresponding to some average temperature), the order of magnitude of the flux is

$$S_0 \sim lc\frac{U_p}{x} \sim \frac{l}{x}\sigma T^4 \ll \sigma T^4; \qquad T_{\text{br}} \sim \left(\frac{l}{x}\right)^{1/4} T.$$

For $(l/x)^{1/4} \ll 1$, then, $T_{\text{br}} \ll T$. The brightness temperature is rather close to the surface temperature. Only in the case of bodies which are optically thin enough can the brightness temperature be close to the average temperature of the body (the temperatures T_{br} and T can also be close to each other when the body is maintained by some means at a constant temperature).

Let us now consider an optically thin body, whose dimensions are quite small in comparison with an appropriate average photon mean free path*. If the optical thickness of the body x/l is small, then almost all the photons born at any point in the body emerge at the surface. Only a fraction of the photons, of the order of $x/l \ll 1$, are absorbed during their transit. The radiation density in the body is of the order of x/l of its equilibrium value, and is thus considerably lower than the equilibrium radiation density (the radiation is strongly out of equilibrium). In fact, according to (2.32) the radiation intensity at any point is equal to the integral with respect to the density of the sources along the ray within the limits of the body. Since the body is optically thin, $\int_{s'}^{s} \kappa'_\nu\, ds \sim x''/l_\nu \ll 1$, and the exponential factor characterizing the photon absorption is close to unity. Therefore, the intensity $I_\nu \sim (x/l_\nu)I_{\nu p}$, and the radiation density obtained from integrating over all angles is $U_\nu \sim (x/l_\nu)U_{\nu p}$. Integrating U_ν over the spectrum and introducing a frequency averaged mean free path l_1, we get $U \sim (x/l_1)U_p \ll U_p$. The amount of energy absorbed per unit volume per unit time is a fraction of the order of x/l_1 of the energy emitted per unit volume per unit time. This is true because the ratio of these quantities is U/U_p, as may be seen from the relation (2.61) for q.

Thus, in the case of an optically thin body the energy lost by the fluid per unit volume per unit time turns out to be equal (with an accuracy of the order of x/l_1) to the emitted energy, that is, to the integrated emission coefficient

$$J = \int_0^\infty J_\nu\, d\nu = c\int_0^\infty \kappa'_\nu U_{\nu p}\, d\nu. \tag{2.101}$$

* We denote the frequency averaged mean free path for the case of an optically thin body by l_1 in order to avoid confusion with the Rosseland mean free path l which characterizes an optically thick body. As we shall show below, the law for averaging the absorption over the entire spectrum in the case of an optically thin body differs from the Rosseland averaging law.

We take outside the integral sign the average value of the absorption coefficient, denoted by κ_1 and by definition equal to the reciprocal of the mean free path l_1. Equation (2.101) becomes

$$J = \kappa_1 U_p c = \frac{4\sigma T^4}{l_1}. \tag{2.102}$$

Equating (2.102) and (2.101) gives us the law for averaging the mean free path for an optically thin body

$$\kappa_1 = \frac{1}{l_1} = \frac{\int_0^\infty \kappa'_\nu U_{\nu p}\, d\nu}{\int_0^\infty U_{\nu p}\, d\nu} = \int_0^\infty \kappa'_\nu G_1(u)\, du. \tag{2.103}$$

The weighting function is

$$G_1(u) = \frac{15}{\pi^4}\frac{u^3}{e^u - 1}, \qquad u = \frac{h\nu}{kT}. \tag{2.104}$$

In terms of the actual absorption coefficient we have

$$\kappa_1 = \frac{1}{l_1} = \int_0^\infty \kappa_\nu G'_1(u)\, du, \tag{2.105}$$

$$G'_1(u) = (1 - e^{-u})G_1(u) = \frac{15}{\pi^4} e^{-u} u^3. \tag{2.106}$$

This averaging method is different from the Rosseland method (2.77) in that in the Rosseland method it is the mean free path or reciprocal of the absorption coefficient which is averaged with a weighting function which is proportional to the derivative with respect to temperature of the Planck function. On the other hand, the integrated emission coefficient (2.102) is characterized by a mean free path obtained by averaging the absorption coefficient itself with a weighting function proportional to the Planck function*.

The total energy lost by a heated optically thin body is given by the emission coefficient integrated over the volume

$$Q = \int q\, dV = \int J\, dV. \tag{2.107}$$

We note that an optically thick body is mainly cooled by radiation "from the surface", whereas in the case of an optically thin body the entire volume participates in the cooling process. Of course, it is possible to introduce the concept

* *Editors' note.* This inverse of a frequency averaged absorption coefficient is usually termed the Planck mean free path.

of radiation flux from the surface even in this case and to write (2.107) in the form of a surface integral, since the relation $q = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{S}$ is always valid. However, in the case of volume cooling this interpretation of energy losses is purely formal, while in the case of an optically thick body the emitted photons are actually born in the surface layer. Accordingly, the radiation spectrum of an optically thick body is to a certain degree close to the Planck spectrum corresponding to the brightness temperature T_{br} or the surface temperature. The radiation spectrum of an optically thin body can be essentially different from the Planck spectrum corresponding to the temperature of the body, if the absorption coefficient of the fluid is strongly frequency dependent. In this case the spectrum is characterized by the frequency function $\kappa'_\nu U_{\nu p}$.

Let us compare the radiant energy losses per unit volume of the body (the cooling rate per unit volume) and those per unit surface area (flux from the surface) for cases of optically thick and optically thin bodies. If the linear dimensions of the body are of the order of x, then its surface area is of the order of x^2 and its volume is of the order of x^3. The cooling rate per unit surface area for an optically thick body is of the order of

$$\frac{Q}{x^2} \sim S \sim \frac{l}{x}\sigma T^4 \ll \sigma T^4, \qquad \frac{l}{x} \ll 1, \tag{2.108}$$

and the cooling rate per unit volume is

$$\frac{Q}{x^3} \sim \frac{S}{x} \sim \frac{1}{x}\frac{l}{x}\sigma T^4 \sim \left(\frac{l}{x}\right)^2 \frac{\sigma T^4}{l} \ll \frac{\sigma T^4}{l}. \tag{2.109}$$

In the case of an optically thin body however,

$$\frac{Q}{x^2} \sim \frac{Jx^3}{x^2} \sim \frac{x}{l_1}\sigma T^4 \ll \sigma T^4; \qquad \frac{x}{l_1} \ll 1, \tag{2.110}$$

$$\frac{Q}{x^3} \sim J \sim \frac{\sigma T^4}{l_1}, \qquad \frac{x}{l_1} \ll 1. \tag{2.111}$$

Let us compare the relative energy losses of two bodies at approximately the same average temperature; one of the bodies has large dimensions and is optically thick, while the other has small dimensions and is optically thin. We assume that for both bodies the densities and the temperatures are nearly equal so that the mean free paths l and l_1 (which are functions of the temperature and density of the fluid only) are of the same order. As a rule, the different methods in averaging over the spectrum do not lead to large numerical differences between the mean free paths; l and l_1 usually do not differ by more than a factor of two to four. From equations (2.108) and (2.110) it is apparent that the losses in both cases per unit surface area are less than σT^4. Only a

body whose dimensions are of the order of a mean free path (an optical thickness of the order of unity, $x \sim l \sim l_1$) emits from its surface a radiant energy flux corresponding to a perfect black body at a temperature of the order of the average temperature of the body. Let us consider the losses per unit volume (or per unit mass) of an optically thick body. Here, the mass cooling rate is much lower than in the case of an optically thin body. In the latter case the rate is of the order of the integrated emission coefficient $J \sim \sigma T^4/l_1$ averaged over the volume and independent of the dimensions (by virtue of the volume character of the radiation). The physical reason for this is clear: the photons emitted within the optically thick layer are "locked up" within the body and cannot reach the outside, since they are absorbed during their transit inside the body.

§17. Hydrodynamic equations accounting for radiation energy and pressure and radiant heat exchange

In §9 we have indicated a method of accounting for the interaction between the radiation and the fluid, which simply reduces to the determination of light emission and absorption. The radiation pressure and energy were assumed to be small in comparison with the energy and pressure of the fluid. At very high temperatures or in a very rarefied gas, the radiation energy and pressure cannot be neglected as long as the dimensions of the gaseous body are large compared to the radiation mean free path. It is clear in the case of local equilibrium between the radiation and the fluid, when $U = U_p = 4\sigma T^4/c$ and the radiation pressure is $p_v = U_p/3 = \frac{4}{3}\sigma T^4/c$, that the radiation energy and pressure must be added to the internal energy and pressure of the fluid, and that a radiant heat transfer term should be included in the hydrodynamic equations. Let us show how this statement follows from the general equations describing the fluid-radiation system.

In order to write in a complete form the laws of conservation of energy and momentum for the fluid-radiation system (which, in general, is not in equilibrium), it is convenient to start with the divergence form of the equations, which are equivalent to the "continuity" equations for the quantities being conserved. These equations were formulated in Chapter I for the flow of a perfect gas in the absence of radiation (equations (1.7) and (1.10)). The equations for the fluid-radiation system can be easily obtained by a straightforward generalization of (1.7) and (1.10) (we recall that we are considering nonrelativistic motions only). For example, we add to the momentum density $\rho\mathbf{u}$ the momentum density $\mathbf{G}$ of the radiation, and to the tensor momentum flux density of the fluid Π_{ik} we add the tensor momentum flux density of the radiation T_{ik}. The latter is, of course, equivalent to the Maxwell stress tensor for an electromagnetic field. In exactly the same way, we add the inte-

grated radiant energy density U to the energy density of the fluid and to the energy flux density of the fluid we add the integrated radiant energy flux $\mathbf{S}$, i.e., the Poynting vector. We remind the reader that the radiation momentum is related to the Poynting vector by the relation $\mathbf{G} = \mathbf{S}/c^2$. In this manner we obtain the momentum and energy equations for the fluid-radiation system

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}(\rho u_i + G_i) + \frac{\partial}{\partial x_k}(\Pi_{ik} + T_{ik}) = 0, \tag{2.112}$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\rho\varepsilon + \frac{\rho u^2}{2} + U\right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial x_k}\left\{\rho u_k\left(\varepsilon + \frac{p}{\rho} + \frac{u^2}{2}\right) + S_k\right\} = 0. \tag{2.113}$$

The continuity equation obviously remains unchanged, since the radiation "has no mass"*

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x_k}(\rho u_k) = 0.$$

Equations (2.112) and (2.113), formulated above by simply generalizing the hydrodynamic equations, have a clear and precise physical meaning. They can be also obtained in a strictly formal manner by starting with the conservation equations written for the four-dimensional energy-momentum tensor for the fluid-radiation system, and then applying the nonrelativistic approximation to the tensor component associated with the fluid (we shall not present here this fairly elementary derivation).

The quantities characterizing the radiation which are included in equations (2.112) and (2.113) may be interpreted in two ways. When treated as components of an electromagnetic field they are expressed in terms of the electric and magnetic field intensities $\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{H}$

$$U = \frac{E^2 + H^2}{8\pi},$$

$$\mathbf{S} = \frac{c}{4\pi}\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{H} = c^2\mathbf{G}, \tag{2.114}$$

$$T_{ik} = \frac{1}{4\pi}\left\{-E_iE_k - H_iH_k + \tfrac{1}{2}\delta_{ik}(E^2 + H^2)\right\}.$$

It is only necessary to keep in mind that radiation is a rapidly varying electromagnetic field; the period of the electromagnetic oscillations is negligibly small in comparison with macroscopic flow times, and hence it is understood that the above equations contain time-averaged quantities averaged over a period large in comparison with the period of oscillation.

* When $U \sim \varepsilon \ll \rho c^2$.

In the quantum-mechanical treatment the macroscopic quantities U, $\mathbf{S}$, and T_{ik} are expressed in terms of the photon distribution function. If $f(\nu, \boldsymbol{\Omega}, \mathbf{r}, t)$ is the distribution function at the point $\mathbf{r}$ at the time t for a particular frequency ν and a particular direction of motion of the photons $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$, then, as shown in §1 of the present chapter,

$$U = \int h\nu f \, d\Omega \, d\nu,$$

$$\mathbf{S} = \int h\nu c \boldsymbol{\Omega} f \, d\Omega \, d\nu, \tag{2.115}$$

$$T_{ik} = \int \Omega_i \Omega_k h\nu f \, d\Omega \, d\nu \, *.$$

Expanding the rapidly varying electromagnetic fields in Fourier integrals, we can represent these fields as a superposition of harmonic oscillations of different frequencies. In averaging over time the terms contained in the relations for U, S_i, and T_{ik} which are quadratic with respect to the field components and which are products of quantities involving different frequencies vanish. Only quadratic terms containing products of the Fourier components corresponding to the same frequency remain. Therefore, the energy, momentum, and the radiation energy and momentum fluxes are represented as a linear superposition of terms corresponding to different frequencies. This allows us to introduce the concept of a radiation intensity at a given frequency $I_\nu(\boldsymbol{\Omega}, \mathbf{r}, t)$ and to express the macroscopic quantities in terms of integrals of the intensity over the spectrum and over the direction of propagation of the radiation

$$U = \frac{1}{c} \int I_\nu \, d\Omega \, d\nu,$$

$$\mathbf{S} = \int \boldsymbol{\Omega} I_\nu \, d\Omega \, d\nu, \tag{2.116}$$

$$T_{ik} = \frac{1}{c} \int \Omega_i \Omega_k I_\nu \, d\Omega \, d\nu.$$

This linear superposition also allows us to go over to the quantum-mechanical treatment of intensity as the product of the photon energy and the distribution function ($I_\nu = h\nu c f$).

* The energy of a photon is $h\nu$, its momentum is $\boldsymbol{\Omega} h\nu/c$, and the flux of the ith component of the momentum in the kth direction is $\Omega_i \Omega_k (h\nu/c)c$, from which we obtain the expression for the momentum flux tensor T_{ik}.

It is well known that electromagnetic fields, frequencies, and directions of propagation of electromagnetic waves and, consequently, the integral quantities U, $\mathbf{S}$, and T_{ik} depend on the coordinate system in which they are measured. The integral quantities contained in equations (2.112) and (2.113) pertain to a stationary, "laboratory" coordinate system, where the given fluid particle moves with the velocity $\mathbf{u}$. It is more convenient, however, to employ the radiation parameters measured in the particle's "own" coordinate system, the system in which the particle is at rest. Indeed, it is the radiant energy density in a fluid at rest which is equal to the equilibrium value $U_p = 4\sigma T^4/c$ in the state of complete thermodynamic equilibrium; and it is the radiation flux with respect to a fluid at rest which has the character of a diffusion. The radiation is "carried away" together with the moving fluid and the total flux includes this "carried away" radiation.

Let us transform the quantities U, $\mathbf{S}$, and T_{ik} in (2.112) and (2.113) to corresponding primed quantities which are taken in a coordinate system attached to the moving particles of the fluid. If the medium moves with nonrelativistic velocities $u/c \ll 1$, so that it is possible to neglect those terms proportional to u/c, the transformation to the moving coordinate system gives (see [6])

$$\begin{aligned} U &= U', \\ S_i &= S_i' + u_i U' + u_k T_{ik}', \\ T_{ik} &= T_{ik}'. \end{aligned} \tag{2.117}$$

Let us introduce the transformed quantities into equations (2.112) and (2.113). We note that the radiation momentum G_i is extremely small in comparison with the momentum of the fluid ρu_i, and hence can be neglected*. Expanding the momentum flux tensor of the fluid as $\Pi_{ik} = \rho u_i u_k + p\,\delta_{ik}$, we get

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{\partial}{\partial t}(\rho u_i) + \frac{\partial}{\partial x_k}(\rho u_i u_k) + \frac{\partial p}{\partial x_i} + \frac{\partial T_{ik}'}{\partial x_k} = 0, \\ &\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\rho\varepsilon + \frac{\rho u^2}{2} + U'\right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial x_k}\left\{\rho u_k\left(\varepsilon + \frac{p}{\rho} + \frac{u^2}{2}\right) + S_k' + u_k U' + u_i T_{ik}'\right\} = 0 \end{aligned} \tag{2.118}$$

(these equations were derived by Belen'kii [7]).

Let us consider the case of local thermodynamic equilibrium between the radiation and the fluid. The radiant energy density is then equal to its equilibrium value $U' = 4\sigma T^4/c$. The radiant energy flux with respect to the fluid

* Actually, if the radiant energy is comparable to the energy of the fluid, that is, $U \sim \rho u^2$, then the radiation momentum which is of the order of $G \sim U/c$ is smaller by a factor of u/c than the momentum of the fluid ρu:

$$G \sim \frac{U}{c} \sim \frac{u}{c}\rho u.$$

S'_k is approximately proportional to the gradient of the equilibrium radiation density. According to the relation (2.76) for radiation heat conduction

$$S'_k = -\frac{lc}{3}\frac{\partial}{\partial x_k}\left(\frac{4\sigma T^4}{c}\right) = -\frac{16\sigma l T^3}{3}\frac{\partial T}{\partial x_k}.$$

The momentum flux tensor is most simply obtained from (2.116), by noting that for local equilibrium the radiation field is almost isotropic and that the intensity is only weakly dependent upon angle. We find

$$T'_{ik} = \frac{U'_p}{3}\delta_{ik} = p_v\,\delta_{ik},$$

where $p_v = \frac{1}{3}U'_p = \frac{4}{3}\sigma T^4/c$ is the radiation pressure. Substituting these quantities into equations (2.118) we find for the case of local equilibrium that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}(\rho u_i) + \frac{\partial}{\partial x_k}(\rho u_i u_k) + \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i}(p + p_v) = 0, \tag{2.119}$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\rho\varepsilon + \frac{\rho u^2}{2} + U_p\right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial x_k}\left\{u_k\left(\rho\varepsilon + U_p + \frac{\rho u^2}{2} + p + p_v\right) - \frac{lc}{3}\frac{\partial U_p}{\partial x_k}\right\} = 0, \tag{2.120}$$

where $U_p = 3p_v = 4\sigma T^4/c$. The momentum and energy equations of the system are now in closed form, since all the quantities describing the radiation are expressed in terms of temperature and of the optical properties of the fluid.

If the radiation is not in local thermodynamic equilibrium with the fluid, then the radiative transfer equation must be added to equations (2.118). The radiative transfer equation for a moving medium taking into account terms of order u/c is discussed in [8].

§18. The number of photons as an invariant of the classical electromagnetic field

The radiation field is characterized by the density and flux of energy (the momentum density being proportional to the latter); these quantities are determined by equations (2.114). It is remarkable that in the classical theory it is possible to introduce still another characteristic quantity which (to within an arbitrary multiplier) coincides with the number of photons in the field. At first sight the number of photons is, by definition, a quantum concept, has no place, and cannot be defined in the classical theory. Let us recall, however, that in classical mechanics the integral $\oint p\,dq = h(n + \frac{1}{2})$ which yields the number of the quantum state of an oscillator appears as an adiabatic invariant. Similarly, the number of photons in a given electromagnetic field should be an adiabatic invariant. In addition, it should be a time-invariant quantity and a relativistic invariant.

The quantity which is proportional to the number of photons is given by

$$N \sim \iint \frac{\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}') + \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r}' - \mathbf{r}|^2} \, d\mathbf{r} \, d\mathbf{r}', \tag{2.121}$$

where the integration is carried out over the spaces $\mathbf{r}$ and $\mathbf{r}'$ ($d\mathbf{r}$ and $d\mathbf{r}'$ denote volume elements). The structure of this expression can be easily understood if we change to the integration variables $\mathbf{r}$ and $\boldsymbol{\rho} = \mathbf{r}' - \mathbf{r}$. We fix the point $\mathbf{r}$ and write an integral over the volume $d\boldsymbol{\rho}$ in polar coordinates with center at the point $\mathbf{r}$

$$\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \int \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r} + \rho) \frac{\rho^2 \, d\rho \, d\Omega_\rho}{\rho^2},$$

where $d\Omega_\rho$ is an element of solid angle about the point $\mathbf{r}$.

The above expression is of the same order of magnitude as $E^2(\mathbf{r})\bar{\lambda}$, where $\bar{\lambda}$ is an average distance at which the correlation between the field at the given point $\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r})$ and the field in the vicinity of that point is retained. Setting up an analogous expression using $\mathbf{H}$, we find that, to the correct order of magnitude,

$$N \sim \int (E^2 + H^2)\bar{\lambda} \, d\mathbf{r} \sim \int U(\mathbf{r})\bar{\lambda} \, d\mathbf{r}.$$

Let us now derive (2.121) for the number of photons*. We consider a field which contains neither free nor bound charges. Then $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = 0$ and $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{H} = 0$. The number of photons in the given frequency interval dv is equal to the energy of the field which is contained in this interval divided by hv. In order to determine the spectral energy we expand the field in a Fourier integral over the space

$$\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}) = \int \mathbf{E}_\mathbf{k} e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \, d\mathbf{k}.$$

By virtue of the field equations under the specified conditions, the Fourier components $\mathbf{E}_\mathbf{k}$ are functions of time proportional to $\exp(-i\omega_k t)$, where $\omega_k = ck$ ($\omega_k = 2\pi\nu_k$). We introduce for each direction of the wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ the directions of light polarization $\mathbf{n}_1$ and $\mathbf{n}_2$, which are perpendicular to $\mathbf{k}$. The Fourier components of a field with the given polarity are

$$E_{k_1} = \int \mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{n}_1 e^{-i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \, d\mathbf{r}.$$

The quantities E_{k_2}, H_{k_1}, and H_{k_2} are defined similarly.

The energy of waves (with the given polarity) propagating in the direction $\mathbf{k}$ is proportional to

$$\varepsilon_{k_1} \sim |E_{k_1} + H_{k_2}|^2, \qquad \varepsilon_{k_2} \sim |E_{k_2} - H_{k_1}|^2.$$

* We are indebted to A. S. Kompaneets for discussion of this problem.

The corresponding number of photons with the given frequency is proportional to

$$f_k = f_{k_1} + f_{k_2} = \frac{\varepsilon_{k_1} + \varepsilon_{k_2}}{h\nu_k} \sim \frac{\varepsilon_{k_1} + \varepsilon_{k_2}}{k}.$$

The total number of photons in the field is proportional to

$$N \sim \int f_k \, d\mathbf{k}.$$

Substituting the expressions for E_{k_1}, etc., and carrying out some simple transformations, we find that

$$N \sim \iiint [\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{n}_1 e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} \, d\mathbf{r}][\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}') \cdot \mathbf{n}_1 e^{-i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}'} \, d\mathbf{r}'] \frac{d\mathbf{k}}{k} + \cdots$$

to which integral are to be added analogous terms in $\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{n}_2$, $\mathbf{H} \cdot \mathbf{n}_1$, and $\mathbf{H} \cdot \mathbf{n}_2$. This expression can be written as a single integral

$$N \sim \iiint \{[\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{n}_1 \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}') \cdot \mathbf{n}_1 + \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{n}_2 \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}') \cdot \mathbf{n}_2] + [\text{same terms in } \mathbf{H}]\} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot(\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r}')} \, d\mathbf{r} \, d\mathbf{r}' \frac{d\mathbf{k}}{k}. \tag{2.122}$$

It follows from the condition that $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = 0$, $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{H} = 0$, that the waves are transverse, and that the quantities

$$E_{k_3} = \int \mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{n}_3 e^{-i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} \, d\mathbf{r}$$

and H_{k_3} are equal to zero ($\mathbf{n}_3 = \mathbf{k}/k$ is a unit vector in the direction $\mathbf{k}$). This means that (2.122) will not change if we add to the integrand the quantity

$$\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{n}_3 \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}') \cdot \mathbf{n}_3 e^{i\mathbf{k}(\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r}')} \, d\mathbf{r} \, d\mathbf{r}' \frac{d\mathbf{k}}{k},$$

which is equal to zero. But, after this quantity is added, the expression in brackets in (2.122) will take on the form of a scalar product $\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}')$, since $\mathbf{n}_1$, $\mathbf{n}_2$, and $\mathbf{n}_3$ form three perpendicular directions. As a result we get

$$N \sim \iiint [\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}') + \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}')] e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot(\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r}')} \, d\mathbf{r} \, d\mathbf{r}' \frac{d\mathbf{k}}{k}.$$

Evaluating the integral $\int e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot(\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r}')} d\mathbf{k}/k$, we obtain (2.121), which proves our earlier statement that the quantity defined in (2.121) is proportional to the number of photons in the field.

Most interesting is the fact that N is written as a double integral over a volume for a given $t = const$. In the Lorentz transformation $\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{H}$ are changed, in addition to which it is necessary to make a transition to another volume with $t' = const$ (to another hypersurface in the four-dimensional Minkowski space). A direct proof of the fact that the expression N is a Lorentz invariant* is quite difficult. Since t and t' cannot coincide, we must use Maxwell's equations to make a transition from $\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{H}$ in the volume $t = const$ to $\mathbf{E}'$ and $\mathbf{H}'$ in the volume $t' = const$. However, the relativistic invariance of (2.122) actually stems from the fact that N—the total number of photons in this volume—is, obviously, a relativistic invariant. It is here essential that we consider a field free of charges in which photons are neither born nor absorbed.

* *Editors' note.* That N in an unbounded empty space is constant with time is clear from the fact that ε_k is independent of time.

III. Thermodynamic properties of gases at high temperatures

1. Gas of noninteracting particles

§1. Perfect gas with constant specific heats and invariant number of particles

In many real processes the macroscopic parameters characterizing the state of the gas, such as the density ρ, specific internal energy ε, or temperature T, change slowly in comparison with the rates of the relaxation processes leading to thermodynamic equilibrium. Under such conditions a gas particle is at any instant of time in a state that is very close to the thermodynamic equilibrium state corresponding to the instantaneous values of the macroscopic parameters. Exceptions to this are very rapid processes, such as the flow of gas through a shock front. In this chapter we shall only consider gases in thermodynamic equilibrium.

In order to describe the adiabatic motion of a fluid it is necessary to specify either the entropy $S(\rho, p)$ or the specific internal energy $\varepsilon(\rho, p)$ as a function of density and pressure. In the nonadiabatic case, the energy equation usually contains the temperature explicitly (for example, when considering heat conduction or radiation), which must be related to the density and pressure through an equation of state $p = p(\rho, T)$.

As is well known, all thermodynamic properties of a fluid can be obtained from one of the generalized thermodynamic potentials expressed as a function of the appropriate variables, for example, $\varepsilon(S, \rho)$, $h(S, p)$, $F(T, \rho)$, or $\Phi(T, p)$, where F is the free energy, h the enthalpy, and Φ the Gibbs potential*. In calculating the thermodynamic properties of gases it is customary to determine directly the internal energy as a function of temperature and density $\varepsilon(T, \rho)$ or of temperature and pressure $\varepsilon(T, p)$. Then it is necessary to introduce independently the equation of state, which can be derived from the function $\varepsilon(S, \rho)$, but not from the functions $\varepsilon(T, \rho)$ or $\varepsilon(T, p)$.

We shall consider only perfect gases (unless specified otherwise) where, by

* *Editors' note.* The function $\Phi = h - TS$ is referred to by the authors as thermodynamic potential. This function is also variously called Gibbs function or Gibbs free energy in distinction to the Helmholtz free energy F, here referred to simply as free energy. The equation $p = p(\rho, T)$ is often termed the *engineering* equation of state to distinguish it from any equation (of state) which connects state variables.

definition, the interaction between the particles can be disregarded. In many cases of practical importance the perfect gas approximation is quite accurate (the imperfect nature manifests itself only at very high densities; this is discussed in §§11–14). The equation of state for a perfect gas can be written in one of the equivalent forms

$$p = nkT = N\rho kT = \frac{NkT}{V} = \frac{\mathscr{R}}{\mu_0}\rho T = R\rho T, \tag{3.1}$$

where n is the number of particles per unit volume, N the number of particles per unit mass, $\mathscr{R}$ the universal gas constant*, R the gas constant per unit mass, μ_0 the average molecular weight, and V the specific volume. The number of particles per unit mass N, or the average molecular weight μ_0 may depend on the temperature and density as a result of dissociation, chemical reactions, or ionization.

The internal energy of a gas and hence also the specific heat at constant volume are in general made up of a number of contributions which correspond to the different degrees of freedom of the gas, as for example, translational motion, rotation and vibrations of the molecules, or electronic excitation of the atoms and molecules, and also a number of contributions which correspond to molecular dissociation, chemical reactions, and ionization. In the subsequent discussion we shall, for the sake of brevity, include the latter factors as well in the general concept of "degrees of freedom". As with the internal energy, all the remaining thermodynamic potentials and the entropy are sums over the various degrees of freedom. Each of the different degrees of freedom, with the exception of the translational motion of the particles, provides a contribution to the thermodynamic functions only above some more or less definite temperature. For the degrees of freedom associated with a change in the number of particles (dissociation, chemical reactions, ionization) these temperatures depend on the gas density.

At very low temperatures the atoms and molecules are neither ionized nor excited and the chemical composition corresponds to the most energetically probable state (that of minimum energy); the thermal motion is limited to the translational displacements of the particles. The specific internal energy measured from zero temperature is given by $\varepsilon_{\text{trans}} = \frac{3}{2}NkT$, and the specific heat at constant volume is $c_{v\,\text{trans}} = \frac{3}{2}Nk$. For a monatomic gas, the temperature region where the thermodynamic functions are determined by the purely translational motion of the atoms extends to quite high values of the temperature, of the order of several and even tens of thousands of degrees; at still higher temperatures, ionization and electronic excitation occur.

* $\mathscr{R} = 8.31 \cdot 10^7$ erg/deg·mole = 1.99 cal/deg·mole, $k = 1.38 \cdot 10^{-16}$ erg/deg = 8.31 joule/deg·mole.

In a molecular gas, the rotational degrees of freedom are excited at very low temperatures. This usually takes place at temperatures up to the order of 10°K. Energies of rotational quanta expressed in degrees (that is, divided by the Boltzmann constant k) are very small; for example, 2.1°K for oxygen, 2.9°K for nitrogen, and 2.4°K for nitric oxide. The only exception is the hydrogen molecule, for which this quantity is equal to 85.4°K. Even at 300°K (room temperature), and even more so at higher temperatures, quantum effects are not very significant. The rotational part of the specific heat is equal to its classical value. The specific heat $c_{v\,\mathrm{rot}} = Nk$ for diatomic and linear polyatomic molecules and $c_{v\,\mathrm{rot}} = \frac{3}{2}Nk$ for nonlinear polyatomic molecules. The corresponding internal energy contributions are $\varepsilon_{\mathrm{rot}} = NkT$ and $\frac{3}{2}NkT$, respectively.

Molecular vibrations are excited at much higher temperatures, of the order of several hundred or even thousands of degrees; therefore, a temperature region exists in which the thermal motion of a molecular gas consists of translational and rotational motion only. The specific heat in this region is constant, and for a diatomic gas (for example, air) is equal to $c_v = c_{v\,\mathrm{trans}} + c_{v\,\mathrm{rot}} = \frac{5}{2}Nk$. The corresponding internal energy $\varepsilon = \frac{5}{2}NkT$.

The energies of vibrational quanta expressed in degrees are usually of the order of a few thousand degrees in diatomic molecules. For example, $hv/k =$ 2230°K for O_2, 3340°K for N_2, and 2690°K for NO; the lowest vibrational frequency for triatomic molecules is usually smaller, for example, $hv/k =$ 916°K, 1960°K, 2310°K for NO_2. At temperatures less than or of the order of hv/k the vibrational contribution to the specific heat depends on the temperature and must be calculated using quantum-mechanical formulas. For temperatures appreciably greater than hv/k, however, the vibrational contribution to the specific heat is constant and equal to its classical value of k per vibrational degree of freedom. A diatomic molecule has one vibrational degree of freedom, a nonlinear m-atomic molecule has $3m - 6$, and a linear molecule has $3m - 5$ degrees of freedom. Thus, for temperatures appreciably greater than the maximum value of hv/k, the total classical specific heat per molecule $c_v = c_{v\,\mathrm{trans}} + c_{v\,\mathrm{rot}} + c_{v\,\mathrm{vib}}$ is $c_v = \frac{3}{2}Nk + Nk + (3m - 5)Nk = (3m - \frac{5}{2})Nk$ for linear m-atomic molecules, and $c_v = \frac{3}{2}Nk + \frac{3}{2}Nk + (3m - 6)Nk = (3m - 2)Nk$ for nonlinear molecules. For diatomic molecules $c_v = \frac{7}{2}Nk$. The isentropic equation for a perfect gas with constant specific heats and an invariant number of particles is determined from the general thermodynamic relationship

$$T\,dS = d\varepsilon + p\,dV = c_v\,dT + NkT\frac{dV}{V} = 0.$$

Integrating, we obtain

$$T \sim V^{-(\gamma-1)} \sim \rho^{\gamma-1}; \qquad p \sim V^{-\gamma} \sim \rho^{\gamma}, \tag{3.2}$$

where the proportionality coefficients are functions of the entropy alone. Here $\gamma = c_p/c_v$ is the specific heat ratio and $c_p = c_v + Nk$ is the specific heat at constant pressure. For example, for a monatomic gas $\gamma = 5/3$, for a diatomic gas with the vibrational degrees of freedom not excited $\gamma = 7/5$, while with fully excited vibrations $\gamma = 9/7$.

It should be noted, however, that there is not a very wide temperature range in which the molecular vibrations are fully excited while the specific heats and the specific heat ratio remain constant. This is a result of the fact that molecular dissociation and chemical reactions frequently begin at temperatures for which the vibrational contribution to the specific heats has just reached its classical limiting value.

§2. Calculation of thermodynamic functions using partition functions

The most rigorous and consistent method for finding all of the thermodynamic functions is the so-called method of partition functions. We shall briefly present the fundamentals of this method* and use it to obtain an expression for the entropy and the quantum-mechanical formula for the vibrational energy of a molecule. In subsequent sections we shall apply this method to a gas in which the number of particles is variable.

According to statistical mechanics the probability of the nth state of a system consisting of N particles and having an energy equal to E_n is proportional to $\exp(-E_n/kT)$. The sum of these probabilities over all possible states of the system, determined to within a constant multiplicative factor, is given by

$$Q = \sum_n e^{-\frac{E_n}{kT}}. \tag{3.3}$$

This expression is called the partition function of the system.

For an ideal Boltzmann gas consisting of several kinds of molecules, the number of which is $N_A, N_B, \ldots$, the partition function may be factored into a product of co-factors, each corresponding to the particles of one kind

$$Q = \frac{Z_A^{N_A}}{N_A!} \cdot \frac{Z_B^{N_B}}{N_B!} \cdots. \tag{3.4}$$

Here $Z_A, Z_B, \ldots$ are the partition functions of each type for one molecule, and are expressed by equations of a form similar to (3.3)

$$Z = \sum_k e^{-\frac{\varepsilon_k}{kT}}. \tag{3.5}$$

* Detailed derivations can be found in most texts on statistical physics as, for example, in the book by Landau and Lifshitz [1].

Here ε_k is the energy of a molecule in the kth state, and the summation is carried out over all possible states of one molecule.

The general formula for the free energy of a system is

$$F = -kT \ln Q. \tag{3.6}$$

If we replace the factorials in (3.4) by means of Stirling's formula $N! \approx (N/e)^N$ and substitute the result into (3.6), we get

$$F = -N_A kT \ln \frac{Z_A e}{N_A} - N_B kT \ln \frac{Z_B e}{N_B} - \cdots. \tag{3.7}$$

Since the free energy is a thermodynamic potential with respect to the variables, temperature and density (or volume), we can derive all the thermodynamic properties from (3.7) if the partition functions of the molecules are known as a function of the temperature T and the volume V. The general thermodynamic equations define the entropy, internal energy, and pressure, respectively, as

$$S = -\left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial T}\right)_{V,N}, \tag{3.8}$$

$$\varepsilon = F + TS = -T^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial T}\left(\frac{F}{T}\right)_{V,N}, \tag{3.9}$$

$$p = -\left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial V}\right)_{T,N}. \tag{3.10}$$

Neglecting any interactions between electronic, vibrational, and rotational states, and considering the molecule as a rigid rotator and the vibrations as harmonic, the energy of the molecule may be represented as the sum of the energy contributions of the various degrees of freedom. In this case, as is evident from (3.5), the partition function of one molecule also may be factored into the product

$$Z = Z_{\text{trans}} \cdot Z_{\text{rot}} \cdot Z_{\text{vib}} \cdot Z_{\text{el}}. \tag{3.11}$$

We present here several formulas for the partition functions without proof. The translational partition function for any particle is

$$Z_{\text{trans}} = \left(\frac{2\pi MkT}{h^2}\right)^{3/2} V, \tag{3.12}$$

where M is the mass of the particle and V is the volume occupied by the gas (if N is understood to be the number of particles per unit mass, then V is the specific volume).

* As may be easily checked by direct substitution of (3.6) and (3.3) into (3.9), $\varepsilon = \Sigma E_n \exp(-E_n/kT)/\Sigma \exp(-E_n/kT)$ and the internal energy is simply equal to the energy of the system averaged over all possible states.

The rotational partition function (for temperatures much higher than the energy of a rotational quantum divided by k) is

$$Z_{\text{rot}} = \frac{8\pi^2 IkT}{h^2}\frac{1}{\sigma} \tag{3.13}$$

for a diatomic or a linear polyatomic molecule*, and

$$Z_{\text{rot}} = \frac{8\pi^2}{\sigma}\left(\frac{2\pi IkT}{h^2}\right)^{3/2} \tag{3.14}$$

for a nonlinear polyatomic molecule. Here I represents the moment of inertia of a linear molecule in (3.13), and in (3.14) it denotes the geometric mean of the three moments of inertia of a nonlinear polyatomic molecule $I = (I_1 I_2 I_3)^{1/3}$; σ is the so-called symmetry factor, equal to 1 plus the number of transpositions of identical atoms in a molecule, where the transpositions are equivalent to the rotation of the molecule as a whole†.

The quantum-mechanical expression for the partition function of a harmonic oscillator vibrating at a frequency ν is

$$Z_{\text{vib}} = (1 - e^{-h\nu/kT})^{-1}. \tag{3.15}$$

The vibrational energy in this equation is measured with respect to the lowest quantum vibrational level. It is assumed that the zero-point energy for vibrations $h\nu/2$ is included in the energy of the ground state of the molecule. If the molecule has several vibrational degrees of freedom, then the total vibrational partition function is represented as the product of factors corresponding to all the normal modes.

Finally, the electronic partition function retains its original form

$$Z_{\text{el}} = \sum_n e^{-\frac{\varepsilon_n}{kT}}, \tag{3.16}$$

where ε_n is the energy of the nth electronic quantum state of the atom or molecule. If the energy levels are degenerate, then each contribution enters the partition function as an independent component, so that the number of identical components for each level is equal to the statistical weight of the level.

The different atomic and molecular constants required for calculating the thermodynamic properties of gases are usually obtained from spectroscopic data. The rotational and vibrational energy of various molecules has been discussed in the preceding section. Energies of the first excited electronic states of atoms and molecules ε_1 are usually of the order of several ev, with ε_1/k of the order of tens of thousands of degrees. For example, for the ^1D

* The rotational energy of a quantum $h\nu_{\text{rot}} = h^2/8\pi^2 I$, so that $Z_{\text{rot}} = kT/h\nu_{\text{rot}} \cdot \sigma$.

† For example, in a diatomic molecule composed of identical atoms $\sigma = 2$; and in one composed of different atoms $\sigma = 1$.

term* for O atoms $\varepsilon_1 = 1.96$ ev, $\varepsilon_1/k = 22{,}800°\text{K}$, while for the $^2D^0$ term for N, $\varepsilon_1 = 2.37$ ev, $\varepsilon_1/k = 27{,}500°\text{K}$. In the case of molecules we have for the $A\,^3\Sigma_u^+$ term for N_2, $\varepsilon_1 = 6.1$ ev, $\varepsilon_1/k = 71{,}000°\text{K}$, while for the $A\,^2\Sigma^+$ term for NO, $\varepsilon_1 = 5.29$ ev, $\varepsilon_1/k = 61{,}400°\text{K}$. There are, however, some exceptions. For example, the first excitation levels for an O_2 molecule lie rather low, so that for the $^1\Delta_g$ term $\varepsilon_1 = 0.98$ ev, $\varepsilon_1/k = 11{,}300°\text{K}$, while for the $^1\Sigma_g^+$ term, $\varepsilon_2 = 1.62$ ev, $\varepsilon_2/k = 18{,}800°\text{K}$.

For temperatures which are not too high, where $T \ll \varepsilon_1/k$, the electronic partition function reduces essentially to the contributions corresponding to the ground state of the electron. If the energy spacing between the fine structure levels (if such exist) of the ground state is appreciably smaller than kT†, then the corresponding contributions to Z_{el} can be considered as approximately identical. Measuring the energy ε_n from the ground state ($\varepsilon_0 = 0$), we can set Z_{el} equal to the statistical weight of the ground state g_0 (for example, for O atoms the ^3P term has $g_0 = 9$, while for $N(^4S)$ $g_0 = 4$; for molecules: $O_2(^3\Sigma)$ $g_0 = 3$; $N_2(^1\Sigma)$ $g_0 = 1$; $NO(^2\Pi)$ $g_0 = 4$). The calculation of Z_{el} at high temperatures will be discussed in §6.

Since the partition function Z of a molecule is equal to the product of the individual factors which correspond to the different degrees of freedom, the free energy and other thermodynamic functions of a gas are expressible in terms of the partition functions of the respective contributions. Substituting the expressions for the factors of Z into (3.7), we obtain an explicit expression for the free energy in terms of temperature and density. The density dependence arises because the translational partition function Z_{trans} contains the volume V. The quantities N_A/V, N_B/V, ... appearing in the logarithmic terms in (3.7) correspond to the numbers of particles per unit volume n_A, n_B, ..., expressed in terms of the gas density and the fractions of the various kinds of particles present (which in the case being considered are invariant).

The partition function for a monatomic gas is composed of translational and electronic contributions only; substituting these contributions into (3.7) we find for the free energy of N identical atoms (we assume that $Z_{el} = g_0$)

$$F = -NkT \ln \left(\frac{2\pi MkT}{h^2}\right)^{3/2} \frac{eVg_0}{N}. \tag{3.17}$$

The specific entropy of a monatomic gas in the absence of ionization and electronic excitation is given by (3.8) as

$$S = Nk \ln \frac{e^{5/2} g_0}{n} \left(\frac{2\pi MkT}{h^2}\right)^{3/2}. \tag{3.18}$$

* Spectroscopic notation is discussed in §14 of Chapter V.

† For example, in the case of the O atom the energy spacings for the components of the ground triplet state $^3D_2$ are $\Delta\varepsilon/k = 230°$ and 320°K; for NO the doublet splitting for the $^2\Pi$ ground state is $\Delta\varepsilon/k = 178°\text{K}$.

The energy and pressure are given by the familiar expressions

$$\varepsilon = \tfrac{3}{2}NkT, \qquad p = nkT.$$

Proceeding in a similar manner we can easily obtain the rotational and vibrational contributions to the thermodynamic functions. The internal rotational energy is essentially that given by the equations presented in §1, while the internal vibrational energy is expressed by the Planck function. The energy of N identical oscillators (diatomic molecules) is

$$\varepsilon_{\text{vib}} = N \frac{h\nu}{e^{h\nu/kT} - 1}. \tag{3.19}$$

In the limit $kT \gg h\nu$ the energy approaches its classical value $\varepsilon_{\text{vib}} = NkT$ and the specific heat $c_{v\,\text{vib}} = \partial\varepsilon_{\text{vib}}/\partial T \to Nk$. Actually, both the energy and the specific heat are already close to their limiting values when $kT \approx h\nu$. For example, at $kT/h\nu = 0.5$ we find $c_v/Nk = 0.724$, at $kT/h\nu = 1$ we find $c_v/Nk = 0.928$, while at $kT/h\nu = 2$ we find $c_v/Nk = 0.979$. The rotational and vibrational degrees of freedom of the molecules do not affect the pressure; formally this is attributable to the fact that the corresponding partition functions, internal energies, and specific heats are independent of the volume. The pressure of a perfect gas is to be attributed exclusively to the translational motion of the particles.

At high temperatures of the order of several thousand degrees, when the amplitudes of the molecular vibrations become appreciable in comparison with the interatomic distances, the vibrations become anharmonic and coupling appears between the vibrational and rotational degrees of freedom. The anharmonicity results in a slight decrease in the vibrational contribution to the specific heat. The corresponding corrections for this effect are, in first approximation, proportional to the temperature. These corrections are usually not too large (dissociation of the molecules begins before the corrections become appreciable). For the calculation of these corrections see [2], for example.

§3. Dissociation of diatomic molecules

At temperatures of the order of several thousand degrees diatomic molecules usually dissociate into atoms. Polyatomic molecules, in which the bonds are weaker, begin to dissociate at even lower temperatures. The dissociation of a molecule requires a large amount of energy and hence this process has an appreciable effect on the thermodynamic properties of gases.

Let us consider the simplest but at the same time practically important case of a diatomic gas consisting of the same kind of molecules A_2, composed of identical atoms A. Suppose that at a temperature T and gas density ρ a

fraction α of the original number of molecules is dissociated into atoms, following the reaction $A_2 \rightleftarrows 2A$. If N is the initial number of molecules per unit mass, then there will be $N \cdot 2\alpha$ atoms and $N(1-\alpha)$ molecules per unit mass of gas. The total number of particles is $N(1+\alpha)$, so that the gas pressure is

$$p = N(1+\alpha)\rho kT. \tag{3.20}$$

For complete dissociation ($\alpha = 1$) the pressure is twice as high as the pressure at the same T and ρ would be if the gas were undissociated.

For small degrees of dissociation ($\alpha \ll 1$) the change in pressure is small, although the change in internal energy and specific heat of the gas may be appreciable. Let ε_{A_2} be the energy of a single molecule at the temperature T, and ε_A be the energy of a single atom. Let us denote the energy required for the dissociation of an unexcited molecule by U (i.e., in the absence of rotational and vibrational excitation, at $T = 0$). The energy U represents the binding energy or dissociation energy of a molecule; for example, for O_2 the energy $U = 5.11$ ev $= 118$ kcal/mole *, and $U/k = 59{,}400°K$; for N_2 the energy $U = 9.74$ ev $= 225$ kcal/mole, and $U/k = 113{,}000°K$; for NO the energy $U = 6.5$ ev $= 150$ kcal/mole, and $U/k = 75{,}500°K$. The specific internal energy of the gas taken with respect to the molecular state at zero temperature is

$$\varepsilon = N\varepsilon_{A_2}(1-\alpha) + N\varepsilon_A\, 2\alpha + NU\alpha. \tag{3.21}$$

Dissociation usually begins at temperatures much lower than U/k, with these temperatures lower the more rarefied is the gas. At standard atmospheric density ($n = 2.67 \cdot 10^{19}$ molecules/cm^3) dissociation in air is already noticeable at $kT/U \sim 1/20$. This phenomenon is due to the high statistical weight of the state in which the molecule is dissociated into atoms. In fact, for $kT \ll U$ the molecules are dissociated by collisions with the very energetic particles corresponding to the far tail of the Boltzmann energy distribution function. In the absence of ionization and electronic excitation $\varepsilon_A = \frac{3}{2}kT$. If kT is larger than the energy of a vibrational quantum $h\nu$, the vibrational energy of a molecule according to (3.19) is approximately equal to kT, and $\varepsilon_{A_2} \approx \frac{7}{2}kT$. The energy of the dissociated gas (3.21) appreciably exceeds the energy in the absence of dissociation $\varepsilon = N\varepsilon_{A_2}$, even for small degrees of dissociation ($\alpha \sim 0.1$ and less), as a result of the importance of the last term corresponding to dissociation energy. Correspondingly, the specific heat $c_v = (\partial\varepsilon/\partial T)_V$ of the dissociated gas also increases appreciably.

We should note that (3.20) and (3.21) are also valid under conditions of nonequilibrium dissociation, where the degree of dissociation differs from the equilibrium value corresponding to the "temperature" and density of the

* 1 ev/molecule is equivalent to 23.05 kcal/mole.

gas. By "temperature" we understand here the temperature corresponding to the translational and rotational degrees of freedom of the particles, which are always taken to be in thermodynamic equilibrium*.

The equilibrium degree of dissociation is uniquely determined by the temperature and density (or pressure) of the gas. The relationship between the degree of dissociation and the temperature and density can be derived from the general expression (3.7) for the free energy of a gas composed of different types of particles. We employ the fact that the equilibrium composition of a mixture which undergoes a chemical transformation, of which dissociation is a particular case, corresponds to a minimum of the free energy.

Let us consider the free energy F as a function of the number of particles N_{A_2} and N_A at a given temperature and volume, with the original number of molecules $N_{A_2}^0$,

$$F = -N_{A_2} kT \ln \frac{Z_{A_2} e}{N_{A_2}} - N_A kT \ln \frac{Z_A e}{N_A}.$$

The variation δF is given by

$$\delta F = -\delta N_{A_2}\left(kT \ln \frac{Z_{A_2} e}{N_{A_2}} - kT\right) - \delta N_A\left(kT \ln \frac{Z_A e}{N_A} - kT\right)^{\dagger}.$$

The variations δN_{A_2} and δN_A are related by the condition of conservation of the number of atoms

$$N_{A_2} + \frac{N_A}{2} = N_{A_2}^0 = const\,; \qquad \delta N_{A_2} = -\tfrac{1}{2}\,\delta N_A.$$

Setting δF equal to zero (corresponding to a minimum in the free energy) with the condition of conservation of the number of atoms, we get

$$\frac{N_A^2}{N_{A_2}} = \frac{Z_A^2}{Z_{A_2}}. \tag{3.22}$$

Since the partition functions Z_A and Z_{A_2} are proportional to the volume (which enters in the translational partition functions) in addition to being functions of the temperature, we can replace (3.22) by

$$\frac{n_A^2}{n_{A_2}} = f(T), \tag{3.23}$$

* Equilibrium for the vibrational degrees of freedom is established more slowly than for the rotational and translational ones but usually faster than for dissociation. For details see Chapter VI.

† The quantities in parentheses represent the chemical potentials of the molecules and atoms, respectively, with the signs reversed:

$$\mu_{A_2} = \frac{\partial F}{\partial N_{A_2}}, \qquad \mu_A = \frac{\partial F}{\partial N_A}.$$

or, for the partial pressures $p_i = n_i kT$

$$\frac{p_A^2}{p_{A_2}} = f(T) \cdot kT = K_p(T). \tag{3.24}$$

Equation (3.22), (3.23), or (3.24) represents a particular case of the so-called law of mass action for chemical equilibrium, and the quantity $K_p(T)$ is termed the dissociative equilibrium constant. This constant depends only upon the temperature and the molecular (or atomic) constants. We now assume, for simplicity, that the molecular vibrations are fully excited so that $Z_{vib} \approx kT/h\nu$ (see (3.15)), and that the electronic partition functions contain only the terms corresponding to the ground molecular and atomic states. Substituting the expressions for the partition functions of the molecules A_2 and atoms A into (3.22), we obtain

$$\frac{p_A^2}{p_{A_2}} = K_p(T) = \frac{M_A^{3/2}\nu(kT)^{1/2}}{4\pi^{1/2}I_{A_2}} \frac{g_{0A}^2}{g_{0A_2}} e^{-U/kT}. \tag{3.25}$$

The last two factors in (3.25) enter from the quotient of the electronic partition functions

$$\frac{Z_{el\,A}^2}{Z_{el\,A_2}} \approx \frac{g_{0A}^2}{g_{0A_2}} e^{-(2\varepsilon_{0A} - \varepsilon_{0A_2})/kT} = \frac{g_{0A}^2}{g_{0A_2}} e^{-U/kT}.$$

Here the difference between the zero-point energies $2\varepsilon_{0A} - \varepsilon_{0A_2}$ is, by definition, equal to the dissociation energy U.

Expressing the partial pressures in (3.25) in terms of the degree of dissociation

$$\alpha = \frac{N_{A_2}^0 - N_{A_2}}{N_{A_2}^0} = \frac{N_A}{2N_{A_2}^0},$$

we get

$$\frac{\alpha^2}{1-\alpha} = \frac{1}{4n_{A_2}^0} \frac{K_p(T)}{kT} = \frac{M_A^{3/2}\nu}{16\pi^{1/2}I_{A_2}(kT)^{1/2}} \frac{g_{0A}^2}{g_{0A_2}} \frac{1}{n_{A_2}^0} e^{-U/kT}, \tag{3.26}$$

where $n_{A_2}^0 = \rho/M_{A_2}$ is the original number of molecules per unit volume of gas.

For small degrees of dissociation $\alpha \ll 1$ (when $U/kT \gg 1$), (3.26) shows that $\alpha \sim \rho^{-1/2} e^{-U/2kT}$. Thus, α increases sharply with temperature and slowly with decreasing gas density. The sharp dependence of the degree of dissociation on temperature also results in a rapid increase in the specific heat. At high temperatures, when most of the molecules are dissociated, $\alpha \approx 1$, and the concentration of the molecules is proportional to the density, $1 - \alpha \sim \rho e^{U/kT}$. Since in this case U/kT is not a very large number the change in the concentration with temperature is much slower.

It would appear that at high temperatures, when the dissociation is complete, the specific heat of the gas (which is now monatomic) should decrease

and become equal to $\frac{3}{2}k$ per atom or $3k$ per original molecule. The specific heat should become even less than it was before dissociation took place ($\frac{7}{2}k$ per molecule). This situation does not ordinarily occur, since after the dissociation is complete (and sometimes even before) the temperature increase results in ionization of the atoms (and molecules). The resulting contribution of the ionization to the specific heat is appreciable.

The dependence of the degree of dissociation upon the temperature and density of a gas and the effect of dissociation on its thermodynamic properties are illustrated in Tables 3.1 and 3.2, which are based on data for air (79% N_2 + 21% O_2) taken from [3]*. The formation of nitric oxide $N_2 + O_2 \rightleftarrows 2NO$ in air (see the following section) does not strongly influence either the dissociation of N_2 and O_2 molecules or the thermodynamic properties of air.

Table 3.1

EQUILIBRIUM COMPOSITION OF DISSOCIATED AND SLIGHTLY IONIZED AIR

Standard density $\rho_0 = 1.29 \cdot 10^{-3}$ g/cm^3

T°K	N_2	N	O_2	O	NO	N^+	O^+	NO^+
2000	0.788	—	0.205	—†	0.007	—	—	—
4000	0.749	0.0004	0.100	0.134	0.084	—	—	—
6000	0.744	0.044	0.006	0.356	0.050	—	—	—
8000	0.571	0.416	0.007	0.393	0.024	—	—	—
10,000	0.222	1.124	—	0.407	0.009	0.0034	—	0.0015
12,000	0.050	1.458	—	0.411	0.003	0.020	0.0034	0.001
15,000	0.006	—	—	—	—	0.096	0.015	—
				Density $\rho = 10^{-2}\,\rho_0$				
T°K	N_2	N	O_2	O	NO	N^+	O^+	NO^+
2000	0.788	—	0.205†	0.002	0.007	—	—	—
4000	0.777	0.004	0.008	0.378	0.024	—	—	—
6000	0.592	0.394	—	0.413	0.005	—	—	—
8000	0.068	1.440	—	0.416	0.001	0.004	0.001	0.0001
10,000	0.004	1.528	—	0.410	—	0.046	0.008	0.0002
12,000	—	1.380	—	0.384	—	0.202	0.034	—
15,000	—	0.858	—	0.282	—	0.724	0.136	—

Concentrations of all particles c_i are defined here as the ratio of the number of particles of the given species to the original number of molecules. At room temperature $c_{N_2} = 0.791$, $c_{O_2} = 0.209$. The data for argon are not shown, since its effect is small.

* The data given in Table 3.2 were taken from [3] only for those temperatures below 20,000°K. The data for the higher temperatures were taken from [4]. (This reference is discussed in §5.)

†*Editors' note.* These values have been changed by the editors for consistency.

Table 3.2

THERMODYNAMIC PROPERTIES OF AIR

Standard density $\rho_0 = 1.29 \cdot 10^{-3}$ g/cm^3					Density $\rho = 10^{-2}\rho_0$			
T°K	ε, ev/molecule	p, atm	γ	$\frac{7}{2}kT$, ev/molecule	T°K	ε, ev/molecule	p, atm	γ
2000	0.515	7.42	1.335	0.604	2000	0.520	0.074	1.330
4000	1.52	15.8	1.240	1.21	4000	2.09	0.177	1.195
8000	5.38	41.7	1.180	2.42	8000	10.6	0.575	1.125
12,000	12.7	88	1.160	3.92	12,000	16.6	0.994	1.140
20,000	24	183	1.175	6.04	20,000	45.3	2.8	1.145
50,000	95	870	1.215	15.1	50,000	158	11.6	1.170
100,000	276	2690	1.225	30.2	100,000	499	37.3	1.175
250,000	922	10,870	1.275	75.4	250,000	1080	125	1.270
500,000	1450	23,150	1.370	151	500,000	3310	412	1.290

The internal energies are given in electron volts per original molecule; for air 1 ev/molecule = 0.8 kcal/g. The effective adiabatic exponent γ is defined as $\gamma = 1 + p/\rho\varepsilon$. The last column gives for comparison the values of the energy $\varepsilon = \frac{7}{2}kT$ in ev/molecule for air in the absence of either dissociation or ionization, but with classical excitation of molecular vibrations.

The latter are basically determined by the dissociation of N_2 and O_2, so that the effects of dissociation and all of the other functional dependence are evident in Table 3.2. For comparison, the table presents values of the energy corresponding to the given temperatures assuming that there is no dissociation (in this case the specific energy is independent of the density). Since ionization begins before the dissociation of nitrogen is complete, the table also presents the ion concentrations (for a discussion of ionization see §5).

It should be noted that for accurate calculations of dissociation and of the thermodynamic functions, in place of the simple equations of the type of (3.26), one must use more exact relations which take into account excitation of the higher electronic states, anharmonic oscillations, etc. In this case the exact expressions (3.22) are used as the starting point, and the partition functions are calculated on the basis of spectroscopic data for the atoms and molecules. A description of the methods used in such computations can be found in [5].

§4. Chemical reactions

The chemical composition of a mixture of gases under normal conditions, i.e., at room temperature, frequently differs from the thermodynamic equilibrium

composition. This is due to the fact that even exothermic reactions, resulting in the transition of the gas to an energetically preferred state, generally require an activation energy E. The rate of chemical reaction, proportional to the Boltzmann factor $e^{-E/kT}$, is very slow at low temperatures and large activation energies, with $E/kT \gg 1$, so that for all practical purposes the reaction does not proceed. The system of the mixture of gases is in an equilibrium, but not in thermodynamic equilibrium. This state is termed one of metastable equilibrium*. A typical example is provided by a hydrogen–oxygen mixture with a composition $H_2 + \frac{1}{2}O_2$, which in a condition of thermodynamic equilibrium at low temperatures would be completely transformed into water H_2O (the heat of reaction is 57.1 kcal/mole). However, at normal temperatures and without the influence of external factors, this irreversible reaction does not take place and the mixture remains in a state of metastable equilibrium.

At high temperatures of the order of several thousand degrees (and lower temperatures for some reactions) the chemical reaction rates are very high and chemical equilibrium is established in the gas mixture. The presence of reversible reactions (that is, reactions that can proceed in either direction depending on the conditions for chemical equilibrium at the given temperature and density) affects both the chemical composition and the thermodynamic properties of gases. As an example we can take atmospheric air where, at high temperatures of the order of several thousand degrees, oxidation of a portion of the nitrogen takes place to form nitric oxide following the reaction

$$\tfrac{1}{2}N_2 + \tfrac{1}{2}O_2 + 21.4 \text{ kcal/mole} \rightleftarrows NO. \tag{3.27}$$

The oxidation of nitrogen requires a high activation energy, so that for all practical purposes it does not proceed at temperatures below about 1500°K (a very long time is required to reach equilibrium). However, at temperatures of the order of 3000°K and above, equilibrium is established very rapidly (at standard atmospheric density in 10^{-4} seconds or less) and we can refer to the equilibrium composition of air in which the formation of nitric oxide is taken into account†.

Let us consider chemical equilibrium and its effect on the thermodynamic properties of a gas mixture. As an example, we take a reaction of a type representative of the oxidation of nitrogen,

$$A_2 + B_2 \rightleftarrows 2AB. \tag{3.28}$$

We assume for simplicity that the degree of dissociation of the molecules is small. This assumption is valid at moderate temperatures, for example, in air

* *Editors' note.* Termed "conditional" equilibrium by the authors.

† The reaction rates for the oxidation of nitrogen will be discussed in Chapter VI, §8, and the reaction kinetics in a shock wave will be discussed in Chapter VIII, §5.

at $T \sim 2000°$–$3000°$K the degree of dissociation of the N_2 and O_2 molecules is very small but the equilibrium concentration of nitric oxide is appreciable.

Let a unit mass of the original mixture contain $N^0_{A_2}$ and $N^0_{B_2}$ molecules of A_2 and B_2 ; their concentrations are $m^0_{A_2} = N^0_{A_2}/N$ and $m^0_{B_2} = N^0_{B_2}/N$, where $N = N^0_{A_2} + N^0_{B_2}$ is the total number of molecules per unit mass of the original gas. The equilibrium number of molecules of each species per unit mass at the temperature T and gas density ρ are denoted by N_{A_2}, N_{B_2}, N_{AB}, and their concentrations $m_i = N_i/N$ are given by m_{A_2}, m_{B_2}, m_{AB}. The number of molecules and concentrations are related through the condition of conservation of the number of atoms

$$N_{A_2} + \tfrac{1}{2}N_{AB} = N^0_{A_2}, \qquad N_{B_2} + \tfrac{1}{2}N_{AB} = N^0_{B_2}, \tag{3.29}$$

$$m_{A_2} + \tfrac{1}{2}m_{AB} = m^0_{A_2}, \qquad m_{B_2} + \tfrac{1}{2}m_{AB} = m^0_{B_2}. \tag{3.30}$$

We denote the energy of one molecule by ε_{A_2}, ε_{B_2}, ε_{AB} and the heat of reaction by $2U'$, that is, the energy generated when the two molecules A_2 and B_2 are transformed into two molecules of AB (if the reaction is endothermic, then $U' < 0$). Assuming the energy of the original mixture $A_2 + B_2$ at $T = 0$ to be zero, the specific internal energy of the gas is then given by

$$\varepsilon = Nm_{A_2}\varepsilon_{A_2} + Nm_{B_2}\varepsilon_{B_2} + Nm_{AB}\varepsilon_{AB} - Nm_{AB}U'. \tag{3.31}$$

The total number of particles in the gas in the above reaction does not change, so that if T and ρ remain the same the reaction does not influence the pressure*. The number of particles participating in the reaction is governed at equilibrium by the law of mass action, which can be derived from the general expression for the free energy, by a procedure analogous to that used in the derivation for molecular dissociation. To do this we determine the minimum in the free energy for constant T, ρ and original number of molecules $N^0_{A_2}$, $N^0_{B_2}$, with N_{A_2}, N_{B_2}, N_{AB} variable. The result is

$$\frac{N^2_{AB}}{N_{A_2}N_{B_2}} = \frac{Z^2_{AB}}{Z_{A_2}Z_{B_2}}, \tag{3.32}$$

which is completely analogous to the corresponding equation (3.22) for the dissociation case.

Factoring out the volumes in the translational partition functions, we get for the number densities and partial pressures

$$\frac{n^2_{AB}}{n_{A_2}n_{B_2}} = \frac{p^2_{AB}}{p_{A_2}p_{B_2}} = K'_p(T), \tag{3.33}$$

* As in the case of dissociation, (3.31) is also valid in the absence of chemical equilibrium, with nonequilibrium concentrations.

where $K_p'(T)$ is the equilibrium constant for the reaction (3.28). As in the case of dissociation, we substitute the expressions for the partition functions and obtain

$$K_p'(T) = 4\left(\frac{M_{AB}}{M_{A_2}M_{B_2}}\right)^{3/2} \frac{I_{AB}^2}{I_{A_2}I_{B_2}} \frac{\nu_{A_2}\nu_{B_2}}{\nu_{AB}^2} \frac{g_{0AB}^2}{g_{0A_2}g_{0B_2}} e^{2U'/kT} *. \qquad (3.34)$$

For example, the reaction rate constant for the formation of nitric oxide is given quite accurately by

$$\frac{p_{NO}^2}{p_{N_2}p_{O_2}} = K_p'(T) = \frac{64}{3} e^{-43{,}000/\mathscr{R}T},$$

where $\mathscr{R} = 2$ cal/mole-deg. We have here taken the masses, frequencies, and the moments of inertia of all three molecules to be approximately the same, $U' = -21.4$ kcal/mole, and the ratio of statistical weights equal to 16/3 (see §2).

If the gas is a mixture with several reactions taking place simultaneously, the law of mass action can be derived for each reaction by a similar procedure to that above. This law relates, in a manner similar to (3.32), the number of particles participating in the reaction and their partition functions. Substitution of the expressions for the partition functions gives the equilibrium constants. The number of particles participating in the different reactions is related by the principle of conservation of the number of atoms of each species (similar to (3.29)). The laws of mass action for the various reactions and the conditions of conservation of the number of atoms for the various molecular species constitute a system of nonlinear algebraic equations. This system determines the chemical composition in terms of the number of different particles N_i as a function of the temperature and density (or pressure) of the gas and of the original atomic composition of the mixture. As was pointed out by one of the authors [6], this system has a unique solution, and the equilibrium chemical composition of the mixture is uniquely determined.

Setting up an expression for the energy of the form (3.31), we can calculate the internal energy of the mixture. Using the general expression for the free energy $F(T, V, N_i)$ and the thermodynamic relations (3.9) and (3.10) we can also obtain an expression for the energy and pressure, and with the aid of (3.8) an expression for the entropy of the mixture. An example of such a calculation is provided by the determination of the composition and thermodynamic properties of air taking into account the dissociation of N_2 and O_2 and the formation of nitric oxide (see, e.g., [3] and [5]). Other reactions,

* The factor 4 arises from the ratio of the symmetry factors $\sigma_{A_2}\sigma_{B_2}/\sigma_{AB}^2$, where $\sigma_{AB} = 1$, $\sigma_{A_2} = \sigma_{B_2} = 2$; see footnote following (3.14). As in the case of dissociation we have assumed that $Z_{vib} = kT/h\nu$, $Z_{el} = g_0$.

involving the formation of NO_2, O_3, etc., have little effect on these calculations, since the concentrations of these components are extremely small. The chemical composition and thermodynamic properties of air are illustrated in Tables 3.1 and 3.2.

§5. Ionization and electronic excitation

Ionization of atoms (or molecules), as with the dissociation of molecules, begins at values of kT much lower than the ionization potential I. The reason here is the same as for the case of dissociation; the statistical weight of the free electron state is very large. The first ionization potentials of the majority of atoms and molecules vary between 7 and 15 ev ($I/k \sim 80{,}000$–$170{,}000°K$)*. The principal exceptions are the alkali metals, which have very low ionization potentials. Ionization usually begins at temperatures of the order of a few to ten thousand degrees. Ionization begins sooner the lower is the ionization potential and the more rarefied is the gas.

The degree of ionization increases with temperature. When the temperature is of the order of several tens of thousands of degrees practically all of the atoms are singly ionized. In the case of hydrogen this terminates the ionization process; subsequent heating does not change the fully ionized state, in which the gas is made up of protons and electrons. Each particle undergoes translational motion only and the specific heat is equal to $\frac{3}{2}k$ per particle. In a gas composed of heavier atoms the first ionization is followed by a second, a third, etc. Usually, the next ionization begins before the preceding one ends, so that at temperatures above several tens of thousands of degrees the gas contains multiply ionized atoms. If the gas consists of a mixture of several elements then it contains differently charged ions of each element.

As in the case of molecular dissociation, the internal energy of the ionized gas is made up of the thermal energy of the particles (atoms, ions, and electrons) and the potential energy, which is equal to the work required to remove the electrons from the atoms or the ions. In addition, the excitation energy of the unionized electrons in the atoms and ions can also contribute to the total energy of the gas.

Let us consider a simple gas consisting of atoms of a single element, and let us assume, as is usually the case, that all the molecules (if the gas is not monatomic) are completely dissociated into atoms in the region of appreciable ionization. We assume that there are N atoms per unit mass of gas and we denote the successive ionization potentials by I_m, thus I_1 is the energy required to remove the first electron from a neutral atom, I_2 the energy required to remove an electron from a singly ionized atom, etc. It follows that the energy

* For example, $I_O = 13.6$ ev, $I_N = 14.6$ ev, $I_{O_2} = 12.1$ ev, $I_{N_2} = 15.6$ ev, $I_{NO} = 9.3$ ev.

required to remove m electrons from an atom is

$$Q_m = I_1 + I_2 + \cdots + I_m \qquad (I_0 = 0). \tag{3.35}$$

At a given temperature T and density ρ (or specific volume V) let there be N_0 neutral atoms, N_1 singly ionized atoms, etc., in a unit mass of gas. For conciseness we shall term an ion with a charge equal to m an m-ion; the number of m-ions per unit mass is then denoted by N_m (neutral atoms are a particular case of m-ions). The number of free electrons is denoted by N_e. Assuming that the gas is sufficiently rarefied and that the electrons obey Boltzmann statistics*, we must assign to each gas particle a thermal energy of translational motion equal to $\frac{3}{2}kT$. In addition, an m-ion possesses an electronic excitation energy W_m.

If we take the internal energy of an unionized gas at zero temperature as the reference level, then the specific internal energy per unit mass can be written†

$$\varepsilon = \tfrac{3}{2}N(1 + \alpha_e)kT + N\sum_m Q_m\alpha_m + N\sum_m W_m\alpha_m, \tag{3.36}$$

where α_e is the degree of ionization of the gas, that is, the number of free electrons per original atom ($\alpha_e = N_e/N$), and $\alpha_m = N_m/N$ is the concentration of m-ions. The concentrations α_m are connected by the condition of conservation of the number of atoms

$$\sum N_m = N, \qquad \sum \alpha_m = 1 \tag{3.37}$$

and by the condition of charge conservation

$$\sum mN_m = N_e, \qquad \sum m\alpha_m = \alpha_e. \tag{3.38}$$

The pressure of the ionized gas‡ is

$$p = N\rho(1 + \alpha_e)kT. \tag{3.39}$$

The equilibrium ion concentrations satisfy relations similar to the law of mass action for dissociation. This is quite reasonable because the ionization process can be treated as a chemical reaction or "dissociation" of an atom or an ion; for example, the removal of the $(m + 1)$st electron from an m-ion can be written symbolically as

$$A_m \rightleftarrows A_{m+1} + e, \qquad m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{3.40}$$

* The degenerate electron gas will be considered in §12.

† If at low temperatures the gas is polyatomic the dissociation energy must be added to ε.

‡ We note that, as in the case of dissociation, equations (3.36) for the energy and (3.39) for pressure are also applicable to nonequilibrium ionization, if T is understood to denote the "translational" temperature of the particles.

The "law of mass action" for this reaction can be easily derived from the general expression for the free energy in the same manner as for a dissociation reaction. We write the free energy of a unit mass of ionized gas as

$$F = -\sum_m N_m kT \ln \frac{Z_m e}{N_m} - N_e kT \ln \frac{Z_e e}{N_e}, \tag{3.41}$$

where Z_m and Z_e are the partition functions of an m-ion and an electron. For thermodynamic equilibrium, at constant T and V, the free energy is a minimum with respect to the number of particles. We take the variation δF with respect to the change in the number of m-ions arising from the ionization following the reaction (3.40), setting $\delta N_m = -\delta N_{m+1} = -\delta N_e$ and requiring that the number of all the remaining particles does not change. We set this variation δF equal to zero and obtain

$$\frac{N_{m+1} N_e}{N_m} = \frac{Z_{m+1} Z_e}{Z_m}. \tag{3.42}$$

The translational partition functions of the $(m+1)$st and the mth ions cancel, since their masses are practically equal. However, in the electronic contribution to the partition function of an ion (atom), we factor out the part corresponding to the zero-point energy (ground state)

$$Z_{el} = \sum e^{-\frac{\varepsilon_k}{kT}} = e^{-\frac{\varepsilon_0}{kT}} \sum e^{-\frac{\varepsilon_k - \varepsilon_0}{kT}} = e^{-\frac{\varepsilon_0}{kT}} u.$$

Denoting by w_k the energy difference $\varepsilon_k - \varepsilon_0$ (the excitation energy of the ion in the kth state), we can write the transformed electronic partition function in the form

$$u = \sum_k e^{-\frac{w_k}{kT}} = g_0 + g_1 e^{-\frac{w_1}{kT}} + g_2 e^{-\frac{w_2}{kT}} + \cdots, \tag{3.43}$$

where $g_0, g_1, \ldots$ are the statistical weights of the 0, 1, ... energy levels of the ion; if the levels are not degenerate $g = 1$.

The partition function for a free electron consists of the product of the translational partition function and the statistical weight of the free electron; this weight is equal to 2, since there are two possible spin orientations. Noting that the difference of the zero-point energies of the $(m+1)$st and mth ions is equal to the ionization potential of the m-ion, $\varepsilon_{0\,m+1} - \varepsilon_{0\,m} = I_{m+1}$, and dividing (3.42) by the volume ($n_i = N_i/V$), we get

$$\frac{n_{m+1} n_e}{n_m} = 2 \frac{u_{m+1}}{u_m} \left(\frac{2\pi m_e kT}{h^2} \right)^{3/2} e^{-\frac{I_{m+1}}{kT}} = K_{m+1}(T) \tag{34.4}$$

(m_e is the mass of an electron). This relation is known as the Saha equation. Multiplying (3.44) by kT, we obtain a relation for the partial pressures $p_i = n_i kT$. For numerical calculations it is convenient to rewrite the Saha

equation in a form relating the particle concentrations $\alpha_i = N_i/N = n_i V/N = n_i/N\rho$,

$$\frac{\alpha_{m+1}\alpha_e}{\alpha_m} = \frac{1}{\rho N} K_{m+1}(T), \qquad m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{3.45}$$

Equations (3.45), (3.37), and (3.38) form a complete system of nonlinear algebraic equations for the ion and electron concentrations as functions of the gas temperature and density.

Ordinarily there exists a temperature range from 8,000°–30,000°K, where the gas is singly ionized and where the second ionization has not yet begun (the second ionization potential is approximately twice as great as the first ionization potential). In this region the system is simplified, since only the one equation (3.45) with $m = 0$ remains. Noting that in the singly ionized region $\alpha_1 = \alpha_e = 1 - \alpha_0$ and dropping the subscripts on α_1 and the ionization potential, we obtain an equation for the degree of ionization $\alpha = \alpha_1 = \alpha_e$:

$$\frac{\alpha^2}{1-\alpha} = 2\frac{u_1}{u_0}\frac{1}{\rho N}\left(\frac{2\pi m_e kT}{h^2}\right)^{3/2} e^{-I/kT}. \tag{3.46}$$

This relation is quite similar to the relation (3.26) for the degree of dissociation. For $I/kT \gg 1$, $\alpha \ll 1$, the degree of ionization α is proportional to $\rho^{-1/2}e^{-I/2kT}$, so that it increases very rapidly with temperature and very slowly with decreasing gas density. Equation (3.46) is always valid for a gas composed of hydrogen atoms.

The excitation energies of atomic and ionic energy levels are usually quite high and close to the ionization potential. In some cases there exist low-lying levels which must, of course, be taken into account in the calculations, but their number is very limited. The calculation of the transformed electronic partition functions u will be discussed in greater detail in the next section. We only note here that as a rule it is sufficient to consider only the first few terms in these partition functions. In most cases the dominant role is played by the first term and the partition function simply reduces to the statistical weight of the ground state $u \approx g_0$. The point is that in a gas which is not too dense, the electron in an atom or an ion "prefers" to be removed rather than to jump to a higher energy level. In the singly ionized region with $T \sim$ 10,000°–20,000°K, the value of I_1/kT is usually of the order of 5–10. As the temperature increases, I_1/kT becomes small, but at the same time the singly ionized atoms also disappear because the second ionization begins, and for the majority of ions the quantity I_{m+1}/kT is still of the order of 5–10. Since the energies of the excited atomic levels are of the same order as the ionization potential, then even the second term in the series for u will be very small, of the order of e^{-5}. This illustrates that for most common ions the dominant role in the electronic partition functions is played by the first term g_0.

Rigorous calculations usually take into account the first 5–10 levels of the ions and atoms, with the energies and statistical weights taken from appropriate tables (see [7]). Tables of successive ionization potentials of different atoms may be found, for example, in [8].

The internal energy of the gas can be calculated from (3.36), which follows from the general expression for the free energy (3.41) combined with the thermodynamic relation (3.9). The energy of electronic excitation W is equal to (where the subscript m corresponding to the ionic charge is dropped)

$$W = \frac{\sum w_k \exp(-w_k/kT)}{\sum \exp(-w_k/kT)} = -kT^2 \frac{\partial \ln u}{\partial T}. \tag{3.47}$$

According to (3.8), the entropy is obtained by differentiation of the free energy with respect to the temperature:

$$S = \sum_m N_m k \ln \frac{e^{5/2}V}{N_m}\left(\frac{2\pi MkT}{h^2}\right)^{3/2} u_m + \sum_m N_m \frac{W_m}{T}$$
$$+ N_e k \ln \frac{e^{5/2}V}{N_e}\left(\frac{2\pi m_e kT}{h^2}\right)^{3/2} 2. \tag{3.48}$$

If the excitation can be neglected, then the second term vanishes and $u_m = g_{0m}$.

The simplest calculations are in the singly ionized region, where the degree of ionization can be simply calculated from (3.46). Ionization makes a significant contribution to the specific heat and the energy of the gas and must be taken into account in calculating the thermodynamic functions. A wide range of temperatures and densities in which the atoms are multiply ionized has been considered in the work of Selivanov and Shlyapintokh [4]. These authors have calculated the composition*, thermodynamic functions, and Hugoniot curves for ionized air at temperatures from 20,000° to 500,000°K and densities from 10 ρ_0 to 10^{-3} ρ_0 (ρ_0 is standard atmospheric density). The nature of the dependence of the composition and degree of ionization upon the temperature and the effect of ionization upon the thermodynamic functions is evident from Tables 3.2 and 3.3 for air. These tables are based on the calculations of Selivanov and Shlyapintokh†.

At very high temperatures‡ (or very low densities) the energy and pressure of thermal radiation may be comparable with the energy and pressure of the fluid. When the radiation is in thermodynamic equilibrium with the fluid (whether this condition is satisfied or not must be checked in each particular

* Generalization of the equations presented to the case when the gas is a mixture of elements does not present any difficulties.

† The data given in Table 3.2 were taken from [4] only for temperatures of 20,000°K and above.

‡ For air at standard density these temperatures are greater than a million degrees.

Table 3.3

COMPOSITION OF IONIZED AIR AT STANDARD DENSITY ($\rho_0 = 1.29 \cdot 10^{-3}$ g/cm^3) AND HIGH TEMPERATURES

T°K	Atom	0	1^+	2^+	3^+	4^+	5^+	6^+	e
20,000	N	0.589	0.201						0.24
	O	0.172	0.036						
50,000	N	0.018	0.451	0.321	0.001				1.50
	O	0.0065	0.303	0.048					
100,000	N		0.012	0.275	0.463	0.04			2.65
	O		0.005	0.09	0.113	0.005			
250,000	N				0.005	0.183	0.603		5.0
	O				0.005	0.020	0.114	0.074	
500,000	N					0.017	0.75	0.025	5.2
	O						0.010	0.200	

Concentration is defined as the ratio of the number of particles of the given species to the original number of atoms. 0 denotes neutral atoms, 1^+ singly ionized atoms, etc., e are electrons, N and O are nitrogen and oxygen ions, respectively.

case, see Chapter II), the radiation energy and pressure are simply added to the energy and pressure of the gas. The "specific" energy of equilibrium radiation is equal to the radiant energy density divided by the fluid density

$$\varepsilon_v = \frac{U_p}{\rho} = \frac{4\sigma T^4}{c\rho}, \tag{3.49}$$

and the radiation pressure is

$$p_v = \frac{U_p}{3} = \frac{4\sigma T^4}{c}. \tag{3.50}$$

The radiation entropy can be obtained with the aid of general thermodynamic relationships

$$S_v = -\frac{\partial F_v}{\partial T}, \qquad F_v = -T\int \frac{\varepsilon_v}{T^2}\,dT = -\frac{4\sigma T^4}{3c\rho}, \qquad S_v = \frac{16\sigma T^3}{3c\rho}. \tag{3.51}$$

The thermodynamic functions of air calculated in [4] take the equilibrium radiation into account.

§6. The electronic partition function and the role of the excitation energy of atoms

An isolated atom (ion or a molecule) in an infinite space has an infinite number of discrete energy levels which converges to a continuum, corresponding to an ionized state with a completely removed electron. The electronic partition function u formally contains an infinite number of terms and is divergent. The average excitation energy of an atom W, calculated from (3.47) with an infinite number of terms, is equal to the ionization potential, since the excitation energies of the higher states asymptotically approach the ionization potential. This difficulty, arising from a purely formal evaluation of u and W, is to a certain extent deceptive, since in reality the atom is never isolated but is always contained in a gas of finite density. The dimensions of the electron orbit increase rapidly as the higher energy electronic states of an atom are excited. These dimensions finally become comparable with the average distance between the gas particles, and this is approximately given by $r \approx N^{-1/3}$ (here N denotes the particle number density). The trajectories of the electrons moving in these large orbits are distorted by the presence of neighboring particles. Such an electron, which is removed from an atom to a distance comparable with the average distance between gas particles, does not differ essentially from a free electron, and such a highly excited atom does not differ essentially from an ionized atom. The finite value of the gas density imposes, therefore, a limitation on the number of possible excited atomic states, on the number of terms in the electronic partition function, and on the average excitation energy of the atom.

Let us consider a gas consisting of hydrogen atoms. The results obtained from a study of the hydrogen atom are quite general, since the highly excited states of any complex atomic system are very similar to the excited states of the hydrogen atom. If an electron in a complex atom (or ion or molecule) moves in a very large orbit, then the field in which it travels is very close to the Coulomb field of a point charge (representing the rest of the atom). Therefore, the structure of the highly excited states of any atom or ion is close to that of hydrogen. In order to apply these results to multiply ionized atoms, we shall introduce into all equations the charge of the "nucleus". In other words, we do not consider hydrogen in a literal sense but rather hydrogen-like atoms represented by a system consisting of a positive "nucleus" with a charge Z and a single electron.

The energy levels of a hydrogen-like atom are characterized by the principal quantum number n (for an energy level diagram see Fig. 2.2 in Chapter II, §2). The energy of the nth level, measured from the boundary of the continuous spectrum, is, as we know, equal to $\varepsilon_n = -I_H Z^2/n^2$, where $I_H = 13.5$ ev is the ionization potential of hydrogen. Its absolute value $E_n = |\varepsilon_n| = I_H Z^2/n^2$ is the

binding energy of an electron in the nth level. The binding energy of the ground state $n = 1^*$ is equal to the ionization potential

$$E_1 = I_{\text{H}} Z^2 = I.$$

The excitation energy of the nth state is given by $w_n = \varepsilon_n - \varepsilon_1 = E_1 - E_n = I_{\text{H}} Z^2 (1 - 1/n^2)$. The transformed electronic partition function of the hydrogen-like atom takes the form

$$u = \sum g_n \exp\left(-\frac{w_n}{kT}\right) = \sum 2n^2 \exp\left[-\frac{I_{\text{H}} Z^2}{kT}\left(1 - \frac{1}{n^2}\right)\right],$$

where $g_n = 2n^2$ is the statistical weight of the nth level.

The binding energy of an electron in the nth state is equal to its Coulomb energy in the field of the nucleus at a distance of the order of the orbital dimension, namely, $E_n = Ze^2/2a$, where a is the semimajor axis of the elliptical orbit. Then, $a = Ze^2/2E_n = e^2 n^2/2ZI_{\text{H}} = a_0 n^2/Z$, where $a_0 = 0.53 \cdot 10^{-8}$ cm is the Bohr radius. The summation defining the partition function u should in any case be terminated at a value n^* at which the semimajor axis of the orbit becomes comparable with the average distance between gas particles, at $a = a_0 n^{*2}/Z = r$, where $n^* = (Zr/a_0)^{1/2} \sim N^{-1/6}$ (n^* is smaller the higher is the gas density). As a numerical example, let us consider molecular hydrogen, originally at room temperature and atmospheric pressure, and then heated by a strong shock wave to a temperature of the order of ten thousand degrees. The density ratio across the shock wave is approximately 10, so that for complete dissociation of the molecules the number of atoms per cm^3 N will be approximately $5 \cdot 10^{20}$/cm^3. The average distance between the atoms is $r \approx N^{-1/3} = 1.3 \cdot 10^{-7}$ cm and the limiting value n^* is 5 ($Z = 1$). At a temperature $T = 11{,}600°\text{K} = 1$ ev, the partition function consisting of five terms has a value $u = 2.00053$, and is practically equal to the statistical weight of the ground state $g_1 = 2$. The average excitation energy of the atom calculated from (3.47) using five terms is $W = 0.003$ ev. At these values of T and N, the degree of ionization of hydrogen is $\alpha = 3 \cdot 10^{-3}$, that is, the ionization energy per atom, $I_{\text{H}}\alpha = 0.04$ ev. The excitation energy W is small in comparison with the ionization energy ($W/I_{\text{H}}\alpha = 0.075$). At the higher temperature $T = 23{,}200°\text{K} = 2$ ev and the same density, $u = 2.212$ (still not much larger than $g_1 = 2$), and $W = 1.16$ ev. The degree of ionization in this case is $\alpha = 0.22$, the ionization energy per original atom $I_{\text{H}}\alpha = 3$ ev, and the excitation energy, also per original atom, is $W(1 - \alpha) = 0.9$ ev. In this case the excitation energy has an appreciable effect, although it is still less than the ionization energy.

* Here, the subscript "1" (rather than "0") is assigned to the ground state because the principal quantum number n for the ground state is equal to unity.

It should be noted that cutting off the upper excitation levels in a gas of finite density will at the same time lower the ionization potential by an amount equal to the electron binding energy at the cutoff boundary, that is, by $\Delta I = E_{n*} = Ze^2/2r = ZI_H a_0/r = 7 \cdot 10^{-8} ZN^{1/3}$ ev (with N per cm^3). In our example this decrease is $\Delta I = 0.55$ ev, so that the calculated degrees of ionization are somewhat low.

At very high temperatures, of the order of 50,000°K and above, the excitation energy of the remaining hydrogen atoms becomes very large and comparable to the ionization potential. On the other hand, the degree of ionization also increases rapidly and the number of neutral atoms becomes small. Thus, the contribution of the excitation energy to the energy of the gas is in any case smaller than the contribution of the ionization energy. This corresponds to the idea that the electron "finds it more convenient" to be removed from the atom than to occupy a high excitation level*.

Our choice of the number of terms to be included in the electronic partition function most likely overestimates the actual number of levels. In the cutoff of the higher excitation levels in atoms and ions there is a significant effect of the electrostatic field of the nearest neighboring charged particles (the Stark effect). In addition, in a sufficiently rarefied gas, the binding energy of an electron moving in the limiting orbit $a \sim r$ is $E_{n*} = \Delta I = 7 \cdot 10^{-8} ZN^{1/3}$ ev, which is smaller than kT (in our example $\Delta I = 0.55$ ev, while the temperatures were 1 and 2 ev). The kinetic energy of an electron in a hydrogen-like atom is equal to its binding energy at the given level. It makes no sense, however, to consider an electron to be bound when its binding energy and kinetic energy are less than kT. Practically each "collision" with a free electron would knock out such a weakly bound electron from the atom. Some authors, therefore, terminate the partition function summation even sooner, at a level where the electron binding energy is equal to kT.

A large number of papers [9–13, 34] are devoted to the problem of the lowering of ionization potentials in an ionized gas and to the calculation of

* This situation can be made clearer by the following semiqualitative argument, which is most easily visualized in the limiting case of a gas of very low density. The ratio of the probability of free and bound electronic states is proportional to the ratio of the translational and electronic partition functions ($Z_{trans} \sim V \sim 1/\rho$). The electronic partition function in the limit of low densities contains a large number of terms and can be represented approximately by

$$Z_{el} = \Sigma\, g_n \exp\left(-\frac{\varepsilon_n}{kT}\right) = \Sigma\, 2n^2 \exp\left(\frac{I_H}{n^2 kT}\right) \sim \int_0^{n*} n^2\, dn \sim n^{*3}.$$

But, $n^* \sim r^{1/2}$, so that $Z_{el} \sim V^{1/2} \sim \rho^{-1/2}$. Hence, $Z_{trans}/Z_{el} \sim V^{1/2} \sim \rho^{-1/2}$. Thus, when the density decreases (in the range of small densities), the probability that an electron will be removed from the atom increases even faster despite the increase in the number of possible bound states.

electronic partition functions. It should be noted that there is no general agreement on the subject, and different authors still recommend different procedures for terminating the electronic partition function summation. Fortunately, calculations show that the varying choices of the number of terms taken into account in the summation have, as a rule, a very small effect on the calculated thermodynamic functions of gases. However, the lowering of ionization potentials as a result of the cutoff of the upper levels sometimes has a significant effect on the calculated composition of an ionized gas (see [14]).

In concluding this section we note that the cutoff phenomenon in the upper excitation levels of atoms, ions, and molecules has been confirmed experimentally. Low pressure arc discharge spectra ordinarily show no more than 5–10 spectral lines of the Balmer hydrogen series arising from the transition of an electron from an upper excited level to a level whose principal quantum number $n = 2$. Even in spectra of the extremely low density in nebulae (of the order of tens of particles per cm^3) not more than 50–60 Balmer lines are observed.

§7. Approximate methods of calculation in the region of multiple ionization

The calculations for ionization equilibrium, which form the basis for determining the thermodynamic properties of gases at high temperatures, are extremely involved and time consuming. For each pair of temperature and density values, a nonlinear system of algebraic equations must be solved to determine the concentrations of the ions of different charge. This calculation is even more complicated if the gas is composed of atoms of several elements. In this regard tables covering a wide range of temperatures and densities have been compiled only for air. Obviously, with modern computers the problem of large numerical calculations becomes significantly less acute, but it is still useful for practical purposes to have a simple approximate method which, with a minimum expenditure of time and effort, permits the calculation of the degrees of ionization and the thermodynamic functions of any gas over a wide range of high temperatures and densities, in the range where the atoms are multiply ionized. In this section we shall consider such a method, proposed by one of the authors [15]. For all its simplicity, the method is sufficiently accurate for the solution of most practical problems.

Let us consider a gas consisting of atoms of a single element. Our approximate method is based on two fundamental steps. The first of these is the assumption that the ion number density n_m and the ionization potentials I_{m+1} are considered to be continuous functions of the ionic charge m, obtained by connecting the discrete values of n_m and I_{m+1} by continuous curves. The function $I(m)$ is constructed by joining the points I_m on the I, m diagram

(Fig. 3.1) by a continuous curve, say, by a series of straight lines. The system of recurrence relations defined by the Saha equations (3.44) can then be transformed into a differential equation for the function $n(m)$, by replacing the finite differences by differentials

$$n(m+1) = n(m) + \frac{dn}{dm}, \qquad \Delta m = 1.$$

The ratio of the ion electronic partition functions u_{m+1}/u_m ordinarily varies in an irregular manner when the charge m changes its value for a given element,

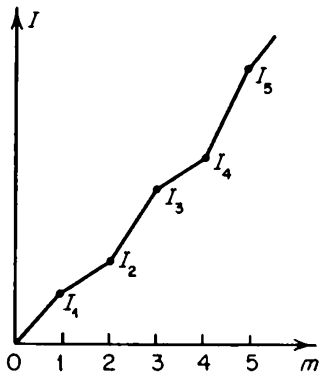


Fig. 3.1. Transition to the continuous curve $I(m)$.

or when the element itself is transformed; this ratio, however, is always of the order of unity. Let us assume that it is approximately equal to unity. We can then replace the system of Saha equations by the differential equation

$$\left(1 + \frac{d \ln n}{dm}\right) n_e = AT^{3/2} \exp\left(-\frac{I(m+1)}{kT}\right), \tag{3.52}$$

where

$$A = 2\left(\frac{2\pi m_e k}{h^2}\right) = 4.8 \cdot 10^{15}\ \mathrm{cm}^{-3} \cdot \mathrm{deg}^{-3/2} = 6 \cdot 10^{21}\ \mathrm{cm}^{-3} \cdot \mathrm{ev}^{-3/2}.$$

We next rewrite the particle and charge conservation conditions (3.37) and (3.38) in the integral form

$$\int n(m)\, dm = n, \tag{3.53}$$

$$\int mn(m)\, dm = n_e. \tag{3.54}$$

The results of exact calculations and results from the system of Saha equations developed below show that a significant number of doubly or at most triply

ionized atoms are always present in the gas. In addition, the distribution function $n(m)$ has a very narrow and sharp peak about some value $m_{\max}$ which, of course, depends on both the density and temperature of the gas. This leads to the second step, which is the approximation that the average value of the ionic charge, also the average number of free electrons per original atom

$$\bar{m} = \frac{\int mn(m)\,dm}{\int n(m)\,dm} = \frac{n_e}{n}, \tag{3.55}$$

is exactly equal to that value of $m_{\max}$ for which the ion distribution function $n(m)$ has a maximum. Obviously, this assumption is more justified the sharper and narrower is the peak of the distribution $n(m)$.

Denoting the ionization potential of ions with an "average" charge $\bar{m}$ by $\bar{I}$, and noting that $dn/dm = 0$ at the peak or maximum point, we get from (3.52), with the aid of (3.55),

$$\bar{m} = \frac{AT^{3/2}}{n} e^{-\bar{I}/kT}. \tag{3.56}$$

In order to convert this expression into a formula for determining the average charge (or the degree of ionization) as a function of the temperature T and density (the number density n of original atoms) it is necessary to determine the relation between $\bar{I}$ and $\bar{m}$. A certain degree of arbitrariness exists here which is connected purely with the formalism (in the exact theory) of assigning subscripts to ionization potentials. If we denote the ionization potential of an m-ion by I_{m+1} (the ionization potential of a neutral atom is I_1), then formally we should have set $\bar{I} = I(\bar{m} + 1)$. Sometimes, however, the ionization potential of an m-ion is denoted by I_m (the ionization potential of a neutral atom is then I_0). In this case in the Saha equation (3.44) I_{m+1} should be replaced by I_m and $\bar{I}$ should be formally set equal to $I(\bar{m})$.

Of course, if we consider heavy elements at very high temperatures, where the degree of ionization is so high that $\bar{m}$ is of the order of several tens, the arbitrariness does not result in any substantial change in the value of $\bar{m}$ (since in this case $I_{m+1} - I_m \ll I_m$). Where the average charge of the ions is not large, however, the arbitrariness has a marked effect on both the values of $\bar{m}$ and of the thermodynamic functions. This results from the approximation of replacing discrete values by continuous functions.

Comparison of the results of approximate and exact calculations shows that best agreement is obtained when, as before, we denote the ionization potential of an m-ion by $I_{m+1} = I(m + 1)$, setting $I_0 = I(0) = 0$, but referring the "average" value of the potential $\bar{I}$ to the point $m + \frac{1}{2}$, i.e., assuming $\bar{I} = \bar{I}(\bar{m} + \frac{1}{2})$. This procedure appears to be quite natural, when we note that the sequence of discrete values of m is separated by finite intervals $\Delta m = 1$.

Taking the logarithm of (3.56) we then obtain a simple transcendental equation for $\bar{m}(T, n)$

$$I(\bar{m} + \tfrac{1}{2}) = kT \ln \frac{AT^{3/2}}{\bar{m}n}. \tag{3.57}$$

Because the right-hand side is a logarithmic function of $\bar{m}$, two or three successive approximations are sufficient to obtain a fairly accurate value of the root of $\bar{m}$ from a plot of the function $I(m)$.

Let us now show that the distribution of ion number density with respect to the charge always has a narrow peak, and let us find the equation governing the peak of the distribution function. Combining successively the Saha equations for the values $m = 1, 2, \ldots$, having set the ratios of the electronic partition functions equal to unity, and using the definition of the "average" potential (3.56), we obtain

$$\frac{n_{m+l}}{n_m} = \exp\left[-\sum_{i=1}^{l} \frac{I_{m+i} - \bar{I}}{kT}\right],$$

$$\frac{n_{m-l}}{n_m} = \exp\left[-\sum_{i=0}^{l} \frac{\bar{I} - I_{m-i}}{kT}\right],$$

where $l = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$. Let us choose m equal to the value for which n_m is maximum. The quantity $\bar{I}$ corresponds approximately to the ionization potential of such ions, so that all the terms in the summation are positive and the ion concentrations decrease on both sides of the maximum. To determine the relation governing the shape and width of the peak, we introduce the continuous functions $n(m)$ and $I(m)$. Expanding, we have approximately

$$I(m) \approx \bar{I} + \left(\frac{dI}{dm}\right)(m - \bar{m}),$$

from which we obtain the Gaussian distribution curve

$$n(m) = n_{\max} \exp\left[-\left(\frac{m - \bar{m}}{\Delta}\right)^2\right] \tag{3.58}$$

with a peak half-width

$$\Delta = [2kT/(\overline{dI/dm})]^{1/2}. \tag{3.59}$$

Noting that on the average, for different elements and different degrees of ionization, the ionization potential increases with ionic charge faster than the charge itself (that $dI/dm > I/m$), we find that

$$\Delta < \left(\frac{2kT\bar{m}}{\bar{I}}\right)^{1/2} = \left(\frac{2\bar{m}}{\bar{x}_1}\right)^{1/2}, \qquad \bar{x}_1 = \frac{\bar{I}}{kT}. \tag{3.60}$$

Putting in numerical values of $\bar{x}_1$ and $\bar{m}$ determined, for example, from Table 3.3 for air, we see that $\Delta < 1$, that the peak is actually narrow*.

Approximate expressions for the various thermodynamic functions can be obtained from the exact equations by assuming that the ion distribution function $n(m)$ has a very narrow peak, is almost a delta function about m. In other words, we assume that all ions have the same nonintegral "average" charge $\bar{m}$. The specific internal energy (3.36) then becomes

$$\varepsilon = \tfrac{3}{2}N(1 + \bar{m})kT + NQ(\bar{m}) \tag{3.61}$$

(we neglect the electronic excitation energy). Here the continuous function $Q(m)$, as with $I(m)$, is plotted by connecting the discrete values Q_m determined from (3.35) by a continuous curve. We note that here the best agreement with exact calculations is obtained by setting $\bar{Q} = Q(\bar{m})$ in (3.61) in contrast to having set $\bar{I} = I(\bar{m} + \frac{1}{2})$. The pressure is given by

$$p = n(1 + \bar{m})kT. \tag{3.62}$$

The specific entropy (3.48) (if we neglect the electronic excitation and assume the statistical weight of all the ions to be the same and equal to g) is found to be

$$S = Nk \ln\left(\frac{2\pi MkT}{h^2}\right)^{3/2} \frac{e^{5/2}g}{n} + Nk\bar{m} \ln\left(\frac{2\pi m_e kT}{h^2}\right)^{3/2} \frac{e^{5/2}g}{n\bar{m}}. \tag{3.63}$$

Setting $S = const$ and using (3.57), we obtain the equation of the isentrope in the parametric form

$$\frac{T^{3/2}}{n} \exp\left\{\bar{m}\left[\frac{I(\bar{m} + \frac{1}{2})}{kT} + \frac{5}{2}\right]\right\} = const. \tag{3.64}$$

The parameter here is $\bar{m}$; the constant on the right-hand side is determined by values of T_0 and n_0 through which the isentrope passes.

The above method for finding the degree of ionization and thermodynamic functions can be easily generalized to include gas mixtures. For example, the "average" ionic charges $\bar{m}_1$ and $\bar{m}_2$ of each of the elements in a two-element mixture are found from the system of two transcendental equations

$$I_1(\bar{m}_1 + \tfrac{1}{2}) = I_2(\bar{m}_2 + \tfrac{1}{2}) = kT \ln \frac{AT^{3/2}}{n(c_1\bar{m}_1 + c_2\bar{m}_2)}, \tag{3.65}$$

* The fact that the peak of the n_m distribution is narrow, with Δ of the order of the "finite" difference $\Delta m = 1$, generally makes the transformation to differentials with respect to m meaningless. However, the method gives results which are better than any rational justification would indicate.

where c_1 and c_2 are the atom concentrations of both elements, I_1 and I_2 their ionization potential curves, and n is the total number density of original atoms. The specific internal energy is

$$\varepsilon = \tfrac{3}{2}N(1 + c_1\bar{m}_1 + c_2\bar{m}_2)kT + Nc_1Q_1(\bar{m}_1) + Nc_2Q_2(\bar{m}), \qquad (3.66)$$

etc. In many cases, however, there is little advantage in complicating the calculations in this manner. If the successive ionization potentials for the different atoms do not differ very much from each other, it is convenient to introduce an "average" potential curve $I(m)$, considering all the atoms as identical and the values of the successive potentials as averaged with respect to all the elements in accordance with their percentage in the mixture.

Table 3.4

COMPARISON OF APPROXIMATE AND EXACT CALCULATIONS OF THE DEGREE OF IONIZATION AND INTERNAL ENERGY OF AIR

T°K	$\rho_0 = 1.29 \cdot 10^{-3}$ g/cm³		$\rho = 10^{-2}\rho_0$	
	$1+\bar{m}$	ε, $\frac{\text{ev}}{\text{atom}}$	$1+\bar{m}$	ε, $\frac{\text{ev}}{\text{atom}}$
30,000	1.68	16.6	2.30	33
	1.77	23	2.21	33
50,000	2.4	40.5	3.35	83
	2.42	47.8	3.26	80
100,000	3.72	126	5.10	243
	3.75	140	5.16	252

The upper numbers in each pair of values were obtained by the approximate method of [15], while the lower ones were taken from the work of Selivanov and Shlyapintokh [4].

Table 3.4 compares for air the approximate values of the degree of ionization and the internal energy with the exact values obtained by Selivanov and Shlyapintokh [4]. It is evident that even at low degrees of ionization, where the error should be particularly large, the approximate method gives fairly good accuracy. The error at high degrees of ionization does not exceed a few percent.

The method correctly reflects all the irregularities in the variation of $\bar{m}$ and ε with temperature and density, corresponding to the sharp jumps in the ionization potentials which take place with transitions from ions with filled electron shells to ions with unfilled shells. Calculations have shown that the

method also gives satisfactory accuracy for xenon. Since the ionization potential curves for all elements are similar to each other, we may hope that the approximate method will be accurate enough for other gases as well.

§8. Interpolation formulas and the effective adiabatic exponent

Calculated thermodynamic functions have been tabulated as a function of temperature and density (or pressure). The use of such tables in solving gasdynamic problems is, however, very inconvenient. It is much more convenient to use simple interpolation formulas which approximate the tabulated data. Of particular interest is the approximation of the actual functions for cases in which a suitably defined adiabatic exponent which characterizes hydrodynamic processes turns out to be almost constant. The use of a constant "effective adiabatic exponent" or "effective ratio of specific heats" enables us to apply self-similar and exact solutions of the gasdynamic equations, solutions which as a rule can be obtained only for a gas with constant specific heats.

Isentropic relationships between any two thermodynamic parameters, for example T and ρ or p and ρ, which account for partial vibrational excitation, dissociation, and ionization can no longer be described by the equations for a perfect gas with constant specific heats. An exponent γ can be defined formally at every point in such a way that the actual isentrope in the neighborhood of this point coincides approximately with the perfect gas isentrope. To satisfy this condition we set

$$\left(\frac{\partial \ln T}{\partial \ln \rho}\right)_S = \gamma' - 1 \qquad \text{or} \qquad \left(\frac{\partial \ln p}{\partial \ln \rho}\right)_S = \gamma'' \text{*}.$$

However, the exponents corresponding to different choices of thermodynamic parameters are different in general. Therefore, in order to introduce an effective adiabatic exponent γ in the range of interest of T and ρ (or p and ρ), it is necessary to define it in a manner closely reflecting the nature of the gasdynamic process.

In the usual scheme the third gasdynamic relation is the energy conservation equation. In order to close the system of hydrodynamic equations for an ideal fluid†, it is sufficient to introduce a relation between the internal energy,

* *Editors' note.* The quantity γ'' is often termed the isentropic exponent. It is the ratio of the square of the speed of sound to p/ρ, and in many problems plays a role more fundamental than that of the effective adiabatic exponent γ. In Hugoniot relations for strong shocks γ is of more fundamental importance than γ''.

† The hydrodynamics of an ideal fluid does not take into account either viscosity or heat conduction.

pressure, and density $\varepsilon(p, \rho)$. This relationship is usually given in terms of the formula

$$\varepsilon = \frac{1}{\gamma - 1}\frac{p}{\rho}.$$

We determine an adiabatic exponent in the range of interest of p and ρ by tabulating the quantity

$$\gamma - 1 = \frac{p}{\rho\varepsilon} \tag{3.67}$$

and choosing a constant value of $\gamma - 1$ which best approximates the different values of $p/\rho\varepsilon$. As a result, the isentropic equation $d\varepsilon + p\,dV = 0$ ($V = 1/\rho$) takes the constant-γ form $p \sim \rho^{\gamma}$, $\varepsilon \sim \rho^{\gamma-1}$ with an effective constant value of γ.

The specific internal energy as a function of temperature and density is most conveniently approximated by a power-law relation

$$\varepsilon = aT^{\alpha}V^{\beta} \tag{3.68}$$

with constant values of a, α, and β. In the region where vibrational degrees of freedom are fully excited the specific heat is independent of the density and $\beta = 0$. In the dissociation and ionization regions the specific heat always increases with decreasing density, since in this case there is an increase in the degree of dissociation or ionization with a corresponding increase in the energy losses. Therefore, the exponent β is always positive. The exponent α is usually greater than unity, since the specific heat increases with temperature in the region where partial excitation of the vibrational modes takes place, as well as in the dissociation and ionization regions.

When the function $\varepsilon(T, V)$ is approximated by (3.68) with constant exponents α and β, and the functions $p(\varepsilon, \rho)$ or $p(\varepsilon, V)$ are approximated by (3.67) with constant γ, then the three constants α, β, and γ cannot be chosen independently. The functions $p(\varepsilon, V)$ and $\varepsilon(T, V)$ must satisfy the general thermodynamic relation

$$p + \left(\frac{\partial\varepsilon}{\partial V}\right)_T = T\left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial T}\right)_V.$$

Direct substitution shows that the three quantities α, β, and γ are related by

$$\gamma - 1 = \frac{\beta}{\alpha - 1}, \tag{3.69}$$

provided, of course, that these quantities are assumed to be constant. In the above interpolation (as may be easily checked from the isentropic equation $d\varepsilon + p\,dV = 0$) the isentropic relations between T and ρ and ε and ρ are also

characterized by a single exponent γ, precisely as in the classical case of a perfect gas of constant specific heats where

$$T \sim \rho^{\gamma-1}, \qquad \varepsilon \sim \rho^{\gamma-1}, \qquad p \sim \rho^{\gamma}, \qquad \gamma = const.$$

This result is obtained in spite of the fact that the specific heats are functions of both temperature and volume.

Table 3.2 illustrates the numerical values of this effective adiabatic exponent by tabulating $1 + p/\rho\varepsilon = \gamma$ for multiply ionized air. It is evident that γ decreases with decreasing density.

In the range of temperatures from 10,000°K to 250,000°K and of densities from $10\rho_0$ to $10^{-3}\rho_0$ (ρ_0 is the standard atmospheric density) the internal energy of air can be roughly approximated by (3.68) with the constants given by the relation

$$\varepsilon = 8.3\left(\frac{T^\circ}{10^4}\right)^{1.5}\left(\frac{\rho_0}{\rho}\right)^{0.12} \text{ ev/molecule.} \tag{3.70}$$

The effective adiabatic exponent obtained from (3.69) is $\gamma = 1.24$.

It is important that the quantity γ as determined from (3.67) varies much less than do the exponents α and β in (3.68). This is a favorable situation since the function $\varepsilon(T, V)$ is in fact not necessary for the calculation of isentropic processes; it is sufficient to know $\varepsilon(p, V)$ or $p(\varepsilon, V)$ as given by (3.67). It should be noted that, in approximating over a wide range of temperatures and densities, the effective adiabatic exponent and the exponents α and β in (3.68) differ very little from one gas to another. That this should be so is quite clear, since the ionization potential curves are in general similar to one another and differ only in details affecting the behavior of the energy and pressure within narrow ranges of the temperature and density.

§9. The Hugoniot curve with dissociation and ionization

The changes in the flow variables across a shock wave in a gas with constant specific heats were calculated in Chapter I. In the case of a strong shock wave, where the pressure behind the front is much larger than the initial pressure $p_1 \gg p_0$, the density ratio across the shock approaches its limiting value $K = (\gamma + 1)/(\gamma - 1)$. Thus, in a monatomic gas (inert gases, metal vapors) $c_v = \frac{3}{2}Nk$, $\gamma = \frac{5}{3}$, and $K = 4$, while in a diatomic gas with the vibrational mode unexcited $c_v = \frac{5}{2}NkT$, $\gamma = \frac{7}{5}$, and $K = 6$ *. It is apparent from the equation for K in the case of a gas with constant specific heats that the density ratio across

* Practically, the limiting density ratio of 6 is attained in a diatomic gas with the vibrational mode unexcited only for low initial temperatures T_0. Otherwise, the pressure ratio p_1/p_0 is not large enough to consider the shock as "strong", for those temperatures behind the wave which do not excite the vibrational mode.

the shock is larger, the higher are the specific heats and the closer to unity is the specific heat ratio. The tendency for an increase in the density ratio with an increase in the specific heat is also true in the general case where the specific heat is a function of temperature and density. If a diatomic gas is so dense that upon passage through a strong shock wave the vibrational mode is fully excited even before dissociation begins, then the specific heat behind the wave increases and approaches the value $c_v = \frac{7}{2}NkT$, the specific heat ratio or adiabatic exponent approaches $\gamma = \frac{9}{7}$, and the density ratio across the wave increases to $K = 8$.

Dissociation and ionization lead to a further increase in the density ratio. It is important to note that the density ratio is affected only by that part of the specific heat which is associated with the potential and internal energy of the particles, that is, with the energy of dissociation and ionization, with the rotational and vibrational energy of the molecules, and with the electronic excitation energy of the atoms and ions. The increase in the specific heat as a result of an increase in the number of particles does not affect the density ratio, since the increase in the translational energy of the particles is accompanied by a corresponding increase in the gas pressure. The change in the number of particles does not directly affect the adiabatic exponent γ which determines the density ratio. We can easily prove this statement by writing the internal energy as the sum $\varepsilon = \varepsilon_{\text{trans}} + Q$, where Q includes the potential energy and the energy of the internal degrees of freedom of the particles. Noting that the pressure is $p = \frac{2}{3}\rho\varepsilon_{\text{trans}}$, we substitute these expressions into the Hugoniot relation (1.71). Neglecting the initial energy and pressure, that is, assuming the shock wave to be strong, we find for the limiting value of the density ratio*

$$K = 4 + \frac{3Q}{\varepsilon_{\text{trans}}}. \tag{3.71}$$

The greater is the relative importance of the potential and the internal energies, the greater is the difference from the monatomic gas value of 4.

With dissociation and ionization the potential energy usually turns out to be larger than the translational energy of the particles and the density ratio across the shock is rather large, of the order of 10–12 (or even larger). The density ratio is especially large when the initial density is low, and when the degree of dissociation and ionization is very high at a given temperature†.

* In a paper of the authors [16] the erroneous relation $K = 4/(1 - 3Q/\varepsilon_{\text{trans}})$ was given (equation (2.5)) in place of (3.71).

† Thus, for example, when shock waves are propagated through air at an initial pressure $p_0 = 10^{-4}$ atm with velocities $D \sim 6.5$–12 km/sec (Mach numbers $M \sim 20$–35), the density ratio across the shock is approximately 17.

For heavy gases with ionization the density ratio does not remain constant as the strength of the wave increases. The relative contribution of the potential energy decreases gradually after the density ratio has reached a maximum in the dissociation or first ionization region, because the translational energy increases faster than the potential energy as a result of an increase in the number of particles. The density ratio in this case decreases gradually. This situation prevails until all electrons are removed from any atomic shell. A large jump always exists between the ionization potentials of the last electron in a shell and the first electron of the following closed shell. This jump is especially large between the L and K shells. For example, in nitrogen it is 97 ev and 550 ev, in oxygen it is 137 ev and 735 ev. In air there exists, therefore, a fairly wide range of shock strengths, approximately in the temperature range from 500,000 to 700,000°K, when all electrons of oxygen and nitrogen atoms filling the L shells have already been removed and the ionization of the K shells has not yet begun, so that only helium-like ions exist in the gas. When a further increase in shock strength results in the removal of the K electrons, the ionization energy again increases sharply, the relative contribution of the potential energy (as at the beginning of the first ionization) increases, and the density ratio passes through a second, clearly defined maximum.

From the mass and momentum conservation relations (1.61) and (1.62), the pressure behind a strong shock wave is given by

$$p_1 = \rho_0 D^2\left(1 - \frac{1}{K}\right). \tag{3.72}$$

The pressure is not very sensitive to the value of the density ratio, especially at high density ratios, and is approximately proportional to the square of the propagation velocity of the wave D. For example, with $K \sim 10$ this is to within about 10%. The specific enthalpy behind the shock

$$h_1 = \frac{D^2}{2}\left(1 - \frac{1}{K^2}\right) \tag{3.73}$$

(as derived from (1.61), (1.62), and (1.64)) is even more closely proportional to the square of the velocity. In the example considered this is to within the order of 1%.

The temperature, which in a gas with constant specific heats is also proportional to the square of the velocity, with increasing shock strength does increase with dissociation and ionization present, although much more slowly. In the singly ionized region this slowing-down of the temperature rise comes as a result of the relative increase in the energy lost to ionization, in the increase of the quantity $Q/\varepsilon_{\text{trans}} \sim Q/T$; subsequently, when the contribution of the potential energy to the internal energy decreases in comparison with

that of the translational energy, the slower temperature increase can be explained by the increase in the number of particles, to which both $\varepsilon_{\text{trans}}$ and p are proportional:

$$\varepsilon_{\text{trans}} = \tfrac{3}{2}N(1 + \bar{m})kT, \qquad p = n(1 + \bar{m})kT.$$

We note that after complete ionization, when $\varepsilon_{\text{trans}}$ increases with increasing shock strength and temperature behind the shock, while Q remains unchanged, the density ratio approaches 4 (without considering thermal radiation) as the strength increases. This is evident from (3.71). In hydrogen, for example, in the region of complete dissociation and ionization the potential energy per atom is 15.74 ev (the dissociation energy per H atom is 2.24 ev and the ionization energy is 13.5 ev) and the translational energy per atom (the energy of a proton and electron) is $3kT = 3T$ ev, so that

$$K = 4 + \frac{15.74}{T_{\text{ev}}} \to 4 \qquad \text{as} \quad T \to \infty$$

(effectively complete ionization of hydrogen with atmospheric density ahead of the wave takes place even at $T \sim 100{,}000°\text{K} \sim 10$ ev).

The effect of dissociation and ionization upon the quantities behind a shock wave is illustrated in Table 3.5. The calculations are for air initially at standard density. The low-temperature data with excited vibrational modes are taken from the book of Zel'dovich [17]; the calculations with dissociation and the beginning of the first ionization were made by Davies [18]. The quantities behind a shock over a wide range of temperatures from 20,000 to 500,000°K were calculated by Selivanov and Shlyapintokh [4] (cited previously). The flow quantities behind shock waves in air over a wide range of initial pressures

Table 3.5

FLOW QUANTITIES BEHIND A SHOCK WAVE IN AIR WITH STANDARD CONDITIONS AHEAD OF THE WAVE ($p_0 = 1$ atm, $T_0 = 293°\text{K}$)

T°K	D, km/sec	p_1, atm	ρ_1/ρ_0	T°K	D, km/sec	p_1, atm	ρ_1/ρ_0
293	0.33	1	1	14,000	9.31	1,000	11.10
482	0.70	5	2.84	20,000	11.8	1,650	10.10
705	0.98	10	3.88	30,000	15.9	2,980	9.75
2,260	2.15	50	6.04	50,000	23.3	6,380	8.97
4,000	3.35	127	8.58	100,000	40.1	19,200	8.62
6,000	4.54	236	9.75	250,000	81.6	76,500	7.80
8,000	5.64	366	10.30	500,000	114.0	143,900	6.27
10,000	6.97	561	11.00				

(from standard pressure to $p_0 \sim 10^{-5}$ atm) have been calculated by Rozhdestvenskii [19] and Gorban' [20] (for temperatures behind the wave not greater than 12,000°K). A number of authors have calculated quantities behind shock waves for other gases as well: in argon and hydrogen (Prokof'ev [21]), in argon (Resler, Lin, and Kantrowitz [22]), in xenon (Sabol [23]), and in hydrogen and xenon (Kholev [24]). The processes are qualitatively similar for all the gases, and the Hugoniot curves are accordingly all rather similar.

The calculated Hugoniot curves for argon and xenon are in good agreement with experimental results obtained in shock tubes. Satisfactory agreement between calculations and experiment has also been obtained for air. It should be noted that the calculated behavior of the Hugoniot curve for dissociated air is strongly affected by the value assigned to the dissociation energy of nitrogen (the two previously contradictory values were 7.38 ev and 9.74 ev). Experiments by Christian and Yarger [25], who studied shock waves in air using a shock tube, have confirmed that the experimental Hugoniot curve is closer to the calculated one which takes a dissociation energy for nitrogen of 9.74 ev. This value is also supported by the experiments of Model' [26], who measured the wave velocity and (by an optical method) temperature behind the wave.

§10. The Hugoniot relations with equilibrium radiation

At very high temperatures (or very low densities), when the energy and pressure of equilibrium radiation are comparable to the energy and pressure of the fluid, the effect of radiation must be included when calculating the Hugoniot curve. (Obviously, it should be checked first whether equilibrium between the radiation and the fluid is attained under the given conditions of the problem.)

Let us consider a very strong shock wave propagating through a cold gas, and let us assume that the flux of radiation on both sides of the wave is zero. We also assume that the radiation behind the shock front is in equilibrium (the means by which the equilibrium is established is not of interest here). Thus, we consider the problem from a purely thermodynamic point of view, as is usual in deriving the Hugoniot relations*. It is to be emphasized that we are considering the nonrelativistic case, where the shock and fluid velocities are much smaller than the speed of light, and where the energies of the radiation and of the fluid are very much smaller than the rest energy of the fluid. Let us introduce the radiation energy and pressure behind the front ε_{v1} and p_{v1} into the momentum and energy conservation equations across the shock

* This problem was considered by Sachs [27].

wave (see §13, Chapter I and §17, Chapter II). The conservation relations across the wave are then written

$$\begin{gathered} \rho_1 u_1 = \rho_0 D, \\ p_1 + p_{v1} + \rho_1 u_1^2 = \rho_0 D^2, \\ \varepsilon_1 + \varepsilon_{v1} + \frac{p_1}{\rho_1} + \frac{p_{v1}}{\rho_1} + \frac{u_1^2}{2} = \frac{D^2}{2}. \end{gathered} \tag{3.74}$$

In order to simplify the problem so that we may clarify the role of the radiation, we shall assume that the gas is one of constant specific heats with ratio (or adiabatic exponent) γ and obeys the usual equation of state

$$p = R\rho T, \qquad R = const\,; \qquad \varepsilon = \frac{1}{\gamma - 1} RT = \frac{1}{\gamma - 1} \frac{p}{\rho}.$$

Substituting ε_{v1} and p_{v1} from (3.49) and (3.50) into (3.74), expressing the pressure p_1 and the energy ε_1 in terms of the temperature T_1, and eliminating u_1 by means of the first of (3.74), we obtain the relations corresponding to (3.72) and (3.73) (in which radiation is not taken into account):

$$\begin{gathered} R\rho_0 K T_1 + \frac{4\sigma T_1^4}{3c} = \rho_0 D^2 \left(1 - \frac{1}{K}\right), \\ \frac{\gamma}{\gamma - 1} R\rho_0 K T_1 + \frac{16\sigma T_1^4}{3c} = \frac{\rho_0 D^2}{2} K \left(1 - \frac{1}{K^2}\right). \end{gathered} \tag{3.75}$$

Here $K = \rho_1/\rho_0$ is the density ratio across the shock wave. We may eliminate D from these equations and solve the resulting expression in terms of T_1

$$\frac{4\sigma T_1^3}{3Rc\rho_0} = \frac{K(K - K_0)}{(7 - K)}, \tag{3.76}$$

where $K_0 = (\gamma + 1)/(\gamma - 1)$ is the limiting density ratio across a strong shock wave without radiation. This equation can be considered as a defining equation for K in terms of the strength of the shock wave, which is here characterized by the temperature T_1 behind the front.

The left-hand side of (3.76), which is proportional to T_1^3, represents simply K times the ratio of the radiation pressure to the pressure of the fluid behind the shock wave p_{v1}/p_1 *. Equation (3.76) shows that if the radiation pressure is relatively small $p_{v1}/p_1 \ll 1$, then $K \approx K_0$, and the density ratio is almost equal to the usual limiting value $K_0 = (\gamma + 1)/(\gamma - 1)$. In the limit of a very strong

* *Editors' note.* The quantity $(K - K_0)/(7 - K)$ is equal to the ratio p_{v1}/p_1 without the restriction that γ be constant, as long as the shock is strong and the gas opaque. The variation of K with shock strength need not be monotonic in the general case.

shock, where $p_{v1}/p_1 \sim T_1^3 \to \infty$, the density ratio K tends to $K_\infty = 7$. This result might have been expected, since equilibrium radiation from a thermodynamic point of view behaves as a perfect gas with a specific heat ratio $\gamma = 4/3$ (see Chapter II, §3), for which the limiting density ratio across a shock is 7. Between the two limiting cases $p_{v1}/p_1 \to 0$ and $p_{v1}/p_1 \to \infty$, the density ratio K varies monotonically* from $K_0 = (\gamma + 1)/(\gamma - 1)$ to $K_\infty = 7$ as the wave strength increases, independently of whether $K_0 > 7$ or $K_0 < 7$, that is, independently of whether the specific heat ratio γ (without considering radiation) is less than or greater than 4/3.

In the limiting case, when the radiation energy and pressure are much greater than the energy and pressure of the fluid, when the second terms on the left-hand sides of (3.75) are much greater than the first terms, the temperature behind the front $T_1 \sim D^{1/2}$, unlike the usual case without radiation (in a gas with constant specific heats), where $T_1 \sim D^2$. We note that the relative importance of the energy and pressure of equilibrium radiation is greater, the lower is the density of the fluid, that $p_v/p \sim 1/\rho$ (in a gas of constant number of particles). For example, in completely ionized hydrogen, the radiation pressure is equal to the gas pressure at $T = 10^6\,°\mathrm{K}$, for a number density (protons and electrons) $n = 10^{19}\ \mathrm{cm}^{-3}$, while for $n = 10^{16}\ \mathrm{cm}^{-3}$ the two pressures are equal at $T = 10^5\,°\mathrm{K}$.

2. *Gases with Coulomb interactions*

§11. Rarefied ionized gases

Let us consider the departure of an ionized gas from an ideal one as a result of the Coulomb interactions between charged particles. In this section we shall restrict ourselves to the case of "weakly" imperfect gases, where the terms representing the Coulomb interactions in the thermodynamic functions can be considered as small corrections to the terms describing a perfect gas.

In order to consider an ionized gas as a perfect one, it is necessary that the energy of the Coulomb interactions between neighboring particles be small in comparison with the thermal energy of the particles, that the condition $(Ze)^2/r_0 \ll kT$ holds. Here, Z is the average charge of the particles (ions and electrons) and $r_0 \approx n^{-1/3}$ is the average distance between them (n is the number of particles per cm^3). This condition can be rewritten as

$$n \ll \left(\frac{kT}{Z^2e^2}\right)^3 = 2.2 \cdot 10^8 \left(\frac{T^\circ}{Z^2}\right)^3 \mathrm{cm}^{-3}. \tag{3.77}$$

* *See footnote, p. 214.*

For example, if the degree of ionization is of the order of unity ($Z \sim 1$) and $T \sim 30{,}000°\mathrm{K}$, the gas can be considered as a perfect one when $n \ll 6.2 \cdot 10^{21}\ \mathrm{cm}^{-3}$ (for comparison, we recall that the number of molecules in air at standard conditions is $2.67 \cdot 10^{19}\ \mathrm{cm}^{-3}$).

Coulomb corrections to the thermodynamic functions in the case of weakly imperfect gases can be calculated by the Debye–Hückel method as was done in the text by Landau and Lifshitz [1] (see also the paper of Timan [11]). A spherically symmetric nonuniformly charged cloud of particles of like charge is formed about each ion or electron. The distribution of charge density in each cloud is the Boltzmann distribution corresponding to the electrostatic potential of the central charge and the cloud. The solution of Poisson's equation for the electrostatic potential distribution with respect to the radius r from the central ion of charge $Z_i e$ leads in a first approximation to the equation

$$\varphi_i = Z_i e\, r^{-1}\, e^{-r/d},$$

where d is the so-called Debye radius characterizing the dimensions of the cloud, with

$$d = \left(\frac{4\pi e^2}{kT} \sum n_i Z_i^2\right)^{-1/2} = 6.90 \left(\frac{T^\circ}{n\overline{Z^2}}\right)^{1/2} \mathrm{cm} \tag{3.78}$$

(n_i is the number of ions of charge $Z_i e$ per cm^3; electrons are here included in the concept of "ions" by setting $Z = -1$ for the electrons).

The statistical treatment using the Debye–Hückel method is justified if the cloud contains many particles, that is, if the Debye radius d is much greater than the average distance between the particles $r_0 \approx n^{-1/3}$. The requirement $d \gg r_0$ leads to the condition $n \ll (kT/4\pi e^2 \overline{Z^2})^3 = 1.1 \cdot 10^5 (T^0/\overline{Z^2})^3\ \mathrm{cm}^{-3}$, which is even stricter than the requirement (3.77) for a perfect gas. The Debye approach, therefore, assumes a very weakly imperfect gas.

Near the center for $r \ll d$, $\varphi_i = Z_i e/r - Z_i e/d$. The first term is the potential of the central ion itself, and the second one $\varphi_i = -Z_i e/d$ is the potential due to all the other surrounding charges at the point where the given ion is located. The Coulomb energy of the gas in a volume V, according to the general equation of electrostatics, is given by

$$E_{\mathrm{coul}} = V \cdot \tfrac{1}{2} \sum e Z_i n_i \varphi_i' = -Ve^3 \left(\frac{\pi}{kT}\right)^{1/2} \left(\sum n_i Z_i^2\right)^{3/2}. \tag{3.79}$$

The free energy correction can be found by integrating the thermodynamic relation $E/T^2 = -\partial/\partial T\,(F/T)$ to give

$$F_{\mathrm{coul}} = \tfrac{2}{3} E_{\mathrm{coul}} = -\tfrac{2}{3} e^3 \left(\frac{\pi}{kTV}\right)^{1/2} \left(\sum N_i Z_i^2\right)^{3/2}, \tag{3.80}$$

where $N_i = n_i V$ is the total number of particles of the ith species in the volume V. The pressure correction is

$$p_{\text{coul}} = -\left(\frac{\partial F_{\text{coul}}}{\partial V}\right)_{T,N_i} = \frac{E_{\text{coul}}}{3V}. \tag{3.81}$$

On the average, the forces between particles are attractive, since each ion surrounds itself mostly with charges of the opposite sign; therefore, both the Coulomb energy and pressure are negative. The Coulomb interaction affects the state of the gas in two ways. First, it decreases the energy and the pressure (and also the entropy, since $S_{\text{coul}} = -\partial F_{\text{coul}}/\partial T = E_{\text{coul}}/3T$). Second, and this effect is the more important, it displaces the ionization equilibrium toward higher degrees of ionization. Indeed, a free electron in an interacting gas has a negative potential energy, and behaves as if it were weakly bound to the ions. Therefore, slightly less work is required to remove an electron from an atom or an ion, and this corresponds to an effective decrease in the ionization potentials.

The equation for ionization equilibrium taking into account Coulomb interactions is derived in the same manner as in §5. The total free energy of the system is expressed as

$$F = F_{pg} + F_{\text{coul}},$$

where F_{pg} is given by (3.41) and F_{coul} by (3.80). We next calculate the variation δF with respect to the variation in the number of m-ions due to ionization. Using the condition $\delta N_m = -\delta N_{m+1} = -\delta N_e$ and setting the variation δF equal to zero, we obtain a corrected expression for the law of mass action in place of (3.42). In order not to confuse the partition function with the charge, we denote the partition function with a tilde ($\tilde{Z}$). We then have

$$\frac{N_{m+1}N_e}{N_m} = \frac{\tilde{Z}_{m+1}\tilde{Z}_e}{\tilde{Z}_m}\exp\left(\frac{\Delta I_{m+1}}{kT}\right), \tag{3.82}$$

where the quantity ΔI_{m+1}, equal to the change in the Coulomb part of the chemical potentials

$$\Delta I_{m+1} = \mu_{m,\text{coul}} - \mu_{m+1,\text{coul}} - \mu_{e,\text{coul}}; \qquad \mu_{i,\text{coul}} = \left(\frac{\partial F_{\text{coul}}}{\partial N_i}\right)_{T,V},$$

can be treated as a decrease in the ionization potential of the m-ions (we recall that $\tilde{Z}_{m+1}\tilde{Z}_e/\tilde{Z}_m \sim \exp(-I_{m+1}/kT)$).

Calculation gives for the correction to the ionization potential

$$\Delta I_{m+1} = 2(Z_m + 1)e^3\left(\frac{\pi}{kT}\right)^{1/2}\left(\sum n_i Z_i^2\right)^{1/2}, \tag{3.83}$$

where Z_m is the charge of an m-ion; actually $Z_m = m$. Recalling the definition of the Debye radius (3.78), we can rewrite (3.83) as

$$\Delta I_{m+1} = \frac{(Z_m + 1)e^2}{d} = \frac{Z_{m+1}e^2}{d}. \tag{3.84}$$

The decrease in the ionization potential of an m-ion is exactly equal to the Coulomb interaction energy of an $(m + 1)$-ion, which is obtained as a result of ionization of an m-ion, with the removed electron located at a distance equal to the Debye radius. In agreement with the conditions for the validity of the Debye–Hückel method and the condition for a weakly imperfect gas, (3.84) is valid for $d \gg r_0$, or equivalently for $\Delta I \ll kT$.

In the singly ionized case (3.84) becomes ($i = 0, 1, e$; $Z_0 = 0, Z_1 = 1$, $Z_e = -1$)

$$\Delta I_1 = 2e^3\left(\frac{2\pi n\alpha}{kT}\right)^{1/2}, \tag{3.85}$$

where $\alpha = n_e/n = n_1/n$ is the degree of ionization. For multiple ionization, replacing, as in §7, all the ions by ions with an "average" charge $\bar{m} = n_e/n$ (n is the number of original ions per cm^3) and setting $\overline{Z_i^2} = \bar{m}^2$, we obtain for the change in the "average" ionization potential

$$\overline{\Delta I} = 2(\bar{m} + 1)e^3\left[\frac{\pi\bar{m}(\bar{m} + 1)n}{kT}\right]^{1/2}. \tag{3.86}$$

As an example, we consider air at a temperature $T = 100{,}000°\text{K}$ and at standard density $n = 5.34 \cdot 10^{19}\ \text{cm}^{-3}$. The degree of ionization without considering Coulomb interactions is $\bar{m} = 2.72$, and the "average" ionization potential $\bar{I} = 60$ ev ($\bar{I}/kT = 6.9$). The correction to the "average" ionization potential corresponding to this value of $\bar{m}$ is $\overline{\Delta I} = 5.4$ ev ($\overline{\Delta I}/kT = 0.63$). Thus the Coulomb interactions decrease the "average" ionization potential by almost 10% which would in turn correspond to an increase in the degree of ionization by approximately 14%*. The effect of Coulomb corrections on the shift in ionization equilibrium in argon at $T = 45{,}000°\text{K}$ and $p \sim 10^{-3} - 10^2$ atm has been considered in [14]. This effect was found to be quite noticeable, even though the corrections to the thermodynamic functions did not exceed 1%.

§12. Dense gases. Elements of Fermi–Dirac statistics for an electron gas

In our discussion of ionized gases we have always assumed that free electrons obey classical Boltzmann statistics. Strictly speaking, an electron gas is described by Fermi–Dirac quantum statistics, which reduces to Boltzmann

* Formally, under these conditions we are almost at the limit of applicability of the method, since $\overline{\Delta I} = 5.4$ ev is only slightly less than $kT = 8.6$ ev.

statistics only in the limit of sufficiently high temperatures or sufficiently low densities. The transition from Fermi–Dirac to Boltzmann statistics occurs if the temperature of the electron gas is much greater than the so-called degeneracy temperature T_0, which is determined by the number density of the electrons n (per cm^3) through the relation

$$T_0 = \frac{1}{8}\left(\frac{3}{\pi}\right)^{2/3} \frac{h^2}{m_e k} n^{2/3} = 4.35 \cdot 10^{-11} n^{2/3} \text{ deg.} \tag{3.87}$$

At ordinary gas densities and temperatures, where free electrons are present as a result of ionization, the condition $T \gg T_0$ is always satisfied. For example, in air at atmospheric density and with atoms approximately singly ionized, $n = 5.34 \cdot 10^{19}$ cm^{-3}, and the degeneracy temperature $T_0 = 610°$K; in this example the corresponding gas temperature is $T \sim 35{,}000°$K, so that $T/T_0 \approx 60$. The condition for the applicability of Boltzmann statistics is violated only at very low temperatures or very high densities of the electron gas. The first case usually does not arise since gases are not ionized at low temperatures. The second case is, however, of considerable importance. There are many processes that are accompanied by the formation of a very dense, highly heated gas containing electrons. Usually such a situation arises when a solid is rapidly heated to very high temperatures of the order of tens or hundreds of thousands of degrees*; under such conditions the material actually becomes a dense gas, since the energy of thermal motion at these temperatures frequently exceeds the binding energy of the atoms in the solid or liquid.

When the density is of the order of the density of solid matter and the number of free electrons per atom is of the order of unity, the degeneracy temperature is of the order of several tens of thousands of degrees (for example, for $n = 5 \cdot 10^{22}$ cm^{-3}, $T_0 = 59{,}000°$K). Then, even at a temperature of 100,000°K the electrons cannot be described by Boltzmann statistics. It should be noted that at densities close to the density of solids and temperatures of the order of tens or hundreds of thousands of degrees the Coulomb energy of interaction between the charged particles (electrons and ions) is comparable to their kinetic energy, and the electron-ion gas is actually imperfect†.

* For example, rapid heating occurs during the impact of meteorites traveling at high velocities (on the order of several tens of km/sec) with the surface of a planet; in exploding conductors by electric currents; upon heating of the anode needle in pulse-type x-ray tubes by electron impact (see Tsukerman and Manakova [28]); upon the heating of solids by a very strong shock wave, and so forth. We shall not discuss here such classical examples as the application of quantum statistics to free electrons in metals under normal conditions.

† For example, for $n = 5 \cdot 10^{22}$ cm^{-3} and $Z = 1$, the Coulomb energy $e^2/r \approx e^2 n^{1/3}$ is equal to kT at $T = 60{,}000°$K. The kinetic energy of the free electrons, which is determined not simply by the temperature but also by the degeneracy temperature T_0, is also comparable to the Coulomb energy, since T_0 is in this case equal to 59,000°K.

Thermodynamic properties of a gas under these conditions can be determined approximately by a method which is a generalization of the Thomas–Fermi statistical method to include the case of nonzero temperature. To present the essence of this method let us recall the basic concepts of the Fermi–Dirac statistics (for a more detailed discussion see, for example, [1]). Consider a free electron* gas at zero temperature (the so-called completely degenerate gas). The number of quantum states in an element of volume dV with absolute values of electron momenta from p to $p + dp$, the number of cells in the phase space of coordinates and momenta, is equal to $4\pi p^2\, dp\, dV/h^3$. Each cell may contain two electrons with opposite spins, so that the total number of quantum states in the element $dp\, dV$ is $8\pi p^2\, dp\, dV/h^3$. According to the Pauli exclusion principle, no more than one electron may be in any quantum state with a given direction of spin. The N electrons contained in the volume V ($n = N/V$ is the number of electrons per unit volume) fill all the lowest energy states with momenta ranging from 0 to p_0, so that

$$N = V \int_0^{p_0} \frac{8\pi p^2\, dp}{h^3} = \frac{8\pi p_0^3}{3h^3} V.$$

This equation leads to the expression for the maximum kinetic energy $\varepsilon_0 = p_0^2/2m_e$ of electrons at zero temperature, the so-called Fermi limiting energy

$$\varepsilon_0 = \frac{1}{8}\left(\frac{3}{\pi}\right)^{2/3} \frac{h^2}{m_e}\left(\frac{N}{V}\right)^{2/3} = \frac{1}{8}\left(\frac{3}{\pi}\right)^{2/3} \frac{h^2}{m_e} n^{2/3}. \tag{3.88}$$

The degeneracy temperature (3.87) is defined as $T_0 = \varepsilon_0/k$. The kinetic energy of N electrons in the volume V is

$$E_k = V \int_0^{p_0} \frac{p^2}{2m_e} \frac{8\pi p^2\, dp}{h^3} = \tfrac{3}{5}\varepsilon_0 N \sim N^{5/3} V^{-2/3}. \tag{3.89}$$

The average kinetic energy of an electron is $\frac{3}{5}\varepsilon_0$. Since it is assumed that the electrons are free, the kinetic energy is equal to the total energy $E_k = E$ and, by virtue of the thermodynamic relation $T\, dS = dE + P\, dV$ applied at zero temperature, the pressure of a degenerate free electron gas is

$$P = -\frac{dE}{dV} = \frac{2}{3}\frac{E_k}{V} = \frac{2}{5}\varepsilon_0 n = \frac{1}{20}\left(\frac{3}{\pi}\right)^{2/3} \frac{h^2}{m_e} n^{5/3}. \tag{3.90}$$

The pressure is proportional to the 5/3 power of the density. The relation between the pressure and the kinetic energy, $P = \frac{2}{3}E_k/V$, is the same as for a

* The gas is free in the sense that no forces act on the electrons. At the same time it is assumed that the electron gas does not diffuse. This can be thought of as an electrically neutral mixture of ions and electrons, in which the average self-consistent field is assumed to be zero (everywhere, except at the boundary).

monatomic Boltzmann gas. That this should be so is evident, since the "kinetic" pressure is determined by the momentum transferred by the particles, and its relation to the kinetic energy of the particles is a purely mechanical one and is independent of the type of statistics obeyed by the particles.

As the temperature of the electrons increases, the electrons which have earlier filled the lowest energy levels begin to occupy the higher quantum states. It is shown in Fermi–Dirac statistics that the particle distribution function over the quantum states, i.e., the average number of electrons in a quantum state of energy ε, is

$$f = \frac{1}{e^{(-\mu+\varepsilon)/kT} + 1}. \tag{3.91}$$

Here μ is a constant which depends upon the temperature and density of the electrons, and which represents the chemical potential of the electron gas. In a free electron gas, the energy ε is equal to the kinetic energy, $\varepsilon = p^2/2m_e$.

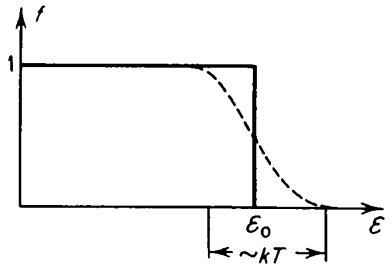


Fig. 3.2. Distribution function for an electron gas according to Fermi–Dirac statistics.

At zero temperature the distribution function is equal to 1 if $\varepsilon < \mu$ ($(-\mu + \varepsilon)/kT = -\infty$), and is equal to 0 if $\varepsilon > \mu$ ($(-\mu + \varepsilon)/kT = +\infty$). Thus we obtain the same distribution already found above, with the additional result that the chemical potential of the free electron gas is equal to the Fermi limiting energy ε_0. For nonzero temperatures the distribution function is spread out, as shown in Fig. 3.2.

The number of electrons per unit volume with momenta between p and $p + dp$ is

$$\rho(p)\,dp = \frac{8\pi p^2\,dp}{h^3} f = \frac{8\pi}{h^3} \frac{p^2\,dp}{e^{(-\mu+\varepsilon)/kT} + 1}, \tag{3.92}$$

and the total number of electrons per unit volume is

$$n = \int_0^\infty \rho(p)\,dp = \frac{8\pi}{h^3} \int_0^\infty \frac{p^2\,dp}{e^{(-\mu+\varepsilon)/kT} + 1}. \tag{3.93}$$

This equation defines implicitly the chemical potential μ as a function of temperature and density. The kinetic energy of the electrons per unit volume is

$$\mathscr{E}_k = \int_0^\infty \frac{p^2}{2m_e} \rho(p)\,dp = \frac{8\pi}{h^3} \int_0^\infty \frac{p^2}{2m_e} \frac{p^2\,dp}{e^{(-\mu+\varepsilon)/kT} + 1}. \tag{3.94}$$

Statistics can be also applied to an electron gas in a potential field. Of course, the spatial variation of the potential must be slow enough that a sufficient number of particles are contained in an elementary volume dV in which the field can be taken to be constant. Otherwise the application of Fermi–Dirac statistics to the particles is meaningless*. If we denote the electrostatic potential at a point r by $\varphi(r)$, then the energy of an electron ε can be written

$$\varepsilon = \frac{p^2}{2m_e} - e\varphi(r). \tag{3.95}$$

Statistical mechanics shows that if a gas is in a potential field, then at equilibrium its chemical potential μ must be the same at all points. If this is not the case the gas will move.

If we consider an electron gas at zero temperature in a potential field then, according to (3.91) and (3.95), the distribution function f is equal to 1 for $\varepsilon = p^2/2m_e - e\varphi(r) < \mu$, and is equal to 0 for $\varepsilon = p^2/2m_e - e\varphi(r) > \mu$, as before. The maximum kinetic energy of an electron at a given point r is therefore equal to $\varepsilon_0(r) = \mu + e\varphi(r)$. This energy is now a function of position, although the maximum total energy of the electron $p_0^2/2m_e - e\varphi(r) = \varepsilon_0 - e\varphi(r) = \mu$, which is equal to the chemical potential, is independent of position; if this quantity varied with position the electrons would move from points of higher maximum energy toward points of lower maximum energy.

Equations (3.92)–(3.94) are also valid for gas placed in a potential field, if ε is understood to denote the quantity given by (3.95). Equation (3.93) then gives an implicit relation connecting the gas density at point r, $n(r)$ with the quantity $\varepsilon_0(r) = \mu + e\varphi(r)$, with the potential at the given point and the temperature T. At $T = 0$ this relation is again expressed by (3.88).

§13. The Thomas–Fermi model of an atom and highly compressed cold materials

When a dense gas is described by the Thomas–Fermi method, no distinction is made between "free" and "bound" electrons. The point of view is taken that the gas is not composed of ions and electrons as is normally supposed at low densities, but rather of nuclei and electrons. The nuclei obey Boltzmann statistics and contribute separately to the total pressure and specific internal thermal energy. At high temperatures this contribution corresponds to that of an ordinary monatomic gas

$$P_a = n_a kT, \qquad \varepsilon_a = \frac{3}{2}\frac{n_a}{\rho} kT$$

* The field should also vary but very little over a distance of the order of the de Broglie wavelength of an electron.

(n_a is the number of nuclei per unit volume and ρ is the density of the medium). The total interaction energy of the particles is associated with the electrons only. To calculate the electron contributions to the energy and pressure, the gas is divided into atomic cells, each of which contains a nucleus with a charge Ze and Z electrons. For simplicity the cell is taken to be spherical and its volume V is taken equal to the average volume of the material per nucleus, thus, $V = 1/n_a$ and the radius $r_0 = (3V/4\pi)^{1/3} = (3/4\pi n_a)^{1/3}$.

There are no coupling forces between atomic cells taken into account in the Thomas–Fermi model, and therefore this model does not describe the coupling of atoms in solids. The cells exert a positive pressure on each other, equal to the pressure of the electron gas; the model describes only the repulsive forces and the "thermal" pressure. Hence, this model yields sensible results either at high densities, for strongly compressed solids in which the repulsive forces predominate over the forces of attraction between the atoms, or at high temperatures, for which the coupling forces can be neglected. Then it follows that the "ionization", "excitation", and "thermal motion" energies of the electrons are no longer calculated separately in the Thomas–Fermi model, as they were in the case of rarefied gases. These energies are automatically included in the total electron energy of the atomic cell. In order to separate from the total energy the "thermal" portion of the energy, one specifically related to the existence of a finite temperature, it is necessary to subtract out the energy of a cell of the same volume but corresponding to zero temperature. The same is also true for the pressure.

Let us first consider an atomic cell at zero temperature, according to the classical Thomas–Fermi statistical model of an atom*. The basic assumption of the model is that in atoms with large numbers of electrons the majority of the electrons have large principal quantum numbers, and that consequently their motion is quasi-classical. The electrons in the atom are considered as a gas placed in a self-consistent electrostatic field† $\varphi(r)$ which varies sufficiently slowly with respect to the radius; the field is determined by the charges of the nucleus and the electrons, thereby accounting for the fact that the electron gas is not a perfect one. Fermi–Dirac statistics apply to this gas.

The maximum kinetic energy of an electron at a given distance r from the nucleus $\varepsilon_0(r) = \mu + e\varphi(r)$ is related to the electron density at this point through (3.88), so that the density can be expressed in terms of the potential by

$$n(r) = \frac{8\pi}{3} 2^{3/2} \frac{m_e^{3/2}}{h^3} [e\varphi(r) + \mu]^{3/2}. \tag{3.96}$$

* A detailed treatment of this subject can be found in the book of Gombàs [29]. Landau and Lifshitz [30] also give a brief but clear presentation.

† The possibility of the statistical description of an electron gas in a potential field was discussed in the preceding section.

The electrostatic potential $\varphi(r)$ satisfies Poisson's equation

$$\Delta\varphi = \frac{1}{r}\frac{d^2}{dr^2}[r\varphi(r)] = 4\pi e n(r), \tag{3.97}$$

which, after substituting (3.96) and introducing a new "potential" $\psi = \varphi + \mu/e$ (the potential is determined to within an additive constant), becomes

$$\frac{1}{r}\frac{d^2}{dr^2}(r\psi) = \frac{32 \cdot 2^{2/3}\pi^2}{3}\frac{e^{5/2}m_e^{3/2}}{h^3}\psi^{3/2}. \tag{3.98}$$

Boundary conditions must also be added to (3.98). At the center, as $r \to 0$, the field approaches the Coulomb field of the nucleus, and

$$\varphi(r) = \frac{Ze}{r} \qquad \text{as} \quad r \to 0. \tag{3.99}$$

Since the cell is electrically neutral, the electric field at its boundary is zero (the potential outside the cell is constant), so that

$$\frac{d\varphi}{dr} = 0 \qquad \text{at} \quad r = r_0. \tag{3.100}$$

This condition is equivalent to the obvious relation

$$Z = \int_0^{r_0} n(r) 4\pi r^2 \, dr. \tag{3.101}$$

Introducing the dimensionless variables

$$x = \frac{r}{a}, \qquad a = \frac{1}{4}\left(\frac{9\pi^2}{2}\right)^{1/3}\frac{a_0}{Z^{1/3}} = \frac{0.885 a_0}{Z^{1/3}}, \tag{3.102}$$

where $a_0 = h^2/4\pi^2 m_e e^2 = 0.529 \cdot 10^{-8}$ cm is the Bohr radius, and

$$\chi = \frac{r}{Ze}\left(\varphi + \frac{\mu}{e}\right) = \frac{r}{Ze}\psi, \tag{3.103}$$

equation (3.98) reduces to the universal form

$$x^{1/2}\frac{d^2\chi}{dx^2} = \chi^{3/2}. \tag{3.104}$$

The boundary conditions (3.99) and (3.100) become

$$\chi(0) = 1\,; \qquad \chi(x_0) = x_0\left(\frac{d\chi}{dx}\right)_{x_0}.$$

The dimensionless form of these equations demonstrates the similarity of the problem with respect to the number of electrons Z. In particular, the

density distribution with respect to radius can be written, according to (3.96), (3.102), and (3.103), as

$$n(r) = Z^2 f\left(\frac{rZ^{1/3}}{b}\right), \qquad b = 0.885a_0, \tag{3.105}$$

where the function f is proportional to $(\chi/x)^{3/2}$.

The solution of (3.104) under appropriate boundary conditions (this is carried out by means of a numerical integration) yields the electron potential and density distributions as a function of radius. With these two quantities known we can calculate all other quantities of interest. The solutions show that the electron density in a free neutral atom, one which is not compressed by any external forces, extends to infinity; we find that $\chi \to 0$ and $n \to 0$ as $x \to \infty$* (Fig. 3.3). If we take zero potential energy for the state when all the charges are at infinite separation, then it follows that the potential φ at infinity should be set equal to zero. The chemical potential in this case is zero. The pressure at the boundary of such a free atom, and as a consequence also the pressure† in the entire space, is equal to zero. According to the virial theorem for a Coulomb field of infinite extent, the total kinetic and potential energies

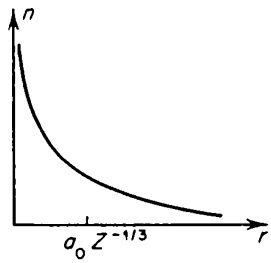


Fig. 3.3. Electron density distribution, (schematic) in a free atom.

of the particles are connected through the relation $2E_k^\infty = -E_p^\infty$. The total energy of an atom is $E^\infty = E_k^\infty + E_p^\infty = -E_k^\infty = \frac{1}{2}E_p^\infty$. The virial theorem in this case expresses the fact that the kinetic repulsion of the electrons is exactly balanced by their Coulomb attraction to the nucleus and hence the total pressure (which is equal to the sum of the "kinetic" and "potential" pressures) is equal to zero everywhere. Although the electron density extends to

* Since the field of an electrically neutral atom must decrease at infinity faster than r^{-2}, the "potential" ψ decreases faster than r^{-1}; in this case the outer boundary condition takes the form $r\psi \sim \chi \to 0$ as $r \to \infty$.

† The pressure in a system consisting of interacting particles is composed of two parts: the "kinetic" pressure, related to the motion of the particles and their kinetic energy by the usual relation $P_k = 2n\varepsilon_k/3$, where n is the number density and ε_k their average kinetic energy; and the "potential" pressure, equivalent to the forces acting on the particles (Coulomb forces in the given case). Formally, this separation follows from the relation (at zero temperature) $P = -\partial E/\partial V = -\partial E_k/\partial V - \partial E_p/\partial V = P_k + P_p$. The kinetic pressure is always positive, while the potential pressure $P_p > 0$, if the particles are repulsive, and $P_p < 0$, if they are attractive.

infinity in principle, the main charge is concentrated in a finite volume V_{ef}. According to (3.105) the Bohr radius a_0 serves as a characteristic scale for this region and $V_{ef} \sim Z^{-1}$ (see Fig. 3.3). This result also follows from the virial theorem. The order of magnitude of the potential energy of an atom is $E_p^{\infty} \sim -e^2Z^2/V_{ef}^{1/3}$. The kinetic energy, according to (3.88) and (3.89), is given in order of magnitude by

$$E_k^{\infty} \sim \varepsilon_0 Z \sim \frac{h^2}{m_e} Z \left(\frac{Z}{V_{ef}}\right)^{2/3}.$$

From the condition of mechanical equilibrium or from the virial theorem we find $V_{ef} \sim (m_e e^2/h^2)^3 Z^{-1} \sim a_0^3 Z^{-1}$. The total energy of the atom $E^{\infty} = E_p^{\infty}/2$ is of the order of $-e^2Z^{7/3}/a_0 \sim -I_H Z^{7/3}$. The exact value is $E^{\infty} = -20.8\, Z^{7/3}$ ev; this is the absolute value of the energy required to remove all the charges to infinity (the total ionization energy of the atom).

Let us now consider a "compressed" atom, in an atomic cell with a finite volume V. Now, the pressure (which is equal to the "external" force acting per unit area of the cell surface) differs from zero and is positive. Consequently, the electron density at the boundary of the cell is also finite (Fig. 3.4).

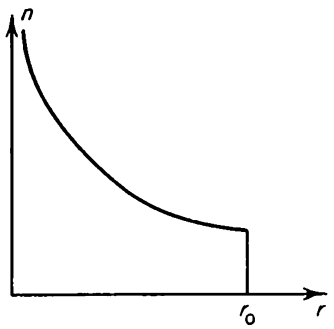


Fig. 3.4. Electron density distribution (schematic) in a "compressed" atom, one that is in an atomic cell of radius r_0.

There is no field at the boundary of the cell. The electrons at the boundary behave as free electrons, so that the entire pressure at the boundary is of "kinetic" origin. By definition, the "kinetic" pressure is equal to the normal component of momentum transferred per unit area of cell surface per unit time. Since the electron distribution is isotropic with respect to direction of motion

$$P = \int_0^{\infty} \rho(p, r_0) p \frac{v}{3}\, dp, \tag{3.106}$$

where $\rho(p, r_0)$ is the momentum distribution function at the cell boundary r_0, and $v = p/m_e$ is the velocity of the electrons. The pressure, as we would expect, is

$$P = \tfrac{2}{3} n(r_0)\, \varepsilon_k(r_0) = \tfrac{2}{5} n(r_0)\, \varepsilon_0(r_0), \tag{3.107}$$

where $\varepsilon_k(r_0) = \frac{3}{5}\varepsilon_0(r_0)$ is the average kinetic energy of an electron at the boundary of the cell. The pressure is the same everywhere, i.e., $P = P_k + P_p = const$, although the "kinetic" and "potential" components change from point to point. The "kinetic" pressure P_k at any point is given in terms of the kinetic energy by an equation similar to (3.107).

Expressing the total kinetic and potential energies of the entire cell E_k and E_p, in terms of energy density integrals (which are proportional to the electron density) taken over the volume of the cell, direct calculation shows that

$$PV = \tfrac{2}{3}E_k + \tfrac{1}{3}E_p. \tag{3.108}$$

In calculating the potential energy the potential should be broken up into two parts, one corresponding to the potential of the nucleus and the other to the potential of the electrons $\varphi = \varphi_a + \varphi_e$; $\varphi_a = Ze/r$:

$$\begin{aligned} E_p = E_{pe} + E_{pa} &= -\tfrac{1}{2}4\pi e\int_0^{r_0} r^2\,dr\,n(r)\varphi_e(r) - 4\pi e\int_0^{r_0} r^2\,dr\,n(r)\varphi_a(r) \\ &= -\tfrac{1}{2}4\pi e\int_0^{r_0} r^2\,dr\,n(r)\left[\varphi(r) + \frac{Ze}{r}\right]. \end{aligned} \tag{3.109}$$

The factor $\frac{1}{2}$ in E_{pe} is required because the interaction energy of each pair of electrons appears twice in the integral. In order to measure the potential energy from a reference value corresponding to the removal of all the electrons to infinity, the potential $\varphi(r_0)$ at the boundary of a neutral cell should be set equal to zero. Since the density at the boundary of a compressed atom is different from zero (it is proportional to the pressure), (3.96) with the property $\varphi(r_0) = 0$ shows that the chemical potential is nonzero and positive.

Equation (3.108) can be derived from the virial theorem applied to a system of particles occupying a finite volume in a Coulomb field. The virial theorem for the motion of a system of particles in a Coulomb field states: $2E_k = I = -\overline{\Sigma_i r_i F_i}$, where r_i is the radius vector of the ith electron, and F_i is the force acting on it. The averaging is performed with respect to all electron positions (or time). Breaking up the virial I into the three parts corresponding to the forces exerted on the electron by the other electrons I_{ee}, by the nucleus I_{ea}, and by the boundary I_0, respectively, and rearranging terms (see [31]), we get

$$I_0 = r_0\overline{\sum_i |F_{\text{bound}}|} = 4\pi r_0^3 P = 3PV,$$

$$I_{ea} = \overline{\sum_i \frac{Ze^2}{r_i}} = -E_{pa},$$

$$I_{ee} = -e^2\overline{\sum_i\sum_j \frac{r_i(r_i - r_j)}{|r_i - r_j|^3}} = -\frac{e^2}{2}\overline{\sum_i\sum_j \frac{1}{|r_i - r_j|}} = -E_{pe}.$$

Substituting all these terms into the virial theorem, we obtain (3.108). In applying (3.108) to the case of a free atom, we set $P = 0$ and find $2E_k^\infty = -E_p^\infty$, as already noted above.

Upon compression of an atom the pressure and density at the boundary increase. By virtue of the relation $dE = -P\,dV$ ($P > 0$), the energy of the cell also increases. This is evident physically from the observation that the electron cloud in the absence of external forces tends to occupy a state corresponding to the minimum energy of the system, and therefore diffuses out to infinity. If the compression energy of the cell is of interest then it should be measured relative to the energy of a free atom, that is, the energy of the free atom E^∞ should be subtracted from the total energy of the cell $E(V)$. Since the pressure in a free atom is equal to zero it is not necessary to subtract anything from the pressure.

We should emphasize here that the Thomas–Fermi model describes essentially only the repulsive forces acting between the atoms (atomic cells), equivalent to a positive pressure; the model does not describe the attractive forces, which appear only when the exchange energy is taken into account. Hence, this model cannot account for the binding of atoms in a solid. In order to compress the atomic cell of the Thomas–Fermi model to its dimensions in a solid body, work must be done against the pressure forces; therefore, the energy of such a cell is greater than the energy of a free atom, while in fact the pressure in a solid at zero temperature is zero and the energy of an atom in the bound state is less than the energy of a free atom.

When the free atom in the Thomas–Fermi model is only slightly compressed, so that the volume $V \gg V_{ef}$, the electron density is redistributed only near the boundary (Fig. 3.5) and the pressure and energy $\Delta E = E - E^\infty$

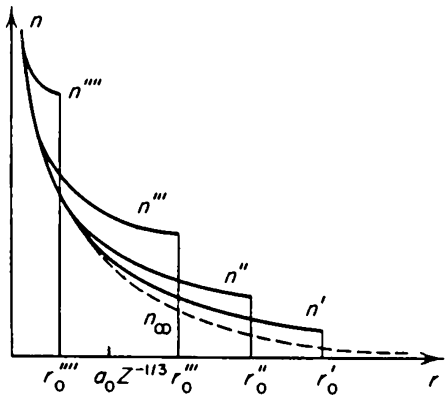


Fig. 3.5. Redistribution of the electron density upon the compression of an atom. n', n'', n''', and n'''' represent the distribution in the cells of radii r_0', r_0'', r_0''', and r_0''''; n_∞ is the distribution in a free atom ($r_0 = \infty$).

are not too large. An approximate relation between the pressure and cell volume can be obtained by assuming that the density at the boundary r_0 is, in first approximation, the same as the density at the point $r = r_0$ in the free atom. As can be easily checked, the asymptotic solution as $x \to \infty$ of (3.104)

for a free atom is given by $\chi = 144x^{-3}$. According to (3.105) and (3.102) the density at the boundary is

$$n(r_0) \sim Z^2\left(\frac{\chi}{x}\right)^{3/2} \sim Z^2x^{-6} \sim Z^2r_0^{-6}Z^{-2} \sim r_0^{-6} \sim V^{-2},$$

and the pressure according to (3.107) is $P \sim n\varepsilon_0 \sim n^{5/3} \sim V^{-10/3}$ and is independent of Z.

A substantial increase in pressure and energy takes place at large densities, where the volume of the atomic cell becomes of the order or less than the effective volume V_{ef} occupied at low densities by most of the electrons in the atom. Under these conditions the electrons occupy the entire volume of the cell (see Fig. 3.5), and the average distance $\bar{r}$ between the particles is of the order of $V^{1/3}$; the average density is $\bar{n} \sim Z/V$. In this case, $E_k \sim Z\bar{n}^{2/3} \sim Z^{5/3}V^{-2/3}$, and $E_p \sim -Z^2/\bar{r} \sim -Z^2V^{-1/3}$. These estimates show that the kinetic energy increases with compression more rapidly than does the potential energy and in the limit of small volumes, i.e., large densities of the medium, $E_k \gg E_p$, $E \sim E_k$, $P \sim E_k/V$. The entire pressure becomes "kinetic", and the limiting relation has the form

$$P \sim Z^{5/3}V^{-5/3} \sim \bar{n}^{5/3}. \tag{3.110}$$

The pressure of a highly compressed cold medium is proportional to $\rho^{5/3}$, just as in the case of a free degenerate electron gas. Here ρ is the density of the medium, proportional to the average electron density $\bar{n}$. Accordingly, the specific energy ε is proportional to $\rho^{2/3}$. It is to be emphasized that these limiting relationships are applicable only at very high densities, exceeding the densities of ordinary solids at least by a factor of 10. The actual dependence of the pressure and energy of cold compressed solids upon density will be discussed in Chapter XI.

§14. Calculation of thermodynamic functions of a hot dense gas by the Thomas–Fermi method

The general procedure used to describe a dense gas at high temperatures within the framework of the Thomas–Fermi model was presented at the beginning of the preceding section. The equations obtained for the model of a cold atomic cell can be easily generalized to the case of temperatures different from zero. The basis for this generalization is the Poisson equation (3.97) for the electrostatic potential $\varphi(r)$ in the cell*. As before, the potential satisfies

* We note that the Poisson equation can also be used in the Debye–Hückel method, where it forms the basis for calculation of the Coulomb interaction between a given ion and the electron-ion cloud created around it. In contrast with that method, however, the Coulomb energy here is not assumed to be small compared to the kinetic energy, and an exact expression is used for the charge density. Moreover, the Fermi–Dirac, rather than the Boltzmann, distribution function is used to describe the electrons.

the boundary conditions (3.99) and (3.100), and is set equal to zero at the boundary of the cell for a convenient reference level for the potential energy. However, the simple expression (3.96) which relates the electron density $n(r)$ with the potential is now replaced by the integral relation (3.93) which contains the distribution function $f(p)$. The distribution function has the temperature dependence given by (3.91), in which the electron energy is again given by (3.95).

The normalization condition (3.101) is also valid in this case. The total kinetic energy of the cell is determined by integrating the kinetic energy density (3.94) over the volume of the cell, and the potential energy is given in terms of the electron density and of the potential by means of (3.109). Equation (3.106) gives the pressure; with $\rho(p, r_0)$ understood to denote the momentum distribution function the temperature dependence of this distribution function is given by (3.92). As before the virial theorem holds here and leads to (3.108), which can also be obtained directly from the expressions for P, E_k, and E_p.

Certain difficulties arise in calculating the entropy of the cells. Brachman [32] determined the entropy directly using thermodynamic relations and the expressions for the energy E and pressure P of a cell. Latter [31] found the entropy by a less rigorous procedure through an approximate evaluation of the partition function. The entropy of a cell is

$$S = \frac{1}{T}\left[\tfrac{5}{3}E_k + 2E_{pe} + E_{pa} - Z\mu\right], \tag{3.111}$$

where E_{pe} and E_{pa} are the interaction potential energies between the electrons themselves and between the electrons and the nucleus (see (3.109)). The normalization condition (3.101) determines the chemical potential μ as a function of T and V. It can be shown that as $T \to 0$, the bracketed expression in (3.111) tends to zero more rapidly than T, so that $S \to 0$ in agreement with the Nernst theorem.

The system of equations for the functions $\varphi(r)$ and $n(r)$ and also the expressions for the energy, pressure, and entropy can be expressed in dimensionless variables (the cell radius r_0 is used as a length scale). Here, as in the case of zero temperature, the model permits a similarity transformation with respect to Z. At zero temperature the density distribution was given by (3.105), from which it follows that the density at the boundary of a cell can be expressed as $n(r_0) = Z^2F(VZ)$ (note that $r_0Z^{1/3} \to VZ$), the pressure from (3.107) as $P = Z^{10/3}F_1(VZ)$, and the energy from (3.108) as $E = Z^{7/3}F_2(VZ)$. At temperatures different from zero these similarity relations can be generalized in such a way that the temperature always appears in the equations in the combination $TZ^{-4/3}$, so that

$$PZ^{-10/3} = f(VZ, TZ^{-4/3}), \qquad EZ^{-7/3} = f_1(VZ, TZ^{-4/3}).$$

The entropy and the chemical potential always appear in the combination SZ^{-1} and $\mu Z^{-4/3}$, respectively.

The equations for the Thomas–Fermi model were solved numerically by means of an electronic computer and the thermodynamic functions plotted (see Latter [31]*) over a wide range of the variables VZ and $TZ^{-4/3}$ (reduced density and temperature). In Latter's article the energy of a cold free atom E^{∞} was subtracted from the energy E (E_k^{∞} and E_p^{∞} were subtracted from E_k and E_p, respectively).

The calculations show that as the temperature in a cell of a given volume increases, the kinetic energy, total energy, and pressure increase monotonically. The potential energy changes very slowly and only as a result of the redistribution of the electron density; the electron density approaches a uniform distribution throughout the cell as the temperature increases. In the limit of very high temperatures, when the degeneracy of the electron gas disappears (at $kT \gg (h^2/m_e)(Z/V)^{2/3}$; see (3.87)), the energy and pressure approach their classical values

$$E \approx E_k \approx \tfrac{3}{2}ZkT\,; \qquad P \approx \frac{Z}{V}kT = \bar{n}kT.$$

If the atomic cell is compressed isothermally, then its pressure will increase monotonically at a rate slower than in the case of zero temperature; this is clear from the fact that in the limit of high temperatures $P \sim 1/V$, while at $T = 0$ and $V \to 0$, $P \sim 1/V^{5/3}$. At moderate temperatures the energy as a function of volume has a flat minimum; the energy increase during expansion is caused by the fact that with increasing dimensions of the cell the electrons attempt to occupy a slightly larger volume than in the case of the cold cell (as a result of the temperature and "thermal" pressure). This in turn, results in some increase in the potential energy.

As an example of the temperature dependence of the energy we note that the energy of a cell which includes one atom of iron (at the normal density of solid iron) can be approximated in the temperature range of 20,000°K to 30,000°K by the interpolation formula

$$E = 0.865\, T_{\text{ev}}^{1.8}\ \text{ev/atom}$$

(the energy E^{∞} has been subtracted from the cell energy; the temperature is measured in ev).

At densities lower than those of the solid state, the energy is only weakly volume-dependent, and roughly speaking $E \sim V^{0.15}$. The total energy and

* Even before Latter's work, several authors [33] attempted to consider the correction to the zero temperature solution by means of a perturbation method. Such a procedure, however, involves numerical computations that are almost as complicated as for the solution of the exact equations, and is valid only for a much narrower temperature range.

pressure of the material can be obtained by adding the nuclear contributions to the electronic contributions E and P corresponding to an atomic cell (see the beginning of §13); we set

$$P_{\text{tot}} = P_a + P = n_a kT + P_e(V, T), \qquad P_e \equiv P,$$

$$E_{\text{tot}} = E_a + E = \tfrac{3}{2}kT + E_e(V, T) \text{ per atom.} \qquad E_e \equiv E.$$

These results can be slightly improved when the density of the material is equal to the density in the unstressed solid state. To do this we subtract from the pressure and the energy the corresponding quantities associated with a cold cell with the same volume. (This is permissible since actually the pressure in a solid at zero temperature is zero.) Finally, we add to the energy the binding energy of the atoms in the solid (the heat of vaporization U)

$$P_{\text{tot}} = n_a kT + P_e(V, T) - P_e(V, 0),$$

$$E_{\text{tot}} = \tfrac{3}{2}kT + E_e(V, T) - E_e(V, 0) + U \text{ per atom.}$$

In this case the energy is measured from the normal state of the solid.

IV. Shock tubes

§1. The use of shock tubes for studying kinetics in chemical physics

In the preceding chapters we have discussed various chemical-physical processes which take place in gases at temperatures of the order of a thousand or several thousand degrees and higher, such as the excitation of molecular vibrations, the dissociation of molecules, chemical reactions, ionization, and the emission of radiation. We have considered the effects of these processes on the thermodynamic properties of gases, without being concerned with their kinetics, reaction rates, or the time required for the establishment of thermodynamic equilibrium. In reality, however, the kinetics have a large and often decisive effect when the rate of the gasdynamic process is so high that insufficient time is available for the establishment of thermodynamic equilibrium and the gas particles remain essentially in a state of nonequilibrium. These questions are especially timely in connection with problems of the entry of missiles and artificial satellites into the atmosphere, supersonic flows in high power jet engines, strong explosions, strong electric discharges, and so forth.

In contrast to the thermodynamic properties of gases, which can be calculated comparatively easily by theoretical means, our knowledge of the cross sections for elementary processes and of the rates of various reactions of chemical physics is obtained primarily by experiment. At the present time the shock tube is the most convenient and widely used tool for obtaining high temperatures in the laboratory and for studying the chemical physics of gases. The shock tube is used to create a shock wave in a gas which heats the gas to the required temperature*. As we know, an initially cold gas is heated practically instantaneously by a shock to a high temperature†, which can be controlled by varying the strength of the shock wave. Following this rapid heating, various processes take place in the heated gas, including excitation of molecular vibrations, dissociation, ionization, etc., whose relative importance and rates depend upon the temperature and density. Gradually these relaxation processes lead to the establishment of thermodynamic equilibrium corresponding to the given shock strength. The nonequilibrium layer behind

* Shock waves can also be obtained by other methods such as explosions, strong electric discharges, etc.

† Here, the term "temperature" denotes the temperature of the translational degrees of freedom of the atoms and molecules.

the compression shock where the relaxation processes take place (and which can be conceptually included within the shock front) is the layer studied experimentally. The density and temperature distributions in the relaxation layer can be theoretically related to the reaction rates. Hence, the experimental measurement of these distributions makes it possible to determine the rates of the relaxation processes. In some cases it is possible to record the reaction kinetics directly.

The structure of the relaxation layer behind a shock front will be discussed in detail in Chapter VII, while Chapter VI will be devoted to various chemical-physical processes which take place in heated gases along with estimates of their rates. Since very many rate measurements have been obtained in shock tubes it is important to acquaint the reader with the design and methods of operation of this important device. We wish to stress, however, that our presentation is purely supplemental and will, therefore, be extremely brief. It in no way reflects the actual amount of experimental work, which is in fact extremely large. More detailed presentations of the design and operation of shock tubes as well as the associated methods for the measurement of various quantities may be found in the reviews [1, 2] and in the books [3, 4, 18, 19]. In these cited references the reader will also find many original references, in contrast to here, where the references to original work are few and somewhat random.

While we shall not dwell on other methods of obtaining high temperatures (see [16]), we should like to note the very interesting work of Ryabinin [17] on the adiabatic compression of gases. In this method gas contained in a tube is compressed by a fast moving free piston by a factor of several hundred, up to pressures of the order of 10,000 atm, and thereby adiabatically heated to temperatures of the order of 9000°K. Using experimental apparatus designed by himself, Ryabinin studied the thermodynamic and radiative properties and the electrical conductivity of gases at very high temperatures.

§2. Principle of operation

A shock tube consists of a long tube, usually of circular or rectangular cross section, which is separated by a thin diaphragm into two parts. One of them, the low pressure chamber, is filled with the test gas. The compressed driver gas is fed into the second part, the high pressure chamber. The dimensions of the tube can vary. Usually, however, the tube is several meters long and the inner diameter is of the order of several centimeters. The low pressure chamber is several times longer than the high pressure chamber. As a rule, the pressure of the test gas does not exceed atmospheric pressure, and usually it is lower, of the order of several centimeters of mercury. In the high pressure chamber is created as high a pressure as possible, one of the order of tens or hundreds of atmospheres.

At a given time the diaphragm is rapidly burst by means of a special device, and the highly compressed driver gas flows into the low pressure chamber. A shock wave is then propagated through the test gas, while a rarefaction wave travels through the driver gas. The pressure distributions before and after bursting of the diaphragm and also the temperature distribution after bursting of the diaphragm are shown schematically in Fig. 4.1.

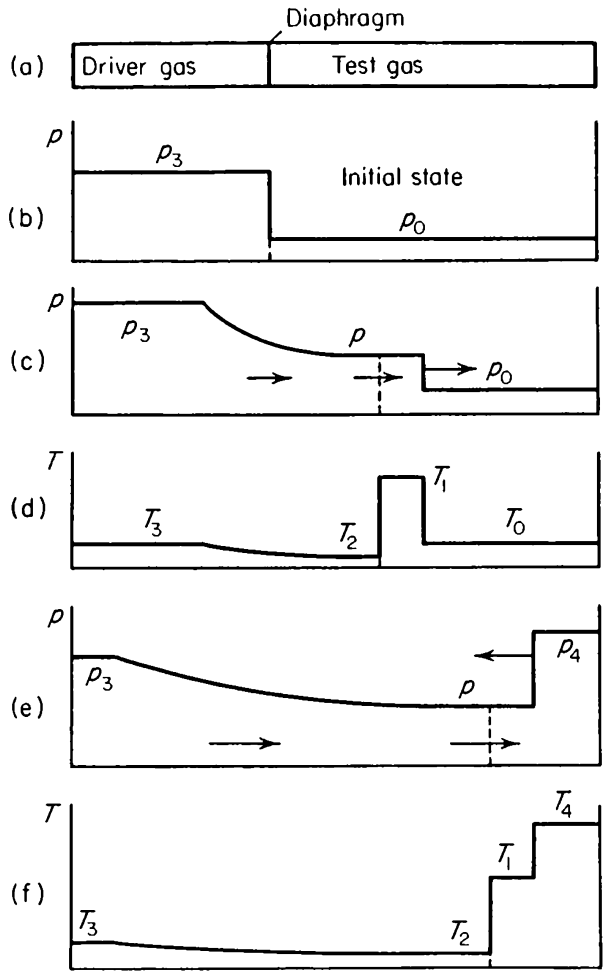


Fig. 4.1. Operation of a shock tube.

Not shown on this figure are the details of the distribution of the various physical parameters through the shock front, which is simply represented as the "classical" jump. After the shock wave reaches the end of the tube (which is usually closed with a fixed cap) it is reflected and travels toward the driver gas. The pressure and temperature behind the reflected shock increase sharply over the values behind the incident wave. The gas behind the reflected

shock wave is at rest with respect to the tube walls. An x, t diagram for the process is shown in Fig. 4.2.

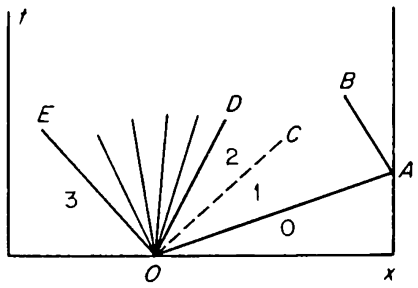


Fig. 4.2. An x, t diagram for the flow in the shock tube shown in Fig. 4.1. OA is the shock wave, OC is the contact discontinuity, the fan between OE and OD is the rarefaction wave in the driver gas, and AB is the reflected shock wave.

§3. Elementary shock tube theory

The physical variables behind the incident shock wave are easily estimated by considering the break-up of an arbitrary initial discontinuity (see Chapter I, §24). For simplicity, we assume that both the test and the driver gases have constant specific heat ratios γ and γ', respectively, and we consider only strong shock waves*. Quantities in the undisturbed test gas will be denoted by the subscript 0, quantities behind the shock by the subscript 1, quantities in the driver gas that has passed through the rarefaction wave by the subscript 2, and quantities in the portion of the driver gas not disturbed by the rarefaction wave by the subscript 3.

According to the relations (1.111) for a strong shock wave, we have

$$\rho_1 = \frac{\gamma+1}{\gamma-1}\rho_0, \qquad p_1 = \frac{2}{\gamma+1}\rho_0 D^2, \qquad u_1 = \frac{2}{\gamma+1}D, \qquad p = \frac{\mathscr{R}}{\mu_0}\rho T \tag{4.1}$$

(μ_0 is the molecular weight of the test gas). The pressure and velocity at the contact surface separating the two gases in the states "1" and "2" are continuous, so that $p_2 = p_1 = p$ and $u_2 = u_1 = u$ (the density and temperature are discontinuous across the contact surface). The contact surface moves with the velocity u and acts as a "piston" pushing the shock wave. According to the characteristic equations given in §10 of Chapter I, the velocity of the driver gas that has passed through the rarefaction wave is

$$u = \frac{2}{\gamma'-1}(c_3 - c_2) = \frac{2}{\gamma'-1}c_3\left(1 - \frac{c_2}{c_3}\right), \tag{4.2}$$

where the sound speeds c_2 and c_3 are connected by the isentropic relation

$$\frac{c_2}{c_3} = \left(\frac{p}{p_3}\right)^{(\gamma'-1)/2\gamma'}.$$

* We also assume that the mass of the diaphragm can be neglected, so that we consider only times long enough that the shock wave has traversed a sufficiently large mass of the test gas.

Expressing $p = p_1$ in terms of $u = u_1$ by means of (4.1), we obtain an implicit equation for the speed of the "piston" in terms of the known initial values of the variables

$$\frac{u}{c_3} = \frac{2}{\gamma' - 1}\left\{1 - \left[\frac{\gamma'(\gamma + 1)}{2}\frac{\rho_0}{\rho_3}\frac{u^2}{c_3^2}\right]^{(\gamma'-1)/2\gamma'}\right\}. \tag{4.3}$$

The sound speed c_3 is given by $c_3 = [\gamma'(\mathscr{R}/\mu_0')T_3]^{1/2}$, where μ_0' is the molecular weight of the driver gas. The strength of the shock wave is completely determined by the "piston" speed u. In particular, the temperature behind the front is $T_1 = \frac{1}{2}(\gamma - 1)\mu_0 u^2/\mathscr{R}$.

All other conditions being the same, the strongest possible shock is developed when the ratio of the initial densities ρ_0/ρ_3 is negligibly small, so that after bursting of the diaphragm the driver gas flows essentially into vacuum at the maximum exhaust velocity

$$u_{\max} = \frac{2}{\gamma' - 1}c_3 = \frac{2}{\gamma' - 1}\left(\gamma'\frac{\mathscr{R}}{\mu_0'}T_3\right)^{1/2}. \tag{4.4}$$

The corresponding upper limit on the temperature behind the shock is

$$T_{1\max} = \frac{2\gamma'(\gamma - 1)}{(\gamma' - 1)^2}\frac{\mu_0}{\mu_0'}T_3. \tag{4.5}$$

This equation shows that a light driver gas should be used for producing high temperatures, and that higher temperatures are attainable in heavy monatomic test gases (the lower the specific heat, the higher is the quantity $(\gamma - 1)\mu_0 = \mathscr{R}/c_v$ appearing in the numerator). It is most convenient to use hydrogen ($\mu_0' = 2$, $\gamma' = 7/5$, $T_{1\max} = 8.75(\gamma - 1)\mu_0 T_3$) as the driver gas, although helium ($\mu_0' = 4$, $\gamma' = 5/3$, $T_{1\max} = 1.87(\gamma - 1)\mu_0 T_3$) is also used.

In order to obtain the maximum possible velocity (4.4) it is required that the ratio of the initial gas densities ρ_0/ρ_3 be extremely small (the pressure drop p_3/p_0 be extremely large). For values of the pressure drop attainable in practice, the test gas offers considerable "resistance" to the flow of the driver gas, and the velocity u calculated from (4.3) is found to be several times smaller than the exhaust velocity into vacuum. The temperature behind the shock wave is decreased even more sharply. Let us consider an actual example. Let hydrogen be the driver gas and argon ($\mu_0 = 40$, $\gamma = 5/3$) be the test gas. Both gases are assumed to be initially at room temperature $T_0 = T_3 = 300°\text{K}$. The initial pressure ratio $p_3/p_0 = 7600$, say, $p_0 = 5$ mm Hg and $p_3 = 50$ atm. Calculation then gives $u = 2.78$ km/sec, $D = 3.7$ km/sec, the Mach number $M = D/c_0 = 11.5$, $T_1 = 41T_3 = 12{,}300°\text{K}$, and $p_1 = 164p_0 = 2.1$ atm. The maximum exhaust velocity $u_{\max} = 6.65$ km/sec*. Actually, the temperature behind the shock wave will be somewhat less than 12,300°K, because the

* The calculated value of $T_{1\max}$ from (4.5) is meaningless, since it gives 70,000°K with a specific heat ratio of $\gamma = 5/3$. At such high temperatures ionization is very important; hence the actual temperature is much lower.

energy absorbed in ionizing the argon is appreciable even at this temperature, and the effective adiabatic exponent γ of the argon is somewhat lowered. For more exact calculations it is necessary to use the actual Hugoniot curves for the test gas, in which ionization is taken into account. The gas velocities u calculated from (4.3), the values of the shock velocity, the pressure, and the internal energy behind the shock depend very little on the assumed values of the thermodynamic properties of the test gas. However, the temperature calculated without taking into account the energy absorbed in ionization, dissociation, etc., can be much too high.

When air is used as the test gas in a shock tube with hydrogen as the driver gas, shock velocities up to 4 km/sec (Mach numbers of the order of 12) and temperatures behind the shock of the order of 4000°K are obtainable. Various methods are available for increasing the effectiveness of a shock tube, i.e., for increasing the shock strength. In particular, a convenient method is to raise the initial temperature of the driver gas T_3 (see (4.5)). To do this an explosive mixture of hydrogen and oxygen (which is usually diluted by a light inert gas such as helium) is often used as the driver gas. At the given time the mixture is ignited and the driver gas heats up as a result of the reaction. In this manner shock velocities D of the order of 5 km/sec (Mach numbers of the order of 15) and temperatures of the order of 6000°K are attainable in air. Shock tubes of varying cross-sectional area and of other designs have also been developed (see [4]).

Let us now calculate the physical variables behind the reflected shock wave, assuming again that the specific heats are constant. Quantities behind the reflected wave will be denoted by the subscript 4, while quantities behind the incident wave will again be denoted by the subscript 1. We apply (1.69) relating the differences in pressure, speeific volume, and veloeity across the shock wave. The difference in velocity, which represents the relative velocity of the gas behind the shock with respect to the gas ahead of it, is the same for the incident and the reflected wave. Assuming that the incident wave is strong, we then obtain

$$u^2 = (p_4 - p_1)(V_1 - V_4) = p_1(V_0 - V_1).$$

The Hugoniot equation (1.76) for the reflected wave (not necessarily strong) is

$$\frac{V_4}{V_1} = \frac{(\gamma + 1)p_1 + (\gamma - 1)p_4}{(\gamma - 1)p_1 + (\gamma + 1)p_4}.$$

Noting that $V_0/V_1 = (\gamma + 1)/(\gamma - 1)$ and eliminating V_4/V_1 from the preceding two equations, we can find the pressure ratio p_4/p_1 behind the reflected wave, after which the corresponding density and temperature ratios may be obtained. The results are

$$\frac{p_4}{p_1} = \frac{3\gamma - 1}{\gamma - 1}, \qquad \frac{\rho_4}{\rho_1} = \frac{\gamma}{\gamma - 1}, \qquad \frac{T_4}{T_1} = \frac{3\gamma - 1}{\gamma}. \tag{4.6}$$

Caution should be exercised in using the above relations for making numerical estimates. The temperatures behind the reflected wave are usually so high that the specific heats are not constant, because of dissociation, ionization, etc. Strictly speaking, quantities behind the reflected wave should be calculated using the actual thermodynamic functions of the gas. For a rough estimate, however, one may use (4.6) with some effective value for the specific heat ratio. For example, for a dissociated or ionized low density gas one can take $\gamma = 1.20$ for an estimate. This gives $p_4/p_1 \approx 13$, $\rho_4/\rho_1 \approx 6$, and $T_4/T_1 \approx 2.17$. For heavy monatomic gases we can obtain temperatures of the order of tens of thousands of degrees behind the reflected shock wave. In air, for an initial pressure $p_0 = 10$ mm Hg and an incident wave velocity $D \approx 5$ km/sec, with $T_1 \approx 5800°\text{K}$ and $\rho_1/\rho_0 \approx 10$, we find (using actual equilibrium properties) that behind the reflected wave $T_4 \approx 8600°\text{K}$ and $\rho_4/\rho_1 \approx 7$. The actual processes taking place in a shock tube are much more complex than is indicated in the above idealized scheme. The shock wave approaches a constant velocity not immediately after the bursting of the diaphragm, but only after a finite time. Wall friction, boundary layer interactions (particularly with the reflected shock wave), nonuniform heating across the tube cross section, energy losses through the walls and from radiation (at very high temperatures), mixing of the gases at the contact surface, and many other effects can play an important role (see [2, 4, 5, 19] and the many original references cited therein).

§4. Electromagnetic shock tubes

Shock tubes in which the shock wave in the test gas results from the sudden expansion of a compressed driver gas are widely used in the study of various high-temperature processes. However, the maximum shock velocities (Mach numbers) and thus temperatures obtainable even in highly efficient devices operating on this principle are quite limited.

Newer types of shock tubes, based on different operating principles, have been introduced more recently. In these devices, frequently referred to as electromagnetic or magnetic shock tubes, strong shock waves are developed by heating a gas by means of an electrical discharge and accelerating it by magnetic forces. The earliest such device, built by Fowler and his co-workers [6], consists of the T-tube shown schematically in Fig. 4.3. The tube is filled

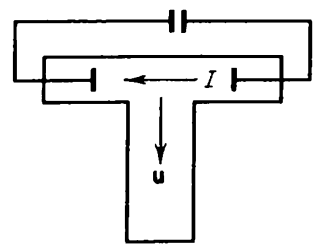


Fig. 4.3. Sketch of the Fowler T-tube.

with the test gas at a low pressure, of the order of a millimeter of mercury. Electrodes are placed in the horizontal part of the "T" and a condenser bank is discharged through the gas between the electrodes. The gas in the discharge region is rapidly heated to a high temperature, and is expelled at a high velocity by the large pressure into the "vertical" part of the T-tube, pushing a shock wave ahead of it.

In contrast to the Fowler tube, where the electrical discharge is used to heat the gas rapidly, a T-tube built by Kolb [7] utilizes the electromagnetic interaction between currents for accelerating a gas plasma. The lead carrying the return current in the discharge circuit is extremely close to the discharge part of the tube, as shown in Fig. 4.4. As is known, a repulsive force exists between

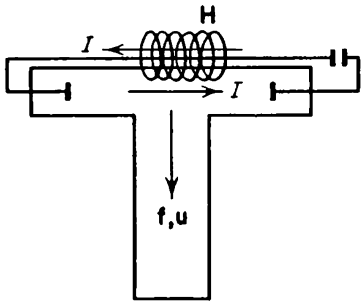


Fig. 4.4. Sketch of Kolb's electromagnetic shock tube.

parallel conductors carrying oppositely directed currents. This force can be regarded as the result of the action of the magnetic field of one current upon the other current-carrying conductor. The force acting per unit volume of current-carrying conductor is determined by the vector product of the current density $\mathbf{j}$ and the magnetic field intensity $\mathbf{H}$, with $\mathbf{f} = (1/c)\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{H}$ (the magnetic permeability of the plasma is very close to unity). This force is perpendicular to the direction of the current and the magnetic field. In this case the magnetic field of the current flowing in the return lead repels the plasma carrying the discharge current in the direction of the vertical part of the tube, thus imparting an additional acceleration to the plasma. The plasma is thus subjected to the action of a so-called "magnetic piston", and a shock wave is produced in the vertical part of the tube which is much stronger than that produced in the absence of a magnetic field. The dimensions of this magnetic shock tube are not large; its radius is approximately 1.5 cm, while the length of the vertical part is 12 cm. In a typical one of Kolb's experiments the tube was filled with deuterium at an initial pressure of 0.7 mm Hg. The capacitance of the condenser bank was $C = 0.52$ μf and it was charged to $V = 50$ kv. An oscillogram of the discharge current showed the discharge frequency to be $\nu = 700$ kc/sec. For these conditions a maximum shock velocity $D = 90$ km/sec was obtained, at a distance of 3.5 cm from the discharge region of the tube. The wave is attenuated during its travel, so that for example, its velocity dropped

to 75 km/sec at a distance of 9 cm. The temperature behind the shock at $D = 90$ km/sec is approximately 120,000°K*.

By means of a simple estimate, we can show that for the given conditions the magnetic force is capable of accelerating the plasma to such a high speed. Neglecting the attenuation (which is not too large) the discharge current from the moment of breakdown varies sinusoidally $I = I_{max} \sin \omega t$, where $\omega = 2\pi\nu$ and $I_{max} = V(C/L)^{1/2} = VC\omega$ (L is the self-inductance of the configuration, in this case equal to 0.1 mh). The maximum current $I_{max} = 115{,}000$ amp $= 1.15 \cdot 10^5\ c/10$ in esu units. The current I, flowing through the return lead, induces a magnetic field $H = 2I/cr$, with r distance from the lead. The tube radius may be used as the average distance between the lead and the plasma. The magnetic field acts on the plasma like a piston exerting a pressure $H^2/8\pi$. The velocity u acquired by the plasma under the action of this pressure is determined by the obvious relation $H^2/8\pi \approx \rho u^2$, where ρ is the density; hence $u = H/(8\pi\rho)^{1/2} = I/cr(2\pi\rho)^{1/2}$. The average current is taken as $I = (\overline{I^2})^{1/2} = I_{max}/\sqrt{2}$. Substituting $r = 1.5$ cm, $\rho = 0.74 \cdot 10^{-7}$ g/cm^3 (the density of deuterium at a pressure $p_0 = 0.7$ mm Hg and room temperature), and the current into the equation for the velocity, we obtain $u = 80$ km/sec. The magnetic piston, therefore, should accelerate the plasma to a velocity which is of the order of that observed experimentally ($D_{max} \approx 90$ km/sec). We note that the time over which the magnetic piston acts is of the order of $t \approx r/u \approx 1.9 \cdot 10^{-7}$ sec, which is less than a quarter of the discharge period $T/4 \approx 1/4\nu = 3.6 \cdot 10^{-7}$ sec. The entire process of accelerating the plasma takes place during the first quarter of the discharge period, before the current increases to its maximum value. In our calculations we have neglected the acceleration caused by the pure thermal expansion of the plasma heated by the discharge current. The estimates show that the principal factor causing the acceleration of the plasma is the magnetic rather than the thermal pressure. In order to increase the magnetic pressure acting on the plasma, an additional external field ($\sim 15{,}000$ oersteds) was applied in some experiments. The external field had the same direction as the magnetic field of the return current, which with $\bar{I} = I_{max}/\sqrt{2} = 80{,}000$ amp and $r = 1.5$ cm was approximately equal to 11,000 oersteds. In the Kolb T-tube it is very important to obtain a large rate of increase of the current and a large current amplitude (high discharge frequency), and it is necessary to use special techniques to reduce the self-inductance of the circuit to a minimum†.

* This temperature is calculated from the shock velocity using the Hugoniot equation with dissociation and ionization effects taken into account, but neglecting the radiation flux from the front; this flux is small because of the transparency of the gas.

† We point out that in [8] is described the production of very strong shock waves in a T-tube filled with hydrogen or helium, with intensity measurements of different spectral lines in the heated plasma.

The principle of the "magnetic piston" is also used in another shock tube developed by Kholev and Poltavchenko [9] and shown schematically in Fig. 4.5. The discharge current flows radially between the electrodes, one of which is a rod placed along the tube axis and the other a cylinder near the tube surface. The radial discharge current interacts with the concentric magnetic

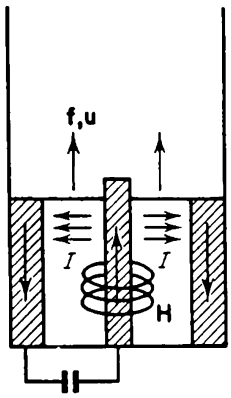


Fig. 4.5. Sketch of the Kholev and Poltavchenko shock tube. The electrodes are cross-hatched.

field induced by the current flowing in the central electrode. The pondermotive force acts along the tube axis and accelerates the plasma in that direction. A shock wave is propagated down the tube. A characteristic of this process is the expulsion of the plasma from the region between the electrodes and its separation from the "bottom" of the tube by the action of the magnetic field, which in this case acts like a piston.

The Kholev and Poltavchenko experiments were carried out with air. The strongest shock had a Mach number $M \approx 250$, $D \approx 80$ km/sec, and $T_1 \approx 130{,}000°\mathrm{K}$; it was obtained with $C = 2400\ \mu\mathrm{f}$, $V = 5$ kv, and $I \approx 560{,}000$ amp (the tubes were made from Plexiglas and had diameters of from 2 to 5 cm and lengths of from 50 to 90 cm). The shock was rapidly attenuated as it traveled down the tube. Weakly attenuated shock waves of smaller amplitudes ($D < 10$ km/sec) were obtained in a tube designed by Kholev and Krestnikova [10]. The principle of operation of the Kholev and Poltavchenko shock tube is closely related to that of the magnetic annular shock tube designed by Patrick [11].

Josephson [12] has described a shock tube, referred to as a "taper tube", which consists of a conical section joined to a cylindrical tube (Fig. 4.6). The center electrode is at the small end of the conical section. A ring at the junction of the cylindrical tube and large end of the conical part serves as the second electrode. The return current flows through leads placed along the cone. The discharge is accompanied by a magnetic compression of the plasma toward the axis, the so-called "pinch effect". The radial pinching starts at the small end first and involves adjacent gas layers in succession. Finally, the

hot compressed plasma is ejected into the cylindrical tube where it creates a shock wave. In [13] is reported the use of such a tube to accelerate very low density air to velocities of the order of 12 km/sec ($M = 40$, $T_1 = 12{,}000°\text{K}$), and to study the flow past nose cone models.

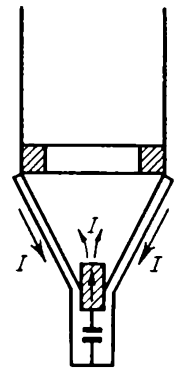


Fig. 4.6. Sketch of a "taper tube". The electrodes are cross-hatched.

Additional details on the design and operation of electromagnetic shock tubes may be found in the collection [14].

§5. Methods of measurement for various quantities

Various methods have been developed for the observation of the rapid processes which take place in shock tubes and for the measurement of different quantities, such as shock speed, density, temperature, etc. Descriptions of these methods and discussion of the results obtained are to be found in a rather extensive literature. One can, however, become familiar with many of the problems through the review articles [1, 2] and the books [3, 4, 18, 19], all of which contain numerous references to the original journal articles.

We shall not consider the experimental methods in detail and shall give only a brief listing of the more important ones. Our presentation will follow the classification of methods given in [2].

(1) *High-speed photography.* The gasdynamic process may be photographed using either luminosity resulting from the heating of the gas to a very high temperature or illumination from an external source. Cameras for filming high-speed processes with framing speeds of up to a million frames per second have been developed*. Another widely applied photographic method uses a rotating mirror camera. The mirror reflects a continuous light source which passes over the film, and rotates at such a rate that the moving luminous object (such as a shock front) describes a continuous inclined line on the film. From the slope of this line the speed of the object can be determined.

* References to the works of Soviet scientists and designers who have developed unique high-speed cameras will be found in Chapter XI.

(2) *Measurement of density.* The measurement of the density distribution in the nonequilibrium layer behind a compression shock is of particular importance, since the density distribution is closely related to the various relaxation rates (see Chapter VII). This was in fact the basis used to determine the rates of vibrational excitation and of molecular dissociation at high temperatures.

The density distribution is measured most frequently by the interference method, based on the fact that the refractive index of a gas varies with the density. Other important optical methods for observing a flow field, such as schlieren and shadow photography, are also based on the variation of the index of refraction associated with the motion of a compressible gas. However, interferometry provides the best quantitative information on the distribution of density*.

Hornig *et al.* [3, Sect. E] determined the density distribution in weak shock fronts by the reflection of light from the front surface. The initial density of the gas was chosen in such a manner that the thickness of the shock front was close to the wavelength of light. Under this condition the reflection coefficient depends on the thickness of the transition layer and the density distribution (that is, the index of refraction). This was the basis for the measurement of front thicknesses and of the rotational excitation rates for molecules in weak shock waves.

The density distribution in a gas has also been measured by the scattering of an electron beam and by the absorption of x-rays.

(3) *Measurement of concentration.* In a number of cases, where molecular dissociation or chemical reactions take place in the nonequilibrium layer behind the compression shock, the change in concentration of some species can be followed directly. This is usually possible when the light absorption of some particles differs sharply from the light absorption of others. This, for example, was the method used for studying the dissociation of molecules of bromine, iodine, and oxygen, etc., in a shock wave. Bromine and iodine molecules strongly absorb visible light, while their atoms do not; oxygen molecules have a characteristic system of absorption bands in the ultraviolet region (see Chapter V).

(4) *Measurement of the emission and absorption of light.* Many authors have made spectral measurements of the intensity of light emitted by a gas heated by a shock wave. Knowing the gas density and the temperature it is then possible to determine the emission coefficient at different temperatures and in different parts of the spectrum. The light is usually recorded photographically or by means of photomultipliers. Kirchhoff's law can be used with the emis-

* The above optical methods utilizing illumination from an external source are usually used at moderate temperatures, when the self-luminosity of the heated gas is low.

sion coefficient to determine the light absorption coefficient in a heated gas (Chapter V). Absorption coefficients are sometimes also determined directly by the attenuation in the gas of a beam of light from an external source.

(5) *Measurement of temperature.* Optical methods are most frequently used for measuring high temperatures. There exists a vast amount of literature describing optical pyrometry methods. In particular we recommend the collection [15] and the review article [16].

(6) *Measurement of electron concentration and electrical conductivity.* The Langmuir probe usually used in the study of gas discharges is frequently employed for measuring the degree of ionization and the electron concentration behind a shock wave. The technique of absorption and reflection of microwaves is also used. Electron concentration is also measured by the luminosity of the gas (for example, the intensity of recombination luminosity is proportional to the square of the electron concentration). Electromagnetic methods based, in particular, on the displacement of an external magnetic field by a moving plasma are also widely used, the displacement being a function of the electrical conductivity. Knowing the electrical conductivity the electron concentration can then be determined.

(7) *Measurement of pressure.* Pressure is most frequently measured by piezoelectric transducers with the sensing element made of barium titanate.

(8) *Measurement of shock speed.* The simplest method for measuring this velocity is to record by one or another means the time at which the shock wave passes definite points in the shock tube which are separated by known distances. The time is recorded by piezoelectric pressure gauges, ionization probes, various electrical contact probes, etc. The very high velocities obtained in electromagnetic shock tubes are usually measured by photographic means (see method 1).

V. Absorption and emission of radiation in gases at high temperatures

§1. Introduction. Types of electronic transitions

It was shown in Chapter II that the light* absorption coefficient is the fundamental optical characteristic of a gas which determines the degree of blackness of a heated body, the spectral radiation intensity, and the energy balance in a fluid undergoing radiant heat exchange. When the absorption coefficient is known, Kirchhoff's law, which is an expression of the general principle of detailed balancing, may be used to determine the emission coefficient of the fluid.

In §2 of Chapter II we have presented a short review and classification of the various mechanisms of absorption and emission. In accordance with the general scheme of allowed energy states of atomic systems (the simplest of which consists of one proton and one electron and constitutes the hydrogen atom in the bound state), all allowed electronic transitions accompanying the absorption and emission of light are subdivided into three types. These are:

(1) free-free transitions (bremsstrahlung emission and absorption);
(2) bound-free transitions (photoelectric absorption);
(3) bound-bound (discrete) transitions.

Free-free and bound-free transitions result in continuous absorption and emission spectra. Bound-bound transitions in atoms result in line spectra, while in molecules they result in the formation of band spectra. Band spectra consist of a great number of spectral lines which are closely spaced with respect to frequency. Under certain conditions the individual lines are so close to one another that they even partially overlap and the resulting spectrum is almost continuous (quasi-continuous).

From an energy point of view continuous (quasi-continuous) spectra are of primary interest. Let us imagine, for example, a body heated to a uniform temperature T. If the body is perfectly black, then the radiation flux emitted from its surface will have the Planck spectral distribution. The spectral flux as a function of the frequency ν is shown by the dashed curve in Fig. 5.1. The

* We recall that the terms "light", "light quanta", "photons", and "optical" properties refer to radiation at all frequencies and not just to those frequencies which lie in the visible part of the spectrum.

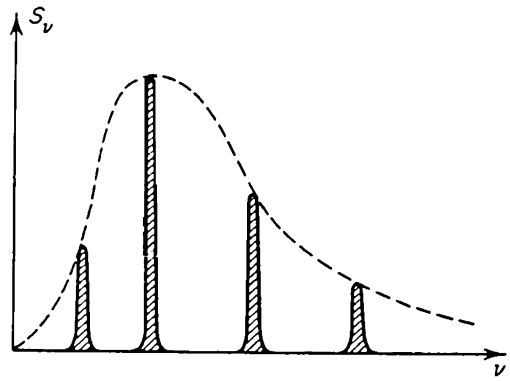


Fig. 5.1. Emission spectrum of a heated body which is perfectly transparent to the continuous spectrum, but is opaque to a line spectrum. The dashed curve corresponds to the Planck spectrum at the given temperature.

area bounded by this curve gives the integrated radiant energy emitted per unit area of surface per unit time σT^4. Let us now assume that the medium is perfectly transparent to the continuous spectrum and that it absorbs and emits only a line spectrum, where the line radiation for the given frequencies is in thermodynamic equilibrium with the medium. The spectral radiation flux from the body surface is now described by a system of individual narrow lines whose height corresponds to the Planck function, as shown in Fig. 5.1 by the solid curves. The integrated radiant energy emitted per unit area of body surface per unit time is numerically equal to the cross-hatched area of these lines. Since the line widths are very narrow, this energy flux is considerably lower than the integrated Planck flux σT^4. The radiant energy losses and also the surface brightness are, in this case, considerably smaller than in the case of a continuous spectrum. Similarly, for radiant energy transfer within the body the line spectra are frequently of little importance in comparison with that of continuous spectra. Therefore, most of our attention in this chapter will be devoted to continuous and quasi-continuous molecular spectra, rather than to line spectra.

At high temperatures, when the molecules are dissociated and the gas consists of atoms or (at even higher temperatures) of ions and electrons, the continuous absorption and emission spectra arise as a result of bound-free and free-free transitions. The calculation of the electronic transition probabilities, the results of which could then be used to find the absorption (and emission) coefficient for the case of multi-electron atoms (complex atomic systems), is a quantum-mechanical problem of considerable difficulty. This problem requires a separate analysis for each particular case, for each atom or ion, and also for each quantum state of the system. Such calculations have been carried out only for a few particular cases.

Complete and relatively simple calculations can be carried out only for the simplest hydrogen-like (hydrogenic) systems, that is, for the transitions of a single electron in the Coulomb field of a positive charge Ze. In practice, even when considering the emission and absorption of light in gases composed of complex atoms or ions, it is frequently necessary to use the relations derived for hydrogen-like systems. The atom or ion is in this case represented as an "atomic remainder" with a positive point charge Ze, in the field of which an "optical" electron moves, undergoing transitions from one energy level to another with the absorption or emission of a photon. As will be shown below, this approximation is to some extent justified in many cases of practical importance.

In calculating molecular absorption coefficients, the coefficient is usually determined as a function of frequency and temperature to within a factor termed the oscillator strength for the electronic transition considered; this factor is determined experimentally, as a rule.

In the following sections of this chapter we consider in detail the different mechanisms of light absorption and emission in gases at high temperatures, and the calculations for the corresponding absorption coefficients. We shall be primarily interested in the fundamental physical aspects of the problem and shall not dwell in detail on the various approximate methods for improving the formulas for calculating absorption coefficients.

Very frequently several different mechanisms which are independent of each other participate in the absorption and emission of light in gases under different conditions. The total absorption and emission coefficients in each spectral region are composed of quantities corresponding to these different mechanisms. Therefore, it is quite proper to examine independently the effect of each individual mechanism. At the end of the chapter we shall consider the radiative properties of high-temperature air as the most important practical example illustrating the combined effect of many mechanisms.

1. Continuous spectra

§2. Bremsstrahlung emission from an electron in the Coulomb field of an ion

As is well known from classical electrodynamics, radiation is emitted from a free electron moving in an external electric field, let us say, in the Coulomb field of an ion of positive charge Ze. In the process the electron loses a part of its kinetic energy and slows down. Hence such radiation is called bremsstrahlung.

The radiant energy S emitted by an electron per unit time is determined by its acceleration $\mathbf{w}$

$$S = \frac{2}{3}\frac{e^2}{c^3}\mathbf{w}^2. \tag{5.1}$$

The total radiation emitted during the entire time of travel past an ion is equal to the time integral of this expression

$$\Delta E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S\,dt = \frac{2}{3}\frac{e^2}{c^3}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathbf{w}^2\,dt. \tag{5.2}$$

The spectral composition of the radiation may be found by expanding the acceleration vector $\mathbf{w}$ in a Fourier integral and substituting the expansion into (5.2). This yields

$$\Delta E = \frac{16\pi^2}{3}\frac{e^2}{c^3}\int_0^{\infty} \mathbf{w}_\nu^2\,d\nu = \int_0^{\infty} S_\nu\,d\nu, \tag{5.3}$$

where

$$\mathbf{w}_\nu = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathbf{w}(t)\,e^{-i2\pi\nu t}\,dt$$

is the Fourier component of the acceleration vector $\mathbf{w}(t)$. The quantity

$$S_\nu = \frac{16\pi^2}{3}\frac{e^2}{c^3}\mathbf{w}_\nu^2 \tag{5.4}$$

represents the radiant energy per unit frequency interval* emitted with a frequency ν by an electron passing an ion.

According to classical mechanics, when energy losses by radiation are

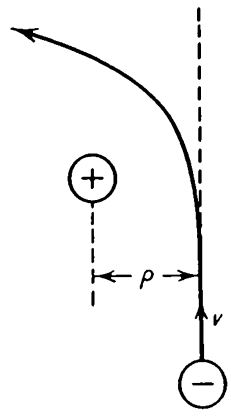


Fig. 5.2. Trajectory of an electron passing a positive ion.

* Following astrophysical practice, we shall always use the ordinary frequency ν rather than the angular frequency $\omega = 2\pi\nu$.

absent, a free electron (the sum of whose kinetic and potential energy is positive) passes the ion along a well-defined hyperbolic orbit characterized by the impact parameter ρ, the meaning of which is clear from Fig. 5.2. The total radiant energy and spectral composition of the radiation can be calculated approximately from equations (5.2)–(5.4), by taking for the acceleration $\mathbf{w}(t)$ the value corresponding to the motion of the electron in the absence of radiation. This is equivalent to assuming that the radiation is weak.

Let a parallel beam of electrons with initial velocity v at infinity and constant number density N_e (the electron flux is $N_e v$) be incident on the ion from infinity. Through an elementary ring of area $2\pi\rho\, d\rho$ about the ion $N_e v \cdot 2\pi\rho\, d\rho$ electrons pass per unit time. Each electron emits ΔE ergs of energy. The radiant energy emitted by these electrons per unit time is $\Delta E\, N_e v \cdot 2\pi\rho\, d\rho$ erg/sec. The energy emitted per unit time by the electrons passing the ion along all possible orbits can be obtained by integrating this expression with respect to ρ from 0 to ∞. The total emitted energy per ion for a unit electron flux $N_e v = 1\ \text{cm}^{-2}\ \text{sec}^{-1}$ is

$$q = \int_0^\infty \Delta E\, 2\pi\rho\, d\rho\ (\text{erg} \cdot \text{cm}^2). \tag{5.5}$$

We can also speak of the energy radiated in the frequency interval ν to $\nu + d\nu$, the so-called effective radiation dq_ν $\left(\int_{\nu=0}^{\nu=\infty} dq_\nu = q\right)$. In accordance with the definition given by (5.3) the effective radiation, the energy emitted in the frequency interval $d\nu$ per ion and per unit electron flux, is

$$dq_\nu = d\nu \int_0^\infty S_\nu 2\pi\rho\, d\rho\ (\text{erg} \cdot \text{cm}^2). \tag{5.6}$$

The effective radiation determines the spectral emission coefficient of a medium due to bremsstrahlung emission.

If a unit volume contains N_+ ions of a particular species and dN_e electrons with speeds between v and $v + dv$, then the energy in the frequency interval between ν and $\nu + d\nu$ emitted per unit time by a unit volume as a result of the slowing down of these electrons in the field of the ions is $N_+ v\, dN_e\, dq_\nu$ $(\text{erg/cm}^3 \cdot \text{sec})$.

Let us estimate the effective radiation of electrons in the Coulomb field of an ion. If the electron is at a distance r from the ion (radius vector $\mathbf{r}$), then it is subjected to the force $-Ze^2\mathbf{r}/r^3$. The acceleration due to this force is $\mathbf{w} = -Ze^2\mathbf{r}/r^3 m$, where m is the electron mass. Let the electron have an initial velocity v and impact parameter ρ with respect to the ion. The time during which the force acts t is of the order of ρ/v, and the maximum acceleration interval of the electron during this time w is of the order of $Ze^2/\rho^2 m$. The principal role in the expansion of the acceleration vector in the Fourier integral is

played by frequencies ν of the order of $1/2\pi t \sim v/2\pi\rho$ *. We can say that the frequency ν is radiated mainly by the electrons passing the ion at the distance $\rho \sim v/2\pi\nu$, and that frequencies in the interval from ν to $\nu + d\nu$ are mainly emitted by electrons with impact parameters in the interval $d\rho \sim (v/2\pi\nu^2)\, d\nu \sim 2\pi(\rho^2/v)\, d\nu$. The energy emitted by each of these electrons is given in order of magnitude by

$$\Delta E \sim \frac{2}{3}\frac{e^2}{c^3} w^2 t \sim \frac{2}{3}\frac{Z^2 e^6}{m^2 c^3 \rho^3 v}.$$

The effective radiation at the frequency ν corresponds to the radiation emitted by electrons with impact parameters from ρ to $\rho + d\rho$ and from the above relation is given by

$$dq_\nu \sim \Delta E\, 2\pi\rho\, d\rho \sim \frac{4\pi}{3}\frac{Z^2 e^6\, d\rho}{m^2 c^3 \rho^2 v} \sim \frac{8\pi^2}{3}\frac{Z^2 e^6}{m^2 c^3 v^2}\, d\nu. \tag{5.7}$$

The exact calculation of the effective radiation using (5.6) and (5.4), using the acceleration vector found by solving the mechanical problem of the motion of an electron in a hyperbolic orbit about an ion, is given in the book of Landau and Lifshitz [1]. The result is

$$dq_\nu = \frac{32\pi^2}{3\sqrt{3}}\frac{Z^2 e^6}{m^2 c^3 v^2}\, d\nu \qquad \text{for} \quad \nu \gg \frac{mv^3}{2\pi Z e^2}, \tag{5.8}$$

$$dq_\nu = \frac{32\pi}{3}\frac{Z^2 e^6}{m^2 c^3 v^2} \ln\frac{mv^3}{1.78\pi\nu Z e^2}\, d\nu \qquad \text{for} \quad \nu \ll \frac{mv^3}{2\pi Z e^2}. \tag{5.9}$$

It is evident that the exact result at high frequencies differs from the simple estimate (5.7) only by the numerical factor $4/\sqrt{3} = 2.3$. At low frequencies the exact result differs from the approximate one by a logarithmic factor which is a function of the frequency, as well as by a numerical factor. To explain this we note that the low frequencies radiated come from distant collisions with large impact parameters ρ; as $\nu \to 0$ and $\rho \to \infty$, the collisions with impact parameters $\rho > v/2\pi\nu$ give a relatively larger and larger contribution to the radiation at the frequency ν in comparison with that from the collisions with impact parameters $\rho \sim v/2\pi\nu$. The latter collisions are the only ones accounted for in deriving the simple formula (5.7).

The divergence of the effective radiation in the low frequency range is characteristic of a Coulomb field, which decreases slowly with distance; the result is that distant collisions become of considerable importance. This divergence can be eliminated by taking into account the screening effect, which is always present in an actual ionized gas. Actually, the integration

* For greater accuracy we shall retain the numerical coefficient 2π. (The fundamental role in the expansion is played by the "angular" frequencies such that $\omega t \sim 1$.)

with respect to ρ in (5.6) should be taken not to infinity but, say, to the Debye radius d; the radiation from the low frequency region is then cut off at $\nu_{\min} \sim v/2\pi d$.

It should be noted, however, that the radiation integrated over the spectrum $q = \int dq_\nu$ converges in the low frequency region, since the divergence in dq_ν is only logarithmic and the contribution of the peak value of dq_ν in the integral with respect to ν is not large as $\nu \to 0$. Therefore, if we are interested in the integrated radiation only, then the question of cutting off the impact parameters ρ from above and the frequencies from below is not too important.

In the classical theory, the high frequency radiation is independent of frequency and the effective radiation per unit frequency interval $dq_\nu/d\nu$ remains finite even as $\nu \to \infty$ *. Formally, the integrated radiation $q = \int dq_\nu$ diverges in the high frequency region. This contradiction in the theory is a result of the imperfection of the classical concepts about the motion of an electron and is eliminated in the quantum theory. High frequencies, as we have seen, are radiated when an electron with a small impact parameter passes an ion. But, according to quantum-mechanical concepts, an electron having an initial momentum $p = mv$ cannot be located with greater precision than that allowed by the uncertainty principle $\Delta r\, \Delta p \sim h/2\pi$. Since the uncertainty in the momentum cannot exceed the momentum itself, there is no point in discussing impact parameters smaller than $\rho_{\min} \sim h/2\pi mv$. The maximum frequency radiated for such minimum impact parameters is of the order of $\nu_{\max} \sim v/2\pi\rho_{\min} \sim mv^2/h$. This upper limit to the emitted frequency has a clear physical meaning. The quantum theory represents the bremsstrahlung as follows. A free electron with an initial energy $E = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$ passing near an ion can emit a photon $h\nu$. If the electron remains free after the emission, that is, has a positive energy E' upon moving away from the ion, then, obviously, the electron cannot emit a photon whose energy exceeds the initial energy E. Thus, $\nu_{\max} = E/h = \frac{1}{2}mv^2/h$, which coincides with the frequency limit allowed by the uncertainty principle to within a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$.

In quantum mechanics a free electron is represented by a plane wave and the concept of the impact parameter does not have a precise meaning. We can speak of the probability of emission of a photon of a particular frequency, or, more precisely, about the cross section for the emission of photons with energies between $h\nu$ and $h\nu + d(h\nu)$. The energy emitted in the frequency interval $d\nu$ per unit flux of electrons interacting with a single ion is equal to the product of the photon energy $h\nu$ and the emission cross section $d\sigma_\nu$. This quantity corresponds to the effective radiation of the classical theory

$$dq_\nu = h\nu \cdot d\sigma_\nu \,(\text{erg} \cdot \text{cm}^2). \tag{5.10}$$

* This is true only when the colliding particles are oppositely charged (an electron and a positive ion). For the interaction between similarly charged particles $dq_\nu/d\nu \to 0$ as $\nu \to \infty$.

In the light of the correspondence principle, the effective radiation of frequency ν is related to the transition of an electron from one "stationary hyperbolic orbit", corresponding to an electron energy E, to another, corresponding to the energy $E' = E - h\nu$. The cross section $d\sigma_\nu$ and, consequently, the effective radiation dq_ν are calculated in quantum mechanics by the usual methods, using the matrix elements of the interaction energy between the electron and the ion.

Before discussing the results of quantum-mechanical calculations of bremsstrahlung emission, let us examine the limits of applicability of the classical relations (5.8) and (5.9) and the conditions under which it is necessary to replace these relations by quantum-mechanical ones. According to the classical derivation, (5.8) is valid for high frequencies where $\nu \gg mv^3/2\pi Ze^2$. Of course, there is no point in extending the inequality beyond those frequencies given by the upper limit $\nu_{max} = E/h = \frac{1}{2}mv^2/h$ dictated by quantum-mechanical energy considerations. Let us rewrite the limits imposed upon the frequency in (5.8) in the form

$$1 = \frac{h\nu_{max}}{E} > \frac{h\nu}{E} \gg \frac{h}{E}\frac{mv^3}{2\pi Ze^2} = \frac{h\nu}{\pi Ze^2}. \tag{5.11}$$

The inequality $h\nu/\pi Ze^2 \ll 1$, except for a factor of 2, represents nothing else but the condition for quasi-classical motion of an electron in a Coulomb field (see [2], for example)

$$\frac{h\nu}{2\pi Ze^2} \ll 1. \tag{5.12}$$

Therefore, the classical formula (5.8) for the effective radiation at a frequency ν, limited from above and below by the inequalities (5.11), can be used as an approximation for all electron velocities satisfying the inequality (5.12). If the quasi-classical condition (5.12) is satisfied, then the region of applicability of (5.8) extends down to very low frequencies, those for which $h\nu/E \sim h\nu/\pi Ze^2 \ll 1$. Since the energies of the photons which are ordinarily of interest are not too small in comparison with kT, in comparison with the energies of the electrons, and since the contribution of the peak value to the integrated radiation as $\nu \to 0$ is not too large, (5.8) can be extended to $\nu = 0$ by replacing it by (5.9). The divergence in dq_ν as $\nu \to 0$ is thus formally eliminated.

Let us transform the quasi-classical condition (5.12), which is also the condition of applicability of (5.8), so as to obtain the condition imposed upon the energy of an electron

$$E = \frac{mv^2}{2} \ll \frac{m}{2}\left(\frac{2\pi Ze^2}{h}\right)^2 = \frac{Z^2e^2}{2a_0} = I_H Z^2 = 13.5\,Z^2 \text{ ev}, \tag{5.13}$$

where $a_0 = h^2/4\pi^2 me^2$ is the Bohr radius, and $I_H = 13.5$ ev is the ionization potential of a hydrogen atom. Thus the quasi-classical condition for the motion of an electron in a Coulomb field is equivalent to the condition of the smallness of the electron energy in comparison with its energy in the first Bohr orbit. In the case of a hydrogen plasma, for example, (5.8) is applicable up to temperatures of the order of 10 ev $\sim$ 100,000°K; in a gas composed of heavier elements it is applicable to even higher temperatures, since the ionic charge Z increases as a result of multiple ionization. Thus, for air at standard density and $T = 10^6$ °K we have $Z \approx 6$, and the average energy of the electrons is still four times less than the "quasi-classical" limit.

At very high temperatures, when conditions opposite to the quasi-classical conditions (5.12) and (5.13) are satisfied, the Born approximation* of quantum mechanics is valid. For nonrelativistic energies ($E \ll mc^2 = 500$ kev) the effective radiation in the Born approximation is given by the expression (see [3])

$$dq_\nu = h\nu\, d\sigma_\nu = \frac{32\pi}{3}\frac{Z^2e^6}{m^2c^3v^2}\ln\frac{[E^{1/2} + (E - h\nu)^{1/2}]^2}{h\nu}\,d\nu,$$

where dq_ν automatically vanishes for $h\nu = E$ and has a weak logarithmic dependence on the frequency over the entire frequency interval from 0 to ν_{max}.

It is remarkable that the quantum-mechanical result yields values of the effective radiation which are quite close to those given by the classical equation (5.8) (with the obvious exception of very low frequencies and frequencies close to the maximum). This is evident from Table 5.1, which gives values of the ratio

$$g_1 = \left(\frac{dq_\nu}{d\nu}\right)_{quant}\Big/\left(\frac{dq_\nu}{d\nu}\right)_{class} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{\pi}\ln\frac{[E^{1/2} + (E - h\nu)^{1/2}]^2}{h\nu}$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{3}}{\pi}\ln\frac{[1 + (1 - x)^{1/2}]^2}{x}$$

as a function of the dimensionless quantity $x = h\nu/E = \nu/\nu_{max}$. The quantity g_1 which distinguishes the quantum expression for bremsstrahlung from the classical expression is sometimes called the Gaunt factor. The integrated radiation calculated using the quantum-mechanical result is usually written in the form

$$q_{quant} = \int_0^{\nu_{max}}\left(\frac{dq_\nu}{d\nu}\right)_{quant}d\nu = \left(\frac{dq_\nu}{d\nu}\right)_{class}\nu_{max}\int_0^1 g_1\,dx = 1.05\,q_{class}.$$

* The Born approximation requires that both the initial and final electron velocities satisfy the conditions (5.12) and (5.13); otherwise one must use the exact wave functions of an electron in a Coulomb field; this introduces the well-known Coulomb factor into the resulting equations (see [2, 3]).

Table 5.1

x	0	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.6	0.7	0.8	0.9	1
g_1	∞	2.01	1.61	1.34	1.13	0.97	0.81	0.68	0.53	0.36	0

Thus, the classical relation (5.8) gives satisfactory approximate results at practically any nonrelativistic temperature.

§2a. Bremsstrahlung emission from an electron scattered by a neutral atom

We now calculate the effective bremsstrahlung emission from an electron in eollision with a scattering center, without as yet specifying the interaction law of the electron with the scatterer. The scattering body may be an atom, molecule, or ion. Let us assume that the interaction time τ_0 is small in comparison with the period of electromagnetic oscillations whieh are radiated, or more precisely that in this case we have $\omega\tau_b \ll 1$, where $\omega = 2\pi\nu$. This assumption may be regarded as valid for visible light frequencies, electron energies of the order of several electron volts, and scattering by a neutral atom*.

If $\omega\tau_b \ll 1$, the scattering takes place "instantaneously", and it is natural to set the acceleration vector $\mathbf{w}(t) = \Delta\mathbf{v}\,\delta(t)$, where $\Delta\mathbf{v}$ is the change in the electron vector velocity on scattering and δ is the delta function. Then the Fourier component of the acceleration vector is $\mathbf{w}_\nu = \Delta\mathbf{v}/2\pi$. Substituting this expression into (5.4) we find that the energy radiated in the frequency interval from ν to $\nu + d\nu$ upon scattering is

$$S_\nu\, d\nu = \frac{4}{3}\frac{e^2}{c^3}(\Delta\mathbf{v})^2\, d\nu.$$

This expression should be averaged over the scattering angle ϑ. Assuming approximately that the absolute electron velocity v does not change appreciably on scattering, which corresponds to the emission of photons $h\nu$ with energies low in comparison with the electron energy $mv^2/2$, we obtain $\overline{(\Delta\mathbf{v})^2} = 2v^2(1 - \overline{\cos\vartheta})$, where $\overline{\cos\vartheta}$ is the average of the cosine of the scattering angle.

In order to find the effective emission we must multiply the quantity $\bar{S}_\nu\, d\nu$, averaged over the scattering angle, by the scattering cross section σ (cf. (5.6)). This yields

$$dq_\nu = \bar{S}_\nu\, d\nu\, \sigma = \frac{8}{3}\frac{e^2v^2\sigma_{tr}}{c^3}\, d\nu, \tag{5.13a}$$

* For example, for red light $\lambda = 7000$ Å, $h\nu = 1.8$ ev, and $\omega = 2.7 \cdot 10^{15}$ sec^{-1}. If the radius of the atom is 10^{-8} cm and the electron velocity is 10^8 cm/sec (the energy is 3 ev), then $\tau_b = 10^{-16}$ sec and $\omega\tau_b = 0.27$.

where $\sigma_{tr} = \sigma(1 - \overline{\cos \vartheta})$ is the so-called transport scattering cross section. This equation describes, in particular, bremsstrahlung emission from electrons in collision with neutral atoms; the cross section σ for elastic collisions between an electron and an atom is usually of the same order of or slightly smaller than the gaskinetic cross sections*. Using (5.10) and (5.13a) we find the relationship between the differential cross sections for the emission of a photon $h\nu$ and the cross section for elastic scattering of an electron

$$\frac{d\sigma_\nu}{d\nu} = \frac{8}{3}\frac{e^2v^2}{c^3h\nu}\sigma_{tr}. \tag{5.13b}$$

The derivation given above again clearly illustrates the physical nature of the light emission process in classical electrodynamics. The electron is accelerated upon colliding with a scattering center, and the emission is as if "superimposed" on the scattering; here the probability (cross section) of emission is determined only by the mechanical probability (cross section) of scattering. This relationship between photon processes and the processes associated with electron collisions holds also in quantum mechanics†.

We now apply (5.13a) to the scattering of an electron by a Coulomb center, by an ion. Coulomb forces are long range forces. Scattering as a result of collisions between charged particles, with an appreciable change in the electron momentum vector, takes place when the particles approach each other to within a distance r_0 for which the kinetic energy of the electron $mv^2/2$ is comparable with the potential energy Ze^2/r_0 ; this distance can then be set $r_0 = 2Ze^2/mv^2$. The cross section for Coulomb "collisions" is of the order of $\pi r_0^2 = 4\pi Z^2e^4/(mv^2)^2$ (for additional details see Part 3 of Chapter VI). If we substitute this cross section into (5.13a), we will obtain a value for dq_ν which is smaller than the exact value given by (5.8) only by a factor of $\sqrt{3}/\pi$. Thus the cross sections for bremsstrahlung emission for the scattering of an electron by an ion and by a neutral atom are in the same ratio to each other as the corresponding elastic scattering cross sections

$$\frac{(d\sigma_\nu)_{ion}}{(d\sigma_\nu)_{neut}} = \frac{\pi r_0^2}{\sigma_{tr}} = \frac{\pi Z^2e^4}{\sigma_{tr}E^2} = \frac{\pi a_0^2}{\sigma_{tr}}\left(\frac{2I_H}{E}\right)^2 Z^2.$$

Usually $\sigma_{tr}/\pi a_0^2 \sim 1 - 10$, and for an energy E of the order of several electron volts the effectiveness of neutral atoms with respect to bremsstrahlung emission (and absorption) is one or two orders less than the effectiveness of

* A great deal of experimental data on the value of the cross section σ has been collected in [60].

† In particular, a relationship exists between the ionization cross sections by atom-electron impact and by photoionization [53].

ions. Thus electron-neutral collisions are of importance only in a very weakly ionized gas.

Above we have calculated bremsstrahlung emission from an electron which is scattered by an isolated atom. If the electron-atom collisions take place sufficiently infrequently (in comparison with the frequency of the radiated electromagnetic wave), then the successive collisions can be regarded as independent and the energy radiated in many collisions is simply the sum of the energies radiated in each individual collision. In this case, according to (5.13a) the electron emits the following amount of energy per unit time in the frequency interval dv:

$$dQ_v = \bar{S}_v\, dv \cdot Nv\sigma = \frac{8}{3}\frac{e^2v^2}{c^3}\, \nu_{\text{eff}}\, dv\ (\text{erg} \cdot \text{sec}^{-1}),$$

where $\nu_{\text{eff}} = Nv\sigma_{\text{tr}}$ is the (effective) collision frequency (N is the atom number density). However, if the collision frequency is comparable with the frequency of the emitted light, then the collisions can no longer be treated as independent. A correlation exists between the changes in the vector velocity of the electrons for successive collisions, which produces interference between the partial waves radiated in the individual collisions. The amplitude of two successive electromagnetic waves is found, on the average, to be directed in opposite directions, which decreases the total energy radiated.

In order to calculate the bremsstrahlung emission by an electron subjected to a large number of collisions n ($n \to \infty$), we can represent its acceleration $\mathbf{w}(t)$ in the form

$$\mathbf{w}(t) = \sum_{k=1}^{n} \Delta\mathbf{v}_k\, \delta(t - t_k),$$

where t_k is the instant of the kth collision and $\Delta\mathbf{v}_k$ is the corresponding change in the vector velocity. The square of the modulus of the Fourier component of the acceleration is then

$$|\mathbf{w}_v|^2 = \frac{1}{4\pi}\sum_{j=1}^{n}\sum_{k=1}^{n} \Delta\mathbf{v}_j \cdot \Delta\mathbf{v}_k\, e^{i2\pi v(t_j - t_k)}.$$

This expression should be averaged over the electron velocity directions and over the collision times. Substituting the expression thus obtained in (5.4) and dividing by the time during which the electron experiences n collisions, $n/Nv\sigma$, we will obtain the quantity dQ_v corrected for the correlation effect. This calculation was carried out by one of the authors in [61], and yields

$$dQ_v = \frac{8}{3}\frac{e^2v^2}{c^3}\, \nu_{\text{eff}}\, \frac{v^2}{v^2 + (\nu_{\text{eff}}/2\pi)^2}\, dv = (dQ_v)_{\text{uncorr}}\, \frac{v^2}{v^2 + (\nu_{\text{eff}}/2\pi)^2}.$$

In the limiting case of $\nu_{\text{eff}}/2\pi \ll \nu$ the correction factor becomes one, corresponding to the vanishing of the correlation effect.

Practically the correlation effect shows up only for radiation of very low frequencies (in the radio wave range). For example, for $N = 10^{19}\ \text{cm}^{-3}$, $v = 10^8\ \text{cm/sec}$, $\sigma_{\text{tr}} = 10^{-15}\ \text{cm}^2$, $\nu_{\text{eff}} = 10^{12}\ \text{sec}^{-1}$, while for red light $\omega = 2\pi\nu = 2.7 \cdot 10^{15}\ \text{sec}^{-1}$.

§3. Free-free transitions in a high-temperature ionized gas

Let us find the emission coefficient of an ionized gas due to bremsstrahlung emission. Let a unit volume of gas contain N_+ positive ions with a charge Ze and N_e electrons with a Maxwell velocity distribution $f(v)\,dv = 4\pi(m/2\pi kT)^{3/2} \exp(-mv^2/2kT)v^2\,dv$ $\left(\int_0^\infty f(v)\,dv = 1\right)$. The temperature of the electron gas is denoted by T. The energy emitted by electrons having velocities from v' to $v' + dv'$ per unit volume per unit time in the frequency interval from ν to $\nu + d\nu$ is

$$N_+ N_e f(v')\,dv'\,v'\,dq_\nu(v'). \tag{5.14}$$

It is assumed that the velocities of the ions are very small in comparison with the electron velocities. The spontaneously emitted energy as a result of free-free transitions in the interval $d\nu$ per unit volume per unit time is obtained by integrating (5.14) with respect to the electron velocities from $v_{\min}$ to ∞; here $v_{\min}$ is the minimum velocity of electrons capable of emitting a photon $h\nu$: $\frac{1}{2}mv_{\min}^2 = h\nu$. Using (5.8) for the effective radiation and integrating, we find the spectral emission coefficient due to bremsstrahlung emission

$$J_\nu\,d\nu = \frac{32\pi}{3}\left(\frac{2\pi}{3kTm}\right)^{1/2}\frac{Z^2e^6}{mc^3}N_+N_e e^{-h\nu/kT}\,d\nu. \tag{5.15}$$

The emission of high energy photons $h\nu \gg kT$ is exponentially small. This comes from the fact that the high energy photons are emitted by the most energetic electrons, concentrated at the tail of the Maxwell velocity distribution.

The integrated emission coefficient for bremsstrahlung emission is

$$J = \int_0^\infty J_\nu\,d\nu = \frac{32\pi}{3}\left(\frac{2\pi kT}{3m}\right)^{1/2}\frac{Z^2e^6}{mc^3h}N_+N_e$$
$$= 1.42 \cdot 10^{-27}Z^2T^{\circ 1/2}N_+N_e\ \text{erg/cm}^3 \cdot \text{sec}. \tag{5.16}$$

(T° is the absolute temperature in degrees Kelvin.) The integrated bremsstrahlung emission is only weakly dependent on the temperature (it is proportional to $T^{1/2}$). If the gas contains ions with different charges Z, then the

expressions in (5.15) and (5.16) should be summed over all the species of ions.

We shall now find the coefficient of bremsstrahlung absorption using the principle of detailed balancing. If $U_{\nu p}$ is the spectral equilibrium radiation density, defined by the Planck equation (2.10),

$$U_{\nu p} = \frac{8\pi h\nu^3}{c^3} \frac{1}{e^{h\nu/kT} - 1}, \tag{5.17}$$

and a_ν is the spectral coefficient of the actual bremsstrahlung absorption per ion and per electron moving with velocity v, then the amount of radiation in the frequency interval between ν and $\nu + d\nu$, absorbed under conditions of thermodynamic equilibrium per unit time per unit volume, by electrons with velocities from v to $v + dv$, is

$$N_+ N_e U_{\nu p}\, d\nu \cdot cf(v)\, dv \cdot a_\nu (1 - e^{-h\nu/kT}). \tag{5.18}$$

The factor $(1 - e^{-h\nu/kT})$ accounts for the effective decrease in absorption caused by induced emission (re-emission, see §4 of Chapter II). In thermodynamic equilibrium the emission is exactly canceled out by the absorption, i.e., the expressions (5.18) and (5.14) are equal to each other. Here the velocities of electrons emitting and absorbing photons $h\nu$ are related by the conservation of energy relation

$$\frac{mv'^2}{2} = \frac{mv^2}{2} + h\nu.$$

Noting that $v\, dv = v'\, dv'$ and $dq_\nu = h\nu\, d\sigma_\nu$, we find the general relation between the unit absorption coefficient a_ν and the radiation cross section $d\sigma_\nu$

$$a_\nu = \frac{c^2 v'^2}{8\pi\nu^2 v} \frac{d\sigma_\nu(v')}{dv}. \tag{5.19}$$

Using (5.8) for dq_ν, we find from (5.14) and (5.18)

$$a_\nu = \frac{4\pi}{3\sqrt{3}} \frac{Z^2 e^6}{hcm^2 v\nu^3} = 1.8 \cdot 10^{14} \frac{Z^2}{v\nu^3}\ \mathrm{cm}^5. \tag{5.20}$$

This equation was derived by Kramers in 1923. Multiplying a_ν by $N_+ N_e$ and averaging with respect to the electron velocities using the Maxwell distribution function, we obtain the spectral coefficient of the actual bremsstrahlung absorption in the gas at the electron temperature T:

$$\kappa_\nu = \frac{4}{3}\left(\frac{2\pi}{3mkT}\right)^{1/2} \frac{Z^2 e^6}{hcm\nu^3} N_+ N_e = 3.69 \cdot 10^8 \frac{Z^2}{T^{\circ 1/2}\nu^3} N_+ N_e\ \mathrm{cm}^{-1}$$

$$= 4.1 \cdot 10^{-23} Z^2 \frac{N_+ N_e}{T^{\circ 7/2} x^3}\ \mathrm{cm}^{-1}, \qquad x = \frac{h\nu}{kT}. \tag{5.21}$$

In a more exact theory the formulas for the absorption coefficient (5.20) and (5.21) (and in all the other corresponding relations) contain a Gaunt factor g, which takes into account the deviations from Kramers' theory: $\kappa_\nu = (\kappa_\nu)_{\text{Kramers}} \cdot g$. An expression for the Gaunt factor may be found in Spitzer [87].

Recalling the definition of the frequency-averaged absorption coefficient characterizing the emission coefficient (2.102), let us calculate this quantity for the bremsstrahlung mechanism:

$$\kappa_1 = \frac{J}{cU_p} = \frac{J}{4\sigma T^4} = 6.52 \cdot 10^{-24} Z^2 \frac{N_+ N_e}{T^{\circ 7/2}} \text{ cm}^{-1}. \tag{5.22}$$

The corresponding mean free path is

$$l_1 = \frac{1}{\kappa_1} = 1.53 \cdot 10^{23} \frac{T^{\circ 7/2}}{Z^2 N_+ N_e} \text{ cm}. \tag{5.23}$$

Let us also calculate the Rosseland mean free path (2.80) for the case of a fully ionized gas with absorption only by bremsstrahlung (and all the ions having the same charge Z)

$$l = 4.8 \cdot 10^{24} \frac{T^{\circ 7/2}}{Z^2 N_+ N_e} \text{ cm}. \tag{5.24}$$

The Rosseland mean free path l for bremsstrahlung is equal to the spectral mean free path when the energy of the photons $h\nu = 5.8kT$. It is evident that when the radiant energy transfer occurs by heat conduction, the main role in the bremsstrahlung absorption is played by very high energy photons in the Wien region of the spectrum. On the other hand, for volume radiation the main role is played by the low energy photons. The mean coefficient κ_1 is equal to the spectral coefficient corresponding to $h\nu = 1.73kT$, corrected for induced emission ($\kappa_\nu(1 - e^{-h\nu/kT})$).

In order to give some idea of the order of magnitude of the optical characteristics of a plasma under conditions of bremsstrahlung emission we present a specific example. Let us consider hydrogen at a density $\rho = 1.17 \cdot 10^{-6}$ g/cm^3, which corresponds to a pressure of 10 mm Hg at room temperature, at a temperature $T = 100{,}000°\text{K}$. Under these conditions the hydrogen is completely dissociated and ionized, so that $N_+ = N_e = 7 \cdot 10^{17}$ cm^{-3}. The absorption coefficient for red light for which $\lambda = 6500$ Å is in this case equal to $\kappa_\nu = 5.7 \cdot 10^{-3}$ cm^{-1} and the mean free path $l_\nu = 1/\kappa_\nu = 175$ cm. The Rosseland mean free path $l = 3.1 \cdot 10^6$ cm. The mean free path characterizing the emission coefficient $l_1 = 0.98 \cdot 10^5$ cm.

If the dimensions of the body are much smaller than l_1, then the body

emits as a volume radiator (see §16 of Chapter II) and the rate of energy loss by radiation is

$$\frac{d(\rho\varepsilon)}{dt} = -J;$$

ε is the specific internal energy. In our example $J = 2.2 \cdot 10^{11}$ erg/cm^3 · sec. When the dissociation and ionization energies are taken into account, $\varepsilon = 41.6$ ev/atom, $\rho\varepsilon = 4.66 \cdot 10^7$ erg/cm^3. The initial time scale for radiative cooling $\tau = \rho\varepsilon/J = 2.12 \cdot 10^{-4}$ sec.

§4. Cross section for the capture of an electron by an ion with the emission of a photon

Let us consider the capture of a free electron by a hydrogen-like "ion" accompanied by the emission of a photon and the formation of a hydrogen-like "atom". We shall, as in §2, base our considerations on semiclassical concepts. In classical mechanics, without taking radiation into account, the transition from free to bound electronic states is continuous. The state or orbit of an electron is characterized by the total energy E of the electron-ion system and (in general) instead of the "impact parameter" ρ, the angular momentum is used. The angular momentum with the energy determines the geometric parameters of the trajectory. If the energy decreases with the momentum remaining constant, the hyperbolic orbits (which correspond to positive energy $E > 0$) make a continuous transition to a parabolic one ($E = 0$) and then, in the bound state of the system (characterized by negative energy $E < 0$), to elliptic orbits (Fig. 5.3). In view of the correspondence principle, the capture of a free electron, accompanied by the emission of a photon whose energy exceeds the initial kinetic energy of the electron E, is related to the transition of the electron from a hyperbolic to an elliptic orbit.

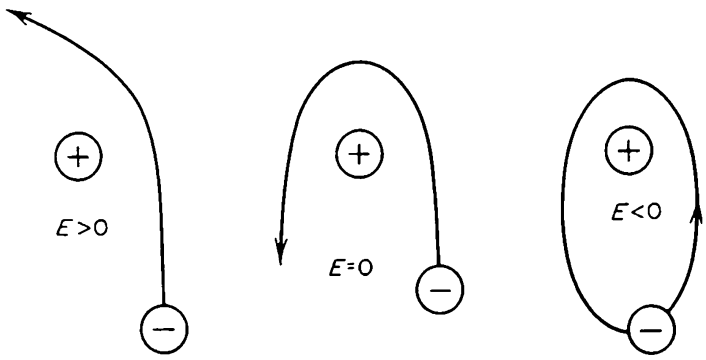


Fig. 5.3. Hyperbolic, parabolic, and elliptic electron orbits.

In classical mechanics the energy of the electron-ion system can be arbitrary. In quantum mechanics the energy spectrum of the system is continuous only if the electron is free and $E > 0$. In the bound state, when $E < 0$, the energy can assume discrete values only. The energy levels of a hydrogen-like atom E_n are described by the principal quantum number n, which assumes values from 1 to ∞,

$$E_n = -\frac{I_H Z^2}{n^2} = -\frac{I}{n^2}, \qquad I_H = \frac{e^2}{2a_0} = \frac{2\pi^2 me^4}{h^2}. \tag{5.25}$$

$I = I_H Z^2 = |E_1|$ is the absolute value of the ground-state energy, that is, the ionization potential. The binding energy of an electron in the nth quantum state is $E_n = |E_n| = I/n^2$. The energy level diagram for hydrogen was given in Fig. 2.2. It is well known that the kinetic energy averaged with respect to time of a bound electron moving in the Coulomb field of an ion is equal to one half of the average potential energy with the sign reversed and is equal to the total energy, also with the sign reversed: $E_{kin} = -E_{pot}/2 = -E$ ($E = E_{kin} + E_{pot}$). Consequently, averaging with respect to time gives

$$E_{kin} = \frac{m\overline{v^2}}{2} = \frac{I}{n^2} = \frac{I_H Z^2}{n^2}.$$

Taking into account the inequality (5.13), this equation shows that the motion of an electron in strongly excited quantum states with a large quantum number n is quasi-classical.

In considering bremsstrahlung emission in §2 we used the classical equation (5.8) for effective radiation to describe "transitions" of an electron from one hyperbolic orbit to another one at a lower energy. And we have extended the equation to include transitions to orbits of infinitesimal positive energy, that is, almost parabolic orbits, corresponding to radiation close to the maximum frequency $\nu_{max} = E/h$. Here, of course, the initial energy E was assumed to be sufficiently small, $E \ll I_H Z^2$, $v \ll 2\pi Ze^2/h$, in order for the motion in the initial state to be quasi-classical. The motion in the final state is even closer to quasi-classical, since the electron loses kinetic energy in the transition and is slowed down. As we have just shown, small negative energies also correspond to low velocities and the elliptic orbits are also close to parabolic (except that these are approached from the side of negative energies); it is, therefore, natural to extend (5.8) to the case of radiation at frequencies slightly exceeding ν_{max}, that is, to the case of electron capture to the higher levels. We should note, however, that the final state of the electron will be found in the discrete spectrum. The effective radiation in some small but finite frequency interval $\Delta\nu$, $\Delta q_\nu = (dq_\nu/d\nu)\,\Delta\nu$, is, according to the quantum interpretation, equal to $h\nu\,\Delta\sigma_\nu$, where $\Delta\sigma_\nu$ is the cross section for photon emission in the small

interval $\Delta\nu$. But now the emission of photons with energies in the range from $h\nu$ to $h\nu + \Delta(h\nu)$ corresponds to capture into a well-defined and finite number of levels Δn; and the capture cross section $\Delta\sigma_\nu$ can be represented as the product $\sigma_{cn}\,\Delta n$, where σ_{cn} is the average capture cross section into any level within this interval. This cross section depends upon the average number n in the small interval Δn. Thus,

$$\sigma_{cn} = \frac{\Delta\sigma_\nu}{\Delta n} = \frac{1}{h\nu}\frac{\Delta q_\nu}{\Delta n} = \frac{1}{h\nu}\left(\frac{dq_\nu}{d\nu}\right)\frac{\Delta\nu}{\Delta n}. \tag{5.26}$$

Using (5.25) to determine the energy spacing between the levels for large n, $|dE_n/dn| = h\,\Delta\nu/\Delta n = 2I_H Z^2/n^3$, and (5.8) for the effective radiation, we obtain the capture cross section into the level n of a free electron with an initial energy $E = mv^2/2$:

$$\sigma_{cn} = \frac{128\pi^4}{3\sqrt{3}}\frac{Z^4e^{10}}{mc^3h^4v^2\nu}\frac{1}{n^3} = \frac{2.1\cdot10^{-22}}{n^3}\frac{I_H Z^2}{E}\frac{I_H Z^2}{h\nu}\ \text{cm}^2. \tag{5.27}$$

The energy of a photon emitted during this capture is

$$h\nu = E + |E_n| = \frac{mv^2}{2} + \frac{I_H Z^2}{n^2}. \tag{5.28}$$

As shown by quantum-mechanical calculations (see the following section), the semiclassical equation (5.27) also gives good results for capture into the lower levels, including the ground level ($n = 1$), despite the fact that the motion of an electron in the ground state is no longer quasi-classical ($E_{\text{kin}} = \frac{1}{2}m\bar{v}^2 = I_H Z^2$). It is assumed, however, that the initial motion of the free electron is quasi-classical, that is, its initial energy $E \ll I_H Z^2$.

Let us use (5.27) to calculate the total cross section for the radiative capture of an electron with a given energy $E = mv^2/2$ into any level of a hydrogen-like ion. For this purpose we must take a sum of the cross section σ_{cn} given by (5.27), over all values of n from 1 to ∞, noting that the photons are emitted at different energies as given by (5.28)

$$\sigma_c = 2.1\cdot10^{-22}\frac{I_H Z^2}{E}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{n^3}\frac{1}{(E/I_H Z^2 + 1/n^2)} = \frac{2.8\cdot10^{-21}Z^2}{E_{ev}}\varphi\left(\frac{I_H Z^2}{E}\right). \tag{5.29}$$

Here φ denotes the summation over n. Roughly, for small electron energies $E \ll I_H Z^2$, $\varphi \approx \left(\sum_{n=1}^{n^*} 1/n\right) + \frac{1}{2}$, where $n^* \approx (I_H Z^2/E)^{1/2}$. For not too large (but also not too small) electron energies, when E is less than but still comparable with $I_H Z^2$, the sum φ is of the order of unity and the capture cross section is approximately $\sigma_c \approx 3\cdot10^{-21}Z^2/E_{ev}\ \text{cm}^2$.

It is interesting to compare the integrated effective radiation of a free electron with a given energy E which is slowed down in the field of a hydrogen-like ion, with the integrated radiation in the process of radiative capture, that is, the quantities $q_{\text{brems}} = \int dq_\nu = \int h\nu \, d\sigma_{\text{brems}}$ and $q_{\text{cap}} = \sum_n h\nu\sigma_{cn}$. The first quantity, according to (5.8), is equal to $q_{\text{brems}} = (dq_\nu/d\nu)E/h$, and the second, by virtue of the derivation of the cross section σ_{cn} (see (5.26)), is given by $q_{\text{cap}} = (dq_\nu/d\nu)I_{\text{H}}Z^2/h$, with the constant $(dq_\nu/d\nu)$ determined from (5.8). Both q_{brems} and q_{cap} are proportional to the energy intervals of the possible final

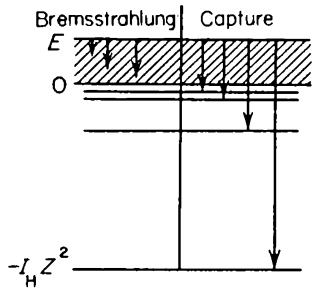


Fig. 5.4. Diagram showing the relationship between the energy intervals of the final states of an electron for bremsstrahlung and capture by an ion.

electronic states (Fig. 5.4) and their ratio is directly proportional to the ratio of these intervals

$$q_{\text{cap}}/q_{\text{brems}} = I_{\text{H}}Z^2/E.$$

§5. Cross section for the bound-free absorption of light by atoms and ions

Let us consider a process which is the reverse of radiative capture, namely the photoionization of a hydrogen-like atom, in other words the absorption of a photon accompanied by the transition of an electron into the continuous energy spectrum. As in the bremsstrahlung calculations, we shall use the principle of detailed balancing. The number of radiative captures of electrons with speeds from v to $v + dv$ into the nth ionic level per unit volume per unit time is given by

$$N_+ N_e f(v)\, dv \cdot v \cdot \sigma_{cn}. \tag{5.30}$$

This results in the emission of photons with the frequencies between ν and $\nu + d\nu$ related to the electron speeds by (5.28). The number of reverse processes, that is, photoionization of "atoms" in the nth quantum state by photons with frequencies between ν and $\nu + d\nu$, is

$$N_n \frac{U_{\nu p}}{h\nu}\, d\nu \cdot c \cdot \sigma_{\nu n}(1 - e^{-h\nu/kT}) \tag{5.31}$$

per unit volume per unit time, where $\sigma_{\nu n}$ is the cross section for the absorption

of a photon $h\nu$ by an atom in the nth state, N_n is the number of such atoms per unit volume, while the factor $(1 - e^{-h\nu/kT})$ again accounts for induced emission. Under the conditions of complete thermodynamic equilibrium, $f(v)$ is the Maxwell distribution function for the electrons and $U_{\nu p}$ is the Planck function; the number of excited atoms N_n is given by the Boltzmann equation

$$N_n = N_1 \frac{g_n}{g_1} e^{-\frac{(E_n - E_1)}{kT}} = N_1 \frac{g_n}{g_1} e^{-\frac{I}{kT}\left(1 - \frac{1}{n^2}\right)}, \tag{5.32}$$

where $g_n = 2n^2$ is the statistical weight of the nth level of the hydrogen-like atom, N_1 is the atom number density in the ground state, $g_1 = 2$, and $E_n - E_1 = I_H Z^2(1 - 1/n^2) = I(1 - 1/n^2)$ is the excitation energy of the nth state.

The number of free electrons, ions, and "neutral" atoms (if $Z > 1$, then a "neutral" hydrogen-like atom represents an ion with a charge $Z - 1$) are related by the Saha equation (see (3.44) in §5 of Chapter III):

$$\frac{N_+ N_e}{N} = 2\left(\frac{2\pi mkT}{h^2}\right)^{3/2} \frac{u_+}{u} e^{-I/kT}, \tag{5.33}$$

where the electronic partition function of the ion $u_+ = 1$. The "neutral" atom number density is $N = uN_1/g_1$, where u is the electronic partition function of the atom.

Equating the rates for the forward and reverse processes (5.30) and (5.31), and recalling all of our statements pertaining to the terms in these equations, we find the relation between the photoionization and radiative capture cross section

$$\sigma_{\nu n} = \frac{u_+}{g_n}\left(\frac{mvc}{h\nu}\right)^2 \sigma_{cn}.$$

Substituting into this relation σ_{cn} from (5.27), we obtain the cross section for the absorption of a photon $h\nu$ by a hydrogen-like atom whose "atomic" remainder charge is Z and which is in the nth quantum state

$$\sigma_{\nu n} = \frac{64\pi^4}{3\sqrt{3}} \frac{e^{10} m Z^4}{h^6 c v^3 n^5} = 7.9 \cdot 10^{-18} \frac{n}{Z^2}\left(\frac{\nu_n}{\nu}\right)^3 \text{ cm}^2. \tag{5.34}$$

Here ν_n denotes the minimum frequency of a photon still capable of removing an electron from the nth level: $h\nu_n = I_H Z^2/n^2$ (see (5.28)). The basic characteristic of this cross section is that it is inversely proportional to the cube of the frequency $\sigma_{\nu n} \sim (\nu_n/\nu)^3$. The cross section has a maximum at the absorption threshold, when $\nu = \nu_n$. Equation (5.34) is known in the literature as Kramers' formula.

A somewhat more rigorous, quantum-mechanical derivation of the photoionization of hydrogen-like atoms from high levels leads to an equation differing from (5.34) by the following correction factor (see [4]):

$$g' = 1 - 0.173\left(\frac{h\nu}{I_H Z^2}\right)^{1/3}\left[\frac{2}{n^2}\left(\frac{I_H Z^2}{h\nu}\right) - 1\right].$$

In the majority of cases of practical interest this factor is very close to unity so that it can, as a rule, be neglected.

The semiclassical relation (5.34), which by its derivation is valid only for strongly excited states $n \gg 1$, nevertheless gives good results even when applied to photoionization from the ground state $n = 1$. Quantum-mechanical calculations of the cross section for the photoelectric effect for the K atomic shell, i.e., for the ground state of the hydrogen-like atom, carried out using the exact wave functions for a free electron in a Coulomb field, give the following results (evaluated per electron, as in (5.33); see [5]):

$$\sigma_{\nu 1} \approx \frac{6.34 \cdot 10^{-18}}{Z^2}\left(\frac{\nu_1}{\nu}\right)^{8/3}, \qquad \nu - \nu_1 \ll \nu_1 ; \tag{5.35}$$

$$\sigma_{\nu 1} \approx \frac{8.32 \cdot 10^{-18}}{Z^2}\left(\frac{\nu_1}{\nu}\right)^{3}, \qquad \nu - \nu_1 \sim \nu_1 ; \tag{5.36}$$

$$\sigma_{\nu 1} \approx \frac{5.42 \cdot 10^{-17}}{Z^2}\left(\frac{\nu_1}{\nu}\right)^{3.5}, \qquad \nu \gg \nu_1 . \tag{5.37}$$

The first of these equations corresponds to the region near the absorption boundary, while the last one applies when the energy of the electron being detached is appreciably larger than the binding energy $h\nu_1 = I_H Z^2$, corresponding to conditions for which the Born approximation is applicable.

Comparison of (5.34) in which $n = 1$ has been set with (5.35) and (5.36) shows that at the absorption boundary, for $\nu = \nu_1$, the "semiclassical cross section" (5.34) is equal to $7.9 \cdot 10^{-18}/Z^2$ cm^2 and exceeds the quantum-mechanical cross section (5.35) by only 25%. For $\nu - \nu_1 \sim \nu_1$, when the energy of the detached electron is of the order of its binding energy in the ground state, (5.34) and (5.35) agree to within 5% and also predict the same dependence on frequency. A pronounced difference occurs only for $h\nu \gg I_H Z^2$, when the energy of the detached free electron is large $E \gg I_H Z^2$, i.e., in the Born region where the situation is the opposite of the quasi-classical situation. We shall see later that such high energy photons are always in the far Wien region of the spectrum and that they have practically no importance under conditions close to thermal equilibrium. The semiclassical equation (5.34) can therefore be used with good approximation to calculate the photoionization from all levels for hydrogen-like atoms. Similarly, the

radiative capture equation (5.27) is applicable to the capture of an electron into all levels, including the ground state; this fact was used in the preceding section for calculating the total capture cross section.

Let us briefly consider what one may expect from the application to complex atomic systems of the equations derived for hydrogen-like atoms. The low energy photons whose energies are considerably smaller than the ionization potential I of the atom or ion are absorbed (accompanied by the removal of an electron) only by strongly excited atoms (ions), whose excitation energy is not less than $I - h\nu$. However, in strongly excited states the optical electron moves in a very large orbit, where the field of the "atomic remainder" is very close to the Coulomb field produced by a charge equal to the charge of the "remainder." Hence, we may expect that the "hydrogen-like" approximation will be justified in this case. Unfortunately, no rigorous quantum-mechanical calculations of absorption by strongly excited atoms and ions are available to verify this assumption (though there is little reason to doubt its validity, *eds.*).

The limited available numerical calculations pertain primarily to the photoelectric effect from the ground state of atoms (calculations for ions are even scarcer). In this case the field in which the absorbing electron is moving is produced by a complex system of nuclear charges and charges of the remaining electrons; the dimensions of this system are comparable to the electron "orbit" and, of course, the field differs markedly from a Coulomb field. Correspondingly, the wave function of the electron differs greatly from the wave function of the S state of a hydrogen-like atom. For many atoms, the cross section for photoionization from the ground state differs markedly from the corresponding cross section for the hydrogen atom which, according to (5.34), is equal to $\sigma_{\nu_1} = 7.9 \cdot 10^{-18} (\nu_1/\nu)^3$ cm^2 (at the absorption boundary $\sigma^* = 7.9 \cdot 10^{-18}$ cm^2). For other states the cross sections are quite close to each other at the absorption boundary, but show a different frequency dependence. Thus, for example, the cross sections for oxygen and fluorine at the absorption boundary are approximately equal to $2.5 \cdot 10^{-18}$ cm^2, and are almost independent of frequency up to $\nu \approx 2\nu_1$. For nitrogen at the absorption boundary $\sigma^* = 7.5 \cdot 10^{-18}$ cm^2, and for carbon $\sigma^* = 10 \cdot 10^{-18}$ cm^2, but the cross sections decrease with increasing ν slower than ν^{-3}, as with hydrogen-like atoms†. For lithium $\sigma^* = 3.7 \cdot 10^{-18}$ cm^2 and for calcium $\sigma^* = 25 \cdot 10^{-18}$ cm^2. The divergence from "hydrogen-likeness" is especially pronounced in alkali metals. For sodium $\sigma^* = 0.31 \cdot 10^{-18}$ cm^2. The experimental values for rubidium are $\sigma^* = 0.1 \cdot 10^{-18}$ cm^2 and for cesium $\sigma^* = 0.6 \cdot 10^{-18}$ cm^2. A more detailed review of the available data can be found

† Plots of photoionization cross sections from the ground states of O, N, F, and C are given in [6].

in the article by Bates [7]. Fortunately, as we shall show below, in sufficiently rarefied gases close to thermodynamic equilibrium the role of the high-energy photons whose energy exceeds the ionization potentials of the atoms and ions is relatively small. Thus, the strong divergence from "hydrogen-likeness" in this case does not invalidate the use of the "hydrogen-like" approximation.

Recently Ivanova [84, 85] has carried out rigorous quantum-mechanical calculations of the photoionization cross sections from the ground state and from many excited levels of lithium-like atomic systems: lithium atoms, quadruply ionized nitrogen, and quintuply ionized oxygen. The wave functions were calculated by the Hartree–Fock method. On the basis of cross sections thus found she has calculated the absorption coefficients for N^{+4} and O^{+5} ions from 20 levels over a wide range of frequencies and temperatures.

In some cases the radiative capture of electrons by neutral atoms accompanied by the formation of negative ions and the reverse process of the photoelectric absorption of photons by negative ions* is of great importance. Examples may be found in the absorption of light in stellar atmospheres, in which negative hydrogen ions may play an important role, and the absorption of light in air under certain conditions in which negative oxygen ions are of considerable importance. The binding energies or ionization potentials of negative ions, which define the lower absorption limit $h\nu_{min}$, are equal to 0.75 ev for the atomic hydrogen ion H^-, 1.45 ev for the atomic oxygen ion O^-, and 0.46 ev for the molecular ion O_2^- see [53]. The relationship between the frequency and the absorption cross section does not follow the inverse cube law. Figure 5.5 presents the results of quantum-mechanical calculations of the effective photoionization (photodetachment) cross section for O^-.

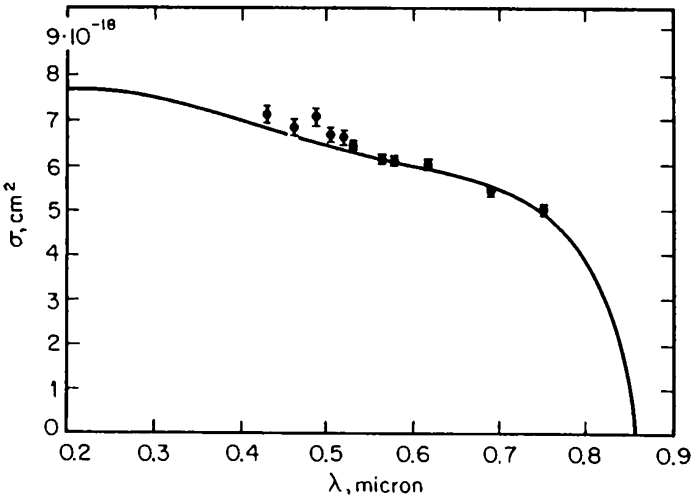


Fig. 5.5. Cross section for light absorption by negative oxygen ions O^-.

* *Editors' note.* Often referred to as photodetachment.

The curve is taken from [8]. Experimental points, taken from [9], fall near the theoretical curve. Data on absorption by H^- ions may be found in [6].

§6. Continuous absorption coefficient in a gas of hydrogen-like atoms

Let us calculate the coefficient of bound-free absorption of photons $h\nu$ by hydrogen-like atoms with a "nuclear" charge equal to Z. At a given temperature the gas contains atoms occupying all possible excitation levels. If N_n is the atom number density in the nth quantum state, and $\sigma_{\nu n}$ is the cross section for the absorption of a photon $h\nu$ by these atoms, then the absorption coefficient* is

$$\kappa'_\nu = \sum_{n^*}^{\infty} N_n \sigma_{\nu n}. \tag{5.38}$$

The lower limit in this summation is determined from the condition that the photon energy is greater than the binding energy of the electron in the atom, $h\nu > |E_n|$. Otherwise, the photon cannot remove an electron and, as a result, atoms excited to a state $n < n^*$ for which $|E_n| > h\nu$ cannot participate in the absorption of photons with energy $h\nu$. In particular, if the energy of the photon exceeds the binding energy of an electron in the ground state of the atom, i.e., the ionization potential $I = I_H Z^2$, then all the atoms will participate in the absorption ($n^* = 1$). Only strongly excited atoms ($n^* \gg 1$) participate in the absorption of low energy photons $h\nu \ll I_H Z^2$.

The absorption curve as a function of frequency is of the "sawtooth" shape, as shown in Fig. 5.6. As soon as the energy $h\nu$ reaches the value of the binding energy of an electron in any state $|E_n|$, the atoms excited into this level participate in the absorption and the absorption coefficient jumps to a higher

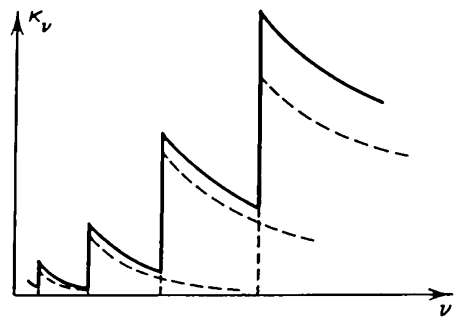


Fig. 5.6. Absorption "sawtooth fence". The dashed lines correspond to absorption by atoms in a given quantum state. The solid curve is the total absorption coefficient. The diagram is schematic.

* We denote here the bound-free absorption by a prime in order to distinguish it from the free-free absorption coefficient, which will be denoted by a double prime.

value. Then, until the next state is excited, κ'_ν decreases as ν^{-3}, in accordance with the relationship $\sigma_{\nu n} \sim \nu^{-3}$. Each level contributes its "tooth" to the "sawtooth fence" $N_n\sigma_{\nu n}$ (the dashed lines in Fig. 5.6), and the total absorption coefficient κ'_ν is obtained by summing all the "teeth" (the solid line in Fig. 5.6).

If the gas is in thermodynamic equilibrium, then N_n, the number of atoms in the nth state, is determined from the Boltzmann equation (5.32). For large values of n, where the exponent is practically independent of n, the number of atoms N_n is simply proportional to n^2 ($g_n = 2n^2$). Since the cross section $\sigma_{\nu n} \sim n^{-5}$, the terms in the summation (5.38) decrease as $1/n^3$ for $n \to \infty$, so that the contribution of the successive levels to the absorption of light at a given frequency decreases very rapidly and the infinite sum converges*.

We shall consider temperatures for which the degree of ionization is not very large. As shown in §5 of Chapter III, appreciable ionization in a not too dense gas begins when kT is still much less than the ionization potential I. The number of excited atoms in this case is very small, since the excitation of the lowest state $n = 2$ requires an energy close to the ionization potential, equal to $\frac{3}{4}I$. For $kT \ll I$ the number of atoms N_1 in the ground state is thus quite close to the total number of atoms $N = \sum N_n$, so that we can approximately set $N_1 \approx N$ in the Boltzmann equation (5.32). Substituting N_n and $\sigma_{\nu n}$ as given by (5.32) and (5.34) into (5.38), and introducing the notation

$$x_n = \frac{|E_n|}{kT} = \frac{|E_1|}{kT}\frac{1}{n^2} = \frac{x_1}{n^2},$$

$$x_1 = \frac{|E_1|}{kT} = \frac{I_{\mathrm{H}}Z^2}{kT} = \frac{I}{kT}, \tag{5.39}$$

$$x = \frac{h\nu}{kT},$$

we obtain the coefficient of bound-free absorption in the form

$$\kappa'_\nu = \frac{64\pi^4}{3\sqrt{3}}\frac{e^{10}mZ^4N}{h^6c\nu^3}\sum_{n^*}^{\infty}\frac{1}{n^3}e^{-(x_1-x_n)}. \tag{5.40}$$

To obtain the total continuous absorption coefficient we must add to κ'_ν the coefficient of bremsstrahlung absorption given by (5.21) for the free electrons in the field of the ionized atoms, i.e., the "hydrogen-like ions". Expressing the product N_+N_e in (5.21) in terms of the number of "neutral"

* In an actual ionized gas, due to the interaction between the atoms and ions, the upper excitation levels are cut off (see §6 of Chapter III), so that the number of terms in the summation (5.38) is finite. In our case it is not necessary to cut off the summation with respect to n, since the sum converges very rapidly.

atoms given by the Saha equation (5.33) and noting that $u \approx g_1 = 2$ and $N \approx N_1$, we rewrite the bremsstrahlung absorption coefficient as

$$\kappa_\nu'' = \frac{16\pi^2}{3\sqrt{3}} \frac{Z^2 e^6 kTN}{h^4 c\nu^3} e^{-I/kT} = \frac{64\pi^4}{3\sqrt{3}} \frac{Z^4 e^{10} mN}{h^6 c\nu^3} \frac{e^{-x_1}}{2x_1}. \tag{5.41}$$

The total coefficient $\kappa_\nu = \kappa_\nu' + \kappa_\nu''$ is then

$$\kappa_\nu = \frac{64\pi^4}{3\sqrt{3}} \frac{e^{10} mZ^4 N}{h^6 c\nu^3} \left\{ \sum_{n^*}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^3} e^{-(x_1 - x_n)} + \frac{e^{-x_1}}{2x_1} \right\}. \tag{5.42}$$

The above equation can be considerably simplified if the photon energy is small in comparison with the ionization potential, so that the photon is absorbed by strongly excited atoms only (n^* is large). Since the density of the levels increases rapidly with increasing n, the summation for large values of n can be replaced by integration (the "differential" corresponds to $\Delta n = 1$). Integration with respect to n is equivalent to integration of the energy states over the spectrum with the transformation from the discrete to a continuous spectrum, in accordance with the relationship $dn/n^3 = -\frac{1}{2}\, dx_n/x_1$. The lower limit of the integral with respect to x_n should, obviously, be the dimensionless photon energy $x = h\nu/kT$. Thus,

$$\sum_{n^*}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^3} e^{-(x_1 - x_n)} \approx -\frac{e^{-x_1}}{2x_1} \int_x^0 e^{x_n}\, dx_n = \frac{e^{-x_1}}{2x_1} (e^x - 1). \tag{5.43}$$

If we formally extend the summation or integration to "negative binding energies", or, equivalently, to "excitation" energies $x_1 - x_n$ exceeding the ionization potential, then the integral with respect to x_n from 0 to $-\infty$ gives $e^{-x_1}/2x_1$, in complete correspondence with the free-free transition. This should have been expected, since the states of an atom with an "excitation" exceeding the ionization potential represent the states with a detached electron, and the cross section of bound-free absorption was derived by assuming that the transition from bound to free electron states is continuous. Substituting (5.43) into (5.42), factoring out $I/kT = I_H Z^2/kT$ from the coefficient in front of the braces, and canceling it with x_1 in the denominator of (5.43), we obtain the final equation for the absorption coefficient for low energy photons $h\nu \ll I$*:

$$\kappa_\nu = \frac{16\pi^2}{3\sqrt{3}} \frac{e^6 Z^2 kTN}{h^4 c\nu^3} e^{-\frac{I - h\nu}{kT}} = 0.96 \cdot 10^{-7} \frac{NZ^2}{T^{\circ 2}} \frac{e^{-(x_1 - x)}}{x^3} \text{ cm}^{-1}. \tag{5.44}$$

The absorption coefficient κ_ν is not proportional to Z^4, as might appear by glancing at (5.40), but only to Z^2. In order to clarify this, we recall how the

* This equation is frequently referred to as the Kramers–Unsöld formula.

factor Z^4 arose in (5.40). One factor Z^2 enters in the coefficient because the absorption cross section is proportional to the square of the "acceleration" of an electron in a Coulomb field (according to the classical theory) or to the square of the matrix element of the interaction energy between an electron and the "nucleus" (according to the quantum-mechanical treatment). The second factor Z^2 appears because the absorption cross section $\sigma_{\nu n}$ is proportional to the spacing between the levels, which, in turn, is proportional to the total energy interval of the bound states, $I = I_H Z^2$. The cross section $\sigma_{\nu n}$ is actually proportional to the energy spacing between the levels, since the radiative capture cross section, which is related to the absorption cross section by the principle of detailed balancing, is itself proportional to this separation (see (5.21)). In summing the partial coefficient $\kappa'_{\nu n} = N_n \sigma_{\nu n}$ over the levels or, equivalently, integrating over the energy interval of bound states participating in the absorption of the given photon, the latter dependence on Z^2 disappears. The preceding remarks about the relationship between κ_ν and Z become significant when we consider multiply charged ions (see below).

It is evident from (5.42) and (5.43) that the contributions of bound-free transitions and free-free transitions to the total continuous absorption coefficient κ_ν are in the ratio

$$(e^x - 1) : 1 = (e^{h\nu/kT} - 1) : 1.$$

Hence, it follows that the fundamental role in the absorption of high energy photons $h\nu \gg kT$ is played by the bound-free transitions, while in the case of absorption of low energy photons $h\nu \ll kT$ the main contribution is given by the free-free transitions.

§7. Continuous absorption of light in a monatomic gas in the singly ionized region

Let us consider the continuous absorption of light in inert monatomic gases such as argon, xenon, and others and in monatomic metallic vapors, in the singly ionized region. The reason for assuming that the gas is monatomic is to exclude from consideration the quasi-continuous molecular spectra (if the molecules are almost fully dissociated then, obviously, any gas appears as monatomic). The singly ionized region lies in a range of temperatures of the order of 6000–30,000°K (depending on the ionization potential of the atoms and on the gas density) and is therefore of great interest for many laboratory studies and practical applications. At still higher temperatures, double and triple ionizations become important; they must be taken into account in considering the absorption process and will be discussed in the next section.

We consider a strongly excited atom as a hydrogen-like system, so that the "optical" electron (which is one of the outer valence electrons) moves in a large orbit in the field produced by the nucleus and by the remaining electrons. If the dimensions of the system of charges forming the "atomic remainder" are not very large in comparison with the orbit of the "optical" electron (which is the case in a strongly excited atom) then the whole system can be represented as a point charge $Z = 1$ producing a Coulomb field (if we are not dealing with a neutral atom but with an ion, then Z is one greater than the ionic charge; see the following section).

Extending the results obtained for hydrogen-like atoms to multi-electron atoms, it is natural to replace the ionization potential in all equations by the actual potential of the given atom. Indeed, the basic factor which determines the temperature dependence of the absorption coefficient for photons whose energy is considerably smaller than the ionization potential is the Boltzmann factor $\exp[-(I - h\nu)/kT]$; the number of atoms sufficiently excited for the removal of an electron by a photon is proportional to this factor. Of course, the Boltzmann factor is completely independent of whether the atom is hydrogen-like or more complex. One of the terms in the Boltzmann factor $\exp(-I/kT)$ describes the degree of ionization or, more precisely, the product $N_+ N_e$, to which the bremsstrahlung absorption coefficient is proportional, again independently of the type of atom.

In complex atoms each of the "hydrogen-like" levels with a given principal quantum number n splits into several levels in accordance with its statistical weight. This comes from the fact that the field of complex atoms differs from a Coulomb field, and as a result there is an absence of l-degeneracy. Therefore, the energies of the levels with the same principal quantum number n, but with different orbital numbers l, do not coincide (in contrast to the case of hydrogen-like atoms). If we take into account this "multiplicity" of levels in complex atoms, which leads to the appearance of a large number of more closely spaced "teeth" in the "sawtooth fence" curve for $\kappa(\nu)$, then the replacement of the summation over levels by an integration or, equivalently, the replacement of the "sawtooth fence" by an averaged smooth curve, becomes even more applicable than in the case of hydrogen-like atoms (see Unsöld [10]).

The absorption of the low energy photons whose energies are considerably smaller than the ionization potential should, apparently, be fairly well described by the relation (5.44) derived for hydrogen-like atoms; here, Z for neutral atoms should be taken equal to unity. Actually, the upper levels, that is, the only levels that are accessible for the removal of electrons by low energy photons, are in complex atoms very similar to "hydrogen-like" levels, because the field at large distances from the atomic "remainder" behaves very much like a Coulomb field. The use of (5.44) for high energy photons, which are absorbed by atoms in the ground or low excitation states, can lead to

considerable error*. Equation (5.44) becomes completely invalid for photon energies exceeding the ionization potential $h\nu > I$, $x > x_1$. In this case all levels from $n = 1$ to ∞ are included in the summation with respect to n, and (5.43) with a variable lower limit of integration becomes meaningless. The summation over the levels is in this case simply a constant and is independent of ν (of x). A dominant role in the absorption of these photons $h\nu > I$ is played by atoms in the ground state, so that the sum can be taken to be given by the first term only, that is, unity. This gives the approximate equation

$$\kappa_\nu = \frac{32\pi^2}{3\sqrt{3}} \frac{e^6 Z^2 N}{h^4 c \nu^3} I = 0.96 \cdot 10^{-7} \frac{NZ^2}{T^{\circ 2}} \frac{2x_1}{x^3} \text{ cm}^{-1} \qquad \text{for} \quad x > x_1, \; h\nu > I, \tag{5.45}$$

which should replace (5.44) for $h\nu > I$.

Let us find the Rosseland mean free path for a monatomic gas in the singly ionized region. The Rosseland mean free path is determined by the reciprocal of the absorption coefficient, which we can call the transmissivity. The spectral mean free path $l_\nu = 1/\kappa_\nu$ which characterizes the transmission is shown schematically in Fig. 5.7. The transmission frequency regions are the opposite of

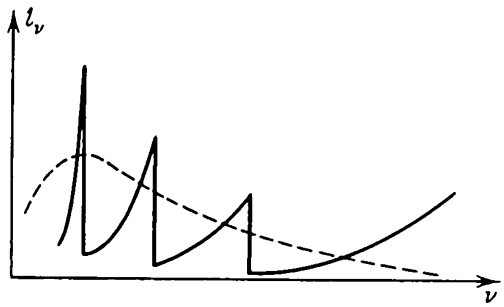


Fig. 5.7. "Sawtooth" transmission curve. The solid line shows the spectral mean free path as a function of frequency. The dashed line is the spectral mean free path with the teeth "smoothed". The diagram is schematic.

the absorption regions and are situated near the jumps, on the lower frequency side. There is practically no transmission in the region of photon energies $h\nu$ exceeding the ionization potential, since such photons are very strongly absorbed by atoms in the ground state. The main contribution to the radiant energy transfer is made by the photons corresponding to the maximum of the weighting funtion in the Rosseland integral (2.80), at $x = h\nu/kT \approx 4$. If the temperature (times k) is much less than the ionization potential, as is usually the case with not too dense a gas in the singly ionized region, then the absorption

* See §5, p. 265, where calculated photon absorption cross sections are given for some atoms in their ground states.

of these photons can be approximately described by (5.44). The smaller is $h\nu$ the more exact is this equation, which can also be used to calculate the mean free path (the transmission "sawtooth" curve is, according to this equation, replaced by the smooth curve x^3e^{-x} shown in Fig. 5.7 by the dashed line). Since the high frequencies $x > x_1$ make practically no contribution to the Rosseland integral (2.80), we can evaluate the latter by extending (5.44), which applies only for $x < x_1$, to $x > x_1$. In fact, (5.44) formally ensures rapid damping of transmission for $x > x_1$, $x \to \infty$. Substituting (5.44) into the Rosseland integral (2.80), we get for the Rosseland mean free path*

$$l = 0.9 \cdot 10^7 \frac{T^{\circ 2}}{NZ^2} e^{I/kT} \text{ cm}. \tag{5.46}$$

It should be noted that if the Rosseland mean free path is calculated using an absorption coefficient obtained not from (5.44) but from the "exact" equation (5.42) for hydrogen-like atoms, that is, without replacing the transmission "sawtooth" curve by a smooth curve, the resulting mean free paths will be approximately five times larger than those given by (5.46) (for $x_1 = I/kT \sim 10$). Let us give an example of calculating the Rosseland mean free path using (5.46). For hydrogen at $T = 11{,}600°\text{K} = 1$ ev, $N = 10^{19}$ cm^{-3}, we obtain $l = 100$ cm (the degree of ionization under these conditions is 0.02).

If the mean absorption coefficient κ_1 characterizing the integrated emission from the gas is formally calculated from (2.105) using (5.44) and (5.45), then the corresponding mean free path will be given by

$$l_1 = \frac{1}{\kappa_1} = 2.3 \cdot 10^7 \frac{T^{\circ 2}}{NZ^2} e^{I/kT} \frac{kT}{I} \text{ cm}. \tag{5.47}$$

It should be noted, however, that this equation may yield a considerable error, since the main contribution to the integral (2.105) comes from the high-frequency region $x > x_1$, where the hydrogen-like approximation is not satisfactory (the emission of high energy photons comes from the capture of electrons into the ground atomic levels).

The temperature dependence of the continuous absorption coefficient for moderate energy photons, those with energies much smaller than the ionization potential $kT \ll I$ in the singly ionized region, is essentially given by the relationship $\kappa_\nu \sim \exp(-I/kT)$, and is thus very sharp. Accordingly, the mean free path l is proportional to $\exp(I/kT)$. The Boltzmann temperature dependence of the absorption is characteristic of both bound-free transitions and bremsstrahlung absorption, of both the components κ'_ν and κ''_ν in κ_ν (since $\kappa''_\nu \sim N_+ N_e \sim e^{I/kT}$).

* The resulting integral $\int_0^\infty x^3 e^{-x} G'(x)\, dx$ is equal to 0.87.

A number of authors have proposed various methods for the improvement of the Kramers and Kramers–Unsöld formulas for application to more complex atoms than the hydrogen-like atoms for which they were derived. Unsöld [11] introduced an effective charge Z^* in place of the "atomic remainder" charge Z. The effective charge is defined in such a way that the quantity $E_{n,l} = -I_H Z^{*2}/n^2$ corresponds to the actual energy of the level of the complex atom with the given principal and orbital quantum numbers n and l. In addition, the Kramers formula is multiplied by γ/Σ_0, where γ is equal to the ratio of the number of sublevels of the complex atom for the given n and l to the analogous quantity for the hydrogen atom, and Σ_0 is the partition function of the atom. Unsöld [11] and others [12] recommend $Z^{*2} \approx 4$–7 for all levels which correspond to the energy of the ground atomic state.

Burgess and Seaton [13], using one-electron semiempirical wave functions found by the quantum defect method*, obtained a general expression for the photoionization cross section of an arbitrary atom or ion. Biberman and Norman [14], starting with the Burgess and Seaton formula, developed an approximate method for calculating the continuous absorption coefficient for nonhydrogen-like atoms. They represent the absorption coefficient in the form of an equation of the Kramers–Unsöld type, where the factor Z^2 is replaced by some function $\xi(\nu, T)$ of frequency and, in general, of temperature. They calculated this function for O, N, and C atoms (where it is approximately independent of temperature). The upper atomic levels are always "hydrogen-like", hence the low energy photons are absorbed in the same manner as in hydrogen; thus, as $h\nu \to 0$, $\xi \to 1$ (for $Z = 1$). As the photon energy increases from zero to $h\nu \sim 4$ ev, the coefficient ξ for these atoms decreases monotonically to a value of about 1/5. Functions for several other atoms (Li, Al, Hg, Kr, Xe, and Ar) are calculated in [15]. For example, for argon in the visible region of the spectrum $h\nu \sim 2$–3 ev, $\xi \sim 1.5$–2. The parameter ξ varies irregularly from atom to atom.

A survey of the results obtained by the quantum defect method is given in [55]. The results agree rather well with the available experimental data. There exist experimental indications that the Kramers–Unsöld theory gives fairly accurate results for inert gases. Dronov, Sviridov, and Sobolev [42] studied the continuous luminous spectrum of krypton and xenon in a shock tube. The measured intensities agree satisfactorily with the values calculated by the Kramers–Unsöld theory.

* The term quantum defect refers to the quantity $\Delta n(E_{n,l}) = n - n_l^*$, where n is the principal quantum number for the $E_{n,l}$ atomic level and n_l^* is an effective number such that $E_{n,l} = -I_H Z^2/n_l^{*2}$. The quantum defect characterizes the deviation of the energy for some particular level of a complex atom or ion from the energy of the corresponding level of a hydrogen-like atom.

§8. Radiation mean free paths for multiply ionized gas atoms

At very high temperatures, of the order of several tens of thousands of degrees and above, the atoms of a gas are multiply ionized. At these temperatures the molecules are completely dissociated, so that all gases are "monatomic" and behave in the same manner with respect to the absorption of light. We shall determine the radiation mean free paths in a multiply ionized gas. (The results presented below were obtained by one of the present authors [18].) For simplicity we shall consider the gas to consist of atoms of the same element.

Ionization equilibrium calculations show that for most temperatures and densities the gas contains only doubly or triply charged ions in any significant amount (see §7, Chapter III). Each of these ions contributes to the continuous absorption and participates in the bound-free as well as in the free-free transitions. The same calculations show that for a gas of not too high density the ionization potentials of the ions present in large numbers are always much greater than kT. For example, in air at a density 1/100 of atmospheric, the "average" ionization potential of the ions $\bar{I}$ (corresponding to ions with an "average" charge at the given density and temperature) is approximately 11 times greater than kT. Consequently, photons with energies $h\nu$ exceeding kT by a factor of 3–5, which play the principal role in radiant energy transfer, are absorbed not from the ground state, but from the excited ionic levels. As in the case of neutral atoms, this fact can be used as a basis for extending the equations derived for hydrogen-like atoms to multiply charged ions. Moreover, the hydrogen-like approximation for multiply charged ions is even more justified than for neutral atoms, since the field produced by the "atomic remainder" of a multiply charged ion is closer to a Coulomb field the larger is the charge of the "remainder".

We shall regard continuous absorption by multiply charged ions as an absorption by hydrogen-like atoms with an appropriate charge. Let a gas containing N nuclei per unit volume at a temperature T have N_m atoms ionized m times per unit volume (for brevity we shall refer to them as m ions). The total coefficient of the bound-free absorption by m ions and of the free-free absorption in the field of $m + 1$ ions will be described by (5.44) and (5.45), where the charge Z is set equal to the charge of the "atomic remainder" of m ions, $Z = m + 1$, and in place of the ionization potential we introduce the actual potential of the m ion, I_{m+1}. The combining of the bound-free and free-free coefficients for multiply charged ions corresponds in all respects to the same procedure in the singly ionized region. Actually, the free-free absorption coefficient in the field of $m + 1$ ions is proportional to the product $N_{m+1}N_e$, which as before can be expressed in terms of the number of m ions

N_m from the Saha equation (3.44). Let us write down the total absorption coefficient in the form

$$\kappa_{\nu m} = \frac{aN_m(m+1)^2}{T^2} e^{-x_{1m}} F_m(x), \tag{5.48}$$

where

$$a = \frac{16\pi^2}{3\sqrt{3}} \frac{e^6}{hck^2} = 0.96 \cdot 10^{-7} \text{ cm}^2 \text{ deg}^2,$$

$$x_{1m} = I_{m+1}/kT, \qquad x = h\nu/kT,$$

and $F_m(x)$ depends on the frequency according to

$$F_m(x) = \frac{e^x}{x^3} \qquad \text{for} \quad x < x_{1m}. \tag{5.49}$$

For photons whose energy exceeds the ionization potential, we shall set, according to (5.45),

$$F_m(x) = 2x_{1m} \frac{e^{x_{1m}}}{x^3} \qquad \text{for} \quad x > x_{1m}. \tag{5.50}$$

To obtain the total absorption coefficient at a frequency ν we must sum the partial coefficients $\kappa_{\nu m}$ over all types of ions, i.e., over the charge m

$$\kappa_\nu = \sum_m \kappa_{\nu m}. \tag{5.51}$$

Let us first determine the mean absorption coefficient κ_1 which characterizes the integrated emission coefficient. Substituting the spectral coefficient κ_ν into (2.105) and evaluating the integral over the spectrum, we get

$$\kappa_1 = \frac{1}{l_1} = \frac{45a}{\pi^4 T^2} \sum_m N_m(m+1)^2 x_{1m} e^{-x_{1m}}. \tag{5.52}$$

Now let us find the Rosseland mean free path by substituting κ_ν into (2.80)

$$l = \frac{T^2}{a} \int_0^\infty \frac{G'(x)\,dx}{\sum_m N_m(m+1)^2 e^{-x_{1m}} F_m(x)}. \tag{5.53}$$

Here $G'(x)$ is the Rosseland weighting factor. The integration over the spectrum in this expression cannot be carried out, as was done for κ_1, without the help of additional considerations. This comes from the fact that here we do not average the absorption coefficient, which is additive, but its reciprocal. It is still possible, however, to carry out an approximate integration. According to (5.49), all ions in their transmission region, with $x < x_{1m}$ ($h\nu < I_{m+1}$), absorb light in exactly the same manner with respect to frequency variation. In fact, the upper limit of the integral (5.53) is the minimum transmission

limit of the ions present in the gas in numbers large enough to yield a significant contribution to the absorption.

As noted above, for most temperatures and densities only doubly or triply charged ions are found in appreciable numbers. Since the average ionization potential $\bar{I}$ is much greater than kT, the transmission limits for these ions x_{1m} lie outside the limits of that spectral region which makes an appreciable contribution to the integral (5.53). Therefore, approximately, we may neglect the dependence of the function $F_m(x)$ on m and take out the function from the summation with respect to m. In addition, we may extend (5.49) for $F_m(x)$ to values of $x > x_{1m}$ in a manner similar to that in the preceding section. After these simplifications the integral becomes exactly the same as for neutral atoms (see footnote to (5.46)). We obtain

$$l = \frac{0.87T^2}{a} \frac{1}{\sum_m N_m(m+1)^2 e^{-x_{1m}}}. \tag{5.54}$$

For an approximate evaluation of the summations over m in (5.52) and (5.54) we shall use the method applied in §7, Chapter III, in the calculation of the thermodynamic functions of multiply ionized gases. We shall regard the distribution of N_m ions as a δ-function about an "average" charge $\bar{m}$ defined by (3.57). As shown in §7 of Chapter III, the ion distribution function has a sharp peak described by the Gaussian curve $N_m \sim \exp[-(m-\bar{m})^2/\Delta^2]$ (see (3.58)). If we expand the factor $e^{-x_{1m}}$ contained in the summations (5.52) and (5.54) about an average value $\bar{x}_{1m}$, we find that this factor depends on $m - \bar{m}$ according to $e^{-x_{1m}} \approx \exp[-\bar{x}_{1m} - const(m-\bar{m})]$; thus it is a weaker function of $m - \bar{m}$ than is N_m. Therefore, in this case the application of the approximate method for the calculation of the summation over m is, as in §7 of Chapter III, permissible. Taking the average coefficients of N_m in the summation terms outside the summation sign and noting that $\sum N_m = N$, we obtain

$$l = \frac{0.87T^2}{a} \frac{e^{\bar{x}_1}}{N(\bar{m}+1)^2},$$

$$l_1 = \frac{\pi^4 T^2}{45a} \frac{e^{\bar{x}_1}}{N(\bar{m}+1)^2 \bar{x}_1},$$

where $\bar{x}_1 \equiv \bar{x}_{1m} = \bar{I}/kT$. Using (3.56) to replace the exponential, and substituting the numerical value of a, we obtain finally

$$l = \frac{4.4 \cdot 10^{22} T^{\circ 7/2}}{N^2 \bar{m}(\bar{m}+1)^2} \text{ cm}, \tag{5.55}$$

$$l_1 = \frac{1.1 \cdot 10^{23} T^{\circ 7/2}}{N^2 \bar{m}(\bar{m}+1)^2 \bar{x}_1} \text{ cm}. \tag{5.56}$$

The average charge m and the average relative ionization potential $\bar{x}_1 = \bar{I}/kT$ are determined as functions of temperature and density by solving (3.57).

We can verify that the error introduced by the approximate evaluation of the summation over m is very small, and in all cases is certainly smaller than the possible errors arising from the use of the hydrogen-like approximation for complex ions. It is, however, reasonable to expect that (5.55) and (5.56) give the correct order for the mean free paths and correctly describe their dependence on the gas temperature and density. For illustration, numerical values of the mean free paths for air are shown in Table 5.2*. Unfortunately, it is not possible to give a good power law interpolation formula—so convenient for practical purposes—which would describe the dependence of $l(T, N)$ and $l_1(T, N)$ over a wide range of the variables. Roughly, the exponents in the law $l \sim T^{\alpha}N^{-\beta}$ are: $\alpha \sim 1.5$–3, and $\beta \sim 1.6$–1.9.

Table 5.2

RADIATION MEAN FREE PATHS IN AIR FOR CONDITIONS OF MULTIPLE IONIZATION

		N/N_{stand}; $N_{\text{stand}} = 5.34 \cdot 10^{19}$ cm^{-3}		
T, °K		1	10^{-1}	10^{-2}
50,000	$\bar{m}$	1.4	1.85	2.35
	l, cm	0.053	2.8	170
	l_1, cm	0.02	0.8	39
100,000	$\bar{m}$	2.72	3.47	4.1
	l, cm	0.13	7	470
	l_1, cm	0.05	2	110
250,000	$\bar{m}$	4.85	5.15	5.2
	l, cm	0.72	61.5	6,000
	l_1, cm	0.24	15.6	1,200
500,000	$\bar{m}$	5.2	5.4	5.85
	l, cm	6.8	610	50,000
	l_1, cm	2.0	140	9,500

If we consider the dependence of the mean free path on temperature at low temperatures, we find that the function $l(T)$ has a minimum. In the singly ionized region with $kT \ll I_1$, then $l \sim e^{I_1/kT}$ (see (5.46)), so that it decreases very rapidly with temperature. The mean free path has a minimum in the region where the double ionization begins (in air at $T \sim$ 20,000–40,000°K). Thereafter, the mean free path increases with temperature, initially slower than

* The table presented in [18] contains an error. All values of the mean free paths l and l_1 were erroneously decreased by a factor of 10.

$T^{7/2}$ and then, after complete ionization when only the bremsstrahlung mechanism remains important, in proportion to $T^{7/2}$ (see (5.24)). It should be noted that the Rosseland mean free path does not increase indefinitely; light scattering becomes significant for very small absorptions (see §2 of Chapter II), and this has not been taken into account in our calculations. The mean free path for Compton scattering of photons of energy $h\nu \ll mc^2 = 500$ kev in air at standard density is 37 m. This is the upper limit of the Rosseland mean free path in standard density air. We would emphasize that the character of the relationships $l(T, N)$ and $l_1(T, N)$, as well as the orders of magnitude of the mean free paths under conditions of multiple ionization, are approximately the same for all gases, because the potentials for each successive ionization are more or less similar for all elements.

As an example let us estimate the emission coefficient and rate of radiative cooling for a transparent parcel of air with dimensions $R \ll l_1$. At $T = 50{,}000°\text{K}$ and $N = 10^{-2}N_{\text{stand}}$, $l_1 = 39$ cm and $J = 4\sigma T^4/l_1 = 3.6 \cdot 10^{13}$ erg/cm^3 · sec. The internal energy of air under these conditions is $\varepsilon = 83$ ev/atom. The initial time scale for cooling $\tau = N\varepsilon/J$ is $\tau = 1.9 \cdot 10^{-6}$ sec ($d(N\varepsilon)/dt = -J$). The method given above for calculating radiation mean free paths has been improved upon somewhat in [50].

§8a. Absorption of light in a weakly ionized gas

In weakly ionized gases the absorption coefficient corresponding to free-free transitions in the fields of ions and to bound-free transitions is proportional to the square of the electron density $\kappa_\nu = \kappa'_\nu + \kappa''_\nu \sim N_e \times e^{-(I-h\nu)/kT} \sim N_e^2$. Therefore at moderate temperatures in very weakly ionized gases we encounter primarily free-free transitions in the field of neutral atoms, whose absorption coefficient is proportional to the first power of the electron density $\kappa_{\nu\,\text{neut}} \sim NN_e \sim N^{3/2}e^{-I/2kT}$. Let us find this coefficient approximately. For this calculation we use (5.13b) for the emission cross section, and the principle of detailed balancing with (5.19). The true absorption coefficient per electron and per atom thus obtained can be written in the following form:

$$a_{\nu\,\text{neut}}(E) = a_{\nu\,\text{class}}\left[\frac{2}{3}\frac{E+h\nu}{E}\frac{E+h\nu}{h\nu}\frac{\sigma_{\text{tr}}(E+h\nu)}{\sigma_{\text{tr}}(E)}\right],$$

$$a_{\nu\,\text{class}} = \frac{e^2 v\sigma_{\text{tr}}(E)}{\pi mcv^2}\ \text{cm}^5, \tag{5.57}$$

where $E = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$ is the electron energy before absorption of the photon. This formula was derived in a paper by the authors [62], treating the breakdown in gases under the action of a laser beam (see §§22 and 23). The factor

$a_{\nu\,\mathrm{class}}$ is the absorption coefficient of electromagnetic waves in a weakly ionized gas according to the purely classical theory [63]. In this theory a solution in the form of a traveling wave with a complex wave vector is substituted into Maxwell's field equations. The imaginary part of the vector which describes the absorption of the wave is then expressed in terms of the electrical conductivity of the medium. Then the electrical conductivity of a weakly ionized gas is determined through the Boltzmann equation for the electrons in a field, which leads to the appearance of the absorption coefficient of the wave energy $a_{\nu\,\mathrm{class}}$.

Evidently, in the limit $h\nu/E \to 0$, the quantum theory must yield the classical results. In this limiting process, however, we must take into account the fact that the concept of a "true" absorption, which is a quantum-mechanical concept, does not exist in classical mechanics. In classical theory there is an "effective" absorption, which is defined as the average over all collisions of the difference between the energy acquired and given up by an electron under the action of an electromagnetic wave. Whether energy is acquired or given up in any given collision depends on the relationship between the electron velocity directions before and after scattering and the vector of the wave electric field at the time of scattering.

Effective absorption in quantum theory corresponds to the differences between the true absorption and induced emission, and it is particularly this quantity with which we should operate when making a transition to the classical limit. According to the Einstein relation for the continuous spectrum, the coefficient of reradiation (induced emission) by an electron with an energy $E' = E + h\nu$ is

$$b_{\nu\,\mathrm{neut}}(E') = \frac{v}{v'}\, a_{\nu\,\mathrm{neut}}(E) = \left(\frac{E}{E + h\nu}\right)^{1/2} a_{\nu\,\mathrm{neut}}(E). \tag{5.57a}$$

The effective absorption coefficient of low energy photons $h\nu \ll E$ is*

$$a'_{\nu\,\mathrm{neut}}(E) = a_{\nu\,\mathrm{neut}}(E) - b_{\nu\,\mathrm{neut}}(E) = a_{\nu\,\mathrm{neut}}(E) - \left(\frac{E - h\nu}{E}\right)^{1/2} a_{\nu\,\mathrm{neut}}(E - h\nu).$$

Substituting here $a_{\nu\,\mathrm{neut}}$ from (5.57) and taking the limit $h\nu/E \to 0$, we obtain

$$(a'_{\nu\,\mathrm{neut}})_{h\nu/E\to 0} = \tfrac{1}{3} a_{\nu\,\mathrm{class}} \left[1 + 2\,\frac{d(\ln a_{\nu\,\mathrm{class}} E)}{d \ln E}\right].$$

We see from this that the limiting value, to within a numerical factor of the order of one, agrees with the classical value $a_{\nu\,\mathrm{class}}$, and when $a_{\nu\,\mathrm{class}}(E) = const$ ($v\sigma_{\mathrm{tr}}(E) = const$) the agreement is exact.

* If we average this quantity over a Maxwell distribution for the electrons, we will obtain the ordinary absorption coefficient corrected for induced emission $a'_{\nu\,\mathrm{neut}} = a_{\nu\,\mathrm{neut}}(1 - e^{-h\nu/kT})$.

Calculations show that the quantity $a'_{\nu\,\mathrm{neut}}(E)$ is quite close to the classical value $a_{\nu\,\mathrm{class}}$ also in the case when $h\nu$ is not very small in comparison with E. Thus, in approximate calculations of the absorption coefficient in a gas with the induced emission correction we can use the classical value

$$\kappa_{\nu\,\mathrm{neut}} = N_a N_e a_{\nu\,\mathrm{class}} = \frac{e^2 N_e}{\pi m c \nu^2}\,\nu_{\mathrm{eff}}, \tag{5.57b}$$

where $\nu_{\mathrm{eff}} = N_a v \sigma_{\mathrm{tr}}$ is the effective frequency of electron-atom collisions. We note that if the collision frequency is not small in comparison with the angular frequency of light, an additional factor $\nu^2/[\nu^2 + (\nu_{\mathrm{eff}}/2\pi)^2]$ appears in the coefficients $a_{\nu\,\mathrm{class}}$ and $\kappa_{\nu\,\mathrm{neut}}$. This has already been discussed in §2a.

Up to recently (5.57b) for the absorption coefficient of electromagnetic waves in weakly ionized gases was used primarily for radio wave and microwave frequencies (centimeter waves) [63]. In fact, however, its range of applicability, and in particular, the range of applicability of (5.57) and (5.57a) for coefficients of true absorption and induced emission is wider. For electron energies of the order of several electron volts these equations can be used for estimating the absorption at optical frequencies of photons whose energies are of the order of electron volts. In particular, these equations can be used for investigating the absorption of laser emission in gases during the breakdown stage (see §§22 and 23).

The values of the absorption coefficient given by the semiclassical equation (5.57) are in satisfactory agreement with results of quantum-mechanical calculations for hydrogen carried out by Chandrasekhar and Breen [16]. The quantum-mechanical approach is also presented in [17].

Let us compare the coefficients of light absorption for scattering of an electron by an ion and by a neutral atom. According to (5.20) and (5.57)

$$\frac{a_{\nu\,\mathrm{ion}}(E)}{a_{\nu\,\mathrm{neut}}(E)} = \frac{\pi}{\sqrt{3}}\,\frac{\pi a_0^2}{\sigma_{\mathrm{tr}}(E')}\left(\frac{2I_{\mathrm{H}}}{E'}\right)^2, \qquad E' = E + h\nu.$$

For example, for hydrogen $E = 1$ ev, $h\nu = 2$ ev, $\sigma_{\mathrm{tr}} \approx 15\pi a_0^2$ [53], and $a_{\nu\,\mathrm{ion}}/a_{\nu\,\mathrm{neut}} \approx 10$. According to [16], for approximately the same conditions $\lambda = 5965$ Å, $h\nu = 2.08$ ev, $T = 7200°\mathrm{K}$, $\bar{a}_{\nu\,\mathrm{neut}} = 2.5 \cdot 10^{-39}$ cm^5, and $a_{\nu\,\mathrm{ion}}/a_{\nu\,\mathrm{neut}} = 12$; $a_{\nu\,\mathrm{ion}} = 3 \cdot 10^{-38}$ cm^5.

2. *Atomic line spectra*

§9. Classical theory of spectral lines

Line spectra are emitted and absorbed as a result of bound-bound transitions in atoms (ions), in transitions of the atom from one energy state to another. The classical theoretical model of a radiating atom is an elastically

bound electron, which oscillates about some equilibrium position. In the zeroth approximation, without accounting for energy losses by radiation, such a system constitutes a harmonic oscillator. Since the oscillating electron is accelerated, it radiates light. If the energy loss per period of oscillation is very small in comparison with the energy of oscillation W, then the rate of radiation can be calculated from the general equation (5.1) by substituting the acceleration of the harmonic oscillator. Let us denote the natural frequency of the oscillator by ν_0. If $\mathbf{r}$ is the coordinate of the electron measured from the equilibrium position, then its acceleration is $\mathbf{w} = 4\pi^2\nu_0^2\mathbf{r}$. The time-averaged rate of radiation energy loss by the electron, according to (5.1), is

$$\frac{dW}{dt} = -S = -\frac{32\pi^4}{3}\frac{e^2}{c^3}\nu_0^4\langle\mathbf{r}^2\rangle = -\frac{32\pi^4}{3}\frac{\nu_0^4}{c^3}\langle\mathbf{d}^2\rangle, \tag{5.58}$$

where $\mathbf{d} = e\mathbf{r}$ is the dipole moment. The symbol $\langle\ \rangle$ denotes an average with respect to time. Expressing the mean square of the electron's deflection $\langle\mathbf{r}^2\rangle$ in terms of the oscillator energy W, we obtain the energy radiated per unit time

$$S = -\frac{dW}{dt} = \frac{8\pi^2e^2}{3mc^3}\nu_0^2W = \gamma W. \tag{5.59}$$

The combination

$$\gamma = \frac{8\pi^2e^2\nu_0^2}{3mc^3} = 2.47\cdot10^{-22}\nu_0^2\ \text{sec}^{-1} \tag{5.60}$$

represents the reciprocal of the time during which the oscillator energy decreases by a factor of e (if the initial energy of the oscillator is W_0, then $W = W_0e^{-\gamma t}$). The quantity γ is called the damping constant. The condition of weak damping $\gamma \ll \nu_0$, which serves as the basis for the derivation of (5.58), is always satisfied to a high degree of accuracy*. Thus, for example, for ultraviolet light $\lambda = 4000$ Å, $\nu = 7.5\cdot10^{14}$ sec^{-1} ($h\nu = 3.1$ ev) and $\gamma = 1.4\cdot10^8$ sec^{-1}; $\tau = 1/\gamma = 0.7\cdot10^{-8}$ sec.

If we take into account the energy losses by radiation in a successive approximation, the oscillator performs not harmonic but damped oscillations of amplitude proportional to $W^{1/2} = W_0^{1/2}e^{-\gamma t/2}$. As a result, the emitted frequency is no longer the natural frequency ν_0, but encompasses the entire frequency spectrum. The spectral composition of the radiation can be found by expanding the oscillator acceleration in a Fourier integral (assuming that for $t < 0$ there is no motion and that $\mathbf{r} = 0$ and $\mathbf{w} = 0$). The energy $S_\nu\, d\nu$ radiated over the total period in the spectral interval $d\nu$ is given by the Fourier

* Using quantum-mechanical concepts, we can rewrite this condition in the form $8\pi^2e^2\nu_0^2/3mc^3 \ll \nu_0$; $h\nu_0 \ll (3/8\pi^2)(hmc^3/e^2) = (3/4\pi)(hc/2\pi e^2)mc^2 = (3/4\pi)\text{“}137\text{”}mc^2 =$ 163 Mev.

component of the acceleration according to (5.4). Calculations, which can be found in [19], give for $\nu - \nu_0 \ll \nu_0$:

$$S_\nu \, d\nu = \frac{2e^2\nu_0^2}{3mc^3} \frac{W_0}{(\nu - \nu_0)^2 + (\gamma/4\pi)^2} \, d\nu. \tag{5.61}$$

It can be easily verified by integrating this expression over the entire spectrum from $\nu = 0$ to $\nu = \infty$ that the total radiated energy is equal to the initial energy of the oscillator

$$\int_0^\infty S_\nu \, d\nu = \int_0^\infty S \, dt = \int_0^\infty \gamma W_0 e^{-\gamma t} \, dt = W_0 .$$

We can refer to the energy radiated by the oscillator in the frequency interval $d\nu$ per unit time. This quantity is equal to $\gamma S_\nu \, d\nu$, in which case W_0 in (5.61) should be replaced by W—the oscillator energy at the given instant of time.

The spectral energy distribution of a damped oscillator, given by (5.61), is shown in Fig. 5.8. The half width of the peak, the so-called natural line width, the meaning of which is clear from Fig. 5.8, is equal to $\Delta\nu = \gamma/2\pi$. In the wavelength scale the natural line width is independent of the wavelength and is equal to $\Delta\lambda = c\,\Delta\nu/\nu_0^2 = \frac{4}{3}\pi e^2/mc^2 = \frac{4}{3}\pi r_0 = 1.2 \cdot 10^{-4}$ Å ($r_0 = e^2/mc^2 = 2.8 \cdot 10^{-13}$ cm is the "electron radius").

We have considered above the spontaneous emission of light by an initially excited oscillator. Let us now assume that a monochromatic light wave of frequency ν and with an amplitude independent of time is incident on the

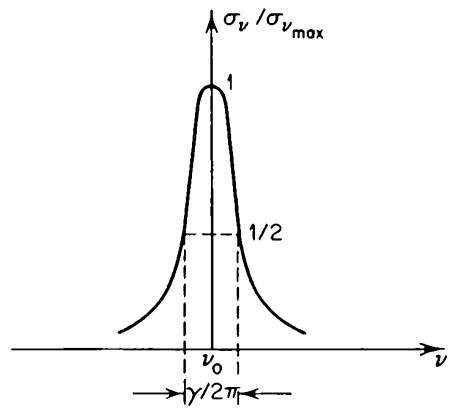


Fig. 5.8. Shape of the absorption curve.

oscillator. Under the action of the electric field of the wave, the elastically bound electron will undergo forced oscillations. If there were no damping, the light wave, shortly after it had been "switched on", would excite the oscillator transferring to it a certain amount of energy, and after that (on the average with respect to time) would no longer perform any work. However, if damping is present, the forced oscillations are accompanied by a continuous

radiation of energy by the oscillator. This energy is provided by the work performed by the external field.

Let us find the work done on the oscillator by the periodic field of a light wave. In order to do this we solve the equation of motion for the oscillator

$$m\ddot{\mathbf{r}} + m(2\pi\nu_0)^2\mathbf{r} + m\gamma\dot{\mathbf{r}} = e\mathbf{E}_0 e^{i2\pi\nu t}.$$

Here $\mathbf{E}_0$ is the amplitude of the electric field intensity. The term $m\gamma\dot{\mathbf{r}}$ accounts for the "frictional force" due to damping. The solution of this equation is

$$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}_0 e^{i2\pi\nu t}, \qquad \mathbf{r}_0 = \frac{1}{4\pi^2}\frac{e}{m}\mathbf{E}_0\frac{1}{\nu_0^2 - \nu^2 + i\nu(\gamma/2\pi)}. \tag{5.62}$$

The work done by the external force per unit time is equal to the scalar product of the force and the velocity $\dot{\mathbf{r}}$. Multiplying the equation of motion by $\dot{\mathbf{r}}$ and averaging with respect to time (as a result of which the terms $\langle\ddot{\mathbf{r}}\cdot\dot{\mathbf{r}}\rangle$ and $\langle\mathbf{r}\cdot\dot{\mathbf{r}}\rangle$ disappear) we obtain for the work done per unit time

$$\langle e\mathbf{E}_0 e^{i2\pi\nu t}\cdot\dot{\mathbf{r}}\rangle = 2\pi^2 m\gamma\nu^2|\mathbf{r}_0^2|. \tag{5.63}$$

As may be seen, this quantity is determined by the modulus of the complex quantity $\mathbf{r}^2$. This work is equal to the energy received by the oscillator from the light wave per unit time, the energy absorbed by the oscillator.

Leaving aside for the time being the question of the future fate of the absorbed energy, let us calculate the absorption cross section. It is, by definition, equal to the energy absorbed per unit time divided by the time-averaged energy flux of the light wave. The average flux is equal to $(c/8\pi)\mathbf{E}_0^2$. In this way we obtain the absorption cross section for light of frequency ν. For frequencies ν not too far from the resonant frequency $|\nu - \nu_0| \ll \nu_0$, the cross section is equal to

$$\sigma_\nu = \frac{e^2}{mc}\frac{\gamma}{4\pi}\frac{1}{(\nu - \nu_0)^2 + (\gamma/4\pi)^2}. \tag{5.64}$$

If damping of the oscillations is attributable to the radiation only, then the entire energy absorbed is used for the emission of light. In this case we are dealing essentially with the scattering of light and not with absorption (in the classical theory). The damping constant is then given by (5.60)*. The damping cross section of an incident light wave attenuated by an oscillator is in this case obtained from (5.64)

$$\sigma_\nu = \frac{4.23\cdot 10^{20}}{\nu_0^2}\frac{1}{1+\xi^2}\,\mathrm{cm}^2 = \frac{7.2\cdot 10^{-9}}{(h\nu_{ev})^2}\frac{1}{1+\xi^2}\,\mathrm{cm}^2,$$
$$\xi = \frac{\nu - \nu_0}{\gamma/4\pi}. \tag{5.65}$$

* Substituting the solution (5.62) into (5.58), we obtain $S = \frac{2}{3}(e^2/c^3)(2\pi\nu)^4|\mathbf{r}_0^2|/2$. Equating this expression to (5.63) we obtain (5.60) for the damping constant.

At the line center the cross section is given by $\sigma_{\nu_{max}} = (3/2\pi)\lambda^2$ or $\sigma_{\nu_{max}} = 7.2 \cdot 10^{-9}/(h\nu_{ev})^2$ cm^2 ($\lambda = c/\nu$ is the wavelength of the incident light). This cross section is very large. For visible light $h\nu \sim 2$–3 ev and $\sigma_{\nu_{max}} \sim 10^{-9}$ cm^2 which corresponds to a light mean free path $l \sim 10^{-10}$ cm for an atmospheric atomic density of $N \sim 10^{19}$ cm^{-3}.

The excited oscillator can also lose its energy by interatomic collisions. In this case the absorbed energy of the light wave is partially transformed into heat. It can be shown (see [19]) that the motion of the oscillator is in this case also described by (5.62), except that γ is now understood to denote not the natural line width (5.60) but the sum of the natural line width and the quantity $2/\tau_{col}$, where τ_{col} is the average time between collisions resulting in damping of the oscillator. Similarly, the form of (5.64) for the absorption cross section will remain unaltered if γ is understood to denote the total width of the line, broadened as a result of collisions.

The fate of the absorbed light energy is determined by the relationship between the natural line width γ and the reciprocal of the time between collisions $2/\tau_{col}$. If $\gamma \gg 2/\tau_{col}$, which occurs in a very rarefied gas, then the absorbed energy is re-emitted (the light is scattered); on the other hand, if $\gamma \ll 2/\tau_{col}$ the energy is basically transformed into heat (absorption in the literal sense of the word). There also exist other mechanisms for broadening spectral lines in gases (see [10, 53,54]). Let the "atom" contain f_k oscillators, each with a natural frequency ν_{0k}, and let the atom number density be equal to N. Then, the total absorption coefficient for light of frequency ν is

$$\kappa_\nu = N \sum_k f_k \sigma_{\nu k}. \tag{5.66}$$

Usually the different lines ν_{0k} are separated from each other by a distance much greater than a line width. The major role in the absorption of light of a given frequency is played by oscillators with a natural frequency ν_0 which is close to the absorbed frequency; then, in fact, only one term will remain in the summation (5.66). Since the lines are extremely narrow, only the frequencies that are very close to the natural frequencies of the oscillators are absorbed, and the absorption is selective. Let us assume that a continuous radiation spectrum with energy density U_ν is incident upon the atoms, in which, as is usually the case, the changes in U_ν are small over a spectral interval of the order of a line width. The total energy absorbed per unit time per unit volume by oscillators with a frequency ν_0 is equal to $\int_0^\infty U_\nu \, d\nu \, cN\sigma_\nu f = U_\nu cNf \int_0^\infty \sigma_\nu \, d\nu$ (the subscript k has been dropped). The absorption per atom is characterized by a quantity obtained by integrating the cross section (5.64). The integral of the cross section with respect to frequency for a single line, i.e., the area of the spectral line, is equal to

$$f \int_0^\infty \sigma_\nu \, d\nu = \frac{\pi e^2}{mc} f = 2.64 \cdot 10^{-2} f \text{ cm}^2 \cdot \text{sec}^{-1}. \tag{5.67}$$

This is a constant depending only on the number of oscillators f and independent of the line width. Hence, if the line is broadened by collisions, for example, then the cross section will be smaller than that for a line with a natural width.

The absorption of light by an oscillator is frequency-dependent in the same manner as is the radiation (see (5.61) and (5.64)). This is in agreement with the principle of detailed balancing, which is easily shown to be satisfied in this case*.

§10. Quantum theory of spectral lines. Oscillator strength

Let us consider radiation and absorption of light from the quantum-mechanical point of view. A strong parallelism exists between the results of the quantum and classical theories. In the zeroth approximation of the quantum theory for an atom, that corresponding to stationary states, only strictly defined energy levels are possible (analogous to the constancy of the energy for the undamped vibrations of a classical oscillator). In the next approximation the possibility of transitions between energy states of the atom appears. By virtue of the fact that the states are nonstationary, the uncertainty principle requires that the value of the energy corresponding to each energy level (with the exception of the ground level) is uncertain by an amount $\Delta E \sim h/\Delta t$, where Δt is the "lifetime" of the atom in the state under consideration, equal to the reciprocal of the probability of a spontaneous transition to lower levels. However, the broadening of energy levels also results in the broadening of the spectral lines by an amount of the order of $\Delta\nu \sim \Delta E/h \sim 1/\Delta t$, i.e., of the order of the "damping" constant $1/\Delta t$, just as in the classical theory. The width of the nth energy level, according to the above statements, is equal to the sum of the probabilities of transitions to all lower levels

$$\Gamma_n = \sum_{n'} A_{nn'}, \tag{5.68}$$

where $A_{nn'}$ sec^{-1} is the probability of the spontaneous transition $n \to n'$, the so-called Einstein coefficient for emission.

The radiation rate given by quantum mechanics is

$$S = h\nu_{nn'}A_{nn'} = \frac{64\pi^4}{3}\frac{\nu_{nn'}^4}{c^3}|\mathbf{d}|^2, \tag{5.69}$$

where $|\mathbf{d}|$ is the matrix element of the dipole moment. Equation (5.69) is very similar to the classical expression (5.58), the difference lying only in the

* $\gamma S_\nu\, d\nu = U_\nu c\, d\nu\, \sigma_\nu$; this relationship is satisfied by substituting the thermodynamic equilibrium values of the energy and the radiation density of the oscillator (three-dimensional) W and U_ν, calculated either from classical theory ($W = 3kT$, $U_\nu = 8\pi\nu^2 kT/c^3$) or according to quantum theory.

replacement of the mean square of the dipole moment by twice the square of the matrix element of the same dipole moment. The numerical values of the emission probability $A_{nn'}$, are of the same order of magnitude as the classical "probability", as the damping constant γ.

The matrix element $|\mathbf{d}|$ is calculated for a transition between two completely defined quantum states. In the case of degeneracy of the energy levels we can turn our attention to the average probability of transition from one level to the other. For this we must sum $|\mathbf{d}|^2$ over the end states and average over the initial states. If α and α' are the quantum numbers (or sets of numbers), which correspond to levels n and n', then in general the probability of transition between the levels is

$$A_{nn'} = \frac{64\pi}{3}\frac{\nu_{nn'}}{hc^3}\left\{\frac{1}{g_n}\sum_{\alpha\alpha'}(n', \alpha'|\mathbf{d}|n, \alpha)^2\right\}, \tag{5.69'}$$

where g_n is the statistical weight of the nth level. We can also consider transitions between particular groups of states belonging to the given levels. For example, in the case of the hydrogen atom this will refer to the probabilities of transitions $n, l \to n', l'$ (l' is the orbital quantum number). In this case the summation in (5.69') should be carried out only over the magnetic quantum numbers m and m' (correspondingly, g_n is replaced by g_{nl}).

Table 5.3

TRANSITION PROBABILITIES IN A HYDROGEN ATOM IN UNITS OF 10^8 SEC^{-1}

Initial state	Final state	$n=1$	$n=2$	Total	Lifetime, 10^{-8} sec
$2s$	np	—		0	
$2p$	ns	6.25		6.25	0.16
2	Average	4.69		4.69	0.21
$3s$	np	—	0.063	0.063	16
$3p$	ns	1.64	0.22	1.86	0.54
$3d$	np	—	0.64	0.64	1.56
3	Average	0.55	0.43	0.98	1.02

Table 5.3 presents the probabilities for some transitions in the hydrogen atom* (for an energy level diagram see Figs. 2.2 and 5.9). Knowing the probability coefficients $A_{nn'}$ it is easy to calculate the intensities of the corresponding emission lines. Namely, if N_n is the atom number density in the nth

* These data are taken from the book by Bethe and Salpeter [5].

excited state (which can be calculated from the Boltzmann equation), then the energy emitted in the line $\nu_{nn'}$ per unit volume per unit time is equal to $N_n A_{nn'} h\nu_{nn'}$.

The principle of detailed balancing establishes a relationship between the probabilities of light emission and absorption for the given transition $n \leftrightarrows n'$. The energy absorbed per unit time per unit volume by atoms in the n' state upon their transition to the nth state is

$$\int U_\nu c \, d\nu \, \sigma_{\nu n'n} N_{n'} = N_{n'} U_\nu c \int \sigma_{\nu n'n} \, d\nu = N_{n'} U_\nu c h\nu_{nn'} B_{n'n},$$

where $\sigma_{\nu n'n}$ is the absorption cross section for the frequency ν within the limits of the given transition $n' \to n$, and $B_{n'n}$ is a coefficient characterizing the total absorption in the given line (the so-called Einstein coefficient for absorption). This coefficient is proportional to the "area" of the line

$$B_{n'n} = \frac{1}{h\nu_{nn'}} \int \sigma_{\nu n'n} \, d\nu. \tag{5.70}$$

Multiplying the absorption rate by $(1 - e^{-h\nu/kT})$ in order to account for the induced emission (see §4 of Chapter II), equating the resulting expression to the emission rate, substituting the radiation density U_ν given by the Planck formula, and the number of atoms N_n given by the Boltzmann equation, we obtain the relationship between the Einstein coefficients*

$$B_{n'n} = \frac{c^2}{8\pi h\nu_{nn'}^3} \frac{g_n}{g_{n'}} A_{nn'}. \tag{5.71}$$

It is conventional to characterize the emissivity of an atom in a given line $\nu_{nn'}$ determined by the area of the line $\int \sigma\nu_{n'n} \, d\nu$ by a number which is equal to that number of classical oscillators with natural frequency $\nu_{nn'}$ that would yield the same effect as the atom under consideration. This number $f_{\mathrm{abs}_{n'n}}$ is called the oscillator strength for absorption and is no longer an integer. Equating the line areas given by (5.70) and (5.67) and noting the relation

**Editors' note.* It should be noted that the relation (5.71) connecting the Einstein coefficients is completely independent of any temperature, even though the derivation has been based upon equilibrium concepts. In fact, induced emission can be considered as the process of absorption with the time reversed, and spontaneous emission can be considered as induced emission induced by the zero-point quantum fluctuations in the electric and magnetic fields, so that all three processes are related microscopically in a fundamental way. The Einstein relation (5.71) can be derived on the basis of microscopic reversibility, from the invariance of a quantum matrix element under time reversal. The derivation given here is essentially the classical one of Einstein, and has the advantage that it is convenient and that it sheds light on the role of induced emission. The fact that (5.71) does not depend upon any concepts of equilibrium should be kept in mind. See also the footnote following (2.22) in Chapter II.

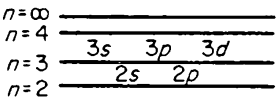
(5.60), we find the relationship between the oscillator strength and the Einstein coefficient

$$f_{\mathrm{abs}_{n'n}} = \frac{mc}{\pi e^2} h\nu_{nn'} B_{n'n}. \tag{5.72}$$

This relation essentially defines the concept of the oscillator strength.

Together with $f_{\mathrm{abs}_{n'n}}$ there is introduced a negative oscillator strength for emission (the transition $n \to n'$) defined by*

$$f_{\mathrm{emiss}_{nn'}} = -\frac{g_{n'}}{g_n} f_{\mathrm{abs}_{n'n}} = -\frac{A_{nn'}}{3\gamma} \tag{5.73}$$



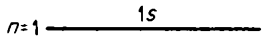


Fig. 5.9. Energy level diagram for the hydrogen atom.

(the second equality is obtained from (5.72) with the use of (5.71)). The oscillator strengths can be expressed directly in terms of matrix elements of the dipole moment. Using (5.73), (5.69′), and (5.60) we find

$$g_{n'} f_{\mathrm{abs}_{n'n}} = -g_n f_{\mathrm{emiss}_{nn'}} = \frac{8\pi^2 m \nu_{nn'}}{3e^2 c^3} \sum_{\alpha\alpha'} (n', \alpha' |\mathbf{d}| n, \alpha)^2. \tag{5.73′}$$

As can be seen, the quantities $g_n f_{nn'}$, where the first subscript on f corresponds to the initial level, are the same for emission and absorption and, consequently, are symmetric with respect to transposition of numbers which characterize the initial and final levels. In what follows we shall always use the positive oscillator strength for absorption, dropping the subscript "abs" and denoting the initial state by the first subscript with $f_{nn'}$, $n \to n'$, $E_{n'} > E_n$.

For the frequency distribution of the absorption within the limits of the line, the quantum theory predicts the same dependence of the probability of absorption on frequency as does the classical equation for the cross section

* We note that the number f represents the average strength of an oscillator per degree of freedom of an electron. The total oscillator strength is three times greater because the electron in an atom has three degrees of freedom. The total oscillator strength for emission $|3f_{\mathrm{emiss}}| = A_{nn'}/\gamma$ represents the ratio of the quantum "damping constant" (i.e., the probability of transition) to the classical one γ.

σ_ν. By appropriately normalizing the probability, we can write the quantum-mechanical equation for the absorption cross section in a form analogous to the classical equation (5.64) (we interchange the subscripts n and n', and we denote the lower state, from which a transition accompanied by the absorption of photon takes place, by n)

$$\sigma_{\nu nn'} = \frac{e^2}{mc}\frac{\Gamma_{nn'}}{4\pi} f_{nn'} \frac{1}{(\nu - \nu_{nn'})^2 + (\Gamma_{nn'}/4\pi)^2}. \tag{5.74}$$

If the value of $f_{nn'}$ given by (5.73) is substituted into (5.74) using the expression for γ and noting that $c/\nu = \lambda$, then the cross section can be written as

$$\sigma_{\nu nn'} = \frac{\lambda^2}{8\pi^2}\frac{g_n}{g_{n'}} A_{n'n} \frac{\Gamma_{nn'}}{4\pi} \frac{1}{(\nu - \nu_0)^2 + (\Gamma_{nn'}/4\pi)^2}$$

$$= \sigma_{\nu nn' \max} \frac{(\Gamma_{nn'}/4\pi)^2}{(\nu - \nu_0)^2 + (\Gamma_{nn'}/4\pi)^2},$$

where the cross section at the line center is

$$\sigma_{\nu nn' \max} = \frac{\lambda^2}{2\pi}\frac{g_n}{g_{n'}}\frac{A_{n'n}}{\Gamma_{nn'}}.$$

The (natural) line width given by the quantum theory is composed of the sum of the transition probabilities (5.68): $\Gamma_{nn'} = \Gamma_n + \Gamma_{n'}$ *. In accordance with the definitions of oscillator strength and the Einstein coefficient $B_{nn'}$ in (5.72) and (5.70) the area of the line is

$$\int \sigma_{\nu nn'}\, d\nu = \frac{\pi e^2}{mc} f_{nn'} = 2.65 \cdot 10^{-2} f_{nn'}\ \text{cm}^2 \cdot \text{sec}^{-1}.$$

The area is entirely independent of the line width $\Gamma_{nn'}$, which in the presence of collisions also includes the term $2/\tau_{\text{col}}$. This result is quite natural, since the principle of detailed balancing uniquely relates the area of a line to the probability of spontaneous emission which is determined solely by the structure of the atom itself and which obviously cannot depend on such external factors as atomic collisions.

In a real gas there are usually several factors responsible for the broadening of the spectral lines; they include particle collisions, the Doppler effect, and the Stark effect. Thus, the broadening due to collisions increases the natural width γ by an amount equal to twice the collision probability, $\gamma_{\text{col}} = 2/\tau_{\text{col}}$. The Doppler broadening is approximately equal to $\Delta\nu = \nu\bar{v}/c$, where $\bar{v}$ is the thermal speed. We shall not consider the details of this problem here; see [10, 53, 54].

* The widths of the levels Γ_n and $\Gamma_{n'}$ also include the probabilities corresponding to induced emission. These terms are proportional to the emission density and are important only at sufficiently high densities.

§11. The absorption spectrum of hydrogen-like atoms. Remarks on the effect of spectral lines on the Rosseland mean free path

Let us assume that light with a continuous spectrum in which all frequencies are present is incident upon a gas made up of hydrogen-like atoms (in particular, atomic hydrogen). We shall find those frequencies that will be absorbed by the atoms in a definite nth state, and the absorption intensity. The atoms absorb selectively the frequencies $\nu_{nn'}$, corresponding to electronic transitions from the nth level to a more highly excited level $n' > n$. Noting formula (5.25) for the energy of a level, we find the relationship between these frequencies and the quantum numbers n and n', the so-called Balmer series formula

$$\nu_{nn'} = \frac{I_H Z^2}{h}\left(\frac{1}{n^2} - \frac{1}{n'^2}\right) = \nu_1\left(\frac{1}{n^2} - \frac{1}{n'^2}\right), \tag{5.75}$$

where $\nu_1 = I_H Z^2/h = \nu_R Z^2$. The frequency $\nu_R = I_H/h = 3.29 \cdot 10^{15}$ sec^{-1} corresponds to the ionization potential of a hydrogen atom. It is frequently used as a unit of frequency and is called a "rydberg". As n' increases, the spacing between the levels and correspondingly also between the lines $\nu_{nn'}$ becomes closer and, as $n' \to \infty$, a continuum (continuous spectrum) is formed, because the absorption of frequencies exceeding the upper limit of the series $\nu_n = \nu_{n,\infty} = \nu_1/n^2$ results in ionization, and the final state of the electron is then found in the continuous part of the energy spectrum. The absorption spectrum from the given energy level n is shown in Fig. 5.10 (which, for comparison, also contains a schematic diagram of the energy levels). To be specific,

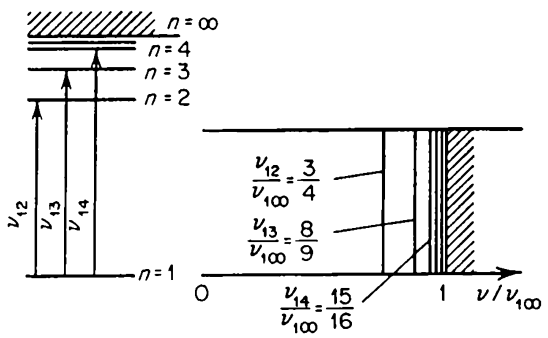


Fig. 5.10. Absorption spectrum for hydrogen atoms in their ground state. The diagram at the left illustrates the transitions.

we have assumed $n = 1$, that is, Fig. 5.10 represents the absorption spectrum of a cold gas consisting of hydrogen-like atoms, in which all the atoms are in the ground state. In a heated gas there are excited levels and the absorption spectrum represents a set of series corresponding to the absorption by atoms in different states.

Near the upper limit of the series, where the lines become strongly crowded, overlapping of the individual lines begins. This occurs when the frequency distance between the lines, which decreases very rapidly as $n' \to \infty$, becomes comparable to the line width. Overlapping of lines is promoted by their broadening due to collisions, Doppler effect, etc. Usually overlapping of atomic lines begins at such large quantum numbers n' and so close to the upper limit of the series $\nu_n = \nu_{n\infty}$ that the entire frequency region of overlapping levels is very narrow and is practically of no importance. In a real atomic gas the overlapping region also does not exist because the upper levels are cut off on account of the interaction between atoms and the effective decrease in the ionization potential. Actual overlapping of the individual lines arises only for the absorption of light by molecules, where the number of lines is much greater than in atoms and where they are spaced much closer to each other (this is discussed later).

Let us consider transitions $n \to n'$ with the absorption of light between high levels with large quantum numbers. The motion of an electron in these levels is quasi-classical and the absorption of light, accompanied by transitions $n \to n'$, with both n and $n' \gg 1$, can be studied by means of the semi-classical concepts. In the spectral region corresponding to transitions with both n and $n' \gg 1$, where the lines are very close to each other and almost overlap, it seems natural to smooth out the dependence of the absorption cross section on frequency by introducing an average cross section. The averaging should be carried out in such a manner as to leave unchanged the total area of the lines which characterizes the attenuation of the external radiation flux with a continuous spectrum.

Let us consider a small spectral interval between ν and $\nu + \Delta\nu$ containing a large number of lines which differ very little from each other. In addition, let us assume that the interval $\Delta\nu$ is much greater than the width of a single line. The absorption cross section for the frequency ν by atoms in the nth state is $\sigma_{\nu n} = \sum_{n'} \sigma_{\nu nn'}$. We now carry out the averaging of the cross section in the interval $\Delta\nu$:

$$\int_{\nu}^{\nu+\Delta\nu} \sigma_{\nu n}\, d\nu = \bar{\sigma}_{\nu n}\, \Delta\nu = \sum_{n'} \int \sigma_{\nu nn'}\, d\nu = \sum_{n'} \frac{\pi e^2}{mc} f_{nn'}.$$

Let us also find the average oscillator strength by determining the average value of $\bar{f}_{nn'} = f_{n\bar{n}'} = f_n(\nu)$ for the given interval $\Delta\nu$. If the frequency interval between ν and $\nu + \Delta\nu$ contains $\Delta n'$ lines corresponding to the final states from n' to $n' + \Delta n'$, then the average cross section can be written

$$\bar{\sigma}_{\nu n} = \frac{\pi e^2}{mc} f_n(\nu) \frac{\Delta n'}{\Delta\nu}. \tag{5.76}$$

The number of lines per unit spectral interval can be obtained by differentiating Balmer's formula (5.75)

$$\frac{\Delta n'}{\Delta \nu} = \left(\frac{d\nu_{nn'}}{dn'}\right)^{-1} = \left(\frac{2\nu_1}{n'^3}\right)^{-1}. \tag{5.77}$$

In §4 we found the cross section for bound-free transitions by extending the classical expression for the effective radiation for free-free transitions to the case when one of the states is in the discrete spectrum. The justification for this was that the motion of an electron in states with a high quantum number n is quasi-classical, and that the motion in an "elliptical" orbit (corresponding to large n and to small negative energy) is very close to the motion in a "hyperbolic" orbit (corresponding to small positive energy). Let us take one further step and consider in the same approximation the case when both states are in the discrete spectrum with large quantum numbers. We consider transitions from the nth level occurring with the absorption of a photon, on the basis of semiclassical concepts. As the frequency increases the electron in its final state will lie in "elliptical" orbits approaching a parabolic shape; for $\nu = \nu_n$ it will lie in a parabolic orbit, and for a frequency ν only slightly exceeding ν_n it will lie in "hyperbolic" orbits which are close to parabolic. Since the motion of an electron in its final state changes continuously, it should also be expected that the average absorption cross section by atoms in the nth state $\bar{\sigma}_{\nu n}$ will also be continuous upon transition from the discrete to continuous spectrum (see Fig. 5.11).

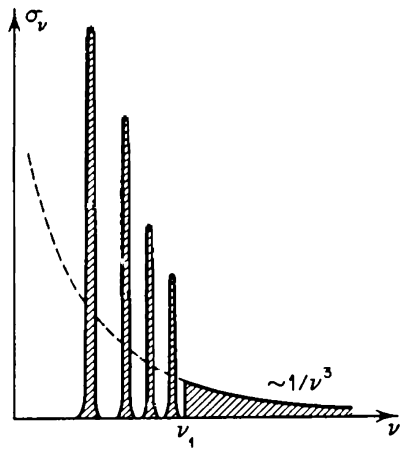


Fig. 5.11. Cross section for the absorption of light by hydrogen atoms from the ground state. Transition of the discrete spectrum into a continuum. The dashed line shows the cross section in the region of the discrete spectrum averaged with respect to the lines. The diagram is schematic.

Let us extend (5.34) for the photoionization cross section from the nth level to include the absorption of frequencies slightly lower than the limiting frequency for the photoionization* ν_n and let us equate the cross section

* In a manner similar to that in §4 in which we extended the expression for the effective bremsstrahlung emission to frequencies slightly exceeding the maximum possible frequency for free-free transitions; this allowed us to describe radiative capture.

(5.34) to the expression for the average cross section for bound-bound transitions given by (5.76). Recalling the definition of the ionization potential for a hydrogen atom I_H given by (5.25) and the expression for the limiting frequency of the series $\nu_n = \nu_1/n^2$ (see (5.75)), we find the average oscillator strength $f_n(\nu)$ for the transition from the nth level to one of the n' levels included in the narrow interval $\Delta n'$, $\Delta\nu$. Denoting the oscillator strength by $f_{nn'}$ and the frequency ν by $\nu_{nn'}$, we get

$$f_{nn'} = \frac{16}{3\pi\sqrt{3}} \frac{1}{n^5} \left(\frac{\nu_1}{\nu_{nn'}}\right)^2 \frac{1}{\nu_{nn'}} \frac{\Delta\nu}{\Delta n'}.$$

Substituting here the average spacing between the levels $\Delta\nu/\Delta n'$ calculated from (5.77), and replacing the transition frequency $\nu_{nn'}$ through Balmer's formula (5.75), we finally obtain the oscillator strength $f_{nn'}$ for the transition $n \to n'$

$$f_{nn'} = \frac{32}{3\pi\sqrt{3}} \frac{1}{n^5} \frac{1}{n'^3} \frac{1}{(1/n^2 - 1/n'^2)^3}. \tag{5.78}$$

For transitions from levels $n' \gg n$ we find the asymptotic equation

$$f_{nn'} = \frac{32}{3\pi\sqrt{3}} \frac{n}{n'^3} = \frac{1.96n}{n'^3}, \qquad n' \gg n. \tag{5.79}$$

By virtue of the manner in which it was derived, $f_{nn'}$ represents the average oscillator strength for transition from any given state l, m for a given n to any of the states l', m' of level n'. In this case the selection rules for dipole transitions are taken into account automatically (of course, in an approximate manner), because of the fact that we started from the classical formula for dipole radiation. As we see, the quantity $g_n f_{nn'} = 2n^2 f_{nn'}$ is symmetrical with respect to the transposition of n and n', in accordance with what was said in §10.

In Table 5.4 are shown the oscillator strengths for several transitions in the hydrogen atom, calculated by quantum-mechanical methods [5]. It is remarkable that the semiclassical equations (5.78) and (5.79) derived for the case when both n and $n' \gg 1$, give a fairly good estimate even for transitions between levels with quantum numbers which are not large, including transitions from the ground state. For example, the semiclassical values are $f_{12} = 0.585, f_{13} = 0.104$ and the asymptotic value is $f_{1n'} = 1.96n'^{-3}$, while the table gives $f_{12} = 0.416, f_{13} = 0.079$ and for the asymptotic case $f_{1n'} = 1.6n'^{-3}$. Here we encounter the same situation as in the case when we compared the semiclassical and the quantum-mechanical photoionization cross sections from the ground level of the hydrogen-like atom.

Table 5.4

OSCILLATOR STRENGTHS FOR A HYDROGEN ATOM

Initial state	$1s$	$2s$	$2p$	
Final state	np	np	ns	nd
$n = 1$	—	—	−0.139	—
2	0.4162	—	—	—
3	0.0791	0.425	0.014	0.694
4	0.0290	0.102	0.0031	0.122
5	0.0139	0.042	0.0012	0.044
6	0.0078	0.022	0.0006	0.022
7	0.0048	0.013	0.0003	0.012
8	0.0032	0.008	0.0002	0.008
from $n = 9$ to ∞, Σ	0.0101	0.026	0.0007	0.053
Asymptotic formula	$1.6 \cdot n^{-3}$	$3.7 \cdot n^{-3}$	$0.1 \cdot n^{-3}$	$3.3 \cdot n^{-3}$
Line spectrum	0.5641	0.638	−0.119	0.923
Continuous spectrum	0.4359	0.362	0.008	0.188
Total	1.000	1.000	−0.111	1.111

Negative oscillator strengths correspond to transitions accompanied by the emission of a photon.

Under some conditions the absorption lines of atoms can have an appreciable effect on the Rosseland mean free path. The main contribution to the mean free path comes from spectral intervals with a small continuous absorption coefficient which are located in the region of the maximum of the weighting function (see §7, Fig. 5.7). These are intervals which come before the boundaries of the series, i.e., before the beginnings of the corresponding continua. Spectral lines appear in these intervals. Since the absorption at the line centers is usually quite strong, the corresponding frequency intervals are practically cut out from the integral over the spectrum, as is shown in Fig. 5.12. If the lines are narrow, then the width of intervals cut out is small. However, in a sufficiently dense gas, where the lines are extremely wide, the intervals cut out and the reduction in the Rosseland mean free path can be rather significant. According to Biberman and Lagar'kov [51], in hydrogen at densities of 10^{17}–10^{19} atoms/cm^3 and temperatures of 12,000–20,000°K the line absorption can reduce the Rosseland mean free path by a factor of 2–4 in comparison with the mean free path calculated without taking the lines into account.

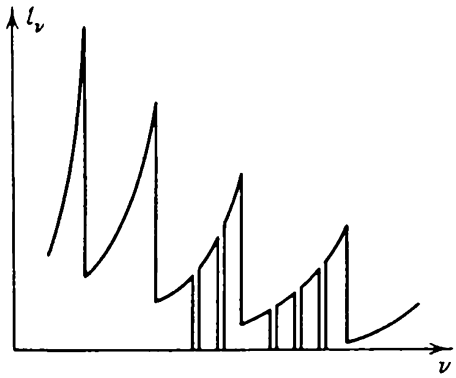


Fig. 5.12. The effect of lines on the mean free path.

§12. Oscillator strengths for the continuum. The sum rule

We have seen in the preceding sections that the probability of transitions between discrete atomic levels accompanied by the absorption of photons is described in terms of the oscillator strengths. The oscillator strength determines the area of the absorption line, i.e., the integral with respect to frequency of the cross section for the absorption of light of frequency ν in the given line. Analogously, we can introduce the concept of an oscillator strength for bound-free transitions. In this case the quantity f_n characterizes the integral with respect to frequency of the cross section for the absorption of light accompanied by the transition of an electron from the nth level of the atom to the continuous spectrum. If $\sigma_{\nu n}$ is the cross section for bound-free absorption at the frequency ν, then for such a transition

$$\int_{\nu_n}^{\infty} \sigma_{\nu n}\, d\nu = \frac{\pi e^2}{mc} f_n, \tag{5.80}$$

where the integration with respect to frequencies is carried out starting from the lowest frequency ν_n at which a transition to the continuous spectrum is possible.

Let us calculate the oscillator strength f_n for bound-free absorption by hydrogen-like atoms. Using the semiclassical equation (5.34) for $\sigma_{\nu n}$ and noting that $\nu_n = I_H Z^2/hn^2$, we obtain after integration

$$f_n = \frac{8}{3\pi\sqrt{3}} \frac{1}{n} = \frac{0.49}{n}. \tag{5.81}$$

The results of quantum-mechanical calculations for the hydrogen atom are given in Table 5.4. For example, for $n = 1$ the exact value is $f_1 = 0.436$, while (5.81) gives $f_1 = 0.49$.

In the classical theory each electron participating in the emission and absorption of light is replaced by an oscillator. The total number of oscillators is, consequently, simply equal to the number of electrons in the atom. The

quantum analog of this situation is found in the sum rule for oscillator strengths, according to which the sum $\sum_{n'} f_{nn'}$ over all possible transitions in the atom from a given state n is equal to the number of electrons. If we limit ourselves to transitions with the participation of outer optical electrons only, then the above sum is equal to the number of electrons. In particular, in the case of the hydrogen-like atom the sum is equal to unity. The summation over the final states also includes the transitions to the continuous spectrum, included in the term f_n. This term, as we shall see below, can be represented as an integral over the final states of the continuous spectrum. In addition, the sum also includes negative terms corresponding to the transitions to still lower levels $n' < n$, that is, to transitions accompanied by the emission of light (see [5]). The data in Table 5.4 satisfy, of course, the sum rule, which can be verified by direct calculation.

In describing bound-free transitions (the continuum) and also bound-bound transitions between closely spaced levels in the molecular band spectra (quasi-continuum) one frequently uses the concept of a differential oscillator strength or oscillator strength per unit frequency interval. The differential oscillator strength df/dv is defined as follows: If σ_ν is the absorption cross section of the frequency ν for the transition from the nth level, then

$$\sigma_{\nu n} = \frac{\pi e^2}{mc}\left(\frac{df}{d\nu}\right)_n = 2.64 \cdot 10^{-2}\left(\frac{df}{d\nu}\right)_n \text{cm}^2 = 8 \cdot 10^{-18}\left[\frac{df}{d(\nu/\nu_R)}\right]_n \text{cm}^2 \quad (5.82)$$

(ν/ν_R is the frequency expressed in rydbergs). Hence, the total oscillator strength for the entire continuum can be defined in accordance with (5.80) as

$$\int_{\nu_n}^{\infty} \sigma_\nu \, d\nu = \frac{\pi e^2}{mc}\int_{\nu_n}^{\infty}\left(\frac{df}{d\nu}\right)_n d\nu = \frac{\pi e^2}{mc} f_n. \quad (5.83)$$

Let us calculate the differential oscillator strength for bound-free transition from the nth level of a hydrogen-like atom. Comparing the formula (5.34) and the definition (5.82), we find

$$\left(\frac{df}{d\nu}\right)_n = \frac{16}{3\pi\sqrt{3}}\frac{1}{n}\frac{\nu_n^2}{\nu^3} = \frac{0.98}{n}\frac{\nu_n^2}{\nu^3}, \qquad \nu_n = \frac{I_H Z^2}{hn^2}. \quad (5.84)$$

Integrating this expression with respect to ν from ν_n to ∞, naturally, we obtain (5.81).

If the absorption spectrum is an aggregate of many lines, then the cross section $\sigma_{\nu n}$ is understood to denote the average value $\bar{\sigma}_{\nu n}$ (see (5.76)), and the differential oscillator strength is equal to the average oscillator strength for one transition multiplied by the number of lines per unit frequency interval

$$\left(\frac{df}{d\nu}\right)_n = f_n(\nu)\frac{\Delta n'}{\Delta \nu} = f_n(\nu)\frac{dn'}{d\nu} = f_{nn'}\frac{dn'}{d\nu}. \quad (5.85)$$

Table 5.5, taken from Unsöld's book [10], shows the oscillator strengths for hydrogen and alkali metal atoms for the continuous spectrum corresponding to absorption from the ground level. It also includes the values of the differential oscillator strengths at the absorption edge $(df/dv)_n$ for $v = v_n$ (v is expressed in rydbergs). These data were obtained from quantum-mechanical calculations. They show the degree of "nonhydrogen-likeness" of the alkali metal atoms.

Table 5.5

OSCILLATOR STRENGTHS f FOR THE CONTINUOUS SPECTRUM AND THE DIFFERENTIAL STRENGTHS df/dv AT THE EDGES OF THE PRINCIPAL SERIES (v IS IN RYDBERGS)

Atom	λ_{edge}, Å	f	df/dv	I, ev
H	912	0.436	0.78	13.5
Li	2281	0.24	0.46	5.4
Na	2442	0.0021	0.038	5.05
K	2857		0.0024	4.32

§13. Radiative emission in spectral lines

Let us consider spontaneous radiative transitions in a hydrogen atom and let us calculate approximately the average transition probabilities from the level n to a lower-lying level n'. We start from the general expression of probability (5.73) in terms of the oscillator strength for the absorption $n' \to n$

$$A_{nn'} = 3\gamma \frac{g_{n'}}{g_n} f_{nn'} = \frac{8\pi^2 e^2}{mc^3} \nu_{nn'}^2 \frac{n'^2}{n^2} f_{n'n}.$$

We substitute here $f_{n'n}$ from (5.78), having transposed n and n' in accordance with the fact that n now denotes the upper level. Substituting also the transition frequency $\nu_{nn'} = \nu_1(1/n'^2 - 1/n^2)$, where $\nu_1 = I_H/h$, we obtain

$$A_{nn'} = \frac{8\pi^2 e^2 \nu_1^2}{mc^3} \frac{32}{3\pi\sqrt{3}} \frac{1}{n^5 n'^3 (1/n'^2 - 1/n^2)} = \frac{1.6 \cdot 10^{10}}{n^3 n'(n^2 - n'^2)} \text{ sec}^{-1}.$$

This equation describes with good accuracy not only the transitions for large n and n' but also those between relatively low-lying levels and even to the ground state. We can satisfy ourselves of this by comparing the approximate results with calculations using exact quantum-mechanical values as given in [5], some of which are presented in Table 5.3. ($A_{nn'}$ should be compared with the average probabilities presented in the table.) For example, $A_{51\,\text{appr}} = 5.3 \cdot 10^6$ sec^{-1}, while $A_{51\,\text{exact}} = 4 \cdot 10^6$ sec^{-1}, $A_{21\,\text{appr}} = 6.7 \cdot 10^8$ sec^{-1}, $A_{21\,\text{exact}} = 4.7 \cdot 10^8$ sec^{-1}.

Let us consider the dependence of the transition probability from a given high level $n \gg 1$ to a final level with quantum number n'. For transitions to lower-lying levels with $n' \ll n$, we have approximately

$$A_{n,n'} \ll n \approx \frac{1.6 \cdot 10^{10}}{n^5 n'} \text{ sec}^{-1}.$$

In particular, the probability of a direct transition to the ground state is approximately*

$$A_{n,1} \approx \frac{1.6 \cdot 10^{10}}{n^5} \text{ sec}^{-1}.$$

For transitions to nearby levels with $n' = n - \Delta n$, $\Delta n \ll n$,

$$A_{n,n-\Delta n} \approx \frac{0.8 \cdot 10^{10}}{n^5 \, \Delta n} \text{ sec}^{-1}.$$

As a function of n', $A_{nn'}$ passes through a minimum when $n' = n/\sqrt{3}$, with a value equal to

$$A_{\min} = A_{n,n/\sqrt{3}} = \frac{4.15 \cdot 10^{10}}{n^5 n} \text{ sec}^{-1}.$$

Thus the most probable transition, on the average, for an atom in the nth level ($n \gg 1$), is a direct transition to the ground state $n' = 1$ with complete deexcitation. Transitions to the first excited state ($n' = 2$) and the nearest state ($n' = n - 1$) are also probable:

$$A_{n,2} = A_{n,n-1} = \tfrac{1}{2} A_{n,1}.$$

* This result is quite close to that given by the exact quantum-mechanical calculations. Only atoms which are in p states can make a transition to the ground state $1s$. For large n the probability of the transition $A_{np,1s}$ is (see [5])

$$A_{np,1s} = \frac{8 \cdot 10^9 \cdot 2^8 n(n-1)^{2n-2}}{9(n+1)^{2n+2}}.$$

It is evident that in the limit $n \gg 1$ this quantity is approximately equal to $A_{np,1s} = 8 \cdot 10^9 \cdot 2^8/9n^3$. The average probability of the transition $n \to 1$ is equal to the product of the probabilities of the transition $np \to 1s$ times the probability that an atom with energy E_n is found in the p state ($l = 1$), that is,

$$A_{n,1} = \frac{2l+1}{n^2} A_{np,\,1s} = \frac{3}{n^2} A_{np,1s}.$$

This gives

$$A_{n,1} = \frac{1.29 \cdot 10^{10}}{n^5} \text{ sec}^{-1},$$

which is quite close to the quasi-classical value.

Transitions to states intermediate between the lower and the neighboring states are less probable. Of course, transitions to lower and neighboring states with close probabilities do not have the same effect. The transition to a neighboring level is accompanied by the emission of a very low energy photon and the energy of the atom changes very little, while the transition to the ground state is accompanied by the emission of a high energy photon and the energy of the atom changes by a large amount.

It might seem that the conversion into radiation of the energy of an atom at a very high excitation level, when the motion of the optical electron is quasi-classical, should be describable on the basis of classical electrodynamics. If we calculate the rate of radiation by an electron traveling in a circular orbit about an ion by means of (5.1), we obtain

$$S = \left(\frac{dE}{dt}\right)_{\text{class}} = \frac{32}{3}\frac{E^4}{m^2c^3e^2},$$

where E is the binding energy of the electron in the atom (the change in the binding energy is equal to the change in the total energy of the electron). This value of dE/dt is found to be $\pi\sqrt{3}/4 = 1.35$ times higher than the quantum-mechanical rate of change of the electron energy corresponding to a radiative transition to the neighboring level only, $(dE/dt)_{n,n-1} = h\nu_{n,n-1} \cdot A_{n,n-1}$, where $n = (I_H/E)^{1/2}$. However, the overwhelming contribution to the actual radiation rate dE/dt is made by the transition to the ground state $(dE/dt)_{n,1} = h\nu_{n,1}A_{n,1}$, which cannot be described by classical electrodynamics*.

Knowing the transition probabilities (and the distribution of atoms in the excited states), we can calculate the emission coefficient of a gas associated with line radiation

$$J = \sum_{n=1}^{n^*} N_n \sum_{n'<n} h\nu_{nn'}A_{nn'},$$

* Nevertheless, classical electrodynamics does provide a reasonable estimate for the lifetime of an atom with respect to the complete radiative deexcitation, which, within the framework of the classical theory, is understood to mean "the radiative falling of an electron toward the center". Namely,

$$\tau_{\text{class}} = \int_{E_0}^{\infty} \frac{dE}{(dE/dt)_{\text{class}}} = 1.6 \cdot 10^{-11}(I_H/E_0)^3 \text{ sec},$$

where E_0 is the binding energy in the "initial" state. The quantum-mechanical lifetime with respect to deexcitation (without taking into account cascade transitions)

$$\tau_{\text{quant}} \approx \frac{1}{A_{n,1}} = 6.2 \cdot 10^{-11}n_0^5 = 6.2 \cdot 10^{-11}(I_H/E_0)^{2.5} \text{ sec}.$$

Ordinarily E_0 is not less than kT, and I_H/kT is not an exceedingly large quantity, so that both times are of the same order.

where N_n is the atom number density in the nth state and n^* is the quantum number of the highest state attainable, which is determined by the cutoff of the upper atomic levels in the gas.

Line radiation plays an important role in energy losses from an optically thin body. This is indicated by the fact that the area of the absorption lines is comparable with the absorption area in the continuous spectrum. For example, for absorption from the ground level of a hydrogen atom approximately half of the oscillator strength comes from the continuous spectrum, while half comes from the discrete spectrum (see Table 5.4).

If the medium is opaque to the lines, then the relative role of energy losses by radiation in the discrete spectrum decreases because of self-absorption. However, in a gas of sufficiently high density, where the lines are strongly broadened, the energy losses from the discrete spectrum can nevertheless be significant, and can even exceed the losses from the continuous spectrum (if the radiation in the continuous spectrum does not have a Planck distribution). In a gas which is rarefied but is optically thick to the lines, the energy role of the lines is determined by their small total width and is usually not large, so that the main role is played by the continuous spectrum. Calculations which show the relative role of line and continuum radiation for different densities, temperatures, and optical thicknesses were carried out in [49] for hydrogen and in [52] for nitrogen.

3. *Molecular band spectra*

§14. Energy levels of diatomic molecules

Absorption of light by molecules can be meaningfully considered at temperatures below 12,000–8,000°K, since at higher temperatures the molecules dissociate completely into atoms. The energy of an atom is determined by its electronic states only. The energy of a molecule, in addition to the electronic state, depends also on the intensity of excitation of the vibrational and rotational modes. Hence, the number of energy levels and the number of possible transitions between them is, in the case of molecules, much greater than for the atoms and, consequently, molecular spectra are much more complex than atomic spectra. Sometimes the individual lines of the spectrum are so close to each other and so numerous that in certain regions they form an almost continuous spectrum. At high gas temperatures and densities, strong broadening can even cause the overlapping of lines. Therefore, the molecular absorption and emission band spectra can, under certain conditions, exert a considerable energetic effect, analogous to that of the continuous spectra. Of great importance are molecular absorption and emission spectra for radiation in air at temperatures of the order of several thousands and tens of thousands of degrees.

We shall consider the simplest, but practically important, case of diatomic molecules. In first approximation the electronic, vibrational, and rotational modes of motion in the molecule occur independently of each other and the total energy of a molecule can be represented as a sum of the corresponding contributions. For vibrations which are small enough that they may be considered to be close to harmonic the energy of the oscillator is

$$E_{\text{vib}} = hc\omega_e(v + \tfrac{1}{2}), \tag{5.86}$$

where $\omega_e = \nu_{\text{vib}}/c$ is the wave number in cm^{-1} (in spectroscopy it is customary to use wave numbers $1/\lambda = \nu/c\ \text{cm}^{-1}$ instead of the frequencies $\nu\ \text{sec}^{-1}$ *) and $v = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$ is the vibrational quantum number. The energy of the rotational motion is characterized by the rotational quantum number $J = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$ and by the moment of inertia of the molecule I

$$E_{\text{rot}} = \frac{h^2 J(J+1)}{8\pi^2 I} = hcB_e J(J+1), \tag{5.87}$$

where $B_e = h/8\pi^2 cI$ is the rotational constant in cm^{-1}.

Thus, if U_e is the electron energy for the given state, then in first approximation the total energy of the molecule is†

$$E = U_e + hc\omega_e(v + \tfrac{1}{2}) + hcB_e J(J+1). \tag{5.88}$$

In subsequent approximations, other terms are added to (5.88). These additional terms account for anharmonicity of the oscillations, interaction between the vibrational and rotational modes, etc. (see [20, 41]). These terms will not be considered in the present discussion.

The wave numbers of emitted or absorbed radiation $1/\lambda = \nu/c$ (in spectroscopy they are sometimes referred to as "frequencies", though measured in cm^{-1}) are determined by the difference between the energies of the initial and final states. In what follows we shall always denote the upper state by a prime, and the lower state by a double prime. Thus the wave number is given by

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = \frac{E' - E''}{hc} = \left[\frac{U_e' - U_e''}{hc}\right] + [\omega_e'(v' + \tfrac{1}{2}) - \omega_e''(v'' + \tfrac{1}{2})] + [B_e' J'(J'+1) - B_e'' J''(J''+1)]. \tag{5.89}$$

Between the differences in the electronic, vibrational, and rotational energies (the quantities $hc\omega_e$ and hcB_e are, respectively, the scales for the last two) the

* The wave number 1 cm^{-1} corresponds to: wavelength $\lambda = 10^8$ Å, frequency $\nu = 3 \cdot 10^{10}$ sec^{-1}, and photon energy $h\nu = 1/8067$ ev, $h\nu/k = 1.44°\text{K}$.

† The rotational energy in (5.87) and (5.88) is determined to within a constant, which depends on the type of coupling between the rotational and electronic states; the exact meaning of the rotational quantum number also depends on the type of coupling. The constant is of the order of hcB_e, and it can be included in U_e by expressing the energy in the form of (5.88); for a discussion of this point see [20].

following inequalities always hold:

$$\Delta E_{el} \gg \Delta E_{vib} \gg \Delta E_{rot}; \qquad \frac{1}{\lambda_{00}} \gg \omega_e \gg B_e, \tag{5.90}$$

where $1/\lambda_{00} = (U'_e + \omega'_e/2 - U''_e - \omega''_e/2)/hc$ is the wave number corresponding to the electronic transition in the absence of the vibrational and rotational modes. The validity of the inequalities (5.90) can be checked by examining Table 5.6, which shows the spectroscopic constants of the more important states and transitions for O_2, N_2, and NO molecules and the N_2^+ ions*.

Table 5.6

SPECTROSCOPIC CONSTANTS FOR THE MOST IMPORTANT MOLECULES

Molecule	State	Electron energy U_e, ev	$h\nu_\infty = \frac{hc}{\lambda_{00}}$, ev	Transition $\frac{1}{\lambda_{00}}$, cm^{-1}	ω_e, cm^{-1}	B_e, cm^{-1}	Transition and name of band system
O_2	$B\,^3\Sigma_u^-$	6.11	6.11	49,363	700.4	0.819	$B \to X$ Schumann–Runge
	$X\,^3\Sigma_g^-$	0		0	1580	1.446	
N_2	$C\,^3\Pi_u$	11.1	3.69	29,670	2035	1.826	$C \to B$ 2nd positive
	$B\,^3\Pi_g$	7.4	1.18	9,557	1734	1.638	$B \to A$ 1st positive
	$A\,^3\Sigma_u^+$	6.17	6.17	49,757	1460	1.440	$A \to X$ Vegard–Kaplan forbidden band
	$X\,^1\Sigma_g^+$			0	2360	2.010	
NO	$B\,^2\Pi$	5.63	5.63	45,440	1038	1.127	$B \to X$ β-bands
	$A\,^2\Sigma^+$	5.48	5.47	44,138	2371	1.995	$A \to X$ γ-bands
	$X\,^2\Pi$			0	1904	1.705	
N_2^+	$B\,^2\Sigma_u^+$		3.16	25,566	2420	2.083	$B \to X$ 1st negative
	$X\,^2\Sigma_g^+$				2207	1.932	

* The various electronic states of a molecule (or ion) differ in the shapes of the potential curves describing the interaction of the atoms as a function of the internuclear distance, and also in the average internuclear distances (hence the transition from one electronic state to another results in a change in the frequency of vibrations, moment of inertia, and the rotational constant). The table is taken from [8].

A molecular energy level diagram has the form shown in Fig. 5.13. The electron energies at the levels A and B are shown by dashed lines. The first actual levels of the molecule, corresponding to the absence of vibrational excitation ($v = 0$), lie slightly above, because of the zero-point vibrational energy. In each electronic state there are a large number of vibrational levels, and in turn in each vibrational level there are a large number of rotational levels. As the excitation increases, the vibrational levels become somewhat crowded as a result of anharmonicity, and, in the limit $v \to \infty$, they pass into the continuum corresponding to dissociation. On the other hand, the rotational levels spread apart with increasing J (provided J is not too large and the approximation (5.87) applies*).

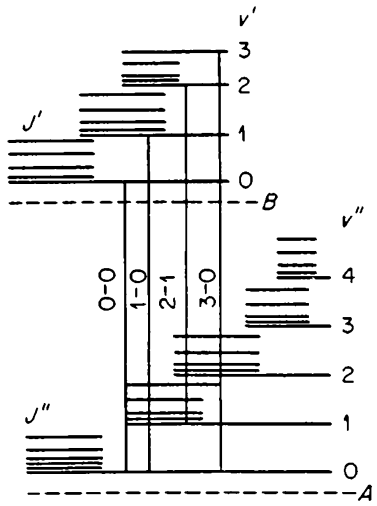


Fig. 5.13. Energy level diagram showing transitions in a diatomic molecule. The vertical lines denote different bands.

The energy level diagram for a nitrogen molecule, indicating all terms and their energies as well as the vibrational states, is shown in Fig. 5.14. For oxygen and nitric oxide molecules we shall present in §16 diagrams of the potential energy curves, on which are also shown the terms and their energies. In what follows we shall frequently make use of spectroscopic notation to define the electronic states of a molecule; therefore, let us briefly recall the basic principles of spectroscopic notation.

An electronic state is characterized by the component of the orbital angular momentum of the electrons in the direction of the molecular axis in terms of the quantum number Λ, the total electron spin S, and the symmetry properties of the state. States with $\Lambda = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$ are denoted by the

* For very intense rotations (extremely large J) the change in the potential energy curve of the molecule from the centrifugal forces becomes appreciable. In the limit $J \to \infty$, the rotational as well as the vibrational levels begin to crowd together and pass into a continuum.

Greek letters $\Sigma, \Pi, \Delta, \ldots$, respectively. The component of the spin in the direction of the molecular axis can assume $2S + 1$ values, with a corresponding splitting of each term or energy level. The multiplicity $2S + 1$ of the term is shown by a superscript at the left, as for example $^3\Sigma$, $^2\Pi$ ($S = 1$, $S = 1/2$, respectively).

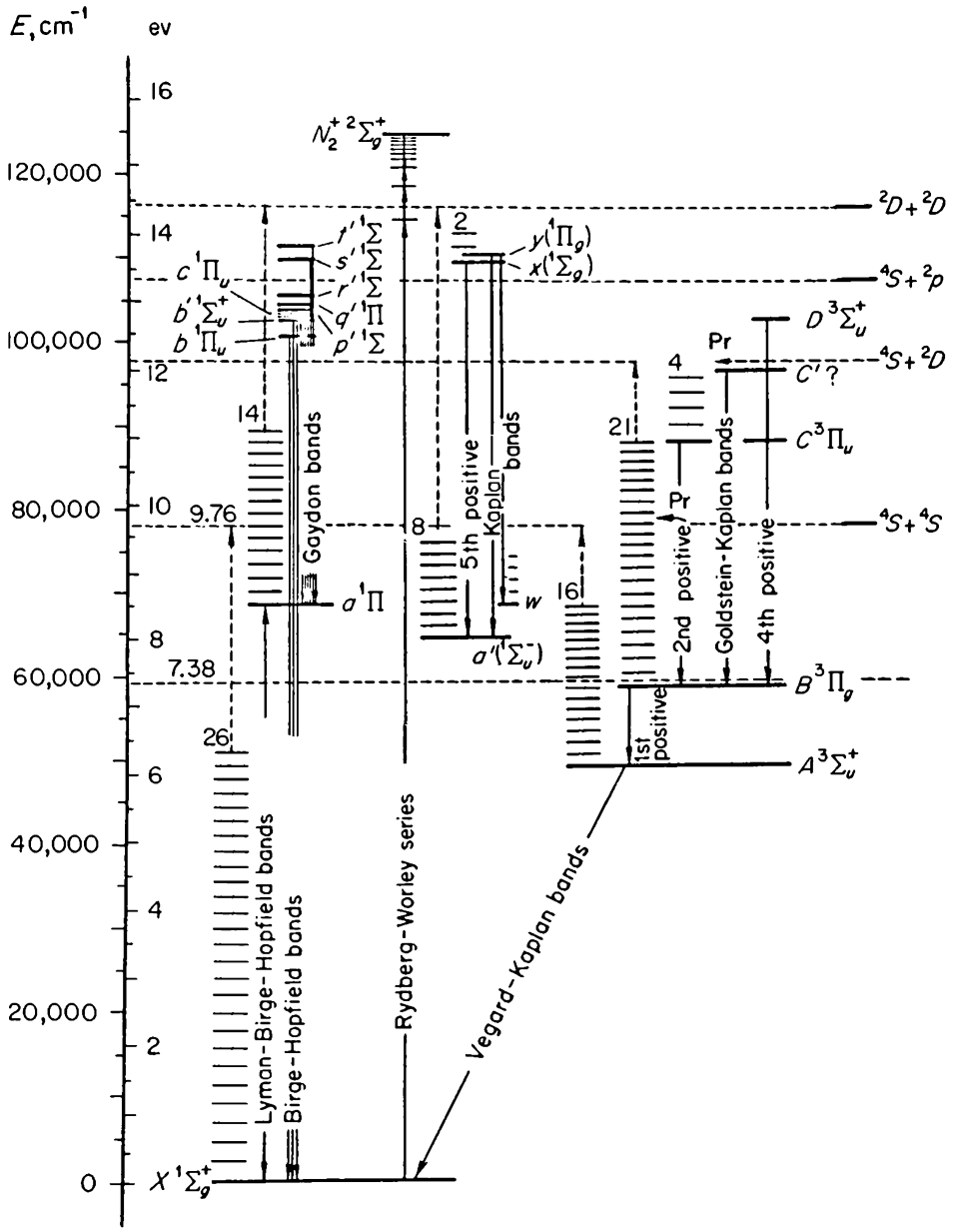


Fig. 5.14. Energy level diagram of the nitrogen molecule.

Upon reflection in a plane in which the molecular axis lies, the axial component of the orbital angular momentum of the electron changes sign (because it is a pseudo- or polar vector); corresponding to this fact, the terms with nonzero orbital angular momentum are doubly degenerate. More precisely, these terms are split into two as a result of the interaction between the rotation of the molecule and the motion of the electrons. This phenomenon is called Λ-type doubling ("lambda"-type doubling). If, however, $\Lambda = 0$, the reflection does not change the electron energy at all; the wave function is multiplied by either $+1$ or by -1. This symmetry property of the Σ terms is shown by a superscript at the right: Σ^+, Σ^-.

If the molecule consists of identical atoms, then still another symmetry property appears, namely, the energy is invariant with respect to a simultaneous change in sign of the coordinates of all electrons and nuclei. The wave function is in this case multiplied by either $+1$ or -1, which is denoted by the subscripts g and u on the right, for example, Σ_g, Π_u. As a rule, the ground state of diatomic molecules is completely symmetrical and the ground term is $^1\Sigma_g^+$. Exceptions are the O_2 molecule, whose ground term is $^3\Sigma_g^-$, and the NO molecule, whose ground term is $^2\Pi$.

Allowed transitions between different electronic states (dipole transitions with emission or absorption of light) are subject to certain selection rules. These rules depend on the type of coupling between the orbital motion of the electrons, their spin, and the rotation of the molecule. The following are the selection rules for many important cases: $\Delta\Lambda = 0, \pm 1$; the multiplicity $2S + 1$ remains unchanged; transitions $\Sigma^+ \rightleftarrows \Sigma^-$ and transitions $g \to g$ or $u \to u$ are forbidden (the two last rules are independent of the type of coupling).

§15. Structure of molecular spectra

A set of transitions between two electronic states $B - A$ forms a number of bands, each corresponding to transitions between two given vibrational states $v' - v''$. The frequencies of photons emitted or absorbed during electronic transitions in molecules usually lie in either the ultraviolet or the visible regions of the spectrum. Transitions without a change of electronic state correspond to frequencies in the infrared region; we shall not consider these transitions. Each of the bands consists of many closely spaced lines, corresponding to transitions between the different rotational states. Rotational transitions are subject to certain selection rules which, to a large extent, simplify the spectrum. In particular, transitions with the following changes in the rotational quantum number are allowed: $\Delta J = J' - J'' = 0, \pm 1$, with the transition $0 - 0$ forbidden; in the case of $\Sigma \to \Sigma$ transitions, all the $\Delta J = 0$ transitions are forbidden. The vertical lines in Fig. 5.13 denote transitions

between different vibrational states of two electronic levels (bands $v' - v''$: $0 - 0$, $1 - 0$, etc.). In Fig. 5.15 we have purposely separated one band $v' - v''$ to show its rotational structure. It was assumed here that $\Lambda \neq 0$ in at least one of the states B or A, so that $\Delta J = 0$ transitions exist. The series of lines with $\Delta J = 0, +1, -1$ are called Q-, R-, and P-branches, respectively.

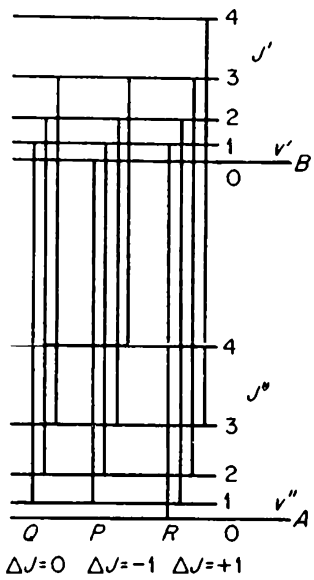


Fig. 5.15. The rotational structure of bands. Diagram of transitions corresponding to the Q-, P-, and R-branches.

If the vibrational levels in different electronic states of a diatomic molecule had identical spacings, i.e., if the frequencies ω_e' and ω_e'' were the same and if the crowding due to anharmonicity had taken place in the same manner, then, as may be seen from Fig. 5.13, bands with the same value of the difference $\Delta v = v' - v''$ would be exactly superimposed on each other. Actually, the distributions of vibrational levels in different electronic states differ only slightly from each other and the difference of vibrational frequencies $\omega_e' - \omega_e''$ is usually much smaller than the frequencies themselves. Hence, bands with the same difference Δv are close to each other and form so-called sequences (or diagonal groups) of bands, while bands with different Δv are separated by large frequency intervals. This situation is illustrated by a photograph of the emission spectrum of the so-called second positive system for nitrogen* (transition $C\,^3\Pi_u \rightarrow B\,^3\Pi_g$; see energy level diagram, Fig. 5.14). On the photograph (Fig. 5.16) is superposed a wavelength scale along with the numbers of the vibrational transitions (the first number corresponds to the upper electronic state). As may be seen from the photograph the distances between two successive bands of the same series, for example, $\Delta v = -2$, are

* Band systems corresponding to various electronic transitions are usually designated by some name. The more important systems are shown on the energy level diagrams.

approximately equal to 50 Å; while the distance between the closest bands of neighboring series is greater, for $\Delta v = -2$ and $\Delta v = -1$ it is approximately equal to 230 Å. As the frequency increases, the bands become more crowded due to the crowding of the vibrational levels as $v \to \infty$. Finally, the bands merge into a continuum associated with dissociation of the molecule.

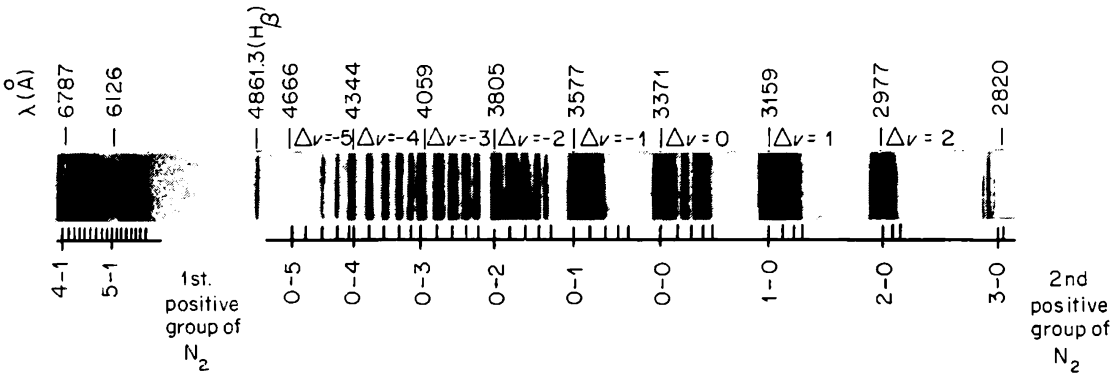


Fig. 5.16. Emission spectrum for the second positive system of nitrogen. The photograph is taken from [20a].

The distribution of lines in the rotational structure of the band can be easily established from (5.89) and the selection rules: $J' - J'' = 0, +1, -1$. The following relationships are then obtained for the three branches:

$$P: \quad J' = J'' - 1, \qquad \frac{1}{\lambda} = \frac{1}{\lambda_{v'v''}} + (B'_e - B''_e)J''^2 - (B'_e + B''_e)J'', \qquad J'' \geqslant 1; \quad (5.90')$$

$$Q: \quad J' = J'', \qquad \frac{1}{\lambda} = \frac{1}{\lambda_{v'v''}} + (B'_e - B''_e)J''^2 + (B'_e - B''_e)J'', \qquad J'' \geqslant 1; \quad (5.91)$$

$$R: \quad J' = J'' + 1, \qquad \frac{1}{\lambda} = \frac{1}{\lambda_{v'v''}} + (B'_e - B''_e)J''^2 + (3B'_e - B''_e)J'' + 2B'_e, \qquad J'' \geqslant 0. \quad (5.92)$$

Here $1/\lambda_{v'v''}$ is a constant representing the wave number which corresponds to the electronic-vibrational transition in the absence of any rotational structure (without the third term in (5.89)). The rotational structure depends on which of the rotational constants B'_e or B''_e is greater. The dependence of the wave numbers $1/\lambda$ on the quantum number J'' and the spectrum are shown schematically for the two cases in Figs. 5.17 and 5.18 (the so-called Fortrat diagrams). It is evident from Fig. 5.17 that when $B'_e > B''_e$ the speetrum has a

low-frequency limit, near which the lines are crowded ("red" edge), the lines extend in the direction of higher frequencies, and the spacing between them

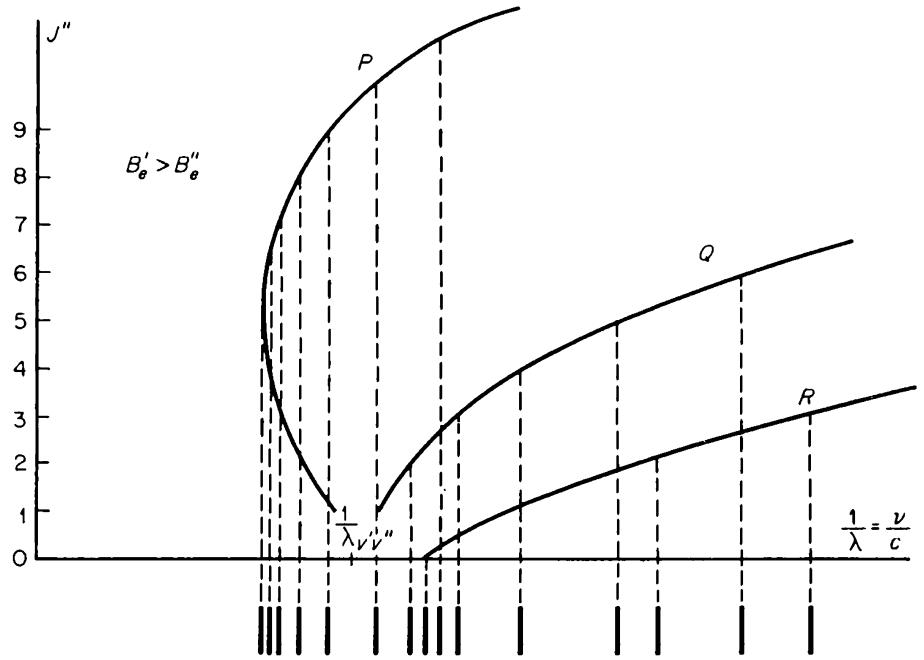


Fig. 5.17. The wave number in the P-, Q-, and R-branches of a band as a function of the rotational quantum number J'' for the case $B'_e > B''_e$ (red edge).

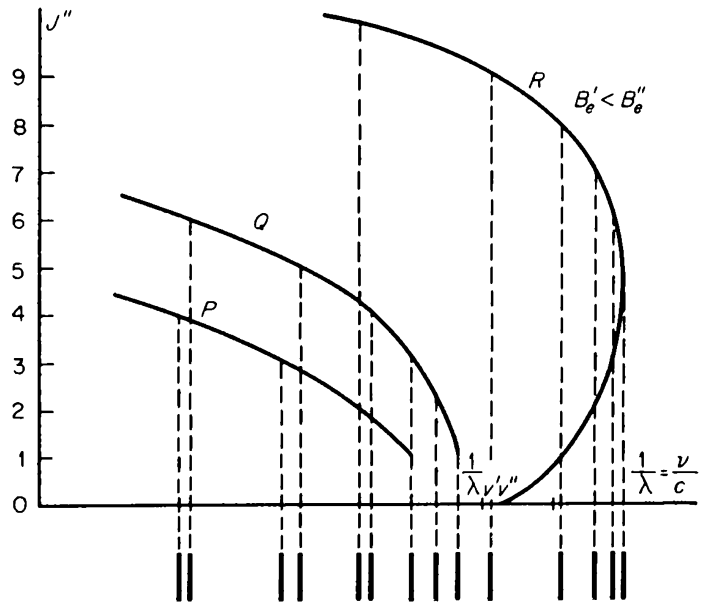


Fig. 5.18. The wave number in the P-, Q-, and R-branches of a band as a function of the rotational quantum number J'' for the case $B'_e < B''_e$ (violet edge).

increases. Conversely, for $B'_e < B''_e$ we have a "violet" edge and the lines extend in the direction of low frequencies. In the region around the edge the "frequency" spacing between the lines is of the order of $B'_e - B''_e$ (≈ 0.2 cm^{-1} for the second positive system of N_2, which on the wavelength scale corresponds to $\Delta\lambda \sim 0.2$ Å). In the region $J'' \gg 1$ where the lines are spread out the behavior of all the branches is approximately governed by

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} \approx \frac{1}{\lambda_{v'v''}} + (B'_e - B''_e)J''^2, \tag{5.93}$$

and the distances between the lines $\Delta(1/\lambda)$ increase in proportion to J''.

To illustrate the rotational structure we present a photograph (Fig. 5.19), which shows resolved the 0 – 2 band of the second positive system of N_2.

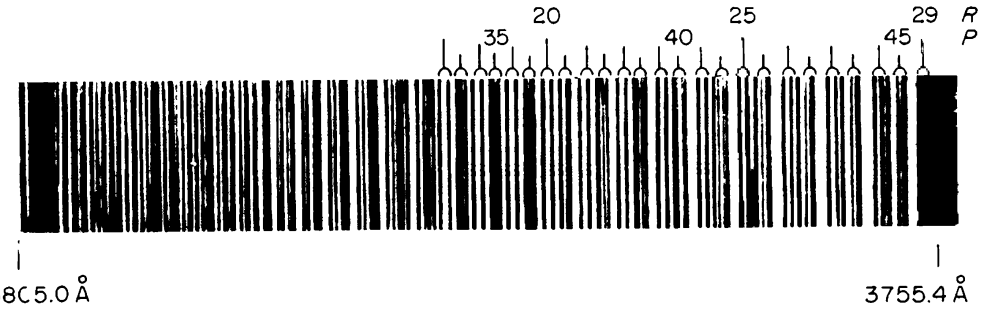


Fig. 5.19. Spectrum in the 0–2 band of the second positive system of nitrogen. The photograph is taken from [20a].

For the $C\,^3\Pi_u \rightarrow B\,^3\Pi_g$ transition of nitrogen $B'_e > B''_e$ (see Table 5.6) and the band is shaded toward the "red" side ("red" edge). Each of the lines of the rotational structure in this photograph consists of three lines, in correspondence with the multiple splitting of the levels. The Λ-type doubling is not resolved in the photograph (it is usually less than 1 cm^{-1}, which corresponds on the wavelength scale for $\lambda \approx 3800$ Å to $\Delta\lambda < 1$ Å).

As noted above, electronic transitions in molecules, as in atoms, correspond to the ultraviolet or the visible regions of the spectrum. If the nearest allowed transition from the ground to an excited state corresponds to ultraviolet photons, then the gas is transparent and colorless, as, for example, N_2, O_2, and NO. In some molecules, such as Br_2 or I_2, the nearest electronic level for which the transition from the ground state is allowed is located quite low and the molecule absorbs visible light. These gases are strongly colored. The molecular absorption bands usually extend in the direction of high frequencies into the far ultraviolet region of the spectrum, with subsequent transition to the continuum.

§16. The Frank–Condon principle

Electronic transitions in a molecule are related to the simultaneous change of all three characteristics of the particular state. The tremendous number of all possible combinations of initial and final states is limited by the selection rules. The selection rules, however, apply only to the changes in the electronic and rotational parameters of the molecule and say nothing about the possible changes of vibrational parameters. In order to establish which of the combinations of vibrational quantum numbers represent the most probable transitions, we return to the potential energy curves of a molecule, with rotation neglected.

The potential energy of a molecule depends on the internuclear distance. Repulsive forces dominate when the nuclei are close together, while attractive forces become dominant when the nuclei are far apart. At a certain distance r_e the repulsive and attractive forces cancel each other, and the potential energy exhibits a minimum at this point. The absolute value of this minimum corresponds to the energy of the electronic state U_e. The difference between the energy for infinite separation of the nuclei and U_e gives the dissociation energy (to within the accuracy of the zero-point vibrational energy). The shape and position of the potential curve depend on the electronic state, so that several potential curves are associated with each molecule. Figures 5.20 and

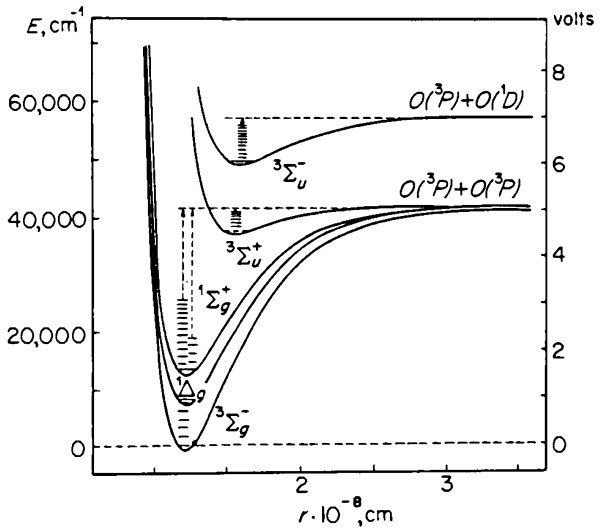


Fig. 5.20. Potential curves for the O_2 molecule.

5.21 give the potential energy curves for the O_2 and NO molecules, respectively, based on spectroscopic data*. The horizontal lines on these figures correspond to the vibrational energy levels for each of the electronic states.

* The diagrams are taken from [20, 21].

From the classical point of view the internuclear distance for a given vibrational energy varies periodically about the equilibrium position r_e. The variation takes place over the interval between the points of intersection of the horizontal line denoting the vibrational energy level with the potential curve.

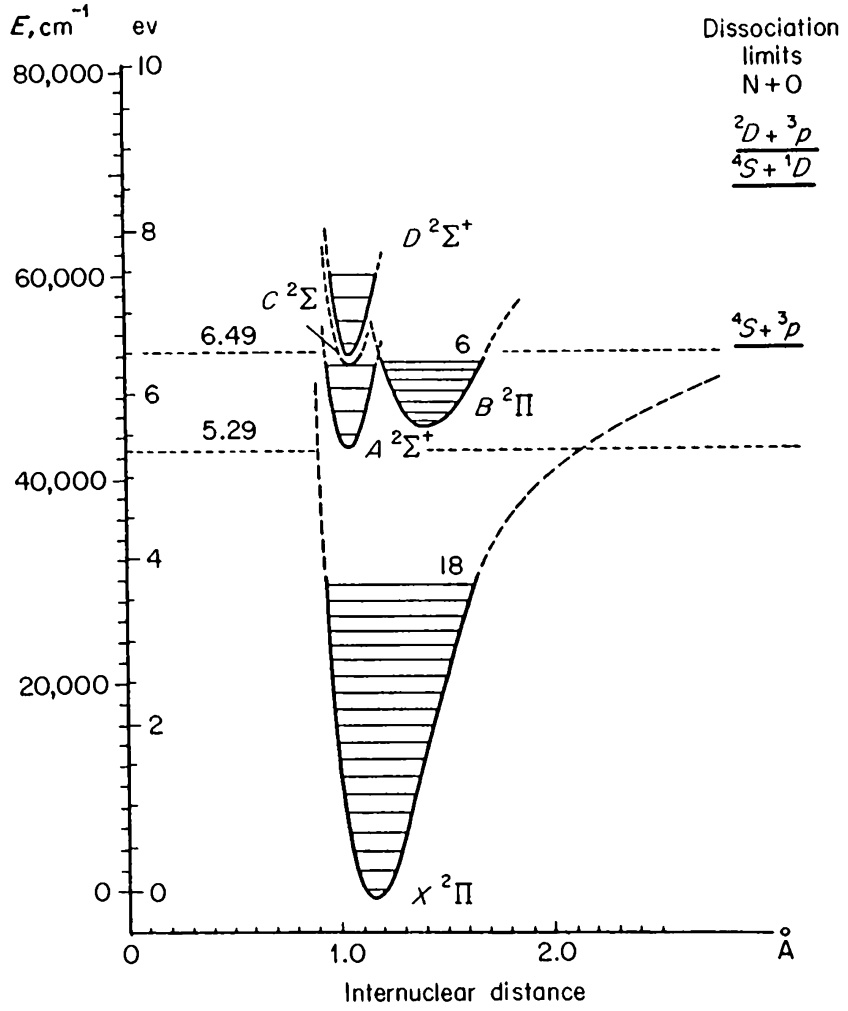


Fig. 5.21. Potential curves for the NO molecule.

At these points of intersection the relative velocity of the nuclei vanishes, since the direction of motion is reversed and at these positions (turning points) the molecule spends the longest time. On the other hand, the molecule passes the equilibrium position very rapidly since its velocity there is a maximum. Therefore, the spontaneous transition from the upper to the lower electronic state is most likely when the nuclei occupy the extreme positions. The rearrangement of the electron shell during the transition with the accompanying

photon emission takes place so rapidly that neither the positions of the nuclei nor their kinetic energies have sufficient time to change their values. In this regard, the duration of the rearrangement is determined by the time during which an electron travels through a distance of the order of a molecular dimension, i.e., $\sim 10^{-16}$ sec (for an electron velocity of $\sim 10^{8}$ cm/sec and a molecular dimension of $\sim 10^{-8}$ cm). However, the distance between the nuclei changes appreciably only over a time of the order of the period of oscillation, i.e., over a time $\sim 1/\omega_e c \sim 10^{-14}$ sec (for an $\omega_e \sim 1000$ cm^{-1}, which is appropriate for light molecules; ω_e for heavy molecules is even smaller, and the period of oscillation correspondingly greater)*.

Electronic transition to a lower state takes place at a constant internuclear distance, i.e., principally along vertical lines drawn from the turning points on the potential curves (Fig. 5.22). The molecule arrives at the final state with zero velocity, that is, it starts its vibrational motion, also at the turning points, with a new vibrational energy. Thus, the most probable transitions are those to such lower vibrational states for which one of the turning points is located at the same internuclear distance as one of the turning points in the upper state. This principle is known as the Frank–Condon principle and is illustrated

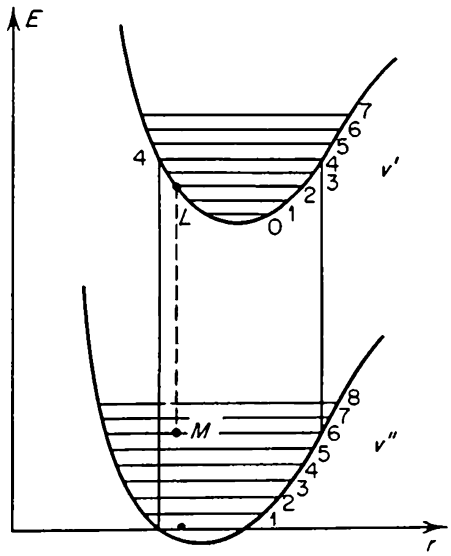


Fig. 5.22. Diagram of the potential curves and transitions illustrating the Frank–Condon principle.

* The probability of allowed electronic transitions from the upper to the lower states in atoms and molecules is of the order of 10^{8} sec^{-1}. An excited molecule, therefore, remains in the upper excited state for a time of the order of 10^{-8} sec (during which the atoms undergo a large number of oscillations $\sim 10^{6}$), and then, in a time $\sim 10^{-16}$ sec, the molecule makes the transition to a lower state, emitting a photon.

in Fig. 5.22, which shows the vertical lines for the most probable transitions from the upper state $v' = 4$ to the lower states $v'' = 0$ and $v'' = 6$. On the other hand, the transitions for which the vertical lines emanating from the upper turning points are found either in the middle of the lower level (as, for example, the 2 – 6 transition, shown in Fig. 5.22 by a dashed line) or entirely outside the interval bounded by the potential energy curve are highly improbable.

§17. Probability of molecular transitions with the emission of light

Let us consider the transition of a molecule from an upper to a lower state from a quantum-mechanical point of view. The probability of a spontaneous dipole transition with the emission of a photon is proportional to the square of the matrix element $\mathbf{d}$ of the dipole moment of the system and is described by the general equation (5.69). Let us consider a transition from an upper state $Bv'J'M'$ to a lower state $Av''J''M''$. The indices B and A denote the electronic states of the molecule; v' and v'' denote its vibrational states and J' and J'' are the rotational quantum numbers. M is the "magnetic" quantum number, defined as the component of the rotational angular momentum in the direction of the molecular axis. It can assume $2J + 1$ values: $M = J, J - 1, \ldots, -J$. The rotational energy is not dependent on M, while the wave function of the system is dependent on M. The matrix element is equal to

$$\bar{D}^{Bv'J'M'}_{Av''J''M''} = \int \Psi^*_{Bv'J'M'} \, \mathbf{d} \, \Psi_{Av''J''M''} \, d\tau, \tag{5.94}$$

where the integration is carried out over all coordinates on which the wave function of the system depends.

We shall again start from a simplified molecular model, in which the electronic, vibrational, and rotational modes of motion are assumed to be independent of each other. This makes it possible to represent the total wave function as a product of the three wave functions ψ_{el}, ψ_{vib}, and ψ_{rot}, describing respectively the electronic, the vibrational, and the rotational modes. They are functions of the following coordinates: ψ_{el} of the electron coordinates, ψ_{vib} of the internuclear distance, and ψ_{rot} of the angles of molecular rotation and also of the corresponding quantum numbers. For example, for the upper state, we have

$$\Psi_{Bv'J'M'} = \psi_{\text{el}\,B} \psi_{\text{vib}\,v',\,B} \psi_{\text{rot}\,J',M'}. \tag{5.95}$$

The function ψ_{vib} depends on the electronic state, since the frequencies of oscillations are dependent on the particular state of the electron.

Let us represent the dipole moment of the system $\mathbf{d} = \sum e_i \mathbf{r}_i$ (the summation is carried out over all particles) as the sum of the electronic and nuclear moments

$\mathbf{d} = \mathbf{d}_e + \mathbf{d}_a$. The electronic wave functions are, by definition, orthogonal to one another in the different electronic states (the nuclear coordinates enter only as parameters). Substituting $\mathbf{d}$ and Ψ into the integral (5.94) we can factor out from the term containing the nuclear moment the expression $\int \psi^*_{\mathrm{el}\,B}\psi_{\mathrm{el}\,A}\,d\tau_e$ which vanishes for $B \neq A$, so that the matrix element of the nuclear moment will also vanish. Since ψ_{vib} and ψ_{rot} are independent of the electronic coordinates, we can represent the remaining matrix element of the electronic moment as the product

$$D = D_e = \int \psi^*_{\mathrm{el}}|\mathbf{d}_e|\psi_{\mathrm{el}} \int \psi^*_{\mathrm{vib}}\psi_{\mathrm{vib}} \cdot \int \psi^*_{\mathrm{rot}}\mathbf{n}\psi_{\mathrm{rot}} = D_{\mathrm{el}} \cdot D_{\mathrm{vib}} \cdot D_{\mathrm{rot}}. \quad (5.96)$$

Here the rotational matrix element includes only the direction of the averaged electronic dipole moment, that is, of the unit vector $\mathbf{n}$, which is averaged over the "rotations" of the molecule. (For simplicity we have here dropped the indices, i.e., the quantum numbers on the wave functions and the differentials.) The condition for D_{rot} to be different from zero gives the selection rule for the change of the rotational quantum numbers for an allowed transition.

In our approximation, the energy of a molecule is independent of the direction of the rotational angular momentum; therefore, to obtain the probability of transition from one energy state, $Bv'J'$, to another, $Av''J''$, the probability should be averaged over all possible directions of the rotational angular momentum in the initial state and summed over all possible directions in the final state. By this means, the transition probability (in units of sec^{-1}) according to (5.69) is given by*

$$A^{Bv'J'}_{Av''J''} = \frac{64\pi^4}{3hc^3}\,\nu^3_{Bv'J',\,Av''J''}D^2_{\mathrm{el}\,BA}q_{v'v''}p_{J'J''}, \quad (5.97)$$

where

$$q_{v'v''} = D^2_{\mathrm{vib}\,v'v''} = \left|\int \psi^*_{\mathrm{vib}\,v'}(r)\psi_{\mathrm{vib}\,v''}(r)\,dr\right|^2, \quad (5.98)$$

$$p_{J'J''} = \frac{1}{2J'+1}\sum_{M'M''} D^2_{\mathrm{rot}\,J'M',\,J''M''}. \quad (5.99)$$

* Strictly speaking, the electronic matrix element D_{el} depends on the internuclear distance r (it is calculated at a particular time for a fixed internuclear distance which enters in the electronic wave functions). The quantity D^2_{el}, which enters in the equation for the transition probability (5.97), should be understood to denote a certain value of D^2_{el} averaged with respect to r, say, corresponding to the equilibrium position r_e in the upper electronic state.

The intensity of the corresponding spectral line in erg/cm^3 · sec is equal to the product of the transition probability A (sec^{-1}), the photon energy $h\nu$ (erg), and the number of molecules in the upper quantum state N (cm^{-3}): $I = h\nu NA$ (the indices are dropped for brevity).

The dimensionless probability $p_{J'J''}$ determines the intensity distribution in the rotational lines within the given band $Bv' \to Av''$. It is proven in the quantum theory of molecules that $p_{J'J''}$ obeys the rule

$$\sum_{J''} p_{J'J''} = \sum_{J''} \sum_{M'M''} \frac{1}{2J'+1} D^2_{\text{rot}\, J'M', J''M''} = 1. \tag{5.100}$$

The meaning of this relation is that after a transition from an upper electronic-vibrational state to a lower one, the molecule must terminate in one of the allowed rotational levels J'' (these transfers correspond to a total probability of one). The probability of a $Bv' \to Av''$ transition to any of the rotational levels is obtained by summing (5.97) over J''. In accordance with the condition (5.100), the probability is given by

$$A^{Bv'}_{Av''} = \frac{64\pi^4}{3hc^3} \nu^3_{Bv', Av''} D^2_{\text{el}\, BA} q_{v'v''}, \tag{5.101}$$

where $\nu_{Bv', Av''}$ is some average frequency for the given band. By virtue of the smallness of the rotational energies in comparison to the vibrational energies, the spread of frequencies within the band is not too great and the introduction of an average frequency for the band is justified.

The relative probability of the vibrational transfer $v' \to v''$ during the electronic transition $B \to A$ is characterized by the dimensionless factor $q_{v'v''}$, defined by (5.98). Let us consider the integral in (5.98). The wave functions belong to different electronic states, and they have different frequencies of vibration and different equilibrium positions r_e. Because of this fact the integral is different from zero for the different combinations of $v'v''$, and no selection rules exist for the vibrations (if the electronic state were unchanged and the vibrations were strictly harmonic, then the integral in (5.98), by virtue of the orthogonality condition, would be equal to zero for all $v' \neq v''$).

A schematic diagram of wave functions for various vibrational states is given in Fig. 5.23. In order for the integral of the product of the oscillating factors (5.98) (only $\psi_{\text{vib},v=0}$ does not oscillate) to have an appreciable value, it is necessary that, first, the factors should not have "opposite phases" and, second, that the largest maxima of both factors overlap. However, the largest maxima of vibrational wave functions lie very near the "turning points", which correspond to the maximum probability of these positions. Hence, those transitions are the most probable ones, where at least one of the turning points is in the upper state at the same internuclear distance as the turning

point in the lower state. The above analysis provides the quantum-mechanical basis for the Frank–Condon principle. The quantity $q_{v'v''}$, which is frequently called the Frank–Condon factor, is the probability of a given vibrational

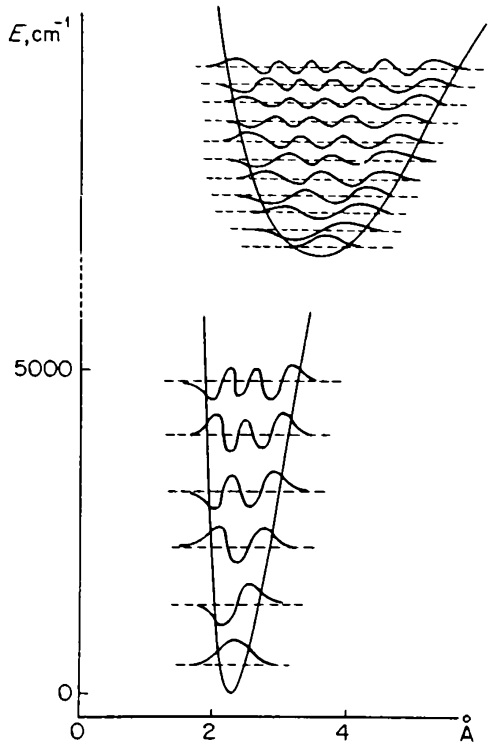


Fig. 5.23. Potential curves and wave functions of several vibrational states for a RbH molecule. (The figure is taken from [20b].) The number of zeros (nodes) of each wave function is equal to the vibrational quantum number v.

transition $v' \to v''$ for a specified electronic transition, since according to the sum rule for matrix elements, the total probability of a transition from the given v' to any v'' is equal to unity,

$$\sum_{v''} q_{v'v''} = \sum_{v''} D^2_{\text{vib}\, v'v''} = 1. \tag{5.102}$$

To illustrate the quantum-mechanical interpretation of the Frank–Condon principle, we present in Table 5.7 for the β-system of NO ($B\,^2\Pi \to X\,^2\Pi$) the values of $\left|\int \psi^*_{v'}\psi^*_{v''}\, dr\right|$ the square of which is equal to $q_{v'v''}$. These integrals were taken from [21]. It is instructive to consider Table 5.7 together with the potential curves of Fig. 5.21 to see how the Frank–Condon principle is satisfied.

The Frank–Condon factors must be known in order to calculate the relative probabilities of various $v' \to v''$ transitions, that is, the relative intensities of

Table 5.7

SQUARE ROOT OF THE FRANK–CONDON FACTOR $q_{v'v''}^{1/2}$ FOR THE β-SYSTEM OF BANDS IN A NO MOLECULE (v' REFERS TO THE UPPER STATE AND v'' TO THE LOWER ONE)

v''	Vibrational quantum number of the upper state v'								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
0	0.0000	0.0002	0.0010	0.0032	0.0079	0.0161	0.0280	0.0429	0.0587
1	0.0003	0.0024	0.0087	0.0219	0.0414	0.0625	0.0788	0.0811	0.0707
2	0.0021	0.0119	0.0336	0.0619	0.0819	0.0803	0.0569	0.0257	0.0040
3	0.0086	0.0364	0.0735	0.0896	0.0680	0.0273	0.0016	0.0065	0.0286
4	0.0250	0.0750	0.0967	0.0607	0.0115	0.0025	0.0286	0.0471	0.0362
5	0.0554	0.1069	0.0693	0.0077	0.0100	0.0447	0.0448	0.0146	0.0001
6	0.0972	0.1020	0.0153	0.0121	0.0530	0.0371	0.0027	0.0097	0.0341
7	0.1380	0.0556	0.0041	0.0573	0.0363	0.0001	0.0231	0.0401	0.0170
8	0.1603	0.0075	0.0497	0.0489	0.0000	0.0317	0.0389	0.0055	0.0066
9	0.1522	0.0101	0.0756	0.0046	0.0629	0.0004	0.0567		
10	0.1276	0.0452	0.0391	0.0395	0.0286	0.0301	0.0299		
11	0.0964	0.0849	0.0059	0.0686	0.0006	0.0572	0.0003		
12	0.0657	0.1100	0.0033	0.0599	0.0158	0.0382	0.0198		
13	0.0405	0.1123	0.0318	0.0252	0.0515	0.0047	0.0506		
14	0.0226	0.0956	0.0704	0.0010	0.0619	0.0070	0.0399		
15	0.0113	0.0698	0.0962	0.0102	0.0363	0.0404	0.0070		
16	0.0051	0.0442	0.0985	0.0449	0.0057	0.0587	0.0046		
17	0.0021	0.0246	0.0816	0.0793	0.0036	0.0394	0.0361		
18	0.0007	0.0120	0.0565	0.0932	0.0329	0.0080	0.0557		
19	0.0002	0.0051	0.0334	0.0838	0.0693	0.0022	0.0374		
20	0.0001	0.0019	0.0169	0.0610	0.0881	0.0297	0.0068		
21		0.0006	0.0074	0.0369	0.0821	0.0663	0.0031		
22		0.0002	0.0028	0.0188	0.0603	0.0852	0.0326		
23			0.0009	0.0801	0.0361	0.0784	0.0685		
24				0.0030	0.0179	0.0559	0.0865		
25				0.0009	0.0074	0.0331	0.0727		
26					0.0026	0.0150	0.0486		
27					0.0007	0.0057	0.0258		
28						0.0018	0.0110		
29							0.0038		

$v' =$	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
$v'' = 0;$	0.0731	0.0837	0.0892	0.0866	0.0841	0.0744	0.0601	0.0445	0.0303

$v' =$	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26
$v'' = 0;$	0.0190	0.0110	0.0059	0.0029	0.0013	0.0006	0.0002	0.0001	0.0000

The rectangles denote the most probable transitions from each upper state.

the different bands within the limits of the given electronic transition. The Frank–Condon factors have been calculated for a number of systems of the more important molecules NO, O_2, N_2, and the ion N_2^+ (see [8, 21–24]).

In order to find the absolute values of the transition probabilities and the intensities of lines or bands it is necessary to know the values of the electronic matrix element D_{el}. Theoretical calculation of the electronic matrix element entails considerable difficulties and it is usually determined experimentally (see §§18 and 21). By analogy with the theory of atomic transitions, the electronic matrix element is usually replaced by the concept of the oscillator strength.

Let us sum the probability of the $A_{Bv' \to Av''}$ transition according to (5.101) over the final vibrational states v'', and average it over the original states v'. We then obtain the probability of the $B \to A$ electronic transition for arbitrary vibrational and rotational transitions

$$A_{BA} = \frac{64\pi^4}{3hc^3} \nu_{BA}^3 D_{el\,BA}^2, \tag{5.103}$$

where ν_{BA} is some average frequency for the electronic transition (as before, the justification for introducing an average frequency is the fact that the differences between the vibrational energies are small in comparison with the differences in the electronic energies). Using (5.69), (5.73), and (5.60), we can determine the oscillator strength for the $B \to A$ electronic transition

$$f_{BA} = \frac{8\pi^2 m}{3he^2} \nu_{BA} D_{el\,BA}^2. \tag{5.104}$$

The ratio of the statistical weights of the upper and lower electronic states is here set equal to unity under the assumption that the multiplicity of both terms is the same. It may be expected that the oscillator strengths for molecular transitions are of the same order of magnitude as for atomic transitions. The numerical values of the oscillator strengths for the more important systems will be given below.

§18. Light absorption coefficient in lines

The light absorption coefficient in a line, corresponding to the $Av''J'' \to Bv'J'$ transition (which is the reverse of the transition with the emission of light considered in the preceding section), will be calculated from the principle of detailed balancing. This principle establishes the relationship between the Einstein coefficients for direct and reverse transitions as given by (5.71)*.

* The ratio of statistical weights in this equation is taken, as before, to be equal to one; see (5.104).

Substituting into (5.71) the emission probability given by (5.97), noting the definition (5.70), and replacing D_{el}^2 in (5.97) by the oscillator strength from (5.104), we obtain the absorption coefficient in the form

$$\kappa_{Av''J'',\,Bv'J'} = \frac{\pi e^2}{mc} f_{BA} q_{v''v'} p_{J''J'} N_{Av''J''} F(\nu), \tag{5.105}$$

where $N_{Av''J''}$ is the molecule number density in the lower state $Av''J''$, and $F(\nu)$ is a function describing the absorption distribution within the line; it is normalized to unity, with $\int F(\nu)\, d\nu = 1$.

Let us integrate the absorption coefficient of the $A \to B$ electronic transition over the entire spectrum. Obviously, the same result will be obtained by integrating the absorption coefficient of each line (5.105) with respect to frequency and then summing over all the spectral lines*. Summation over lines is equivalent to summation over all initial and final states $v''J''$ and $v'J'$. Summation over the final states is carried out using the sum rules (5.100) and (5.102); summation over the initial states reduces to a summation over the number of molecules: $N_A = \sum_{v''J''} N_{Av''J''}$, where N_A is the molecule number density in the A electronic state. If A is the ground state, then N_A is practically equal to the total molecule number density N.

The integral over the spectrum of the absorption cross section for a molecule in the A state upon its transition to the B state ($\sigma_\nu = \kappa_\nu / N_a$) is

$$\int_0^\infty \sigma_\nu \, d\nu = \frac{\pi e^2}{mc} f_{BA}. \tag{5.106}$$

This result agrees with the corresponding result for atomic transitions. Thus, as in the case of atoms, the absorption "area" corresponding to the given electronic transition is determined solely by the oscillator strength. The difference consists of the fact that in molecules this "area" is distributed over a large number of lines, as a result of which only a small part of the area is attributed to each line. Consequently, the "height" of the molecular lines is much smaller than the "height" of the atomic lines. Both multiplet splitting of lines and Λ-type doubling lower the "height" of the lines several times without, however, changing the total area.

The oscillator strength for a given band system can be determined from experimental studies of molecular absorption spectra. In these studies the attenuation of light by an optically thin gas layer (still transparent at the peaks of the lines) is measured. In this manner the "area" of the absorption spectrum can be found, and (5.106) can then be used to calculate the oscillator

* We should also include here the continuum that starts with the frequency for which the bands converge toward the dissociation limit.

strength. If the Frank–Condon factor has been calculated, then the absorption curve for an individual line or band may be used directly to estimate the oscillator strength (relatively simple formulas for the rotational transition probabilities $p_{J''J'}$ are available).

Using this method the authors of [25] measured the oscillator strengths for the γ- and β-bands of the NO molecule (γ: $X\,^2\Pi \to A\,^2\Sigma^+$; β: $X\,^2\Pi \to B\,^2\Pi$). They found that $f_\gamma \approx 0.0025$ and $f_\beta \approx 0.008$. In [26] the oscillator strength for the Schumann–Runge bands of an oxygen molecule (the $X\,^3\Sigma_g^- \to B\,^3\Sigma_u^-$ transition) was reported as $f = 0.259$. Here, one part of the total absorption "area" $\Delta f = 0.044$ is due to the bands and the remainder $\Delta f = 0.215$ is due to the continuum corresponding to the dissociation of the O_2 molecules into atoms $O(^3P) + O(^1D)$. The continuum begins at $\lambda = 1760$ Å (the lower edge of the band is at $\gamma = 2030$ Å). The cross section in the continuum has a maximum at $\lambda = 1450$ Å given by $\sigma_\nu = 1.81 \cdot 10^{-17}$ cm^2 and is reduced to one half of this value at $\lambda = 1567$ Å and $\lambda = 1370$ Å. It should be noted that the oscillator strength for the Schumann–Runge bands, obtained from data on light emission at high temperatures, is found to be much smaller (see §20; measurements of the absorption of light by cold oxygen were reported in [26]). Possible reasons for this difference have been discussed in [27].

In general, it should be noted that the oscillator strength for a molecular transition, unlike those for atomic transitions, is not strictly a constant quantity (in particular, it depends on the degree of vibrational excitation and the method of averaging over the internuclear distance). The data on oscillator strengths available in the literature frequently differ appreciably for the same transitions. A summary of known results on oscillator strengths for molecular transitions as well as references to the literature may be found in the review article by Soshnikov [27a].

§19. Molecular absorption at high temperatures

At room temperature practically all molecules are in the ground electronic and vibrational states. For example, only one vibrational quantum is excited per 10^{-5} nitrogen molecules, approximately. The long wave absorption edge for diatomic molecules always lies in the ultraviolet or visible regions of the spectrum, for example, in the far ultraviolet region for O_2, NO, and N_2 molecules*, and in the visible region for Br_2, I_2, and CN molecules. As the temperature increases, excited molecules appear in the gas; these molecules

* Transitions to the low-lying levels $^1\Delta_g$ and $^1\Sigma_g^+$ in the O_2 molecule are forbidden. Also forbidden is the transition to the $^3\Sigma_u^+$ level. The Hertzberg bands which correspond to the latter transition are extremely weak. The transition $X\,^1\Sigma_g^+ \to A\,^3\Sigma_u^+$ in N_2 (the very weak Vegard–Kaplan bands) is also forbidden.

are in upper vibrational states from which a transition into the same upper electronic state requires less energy. Thus, an increase in temperature causes the long wave absorption edge to be displaced in the "red" direction. At temperatures of the order of 10,000°K there also appear molecules which are in the upper electronic states from which new transitions to even higher electronic states are possible. This is the way in which the absorption in the first and second positive systems of nitrogen takes place (the transitions $A\,^3\Sigma_u \rightarrow B\,^3\Pi_g$ and $B\,^3\Pi_g \rightarrow C\,^3\Pi_u$; see Table 5.6 and Fig. 5.14).

Let us consider the molecular absorption of light at high temperatures, using NO molecules as an example. In air at temperatures of the order of 2,000–10,000°K there is an appreciable concentration of nitric oxide, of the order of several percent (see §4 of Chapter III). As we shall show later, the absorption of light by NO molecules under certain conditions plays an important role in determining the optical properties of high-temperature air. Calculations of the absorption by NO molecules have been presented in [21], and we shall essentially follow the approach given there.

There exist three important systems of NO absorption bands from the ground electronic state: γ (the $X\,^2\Pi \rightarrow A\,^2\Sigma^+$ transition), β ($X\,^2\Pi \rightarrow B\,^2\Pi$) and δ ($X\,^2\Pi \rightarrow C\,^3\Sigma$). The long wave edges of the first two systems correspond to $\sim 45{,}000\ \text{cm}^{-1}$ and the long wave edge of the third to $\sim 52{,}000\ \text{cm}^{-1}$ (see Table 5.6). The principal role in the absorption of light at temperatures $T \sim 3{,}000$–$10{,}000$°K is played by the β-system, since, according to the Frank–Condon principle, the probable transitions in the γ- and δ-systems occur without large changes in the vibrational quantum number; in these two systems, basically only the high frequencies of the order of 45,000–52,000 cm^{-1} are absorbed, and these frequencies lie in the far ultraviolet region and are not very important at these temperatures. On the other hand, in the β-system transitions from the high lower vibrational states with $v'' \sim 12$ to the upper ground state $v' \sim 0$ are probable, and these produce absorption in the near ultraviolet and visible regions with frequencies $\sim 25{,}000\ \text{cm}^{-1}$.

At high densities and temperatures of the gas, the molecular lines broaden strongly and may even overlap, forming an almost continuous spectrum. Let us compare the line widths and the average distance between the lines in the β-system of NO. For our estimate we take the gas temperature T to be 8000°K and the density to be the same as that of atmospheric air at standard conditions. At 8000°K the Doppler width for lines with frequencies $\sim 25{,}000\ \text{cm}^{-1}$ is of the order of $0.3\ \text{cm}^{-1}$. If we assume that each gaskinetic collision changes the state of the vibrational or rotational motion, then the broadening due to collisions is even greater, of the order of

$$\frac{\Delta\nu}{c} = \frac{N\sigma_{\text{gas}}\bar{v}}{2\pi c} \approx \frac{3 \cdot 10^{19} \cdot 5 \cdot 10^{-15} \cdot 1.5 \cdot 10^{6}}{2\pi \cdot 3 \cdot 10^{10}} \approx 1.2\ \text{cm}^{-1}.$$

Let us estimate the average distance between the lines for the β-system of NO in the frequency interval from 15,000 to 45,000 cm^{-1}. In order to absorb even a very low energy photon at 15,000 cm^{-1} the molecule must be excited to an energy of $45{,}000 - 15{,}000 = 30{,}000$ cm^{-1}, that is, to the vibrational level $v'' \approx 20$. Examining the system of potential curves and taking the Frank–Condon principle into account, we can conclude that transitions to approximately five upper states are possible from each lower vibrational level, that is, the interval contains approximately $20 \cdot 5 = 100$ bands. At $T = 8000°K$ the rotational excitation of 2–3 kT, which corresponds to 7500 cm^{-1}, is appreciable, so that approximately $J'' \approx (2.5\, kT/hcB_e)^{1/2} \approx 80$ rotational levels of the lower state participate in the transitions. Each of these yields the two lines $J' = J'' + 1$ and $J'' = J'' - 1$ (the Q-branch $J' = J''$ is usually very weak for $J'' \gtrsim 10$), and there are 160 rotational lines in all per band. Each of them is doubled by the multiplet splitting and is then split again into two lines by Λ-type doubling. Thus in the frequency interval considered of 30,000 cm^{-1} we have approximately $100 \cdot 160 \cdot 2 \cdot 2 = 64{,}000$ lines. The average distance between them is of the order of 0.5 cm^{-1}; since the line width is ~ 1 cm^{-1}, the lines strongly overlap and the spectrum is actually almost continuous.

Let us make a rough estimate of the absorption coefficient. When the average vibrational excitation of a molecule is of the order of kT, that is, of the order of 5000 cm^{-1} at $T = 8000°K$, the most probable transitions are those to the lowest vibrational levels of the upper state. For purposes of our estimate let us assume that light is absorbed mainly during the transitions to the $v' = 0$ level of an upper electronic state. Then, the $h\nu$ photons are absorbed only by molecules excited to the energy $E_0 - h\nu$, where E_0 is the energy of the upper electronic state. According to the Boltzmann relation the number of such molecules is proportional to $\exp[-(E_0 - h\nu)/kT]$. We write the absorption coefficient in the form of (5.82), expressing the absorption cross section in terms of the differential oscillator strength

$$\kappa_\nu = \frac{\pi e^2}{mc} N \frac{df}{d\nu},$$

where N is the number density of NO molecules. Noting that according to the Frank–Condon principle the probability of absorption of photons with energies exceeding E_0 is very small, we can assume that the entire absorption "area" $\int_0^\infty (df/d\nu)\, d\nu$ is concentrated mainly in the frequency interval between 0 and E_0/h, and that the contribution to this integral of the frequency region between E_0/h and ∞ is very small. Recalling that $\kappa_\nu \sim df/d\nu \sim \exp[-(E_0 - h\nu)/kT]$, we find the proportionality coefficient from (5.106) or,

equivalently, from the integral $\int_0^{E_0/h} (df/dv)\, dv$ which is equal to the oscillator strength f. Thus, we obtain

$$\frac{df}{dv} = f \frac{h}{kT} e^{-\frac{E_0 - h\nu}{kT}}$$

and

$$\kappa_\nu = \frac{\pi e^2}{mc} f N \frac{h}{kT} e^{-\frac{E_0 - h\nu}{kT}}. \tag{5.107}$$

Let us replace N, the number density of NO molecules, by its concentration in air $c_{NO} = N\rho_0/N_0\rho$, where N_0 is the molecular number density for atmospheric air and ρ/ρ_0 is the ratio of the air density to standard density ($\rho_0 = 1.27 \cdot 10^{-3}$ g/cm^3). We also replace the frequencies by the wave numbers $1/\lambda = \nu/c$. We then obtain

$$\kappa_\lambda = \frac{3.4 \cdot 10^7}{T^\circ} f \cdot c_{NO} \frac{\rho}{\rho_0} \exp\left[-\frac{1.44}{T^\circ}\left(\frac{1}{\lambda_{00}} - \frac{1}{\lambda}\right)\right] \text{cm}^{-1}. \tag{5.108}$$

Here $1/\lambda_{00} = E_0/hc$ (this quantity for the β-system of NO is equal to 45,440 cm^{-1}). In (5.108) $1/\lambda_{00}$ and $1/\lambda$ have the dimensions of cm^{-1}. Knowing the oscillator strength we can now estimate the absorption coefficient. Setting $f_\beta \approx 0.006$ for the β-system of NO (see §20), we find that for red light $\lambda = 6500$ Å with $\rho/\rho_0 = 1$, $T = 8000°$K ($c_{NO} = 0.036$), that $\kappa_{NO} \approx 4.1 \cdot 10^{-3}$ cm^{-1} (the cross section per molecule is $\sigma_{NO} = \kappa_{NO}/N_{NO} = 4.3 \cdot 10^{-21}$ cm^2).

With respect to the distribution of the potential curves and the satisfaction of the Frank–Condon principle for transitions, the principal absorption system of molecular oxygen (the Schumann–Runge system) is completely analogous to the β-system of NO. Thus, the absorption coefficient for O_2 at high temperatures can be estimated from (5.107) and (5.108) where we must, of course, substitute the constants pertaining to O_2.

§20. More exact calculation of the molecular absorption coefficient at high temperatures

More accurate calculations of the absorption coefficient in a line (see [8, 21, 28]) must be based on the exact equations for the absorption coefficient and the actual probabilities of vibrational transitions. We shall again assume that the lines are broadened so that they almost (or quite appreciably) overlap.

We introduce an average absorption coefficient for the frequency ν and the given electronic transition $A \to B$. This coefficient is obtained by averaging the actual coefficient in a small spectral interval between ν and $\nu + \Delta\nu$, as was done in §12. To carry out the averaging we integrate the absorption

coefficient for an individual line (5.105) with respect to the frequency (this yields the "area" of one line) and sum the integral over all lines contained in the frequency interval between ν and $\nu + \Delta\nu$. The result obtained will be equal to $\bar{\kappa}_\nu \Delta\nu$. Proceeding in the same manner as in the derivation of (5.106), we find the averaged absorption coefficient for the frequency ν and the given electronic transition,

$$\bar{\kappa}_{\nu_{AB}} = \frac{\pi e^2}{mc} \frac{f_{BA}}{\Delta\nu} \sum_{\text{bands}} q_{v''v'} \sum_{J''} N_{Av''J''}. \tag{5.109}$$

The summations over J'' and over the bands extend up to those initial rotational levels and to those bands which give rise to lines and are contained in the spectral interval $\Delta\nu$. The number of molecules in the $A_{v''}J''$ state at a temperature T can be calculated by substituting the energy of the molecule in the given vibrational and rotational state into the Boltzmann equation (see [29])

$$N_{Av''J''} = N_A \frac{\exp\left(-\frac{hc\omega_A v''}{kT}\right)}{Z_{vA}} \frac{(2J''+1)\exp\left(-\frac{hcB_A J''(J''+1)}{kT}\right)}{Z_{rA}}. \tag{5.110}$$

Here N_A is the number of molecules in the electronic state A, and

$$Z_{vA} = \left(1 - e^{-\frac{hc\omega_A}{kT}}\right)^{-1} \approx \frac{kT}{hc\omega_A} \quad \text{and} \quad Z_{rA} = \frac{kT}{hcB_A}$$

are the vibrational and rotational partition functions in the lower electronic state, respectively.

The band is mainly filled by lines with large rotational numbers $J'' \gg 1$ for which, according to (5.90) and (5.91), the wave numbers are approximately given by

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = \frac{1}{\lambda_{v''v'}} + (B_B - B_A)J''^2. \tag{5.111}$$

The frequency interval $\Delta\nu$ is filled with lines of the $v''v'$ band corresponding to rotational numbers from J'' to $J'' + \Delta J''$, where $\Delta J''$ is determined by differentiating (5.111),

$$\frac{\Delta\nu}{c} = \Delta\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right) = (B_B - B_A)2J''\,\Delta J''. \tag{5.112}$$

Assuming that $J'' \gg 1$ and $\Delta J'' \ll J''$ (the interval $\Delta\nu$ is sufficiently small), we can regard all the $\Delta J''$ terms in the summation over J'' in (5.109) to be the same. Neglecting unity in comparison with J'', we substitute J''^2 given by (5.111) into the exponent of (5.110) and replace $\Delta\nu$ in (5.109) through (5.112). Factoring

out the exponential factor in (5.109) in order to obtain a final expression analogous to the approximate relation (5.107), we find

$$\bar{\kappa}_{\nu_{AB}} = \frac{\pi e^2}{mc} f_{BA} N_A \frac{h}{kT} e^{-\frac{(E_B - E_A) - h\nu}{kT}} \varphi, \tag{5.113}$$

where the dimensionless factor φ is defined as

$$\varphi = \frac{kT}{hc|B_B - B_A|} \frac{1}{Z_{vA} Z_{rA}} \exp\left[-\frac{hc}{kT}\left(\frac{1}{\lambda} - \frac{1}{\lambda_{00}}\right)\right] \times \sum_{\text{bands}} \exp\left\{-\left[\omega_A v'' + \frac{B_A}{B_B - B_A}\left(\frac{1}{\lambda} - \frac{1}{\lambda_{v''v'}}\right)\right]\right\}. \tag{5.114}$$

Here $1/\lambda_{00} = (1/hc)(E_B - E_A)$ is again the wave number corresponding to an electronic transition in the absence of vibrations and rotations (E_B and E_A are the energies of electronic states including the zero-point energy $E = U_e + hc\omega/2$) and $1/\lambda_{v''v'}$ is the wave number corresponding to the transition $Av'' \to Bv'$ in the absence of rotations. If $B_B > B_A$, then the bands have an edge on the "red" side and extend toward the "violet". If, however, $B_B < B_A$ then the opposite is true (see (5.111)). Hence, the sum over the bands in (5.114) is taken over those bands with $\lambda_{v''v'} > \lambda$ for $B_B > B_A$ (as in the case of the γ-system of NO) and over those bands with $\lambda_{v''v'} < \lambda$ for $B_B < B_A$ (as in the case of the β-system of NO or in the O_2 Schumann–Runge system). An excellent illustration of this situation is given in Figs. 5.24 and 5.25 taken from [21], which shows the value of the summation in the factor φ as a function of wavelength for the γ- and β-systems of NO, respectively. The curves have a "sawtooth" character, with each new tooth appearing when a new band

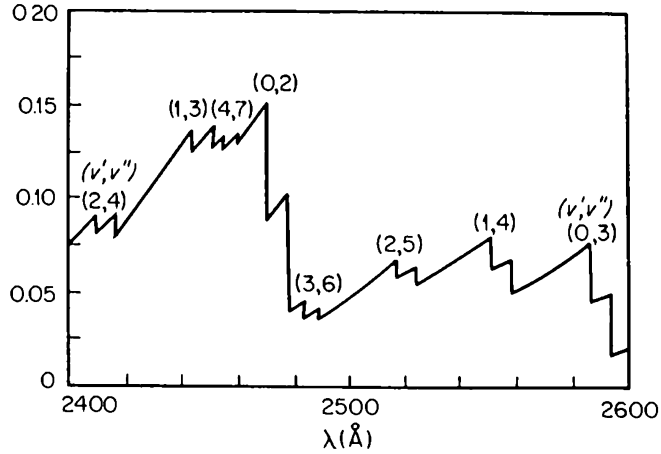


Fig. 5.24. Spectral absorption coefficient in the γ-system of NO, in relative units. $T = 8000°K$. The absorption jump at $\lambda = 2480$ Å corresponds to the inclusion of the 0–2 vibrational transition.

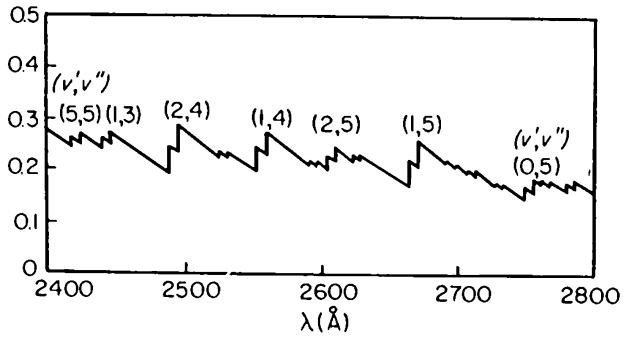


Fig. 5.25. Spectral absorption coefficient in the β-system of NO, in relative units. $T =$ 8000°K.

is included in the absorption process. In the case of the γ-system, as λ decreases the absorption increases abruptly (in a jump), and in the case of the β-system the same happens with an increase in λ.

The more exact equation (5.114) is transformed into the approximate equation (5.107) by setting the factor φ (which takes into account the probability of various transitions) equal to unity (since (5.107) pertains to transition from the ground state, for which $E_A = 0$ and $N_A = N$). Calculations show that the coefficient φ is close to one, so that (5.107) may be used for rough estimates.

We have seen that molecular absorption coefficients can be calculated theoretically with the aid of spectroscopic data on molecules, energy level diagrams, vibrational and rotational constants, and potential curves, to within a constant factor–the oscillator strength f—which can be determined experimentally. Figures 5.26 to 5.28 show the results of calculations for the

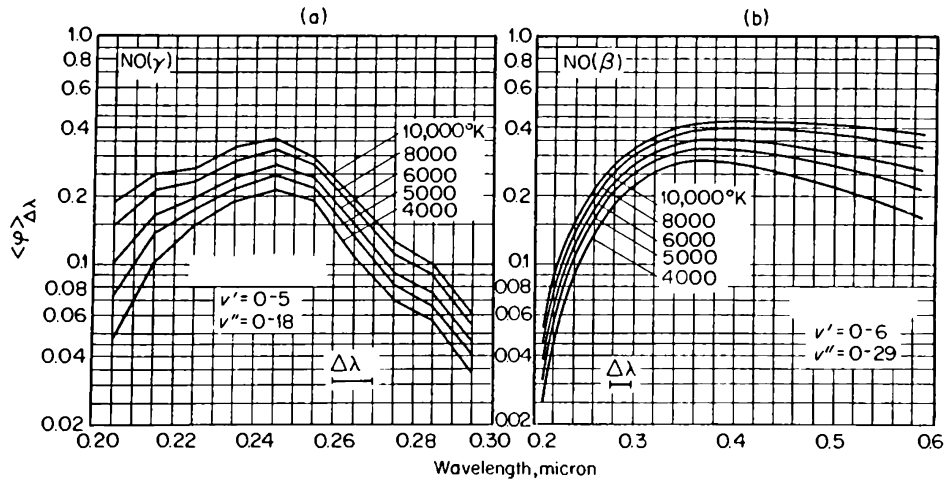


Fig. 5.26. Factor φ for the γ- and β-systems of NO.

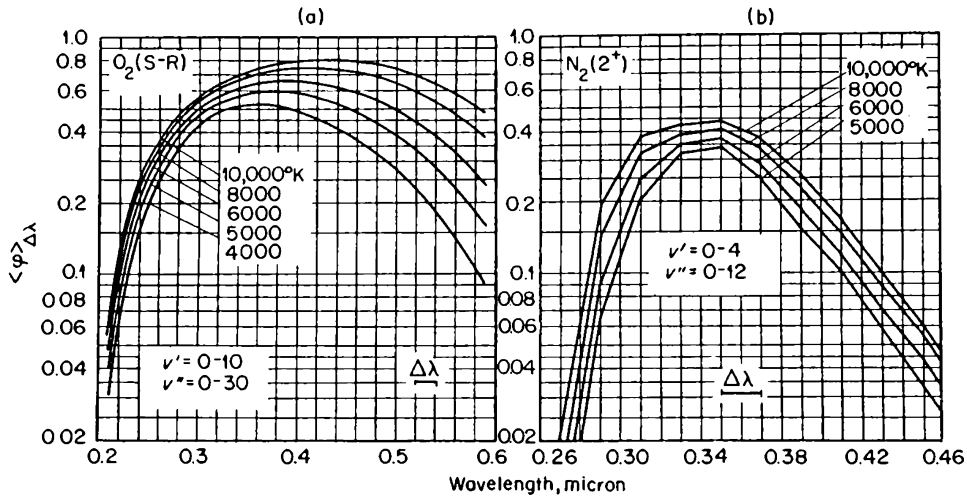


Fig. 5.27. Factor φ for the Schumann–Runge system of O_2 and for the 2^+ system of N_2.

factor φ_λ at several temperatures for the more important absorption systems* which determine the absorption properties of high-temperature air: the γ- and β-systems of NO, the Schumann–Runge system of O_2, the 1^+ and 2^+ systems of N_2, and the 1^- system of N_2^+ (ionized nitrogen molecule); the values of $1/\lambda_{00}$ for these systems are given in Table 5.6. The table of oscillator strengths for these systems is presented in the following section. Figures 5.26 to 5.28 are taken from [8].

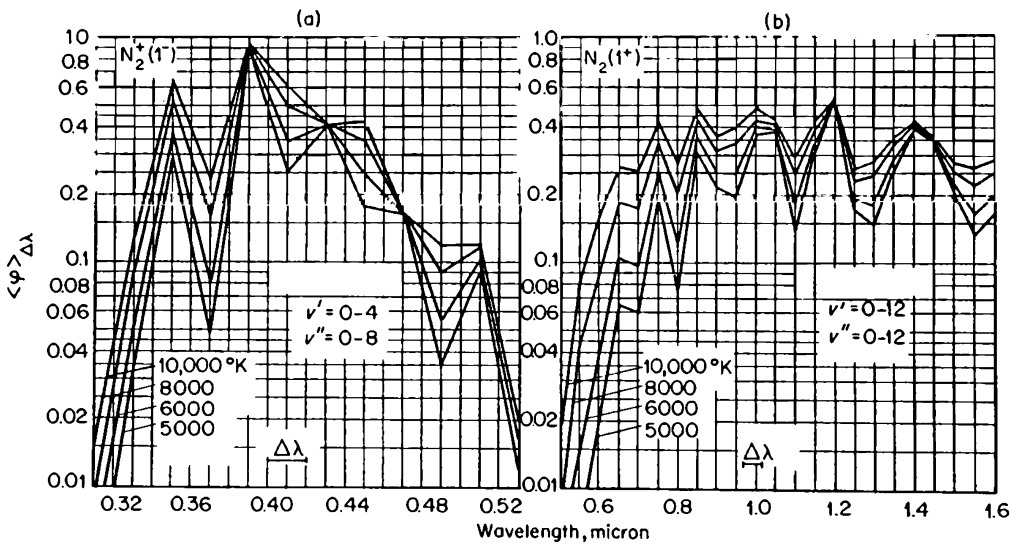


Fig. 5.28. Factor φ for the 1^- system of N_2^+ and the 1^+ system of N_2.

* The values of φ_λ are smoothed out by averaging over small intervals $\Delta\lambda$; this process is necessary to permit comparison with experimental data, where $\Delta\lambda$ is determined by the apparatus (a monochromator).

4. *Air*

§21. Radiative properties of high-temperature air

The absorption and emission of light by high-temperature air is of primary significance for such important practical problems as the study of phenomena occurring in the fire ball of a strong explosion (see Chapter IX) or the calculation of radiative heating of ballistic missiles and artificial satellites during re-entry into the atmosphere. The first problem involves a wide range of temperatures, up to hundreds of thousands and even a million degrees. Of greatest interest for the second problem are temperatures $\sim$5000–20,000°K, which are developed behind the detached shock wave in front of bodies moving in the atmosphere with speeds of the order of up to 10 km/sec. The density range in these phenomena is also wide, from $\sim 10\rho_0$ (behind a shock wave propagating in air at standard density ρ_0) to very low densities $\sim 10^{-3}$–$10^{-4}\rho_0$ and even less in the central regions of a fire ball and at high altitudes.

Cold air, as we know, is transparent to visible light. Absorption begins in the ultraviolet region and is attributed to the system of Schumann–Runge bands for oxygen molecules. The absorption reaches a practically measurable value at $\lambda \approx 1860$ Å. The experimental curve for the absorption coefficient of cold air at standard density as a function of wavelength is shown in Fig. 9.3 (§2 of Chapter IX).

At temperatures above 15,000–20,000°K, when the molecules are almost completely dissociated into atoms which are in turn appreciably ionized, the absorption of light in the continuous spectrum is composed of photoelectric absorption by atoms and ions and of bremsstrahlung absorption in the field of the ions. These mechanisms were considered in detail in Part 1 of the present chapter, where approximate formulas were obtained for the calculation of absorption coefficients and radiation mean free paths, based on the hydrogen-like approximation. In Table 5.2 of §8 were shown the results of calculations of the mean free paths in air for conditions of multiple ionization, that is, for temperatures above approximately 50,000°K. At temperatures below $\sim$15,000°K all of the above mechanisms participate in the absorption, with the relative role of the several mechanisms strongly dependent on the light frequency and on the thermodynamic conditions, i.e., on the temperature and density. Associated with the mechanisms of continuous and quasi-continuous absorption are: molecular transitions in the molecules present in high-temperature air N_2, O_2, N_2^+ (ion), NO and NO_2, photoelectric absorption by the species O_2, N_2, NO, O, N, and O^-, free-free transitions in the fields of O^+, N^+, NO^+, O_2^+, and N_2^+ ions and also, possibly, in the fields of neutral atoms and molecules. Actual calculations of the absorption

coefficients obviously require a knowledge of the concentrations of all the above components of air and also the concentration of free electrons (see Chapter III).

Radiative properties of high-temperature air have been studied in shock tubes by the AVCO-Everett Research Laboratory in the United States. Experimental and calculated results are presented in [8, 31, 32, 32a, 43–46], and in the reviews [28, 30, 47] (see also [33, 48]). The calculation of absorption and emission coefficients in high-temperature air are contained in a series of papers by Biberman and his associates. A review of these papers is given in [56], which considers the problem of the radiative heating of a body moving in the atmosphere at hypersonic speed. This article contains an extensive bibliography. Reference [64] is also devoted to problems of light absorption in air.

The main result of experimental studies of the radiative properties of air in shock tubes is the determination of oscillator strengths for the more important molecular transitions. In carrying out the experiment one measures the spectral intensity of radiation of a column of heated gas at different temperatures and densities. Behind the incident shock wave temperatures of the order of 3000–5000°K are studied, while behind the reflected wave temperatures of the order of 8000°K are studied. Conversion of the measured intensities into absorption coefficients can be accomplished using the well-known equation for radiative flux from a heated layer of a given thickness d (see §7, Chapter II, (2.38)). We recall that the amount of radiant energy in the wavelength interval $d\lambda$ emerging per unit time per unit area from a surface, per unit solid angle normal to the surface, is

$$I_\lambda \, d\lambda = I_{\lambda p} \, d\lambda \, (1 - e^{-\kappa'_\lambda d}), \tag{5.115}$$

where $I_{\lambda p}$ is the corresponding quantity for a perfect black body, given by

$$I_{\lambda p} = \frac{2hc^2}{\lambda^5} \frac{1}{e^{hc/kT\lambda} - 1},$$

and $\kappa'_\lambda = \kappa_\lambda(1 - e^{-hc/kT\lambda})$ is the absorption coefficient corrected for induced emission. If the layer is optically thin, then the self-absorption can be neglected (even in the line centers), i.e., if $\kappa'_\lambda d \ll 1$. The intensity of the radiation is determined in this case by the emission coefficient

$$I_\lambda = \frac{J_\lambda d}{4\pi} = I_{\lambda p} \kappa'_\lambda \, d.$$

The ratio of the measured intensity of radiation per unit layer thickness to the intensity of a perfect black body yields directly the corrected absorption coefficient κ'_λ.

The oscillator strength for the Schumann–Runge band system was determined by studying the radiation intensity behind an incident shock in pure oxygen at relatively low temperatures, of the order of 3000–4000°K. The degree of ionization is very small and the number of negative oxygen ions at these temperatures is low, and thus practically all the absorption can be attributed to molecular transitions. These data were used with (5.113) and (5.114) and with the previously calculated coefficients φ_λ to derive the oscillator strength $f_{\text{Sch}-\text{R}} = 0.028 \pm 0.008$. In the wavelength range from 3300 to 4700 Å this oscillator strength was found to be independent of λ, T, and ρ.

Data for oscillator strengths of NO and N_2 were obtained by analyzing the radiation spectra in air at different temperatures and densities. These quantities were extracted from a study of those spectral, temperature, and density regions where all of the unknown mechanisms, except one, play a minor role; the absorption due to the known mechanisms was then subtracted out from the measured quantities. In this manner the oscillator strengths for all the more important systems were found*; they are presented in Table 5.8. Figure 5.29 presents the experimentally and theoretically determined intensities of radiation at $T = 8000°\text{K}$ and $\rho = 0.83\rho_0$.

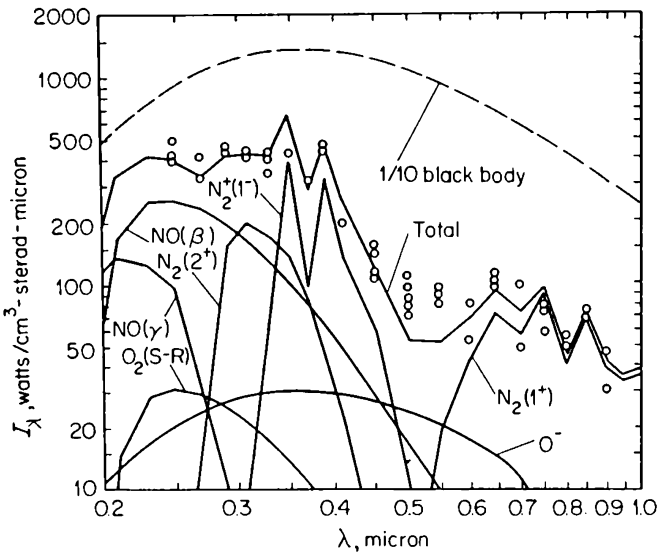


Fig. 5.29. Spectral intensity of radiation I_λ (watts/cm³-sterad-micron) of an air layer with a thickness $d \approx 1$ cm. $T = 8000°\text{K}$, $\rho = 0.83\ \rho_0$ (ρ_0 is standard density). The experimental points and the calculated curves correspond to the various emission mechanisms. The dashed curve gives the value 0.1 $I_{\lambda p}$ (1/10 of the radiation intensity of a black body). Since $d \approx 1$ cm, the ratio $I_\lambda / I_{\lambda p}$ gives directly the value of κ'_λ in cm^{-1}. (The diagram is taken from [8].)

* The value of f for the $N_2(1^+)$ system is a strong function of λ, because of the sharp changes in the internuclear distance with λ.

Table. 5.8

OSCILLATOR STRENGTHS FOR THE MORE IMPORTANT BAND SYSTEMS

System	$O_{2(Sch-R)}$	NO_β	NO_γ	$N_2(2^+)$	$N_2^+(1^-)$	$N_2(1^+)$
f	0.028	0.006	0.001	0.09	0.18	0.025
Error	± 0.008	± 0.002	± 0.0005	± 0.03	± 0.07	± 0.008
Interval λ, Å	3300–4700	3500–5000	2500–2700	2900–3300	3300–4500	10,460

For convenience in the calculation of the absorption coefficient for air we present numerical formulas for the individual components in the region of molecular absorption and single ionization, for $T \lesssim 20{,}000°\mathrm{K}$.

$$\kappa_{i\,\mathrm{molec}} = \frac{10^5 c_i \rho/\rho_0}{T^\circ} e^{h\nu/kT} \times \begin{cases} 9.5\varphi_{\mathrm{Sch-R}} e^{-71{,}000/T} & \text{Schumann–Runge, } O_2 \\ 2.04\varphi_\beta e^{-65{,}300/T} & \beta\text{-system of NO,} \\ 0.34\varphi_\gamma e^{-63{,}500/T} & \gamma\text{-system of NO,} \\ 30.6\varphi_{2^+} e^{-127{,}500/T} & 2^+ \text{ system of } N_2, \\ 8.5\varphi_{1^+} e^{-84{,}900/T} & 1^+ \text{ system of } N_2, \\ 61.2\varphi_{1^-} e^{-36{,}800/T} & 1^- \text{ system of } N_2^+, \end{cases}$$

$$\kappa_{O^-} = 2.67 \cdot 10^{19} c_{O^-} \frac{\rho}{\rho_0} \sigma_{O^-},$$

$$\kappa_{i\,(\mathrm{Kramers})} = \frac{2.56 \cdot 10^{12} c_i \rho/\rho_0}{T^{\circ 2} x^3} e^{h\nu/kT} \times \begin{cases} e^{-140{,}000/T} & O_2, \\ e^{-181{,}000/T} & N_2, \\ e^{-158{,}000/T} & O, \\ e^{-169{,}000/T} & N, \\ e^{-108{,}000/T} & NO, \end{cases}$$

$$x = \frac{h\nu}{kT} = \frac{1.44}{\lambda T}$$

$$\kappa_{NO_2} = 2.67 \cdot 10^{19} c_{NO_2} \frac{\rho}{\rho_0} \sigma_{NO_2}$$

(T in °K, λ in cm, κ in cm^{-1}).

In these formulas we define the concentrations of all particles c_i as the ratio of the number of particles to the original number of molecules in cold air. The oscillator strengths in the equations for the absorption coefficients were

taken from values given in Table 5.8. The effective charge in the equations for the Kramers absorption was taken equal to one*.

Concentrations of the negative oxygen ions can be obtained from the Saha equation when the concentrations both of the oxygen atoms and of the free electrons are known. The absorption cross section for negative O^- ions is given in Fig. 5.5 in §5. There are experimental data on the existence of negative nitrogen ions N^- [57]. The absorption of light by these ions was discussed in [58]. When all the components of the absorption coefficient are known, the total coefficient and emission coefficient can be calculated at any temperature and density. In Figs. 5.30 and 5.31 are shown the reconstructions of the radiation for several values of temperature and density, obtained in this manner (the data were taken from [28]). The contributions of the individual absorption components are shown on the graphs.

Reference [32] considered the problem of free-free absorption by electrons in a field of neutral atoms. The emission coefficient was measured at $T = 8000°K$ and $\rho/\rho_0 = 0.85$ in the infrared spectral region with $\lambda \sim 20{,}000$ Å to 40,000 Å, where according to calculations all other mechanisms should play an

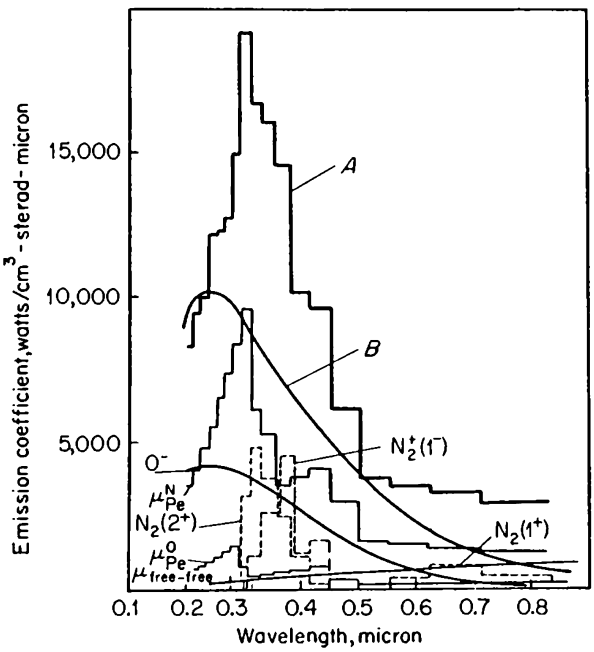


Fig. 5.30. Radiation intensity of air at $T = 12{,}000°K$, $\rho = \rho_0$ (standard density). The contributions of the various mechanisms are shown. μ_{Pe} are free-bound transitions (photoelectric absorption from excited states); A is the total radiation; B is 1/10 of the black body radiation intensity.

* The Biberman–Norman correction factor (see §7) has not been taken into account.

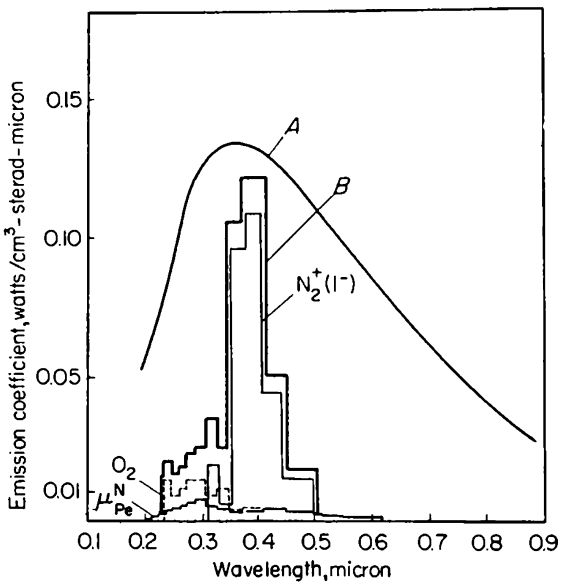


Fig. 5.31. Intensity of radiation for air at $T = 8000°K$ and $\rho = 10^{-3}\rho_0$. The curve A is 10^{-5} times the radiation intensity of a black body, B is the total radiation, and μ_{Pe}^N denotes free-bound transitions (photoelectric absorption from excited states of N). (*Editors' note.* The lateral separation of the vertical parts of the curves $N_2^+(1^-)$, and O_2 from the total radiation curve is for illustrative purposes so that the individual contributions may be distinguished.)

insignificant role. It was shown that it is possible to approximate the absorption coefficient by the usual formula for bremsstrahlung absorption, with the square of the effective charge $Z^2 = 0.04$ for O atoms and $Z^2 = 0.02$ for N atoms. These data show that in the visible and ultraviolet regions, the free-free absorption in the fields of neutral atoms should not play an important role.

Model' [34] measured the absorption coefficients for red light $\lambda = 6500$ Å in air behind a shock wave at two different temperatures. The detonation wave in Model's experiments originated from the boundary of the explosive with air. The change with time in the luminosity of the wave front normal to the surface was measured photographically. If d is the thickness of the air layer encompassed by the shock wave at a time t, then the luminosity of the front surface can be determined by (5.115). When the heated air layer becomes optically thick, $\kappa_\nu' d \gg 1$, the shock front radiates as a black body, and $I_\nu \approx I_{\nu p}$. The absorption coefficient was obtained from the curves of increasing luminosity $I_\nu(d)$. The temperature behind the front was determined independently of the luminosity of the front at the stage when $\kappa_\nu' d \gg 1$ and the front radiates as a black body. Model' obtained values of the absorption coefficient for two temperatures: $T = 10{,}900°K$, $\kappa_\lambda = 3.7\ cm^{-1}$, and $T = 7480°K$, $\kappa_\lambda = 1.66\ cm^{-1}$ ($\lambda = 6500$ Å, $\rho/\rho_0 \approx 10$). The first value agrees satisfactorily with the value calculated from the formulas listed above. The primary role is played by

absorption in the 1^+ system of N_2 and by the Kramers mechanism. The experimental value of the second point is much higher than that obtained theoretically*.

A characteristic feature of all the absorption components considered above (see the summary of formulas following Table 5.8) is the sharp, Boltzmann-type dependence on temperature with appreciable activation energies. At moderate temperatures, of the order of 3000–4000°K, all of the coefficients in the visible region become very small; for example, at $T = 4000$°K and $\rho/\rho_0 = 1$, $\kappa \sim 10^{-6}$ cm^{-1}. At such temperatures the main role in absorption is played by the molecular absorption of the nitrogen dioxide present in air in very small amounts (see Table 5.9)†, but a strong absorber of light in both the visible and ultraviolet regions. Molecular NO_2 bands form a very complex system with practically all lines overlapping. Figure 5.32 shows the absorption cross sections of cold NO_2 molecules plotted from the data of [35]. The cross section decreases monotonically from $\sigma = 6.5 \cdot 10^{-19}$ cm^2 to $\sigma \approx 10^{-20}$ cm^2 in the wavelength interval from $\lambda = 4000$ Å to $\lambda = 7000$ Å. The measurements of [36] show that the absorption cross sections in the infrared region are very small; for $\lambda = 10{,}000$–$20{,}000$ Å, $\sigma < 4.5 \cdot 10^{-23}$ cm^2. In the near ultraviolet region at $\lambda = 3020$ Å, the cross section passes through a minimum [37]; this fact and the curve in Fig. 5.32 indicate that the absorption maximum lies in the blue part of the spectrum at $\lambda \sim 4000$ Å. It may be expected, therefore, that the absorption spectrum at temperatures of the order of 2000–4000°K is strongly displaced in the red direction and that the cross section of NO_2 in the entire visible region becomes of the order of several

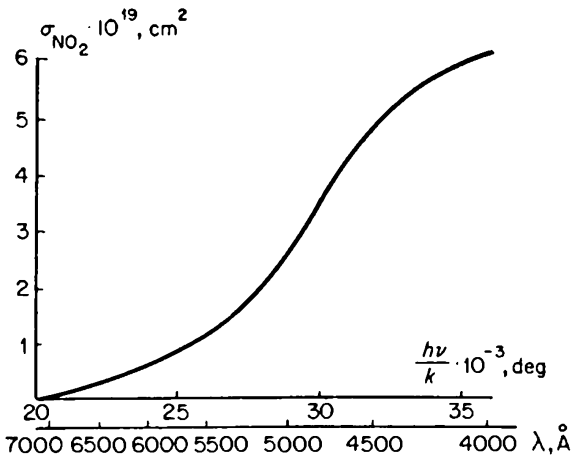


Fig. 5.32. Averaged light absorption cross section for unexcited NO_2 molecules.

* No definite explanation for this disagreement can be offered.

† Concentrations of NO_2 were calculated in [39].

Table 5.9

EQUILIBRIUM CONCENTRATIONS OF NITROGEN DIOXIDE IN HIGH-TEMPERATURE AIR, $c_{NO_2} \cdot 10^4$

	ρ/ρ_0				ρ/ρ_0		
T, °K	10	5	1	T, °K	10	5	1
2000	1.11	0.79	0.35	3500	2.91	1.92	0.79
2600	2.02	1.42	0.63	4000	2.86	1.90	0.67
3000	2.24	1.58	0.69	5000	2.11	1.29	0.25

Note: c_{NO_2} = number of NO_2 molecules per original number of molecules in air.

times 10^{-19} cm^2 (additional details are given in [38]; see also §7 of Chapter IX). For example, for a concentration of NO_2 molecules in air of the order of 10^{-4}, the absorption coefficient at standard density is of the order of 10^{-3} cm^{-1}. In [59] the intensity of radiation of nitrogen dioxide was studied in the temperature range 1400–2100°K (the dioxide was mixed with argon and heated in a shock tube). Absolute intensities in the visible part of the spectrum were obtained.

In conclusion, we should note that the problem of the radiative properties of high-temperature air still does not appear to be fully solved and research in this area is continuing.

5. *Breakdown and heating of a gas under the action of a concentrated laser beam*

§22. Breakdown

The invention of lasers and refinement of laser technology have opened up wide avenues for the study of various phenomena which occur as the result of the interaction of intense radiant fluxes with a medium. In particular, several years ago the phenomenon of breakdown in gases and the formation of a "spark" under the action of a laser beam was discovered.

Experiments show [65–72] that, under the action of a light flux of sufficiently high intensity, breakdown takes place in gases which are ordinarily transparent to the given radiation, and free electrons are formed*. Breakdown requires very large radiant energy fluxes and, even with high power modern optical

* The phenomenon of high frequency breakdown under the action of radiation in the microwave frequency range is well known and has been thoroughly studied [60].

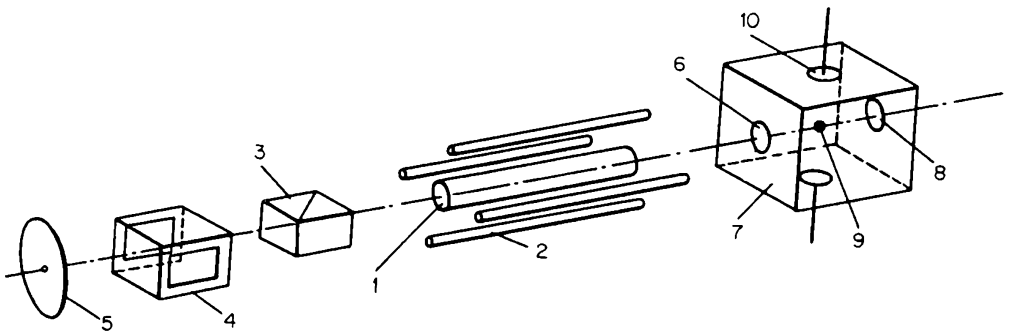


Fig. 5.33. Schematic view of breakdown experiment. (1) Ruby, (2) xenon pumping lamps, (3) polarizer, (4) Kerr cell, (5) mirror, (6) lens, (7) vessel with test gas, (8) outlet aperture, (9) focus, (10) collecting electrodes.

generators (with Q-switching) such fluxes can be obtained only by focusing the laser beam by a lens (see Fig. 5.33). The breakdown threshold, which is usually extremely sharp, is conventionally characterized by the intensity of the electric field of the light wave. Figure 5.34 shows, by way of example, measurements from [65] of the threshold fields for breakdown in argon and helium at different pressures. In these experiments a Q-switched ruby laser gave pulses with a duration of $3 \cdot 10^{-8}$ sec and with a maximum (peak) power of up to 30 megawatts (an energy in the pulse up to 1 joule). The beam was focused by a lens into a circle with a radius of approximately $r_0 = 10^{-2}$ cm. The radius of the focal spot was estimated, first, from the angular spread of

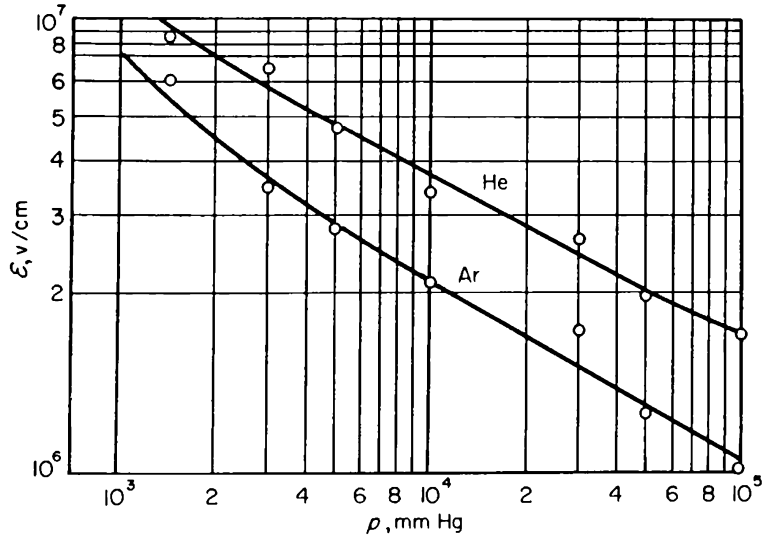


Fig. 5.34. Breakdown fields in argon and helium as a function of gas pressure.

the unfocused laser beam and second, from the size of the hole burned by the beam in a piece of gold foil placed at the focal spot. Knowing the power of the laser and the area of the circle at the focal spot, one can calculate the radiant energy flux and the electric field in the light wave, as averages over the area*. The values of the field shown in Fig. 5.34 were obtained in this manner.

The occurrence of breakdown is usually signaled by a light flash, which is similar to the flash in a spark. Sometimes the occurrence of breakdown is established by conducting charge away from the breakdown region by a pair of electrodes to which a small potential is applied. Besides argon and helium, breakdown was also investigated in air at standard conditions. The threshold fields are also of the order of 10^7 v/cm.

It is necessary to assume that for sufficiently high intensity radiant energy fluxes or electric fields in the light wave, it is possible to have direct removal of electrons from atoms due to radiation. The corresponding quantum-mechanical problem was solved by Keldysh [73], who has found a general expression for the probability of electron removal. In the limit of low frequencies it reduces to the known formula for the probability of the tunnel effect under the action of a static field, and in the case of sufficiently high (and, in particular, optical) frequencies, it describes the multiphoton effect, when ionization proceeds as a result of simultaneous absorption of n photons, whose energy nhv exceeds the ionization potential I. The probability of the multiphoton photoelectric effect is proportional to the nth power of the radiant energy flux or to $\mathscr{E}^{2n}$, where $\mathscr{E}$ is the electric field intensity. For atoms and molecules with high ionization potentials, such as Ar, He, N_2, and O_2, a large number of photons is required; for example, in a ruby laser $hv = 1.8$ ev and for argon $I = 15.8$ ev, $n = 9$, while for helium $I = 24.6$ ev and $n = 14$. Therefore the probability of electron removal is sharply dependent on the field. Estimates show that very large fields, of approximately 10^8 v/cm, are required for direct removal of electrons from atoms during the duration of a laser pulse. These electric fields are larger by almost an order of magnitude than those average fields which are at the present time achieved experimentally, and therefore the breakdown in comparatively weaker fields $\sim 10^6$–10^7 v/cm does not take place by direct removal of electrons from atoms but instead as a result of the development of an electron avalanche.

The prerequisite for starting an electron avalanche is that "priming" electrons should appear in the gas at the beginning of the laser pulse. Evidently, multiphoton absorption of light, this being most likely for atoms of impurities with low ionization potentials, is the source of the priming electrons. It should be pointed out that the field is not uniformly distributed over the area of the

* For example, for a power of 30 megawatts and a radius of 10^{-2} cm, the energy flux is approximately 10^{18} erg/cm^2 · sec and the field is approximately $0.6 \cdot 10^7$ v/cm.

focal circle. There exist very small regions with local fields which appreciably exceed the average field over the circle. These are the regions in which the first electrons, which start up the avalanche, are born. The nonuniform distribution of the field at the focal spot is a result of the nonuniformity and divergence of the unfocused laser beam and is also a result of the lens aberration. The latter effect has been studied in detail in the paper of Zel'dovich and Pilipetskii [83].

Let us consider the manner in which the electron avalanche develops. The electrons absorb photons on collisions with neutral atoms (see §8a), and thus acquire sufficient energy for ionization. As a result of the ionization there appear in place of the one "fast" electron two "slow" ones, which again acquire energy from the radiation, ionize atoms, and so forth. Together with absorption under the action of the high-intensity light flux there appears also induced emission of photons with the same energies and directions; however, the resulting effect is positive, and an electron, on the average, acquires energy from the radiation and is thus accelerated.

The rate of increase of the electron energy can be estimated by using (5.57b) for the effective absorption, which also describes exactly the resulting effect of the true absorption and induced emission of photons. We denote the radiant energy flux by

$$G = \frac{c}{8\pi}\overline{(\mathscr{E}^2 + H^2)} = \frac{c\overline{\mathscr{E}^2}}{4\pi} \text{ erg/cm}^2 \cdot \text{sec},$$

where $\overline{\mathscr{E}^2}$ is the mean square of the electric field in the light wave. The radiant energy absorbed per unit time per unit volume is $G\kappa_{\nu\text{neut}}$, and the energy absorbed per electron is $G\kappa_{\nu\text{neut}}/N_e$. This quantity also represents the mean rate of increase of the electron energy:

$$\frac{dE}{dt} = \frac{e^2 G}{\pi m c \nu^2}\nu_{\text{eff}} = \frac{e^2\overline{\mathscr{E}^2}}{m\omega^2}\nu_{\text{eff}}\,^*. \tag{5.116}$$

In order to acquire the energy of one photon $h\nu$, the electron must, on the average, undergo $h\nu\pi mc\nu^2/e^2G$ collisions with atoms. For example, for a flux $G = 10^{18}$ erg/cm$^2 \cdot$ sec, the field $(\overline{\mathscr{E}^2})^{1/2} = 0.6 \cdot 10^{17}$ v/cm, and $h\nu = 1.8$ ev,

* This relation can be interpreted in the following manner. Under the action of the alternating electric field of the light wave, oscillations are superposed on the rectilinear motion of the electron. The momentum of the oscillations is $p = e\mathscr{E}/\omega$, and the average energy $\overline{p^2}/2m = e^2\overline{\mathscr{E}^2}/2m\omega^2$. The electron velocity direction changes sharply on colliding with an atom, and a quantity of the order of the energy of the oscillations is added to the energy of random motion. The electron experiences ν_{eff} collisions per unit time and the rate of increase of the additional energy of random motion is equal to (5.116).

this number is 200. In order to acquire an energy equal to the ionization potential I, disregarding energy losses, the number of collisions needed is increased by a factor of $I/h\nu$; for example, in helium this number is 2700. Under atmospheric pressure the frequency of collisions of an electron with an energy $E \approx 10$ ev in helium is $\nu_{\text{eff}} \approx 2 \cdot 10^{12}$ sec^{-1}, so that the time required is approximately $2700/\nu_{\text{eff}} = 1.3 \cdot 10^{-9}$ sec. Thus during the time of a laser pulse of $3 \cdot 10^{-8}$ sec, $3 \cdot 10^{-8}/1.3 \cdot 10^{-9} = 23$ generations of electrons would be born, so that on the average $2^{23} \approx 10^7$ electrons would be born for each "priming" electron*. The avalanche development is extremely sensitive to the intensity of the light flux and to the gas density. For example, when the flux or the gas pressure is increased by a factor of 2 (the field is increased by 40%) the rate of energy acquisition and the number of generations in the avalanche would have doubled, so that toward the end of a pulse of the same duration 10^{14} rather than 10^7 new electrons would have been born for each "priming" electron. This extreme sensitivity also explains the experimental discovery of the existence of an abrupt threshold for breakdown in a gas, both with respect to the laser pulse intensity and with respect to the gas pressure.

The above simple considerations on energy acquisition by an electron under the action of a light wave only give the general outline of the process. In fact, the development of the electron avalanche is significantly more complex. An appreciable role is played by the excitation of atoms, by electrons with energies insufficient for ionization but sufficient for excitation. In not too strong fields the excitation decelerates the development of the avalanche, since during excitation the electron discards the acquired energy and must start acquiring it anew. For strong fields with strengths of one to several times 10^7 v/cm, the situation is reversed, and excitation of the atoms promotes the avalanche development, since the excited atoms are rapidly ionized under the action of the radiation (as a result of either single or successive absorption of a small number of photons). In light gases, such as helium, a significant role is also played by the electron energy loss due to elastic collisions with atoms†. In certain cases (small focusing volumes and low gas density) it is possible for electrons to leave the volume of focus by diffusion.

* The number of electrons in the avalanche increases with time according to the relation $N_e = N_{e_0} \exp t/\theta$, where $\theta \ln 2$ is the doubling time for the electron number density.

† In each collision an electron, on the average, loses $2m/M$ of its energy (where M is the mass of the atom). Therefore, when we take into account elastic losses, (5.116) takes the form

$$\frac{dE}{dt} = \nu_{\text{eff}}\left[\frac{e^2\overline{\mathscr{E}^2}}{m\omega^2} - \frac{2mE}{M}\right].$$

The electron cannot, on the average, acquire energy which exceeds $E_m = (M/2m)e^2\mathscr{E}^2/m\omega^2$. For example, for helium in a field whose strength is $6 \cdot 10^6$ v/cm, $E_m = 33$ ev. Actually, we note that in the expression for the elastic losses, in place of E the difference of average energies of the electrons and atoms (ions) should appear; however, in the given case the atom gas is cold.

Under conditions when the avalanche development is retarded as a result of losses in electron energies due to excitation of the atoms, a simple formula for energy acquisition by an electron, of the type of (5.116) but with a negative term to take into account energy losses, is insufficient for describing this complex process. It becomes necessary to consider a kinetic equation for the electron distribution function with respect to energy. This was done by the authors in [62], where under several assumptions threshold fields for breakdown were calculated and where satisfactory agreement was obtained with the experimental results for argon and helium from [65]. Problems of breakdown in gases at the focal spot of a laser beam have also been treated theoretically [73–76].

§23. Absorption of a laser beam and heating of a gas after initial breakdown

If the radiant energy flux in the focus appreciably exceeds the threshold value for breakdown, the gas becomes highly ionized and the plasma thus produced will practically completely absorb the beam, as a result of free-free electron transitions in the ion field. In this case the gas is heated to high temperatures. Thus, for example, measurements of the intensity of x-ray radiation from the region of the focal spot in the experiments reported in [71] show that the radiation brightness (and color) temperatures, which characterize the electron temperatures, are approximately 600,000°K. In these experiments the breakdown in atmospheric air was studied using a ruby laser with an energy pulse of 2.5 joules and a duration of $4 \cdot 10^{-8}$ sec, and with the radius of the focal circle $r_0 = 10^{-2}$ cm (the breakdown threshold energy for the given duration and radius is about 1 joule).

We now consider the manner in which the beam is absorbed, and we also estimate the temperature to which the gas is heated (this was carried out by one of the authors [77]). We assume that breakdown takes place at the focal spot, in the narrowest part of the light column (see Fig. 5.35), where the radiant energy flux is a maximum, and that a high degree of ionization and a high temperature have already been established. The light is absorbed in a layer of the order of a photon mean free path l_ν and it heats the gas. The mean free path for photon absorption can be estimated from (5.21), multiplying

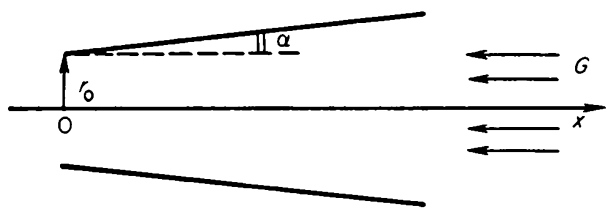


Fig. 5.35. Schematic diagram of light column in the region of the focal spot.

the coefficient κ_ν by the quantity $1 - e^{-h\nu/kT} \approx h\nu/kT$ ($h\nu = 1.8$ ev $\ll kT$) to take into account the induced emission. The mean free path in standard density air at temperatures of 10^5–10^6 °K is found to be equal to $(2\text{–}7) \cdot 10^{-3}$ cm (the degree of ionization or the ionic charge is $Z = 2.7\text{–}6.6$).

One of the most remarkable features of the process, which is rather obvious physically and which was discovered experimentally [69, 71], consists of the displacement of the beam absorption zone toward the light flux. Velocities measured in these experiments were approximately 100 km/sec*. It is easy to understand the reasons for the displacement of the absorption zone. The photons are strongly absorbed in the highly ionized medium. As soon as the degree of ionization ahead of the gas layer which is absorbing at the given time becomes sufficiently high, the new layer becomes opaque and it begins to absorb the beam strongly. Thus an "absorption and heating wave" is propagated along the light column toward the beam. This effect prevents the release of the entire energy of the pulse in the very small volume of the focal spot in which the breakdown started, and it limits the heating of the gas.

We can point out three different and independent mechanisms which lead to the appearance of the absorption wave:

(1) If the radiant energy flux at the focal spot exceeds appreciably the breakdown threshold, then it also exceeds the threshold value over a certain length of the light column which expands in the direction of the lens. Breakdown also occurs in these parts of the column, but with a time lag with respect to the narrowest point, the lag being the greater the wider is the column cross section, the smaller is the flux. Thus a "breakdown wave" moves toward the beam.

(2) The heated gas in the absorbing layer expands and sends out a shock wave in all directions, including the direction along the light column toward the beam. Across the shock wave the gas is heated and ionized, so that the zone of light absorption and energy release in the gas is displaced behind the shock front. This hydrodynamic mechanism is similar in many respects to the detonation of explosives. A "detonation mechanism" was noted by Ramsden and Savic [78], which is in agreement with the experimental values of wave speed. However, this article contains an incorrect assumption regarding the heating temperature. For a critique of this article see [77].

(3) The gas ahead of the absorbing layer is ionized and becomes capable of light absorption by absorbing the thermal radiation which is emitted from the highly heated region of the gas (behind the absorption wave front). We call this mechanism the "radiation" mechanism.

* The velocity was measured by photographing the process, and also by the Doppler shift of the spectral lines.

The effectiveness of each of the mechanisms is characterized by the rate of displacement of the absorption wave which it produces; the actual wave, naturally, moves with the highest of the possible speeds*.

In a certain sense we can regard the absorption wave as a gasdynamic discontinuity (see Chapter I). In a coordinate system moving with the wave the process is quasi-steady. In fact, in the time Δt during which the wave travels through a distance of the order of its width Δx the light flux and the wave velocity $D = \Delta x/\Delta t$ cannot change appreciably ($\Delta x \approx l_\nu \lesssim 10^{-2}$ cm, $D \approx 100$ km/sec, and $\Delta t \lesssim 10^{-9}$ sec).

Let us set up the energy balance without at the moment considering the fact that it is the heating which sets the gas into motion. An amount of energy $G\,dt$, where G is the radiant energy flux, falls on a unit area of the wave surface during the time dt. It is expended in heating up the mass $\rho_0 D\,dt$ which is swept out by the wave in this time (ρ_0 is the initial density of the gas). Consequently, the specific internal energy $\varepsilon(T)$ which the gas acquires after complete absorption of the light flux is determined by

$$\rho_0 D\varepsilon(t) = G. \tag{5.117}$$

This equation is a direct expression of the law of energy conservation, and is independent of the particular mechanism of wave propagation.

A more detailed consideration must be based on the general conservation laws for mass, momentum, and energy, applied to the flow of the gas through the shock front in exactly the same manner as was done in deriving the relations across a shock wave (see Chapter I). From such a calculation we obtain the equation of a "Hugoniot curve" for the absorption wave, which relates the pressure and density of the gas behind the front with the initial density and with the energy flux G incident on the wave†. A Hugoniot curve for an absorption wave is shown schematically in Fig. 5.36.

An energy balance equation of the type (5.117) does not change much when it is modified to take into account the work of compression and changes in the kinetic energy of the gas. The changes reduce to the fact that G in the equation is replaced by a slightly different quantity $G\beta$, where the coefficient β is bounded within the rather narrow limits $1 < \beta \leqslant 2\gamma/(\gamma + 1)$, where γ is the adiabatic exponent or ratio of specific heats of the gas. For air at temperatures of 10^5–10^6 °K, $\gamma \approx 1.33$ and $1 < \beta < 1.14$, and the elementary energy

* It has been estimated that the heating and ionization ahead of the absorbing layer due to the electron thermal conductivity and electron diffusion do not play an important role.

† Despite common features, it differs from the Hugoniot curve for an explosive in which energy is released, since for the explosive medium the energy per unit mass is a constant quantity, while the energy release per unit mass accompanying light absorption $G/\rho_0 D$ depends on the wave speed.

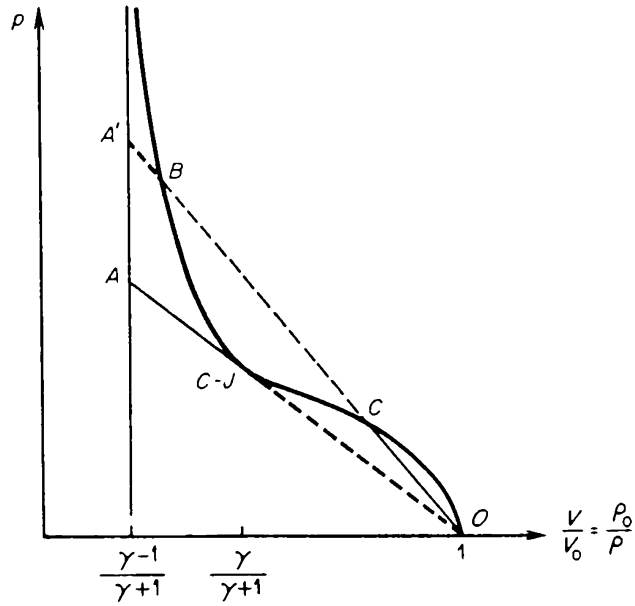


Fig. 5.36. Hugoniot curve for absorption wave.

equation (5.117) is found to be always valid with a sufficient degree of accuracy. This equation relates the speed of the absorption wave to the heating temperature and makes it possible to estimate the temperature on the basis of the experimentally obtained velocity, even if the mechanism of the absorption wave propagation is not known.

As in the case of a shock wave, the wave speed D is determined by the slope of a line drawn on the p, V diagram ($V = 1/\rho$) of Fig. 5.36 from the initial state point 0 to the point representing the final state of the gas behind the wave. It can be seen from Fig. 5.36 that for a given radiant energy flux G there exists a minimum possible propagation speed corresponding to the final state point C–J. This is the so-called Chapman–Jouguet point, at which the speed of the wave relative to the heated fluid behind it is identical with the local sound speed. The physical meaning of the Chapman–Jouguet point and the reasons why the corresponding state is achieved in the detonation of an explosive were explained by one of the authors [81], and also independently by J. von Neumann and by W. Döring. Problems in detonation theory are treated in the book [82].

When the effectiveness of other ionization mechanisms (sparking) is less than that of ionization by a shock wave, it is the hydrodynamic (or detonation) mode which results. In this case the gas is compressed and heated by the shock wave to the state A and then having received additional energy due to absorption of light, it expands along the line A C–J, reaching the Chapman–Jouguet point at the instant when the energy release ceases. The minimum

speed of the absorption wave is

$$D = \left[2(\gamma^2 - 1)\frac{G}{\rho_0}\right]^{1/3}. \tag{5.118}$$

The heating in this state has the maximum possible value

$$\varepsilon = \frac{\gamma}{(\gamma^2 - 1)(\gamma + 1)} D^2 = \frac{2^{2/3}\gamma}{(\gamma^2 - 1)^{1/3}(\gamma + 1)}\left(\frac{G}{\rho_0}\right)^{2/3}. \tag{5.119}$$

If any of the ionization mechanisms (for example, the breakdown mechanism) gives for a given flux G a wave propagation speed higher than the "normal detonation" velocity (5.118), then no shock wave is formed in the light column. The gas, absorbing the light flux, goes from the initial state O to the final state C by continuous heating and compression along the straight line OC; here the higher pressure and density are not caused by but rather are the result of the appearance of the wave. In this case the wave propagates with a supersonic velocity relative to the gas behind it*. Let us give a numerical example. When $G = 2 \cdot 10^{18}$ erg/cm^2 · sec, $\rho_0 = 1.3 \cdot 10^{-3}$ g/cm^3, and $\gamma = 1.33$, corresponding to the conditions of the experiments of [71], we get from (5.118) and (5.119) that $D = 133$ km/sec, $\varepsilon = 1.35 \cdot 10^{14}$ erg/g, which at equilibrium corresponds to a temperature $T = 910{,}000°$K (the experimental values are $D = 110$ km/sec and $T = 600{,}000°$K). If we take into account energy losses due to lateral expansion of the gas, as a result of which the "acting" flux G is decreased by approximately a factor of 2, then we find that $D = 105$ km/sec, $\varepsilon = 8.5 \cdot 10^{13}$ erg/g, and $T = 720{,}000°$K are quite close to the values obtained experimentally.

As was shown in [77], the speed of the "breakdown" wave can be estimated from the relation

$$D = \frac{r_0}{t_c \tan \alpha},$$

where r_0 is the minimum radius of the light column at the focal spot, α is the half-angle of the light column (see Fig. 5.35), and t_c is the time for the initial breakdown at the focal spot, measured from some effective start of the laser pulse. For example, for the experiments of [77], $r_0 = 10^{-2}$ cm, $\tan \alpha = 0.1$, $t_c \approx 10^{-8}$ sec, and the velocity of the "breakdown" wave is $D \approx 100$ km/sec, close to the detonation speed.

In the experiments described in [69] use was made of a short-focal-length lens which gave $r_0 = 4 \cdot 10^{-3}$ cm, $\tan \alpha = 1$, and $t_c = 7 \cdot 10^{-9}$ sec. Under

* Hydrodynamic states involving ionization by a shock wave, but with a speed exceeding that of a detonation ($O \to A' \to B$), are not achieved. The motion behind the wave in this case would be subsonic; the expansion of the heated gas behind the wave would immediately weaken the wave, bringing it to the state of "normal detonation".

these conditions the breakdown velocity is 6 kms/ec, while the detonation speed is more than 100 km/sec, so that in these experiments there was definitely no role played by the breakdown mechanism. The breakdown mechanism is the principal mechanism and determines the motion of the absorption wave for very powerful short laser pulses with the use of long-focal-length lenses (small angles α).

Treatment of the radiation mode by any exact analysis is extremely difficult. The approximate calculation of the speed in this mode made in [77] leads to rather cumbersome formulas, which we shall not write out here. We only wish to point out that the speed in the radiation mode is found to be quite close to the detonation speed and, in addition, both speeds depend in approximately the same manner on the laser intensity. Thus, within the limits of accuracy of the theory, it is not possible to give preference to one of these two mechanisms. Practically this means that in those cases when the effectiveness of the breakdown mechanism is low, the real wave moves with a speed which is approximately the same as the speed of the two remaining modes.

After termination of the laser pulse there remains in the gas a highly heated column (when the wave speed is 100 km/sec and the pulse duration is $3 \cdot 10^{-8}$ sec, its length is 3 mm). The gas expands and the subsequent process is similar to that of a strong explosion.

We note the papers of Basov and Krokhin [79] and also [80], in which preliminary estimates are given of the laser intensities needed to heat hydrogen to thermonuclear temperatures. The problems of breakdown and heating of gases under the action of a laser beam are considered in more detail in a review article by one of the authors [86]. This reference also contains an extensive bibliography of experimental and theoretical papers on this topic.

VI. Rates of relaxation processes in gases

1. Molecular gases

§1. Establishment of thermodynamic equilibrium

The state of a gas depends on the concentrations of the various components, such as atoms, molecules, ions, and electrons, and on the distribution of the internal energy among the various degrees of freedom. Generally, the internal energy of a gas consists of the energy of translational motion of the particles, rotational and vibrational energies of the molecules, chemical energy, ionization energy, and the electronic excitation energy of the atoms, molecules, and ions. For complete thermodynamic equilibrium the state of the gas is completely determined by the concentration of each element in the gas mixture and any two macroscopic thermodynamic parameters as, for example, density and specific internal energy.

Excitation of any of the degrees of freedom* and the establishment of thermodynamic equilibrium require a certain time, whose scale is the so-called relaxation time. Relaxation times for exciting the various degrees of freedom frequently differ appreciably from each other. Therefore, under certain conditions it is possible to achieve thermodynamic equilibrium for some but not all of the degrees of freedom. Equilibrium is established most quickly for the translational degrees of freedom. If some arbitrary velocity distribution of atoms or molecules exists initially, then even after a small number of elastic collisions of particles with their neighbors, the particle velocity distribution will become Maxwellian. The Maxwell distribution is established as a result of the exchange of momentum and kinetic energy among the particles. It should be noted that both the kinetic energy and momentum transfer during the collision of particles with comparable masses are on the average of the same order as the kinetic energy and momentum of the colliding particles. Therefore, the relaxation time for establishing a Maxwell distribution in particles of the same species, or in particles of different species but with comparable masses, is of the order of the average time between gaskinetic collisions

$$\tau_{\text{trans}} \sim \tau_{\text{gas}} = \frac{l}{\bar{v}} = \frac{1}{n\bar{v}\sigma_{\text{gas}}}. \tag{6.1}$$

* For brevity we shall refer to dissociation, chemical reactions, and ionization as "degrees of freedom".

Here l is the gaskinetic mean free path, $\bar{v}$ is the average particle velocity, n is the particle number density, and σ_{gas} is the gaskinetic cross section. For example, in air at standard conditions $l \approx 6 \cdot 10^{-6}$ cm and $\tau_{trans} \sim 10^{-10}$ sec.

Usually the gaskinetic times are very small in comparison with the flow times over which appreciable changes in the macroscopic parameters of the gas, such as density or energy, take place. Therefore, as a rule, it is possible to ascribe to the gas at every instant of time a "translational" temperature, which characterizes the average kinetic energy of translational motion of the particles*. Under conditions of partial thermodynamic equilibrium, where thermodynamic equilibrium for the individual degrees of freedom is referred to, it is implied that the distribution of energy (and of the concentrations of the respective components of the gas mixture) for these degrees of freedom is in equilibrium with the "translational" temperature of the gas. On the other hand, quantities associated with nonequilibrium degrees of freedom may be arbitrary; they depend upon many factors, including the previous "history" of the process in which the gas takes part. Such conditions are encountered in rapid gasdynamic processes or in regions where the macroscopic parameters change rapidly, as for example, in an ultrasonic wave or across a shock front. In these cases the time scale of the phenomenon† is comparable to or even much smaller than the corresponding relaxation time. The distribution of energy and of concentrations of the respective particles is not determined in this case simply by the temperature, density, and composition of the gas, as in the case of thermodynamic equilibrium, but also by the kinetics of the chemical-physical processes leading to the establishment of equilibrium for the given degrees of freedom.

In certain cases the relaxation time for the establishment of thermodynamic equilibrium in a given degree of freedom is so large that the nonequilibrium state of the system is found to be very stable, and appears essentially steady. Usually such a situation arises in a gas mixture capable of undergoing a chemical reaction, which actually does not proceed because of the high activation energy required for the reaction. As a typical example we may cite the explosive mixture $2H_2 + O_2$, which in a state of strict thermodynamic equilibrium at low temperatures should be completely transformed into water. These cases are referred to as metastable equilibria.

* It should be noted that for an isotropic distribution of particles with respect to the direction of the velocity of translational motion, the gas pressure is determined by the energy E_k of the translational motion of particles contained in a unit volume: $p = 2E_k/3$, and is completely independent of the distribution of particles with respect to the absolute values of the velocity, that is, is independent of the existence of a Maxwell distribution and "temperature".

† In a shock wave this is the time over which there is a rapid compression of the gas.

As previously stated, the relaxation times for the establishment of equilibrium in the different degrees of freedom are often very markedly different. If, at the given temperature and density, there is a range from fast to slower relaxation processes, then it is usually possible to establish the following order: translational degrees of freedom, molecular rotations, molecular vibrations, dissociation and chemical reactions, ionization, and electronic excitation. Thanks to the very pronounced difference in the various relaxation times, it is possible to study each relaxation process separately, isolating it from the remaining ones; we assume that in the easily excited degrees of freedom equilibrium exists at all times, while slower relaxation processes generally do not take place during the time period considered.

All relaxation processes exhibit certain common features, independent of the nature of the process. Namely, the given degree of freedom approaches thermodynamic equilibrium asymptotically following an exponential law. If we were to characterize the "state" of the given degree of freedom by some parameter, say a number of particles N (for example, by the number of molecules with vibrational modes excited, or by the number of molecules of a given species in the case of chemical reactions), then at a given temperature and density (and composition) of the gas, we may write

$$\frac{dN}{dt} = \frac{N_{eq} - N}{\tau}, \tag{6.2}$$

where N_{eq} is the number of particles at equilibrium and τ is a quantity with the dimensions of time which characterizes the rate of approach to equilibrium. It is evident from the solution of (6.2)

$$N = N_{init}e^{-t/\tau} + N_{eq}(1 - e^{-t/\tau}) \tag{6.3}$$

that τ is the relaxation time for the given process. In general, the rates of chemical-physical processes are by far not always describable by linear equations of the type (6.2). However, as equilibrium is approached, with $N_{eq} - N \ll N_{eq}$, (6.2) is valid as a first approximation. To justify this, the right-hand side of the general rate equation

$$\frac{dN}{dt} = f(N, T, \rho, \ldots) \tag{6.4}$$

is represented as an expansion in the small departure from equilibrium measured in terms of $(N_{eq} - N)/N_{eq}$. It should be noted that the time τ defined by (6.2), as a rule, also characterizes the time scale for the establishment of equilibrium in the case of the general rate equation (6.4) (we shall convince ourselves of this through a number of specific examples in the subsequent sections).

The study of the kinetics of chemical-physical relaxation processes has two aspects. The first one deals with the rates of the elementary processes leading to the excitation of one or another degree of freedom, i.e., the problem of determining cross sections for the inelastic collisions which cause excitation. Usually, these cross sections serve to determine the characteristic relaxation time τ. The second aspect deals with the kinetics of the relaxation process itself under specific conditions. This problem takes into account both the changes with time of the macroscopic parameters of the system and the effect of the reverse process on the change in these parameters. In this chapter we shall be concerned with only the first of the two aspects (the second one will be considered in Chapters VII and VIII). We shall always assume here that the temperature, density, and concentration of particles that do not participate in the process are kept constant.

§2. Excitation of molecular rotations

The excitation energies of molecular rotations are usually very small. When divided by the Boltzmann constant, they are of the order of several degrees, for example, 2.1°K for oxygen and 2.9°K for nitrogen. Therefore, even at room temperature ($T \approx 300$°K) and even more so at higher temperatures, the quantum effects of molecular rotations are not pronounced. Some exceptions to this rule are the very light hydrogen and deuterium molecules, with very small moments of inertia and comparatively large rotational energies; these are 85.4 and 43°K, respectively. Since the rotations are "classical", there is a rather strong exchange of translational and rotational energies during the collisions of the molecules. Indeed, the collision time, the time during which interaction between the colliding molecules takes place, is of the order of $a/\bar{v}$, where a is the dimension of the molecule and $\bar{v}$ is the mean thermal speed. If the rotational energy is of the order of kT, then the collision time is comparable to the period of the rotational motion*. Consequently, molecular collisions may be thought of as the collision of two slowly rotating "dumbbells" with a moderate asymmetry so that when the particles approach each other they do acquire an appreciable angular momentum.

Experimental data confirm the fact that the rotational modes are easily excited. With the exception of H_2 and D_2, the rotational energy of a molecule reaches its classical equilibrium value of kT (in the case of diatomic molecules) after approximately 10 gaskinetic collisions. Most of the experimentally

* The rotational energy is of the order of $kT \sim M\omega^2 a^2$, where ω is the angular frequency of rotation and M is the mass of the molecule. The period of rotation is

$$t = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} \sim a\left(\frac{M}{kT}\right)^{1/2} \sim \frac{a}{\bar{v}}.$$

determined rotational relaxation times have been obtained from studies of ultrasonic dispersion and absorption of sound (for further details see §§3 and 4 of Chapter VIII). These relaxation times are in qualitative agreement with the data of Hornig, Greene, and Cowan [1–3] who measured the thickness of weak shock fronts by the reflection of light (for further details see §5 of Chapter IV). Some data on the rotational relaxation times and on the number of collisions required to establish thermodynamic equilibrium among the rotational degrees of freedom are presented in Table 6.1. More detailed information with numerous references to original articles may be found in the surveys by Leskov and Savin [4] and Losev and Osipov [5], and in the book of Stupochenko, Losev, and Osipov [77].

Table 6.1
ROTATIONAL RELAXATION OF MOLECULES

Molecule	Temperature, °K	Relaxation time at atmospheric pressure, sec	Number of collisions	Method	References
H_2	300	$2.1 \cdot 10^{-8}$	300	Ultrasonic	[6]
H_2	300	$2.1 \cdot 10^{-8}$	300	Shock wave	[1]
D_2	288	$1.5 \cdot 10^{-8}$	160	Ultrasonic	[7]
N_2	300	$1.2 \cdot 10^{-9}$	9	Ultrasonic	[8]
N_2	300		20	Shock wave	[2, 3]
O_2	314	$2.2 \cdot 10^{-9}$	12	Ultrasonic	[9]
O_2	300		20	Shock wave	[3]
NH_3	293	$8.1 \cdot 10^{-10}$	10	Ultrasonic	[10]
CO_2	305	$2.3 \cdot 10^{-9}$	16	Ultrasonic	[11]

With the exception of hydrogen at not too high temperatures, it is practically always possible to assume that equilibrium in the rotational degrees of freedom is established as quickly as in the translational degrees of freedom, that is, the rotations always have the "translational" temperature*.

§3. Rate equations for the relaxation of molecular vibrational energy

Vibrational energies of the more important diatomic molecules, expressed in °K by dividing by the Boltzmann constant, are of the order of a thousand to several thousand degrees; for example, for oxygen $h\nu/k = 2230°K$, and

* *Editors' note.* Although not generally important as a relaxation process, rotational nonequilibrium does contribute an effective bulk viscosity, which affects viscous shock front structure and sound absorption.

for nitrogen 3340°K. From (3.19) for the vibrational energy of a gas, it can be seen that the vibrational degrees of freedom make an appreciable contribution to the specific heat, starting at temperatures for which $h\nu$ is several times larger than kT. Thus, when $h\nu/kT = 4$, the energy per vibration is 7.25% of its classical value kT; at $h\nu/kT = 3$, it comprises 15%; for air, this corresponds to a temperature of about 1000°K. Thus, in contrast to molecular rotations, the problem of vibrational relaxation becomes of practical importance under these conditions, when the vibrations exhibit an essentially quantum character. On the other hand, in the "far" classical region $kT \gg h\nu$, at temperatures of the order of 10,000–20,000°K, the problem loses its meaning to a considerable extent, since almost all the molecules are dissociated into atoms. In the "far" classical region where $kT \gg h\nu$ the excitation of molecular vibrations and also of the rotational modes does not require many collisions. However, at temperatures of the order of a thousand to several thousand degrees, when vibrational relaxation is of practical interest, the relaxation times are quite large: as shown both by theory and experiment, thousands and hundreds of thousands of collisions are required for the excitation of the vibrational modes.

Let us formulate a rate equation for the excitation of the vibrational modes, where for simplicity we consider a diatomic gas of a single species. Let $T < h\nu/k$, so that only the first vibrational level of the molecules is appreciably excited* (for air these temperatures are of the order of 1000–2000°K). If n_0, n_1, and $n = n_0 + n_1$ denote the number density of unexcited, excited, and all molecules, respectively, τ_{col} is the average time between gaskinetic collisions as defined by (6.1), and p_{01} and p_{10} are, respectively, the probabilities of vibrational excitation and deexcitation of a molecule as a result of a collision, then the rate equation may be written in the form

$$\frac{dn_1}{dt} = \frac{1}{\tau_{col}}(p_{01}n_0 - p_{10}n_1). \tag{6.5}$$

From the principle of detailed balancing and in accordance with the Boltzmann relation

$$\frac{p_{01}}{p_{10}} = \frac{n_{1\,eq}}{n_{0\,eq}} = e^{-h\nu/kT} \tag{6.6}$$

(the subscript eq is used here to denote equilibrium values). With $kT \ll h\nu$, $n_{1\,eq} \ll n_{0\,eq} \approx n$, we obtain, approximately

$$\frac{dn_1}{dt} = \frac{n_{1\,eq} - n_1}{\tau}, \tag{6.7}$$

* If the molecules are polyatomic, then we consider vibrations of the lowest frequency only.

where the relaxation time

$$\tau = \frac{\tau_{\text{col}}}{p_{10}} \tag{6.8}$$

is proportional to the number of collisions necessary to deexcite the molecule, $1/p_{10}$. Multiplying (6.7) by $h\nu$, we obtain an equation for the relaxation of the vibrational energy per unit volume $E = h\nu n_1$ (with $E_{\text{eq}}(T) = h\nu n_{1\,\text{eq}}(T)$):

$$\frac{dE}{dt} = \frac{E_{\text{eq}}(T) - E}{\tau}. \tag{6.9}$$

As we see, for the vibrational excitation process considered the rate equations (6.7) and (6.9) have the form of (6.2) for any departure from equilibrium.

Let us now consider moderate temperatures with $kT \gtrsim h\nu$, at which the gas contains molecules in different vibrational states. In this general case we must write a system of rate equations for n_l molecules with l vibrational quanta ($l = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$). However, an equation of the form of (6.9) for the relaxation of the total vibrational energy will still retain its validity, but the relaxation time will now be given by an equation of a form which is slightly altered from that of (6.8).

We know from quantum mechanics* that the oscillator energy in the case of harmonic vibrations can change only by the value of one vibrational quantum. Here, the probabilities of a transition from a state with $l - 1$ quanta to a state with l quanta, $p_{l-1,l}$, and of a transition from the l level to the $l - 1$ level, $p_{l,l-1}$, are proportional to l. Thus, if we regard the molecule as a harmonic oscillator, which is valid as long as we deal with vibrational states which are not too high, i.e., with temperatures not too large in comparison with $h\nu/k$, then we may write

$$p_{l-1,l} = lp_{01}; \qquad p_{l,l-1} = lp_{10}; \qquad l = 1, 2, 3, \ldots . \tag{6.10}$$

The rate equation for the number of molecules with l quanta, taking into account transitions to the lth state from the $(l - 1)$st as well as the $(l + 1)$st state, is

$$\frac{dn_l}{dt} = \frac{1}{\tau_{\text{col}}} (p_{l-1,l}\, n_{l-1} + p_{l+1,l}\, n_{l+1} - p_{l,l-1}\, n_l - p_{l,l+1}\, n_l). \tag{6.11}$$

From the principle of detailed balancing, in analogy with (6.6), we obtain

$$\frac{p_{l-1,l}}{p_{l,l-1}} = \frac{n_{l,\,\text{eq}}}{n_{l-1,\,\text{eq}}} = e^{h\nu/kT}. \tag{6.12}$$

* See, for example, the book by Landau and Lifshitz [12].

Multiplying (6.11) by hvl, substituting (6.10) into (6.11), summing over l, and noting that $E = \sum hvln_l$ is the total vibrational energy per unit volume, we obtain

$$\frac{dE}{dt} = \frac{1}{\tau_{col}} [p_{01} hvn - (p_{10} - p_{01})E], \tag{6.13}$$

where $n = \sum n_l$ is the total molecular number density. Noting (6.6) and the fact that $E_{eq} = hvn(e^{hv/kT} - 1)^{-1}$ represents the vibrational energy per unit volume at thermodynamic equilibrium (see (3.19)), we arrive at (6.9) with the relaxation time given by

$$\tau = \frac{\tau_{col}}{p_{10}(1 - e^{-hv/kT})}. \tag{6.14}$$

The average number of collisions necessary for establishing equilibrium in the vibrational degrees of freedom is

$$Z = \frac{1}{p_{10}(1 - e^{-hv/kT})} = \frac{Z_1}{1 - e^{-hv/kT}}, \tag{6.15}$$

where $Z_1 = 1/p_{10}$ is the number of collisions required to deexcite a molecule with a single vibrational quantum. For $hv \gg kT$, $Z = Z_1$ and (6.14) reduces to (6.8). At high temperatures, where the average number of vibrational quanta in the molecule is large, $\bar{l} = kT/hv \gg 1$,

$$Z = \bar{l} Z_1, \qquad \tau = \frac{\tau_{col}\bar{l}}{p_{10}} = \frac{\tau_{col}\bar{l}^2}{p_{\bar{l},\bar{l}-1}}.$$

Equation (6.11), expressing the change in the number of molecules in the lth quantum state, accounts only for those transitions that are accompanied by an exchange in energy between the translational and vibrational degrees of freedom. Actually, molecular collisions can also be accompanied by the exchange of vibrational quanta, and it may be shown that the probability of such an exchange is much greater than the probability of an exchange between the translational and vibrational energies [13]. Therefore, a Boltzmann distribution of the molecules with respect to the vibrational levels, consistent with the total vibrational energy in the gas, is established rapidly. We can say that in a nonequilibrium system a "vibrational" temperature is established initially, followed by the equilibration of the "vibrational" and "translational" temperatures [14].

§4. Probability of vibrational excitation and the relaxation time

Let us consider the simplest case when an atom A collides with a diatomic molecule BC along the direction of the molecular axis, as shown in Fig. 6.1. If

no chemical affinity exists between the colliding particles A and BC, then, as they approach each other, the resulting repulsive force will first slow down the atom A and then repel it from the molecule BC. Atom C is then subjected to a force which will initially tend to displace it from the equilibrium position in the direction of atom B. If atom A approaches atom C very slowly, then atom C will move slowly away from its position. When atom A and molecule BC repel each other and begin to move apart, atom C will also slowly return to its initial position. The collision is said to be "adiabatic" and no vibrations

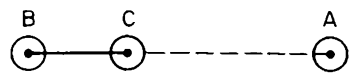


Fig. 6.1. The problem of vibrational excitation in a molecule during a collision with an atom.

will arise. The condition for adiabaticity is that the time of interaction between the atom and molecule, which is of the order of a/v, where a is the range of the forces and v is the relative velocity of the particles for infinite separation, is large in comparison with the vibrational period: $av/v \gg 1$. The above condition may also be presented as follows: In order to get the molecule strongly "swinging" it is necessary that the expansion of the driving force in the Fourier integral contain large resonant components with frequencies close to the natural frequency ν; this, however, requires that the collision time a/v be of the order of $1/\nu$, or more precisely, that the condition $a\omega/v \sim 1$, where $\omega = 2\pi\nu$, be satisfied.

Landau and Teller [15] estimated the dependence of the probability of exciting the vibrational modes on the collisional speed and, in the final analysis, on the temperature, by using the correspondence principle. In order for the quasi-classical approximation to remain valid, it is necessary that the wavelength of the particles be small in comparison with the scale of the force of the field, i.e., that $aMv/h \gg 1$, where M is the reduced mass of the colliding particles. It is easy to check that this condition is automatically satisfied if together with the adiabatic condition $av/v \gg 1$ the kinetic energy of the relative motion is very much larger than the energy of a quantum $Mv^2 \gg h\nu$. Thus the quasi-classical case corresponds to an adiabatic collision, with a very small probability of vibrational excitation.

The probability of vibrational excitation as a result of a collision is proportional to the square of the matrix element of the interaction energy of particles A and BC as a function of the distance between them $U(x)$. In the quasi-classical approximation, the matrix element reduces to the Fourier component of the interaction energy

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} U[x(t)]e^{i2\pi\nu t}\,dt. \tag{6.16}$$

For simplicity we set $\mathscr{E} = Mv^2/2 = const$, and we assume a repulsive law of the form $U = const\ e^{-x/a}$, so that the atom can come up to the molecule very closely. Integrating the equation of motion

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = \left(\frac{2}{M}[\mathscr{E} - U]\right)^{1/2}, \qquad t = \int \frac{dx}{\left(\frac{2}{M}[\mathscr{E} - U(x)]\right)^{1/2}},$$

we find the functions $t(x)$, $x(t)$, and thereby the dependence of $U(t)$

$$U(t) = 4\mathscr{E}\frac{e^{vt/a}}{(e^{vt/a}+1)^2} = 4\mathscr{E}\frac{e^{-vt/a}}{(1+e^{-vt/a})^2} = \frac{\mathscr{E}}{\cosh^2(vt/2a)}$$

($t = 0$ corresponds to the time of closest approach of the particle).

The integral (6.16) can be evaluated as an integral in the complex t plane, with the path changed to the path $\mathscr{I}m\ t = 2\pi a/v$. This path is the straight line at a distance above the real axis equal to twice the distance to the nearest pole $t_1 = i\pi a/v$. By the method of residues, the integral is found to be

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} Ue^{i2\pi\nu t}\,dt = \frac{4\pi^2 Ma^2\nu}{\sinh(2\pi^2 a\nu/v)} \approx 8\pi^2 Ma^2\nu \exp(-2\pi^2 a\nu/v),$$

with the exponential law valid if the adiabatic condition holds.

The physical meaning of the Landau–Teller derivation becomes especially clear if we solve the problem of the excitation of an oscillator by particle impact on the basis of classical mechanics. Such a derivation is given in the book by Stupochenko, Losev, and Osipov [77]. Here we shall consider only one particular case, which is particularly simple. We assume that atom B is much heavier than atom C ($m_B \gg m_C$) and that the arriving atom interacts with atom C only, so that in the center of mass system for the particles BC and A it is only the light atom C which is set into motion. We denote the displacement of the atom C about the equilibrium position (along the line of collision x) by y, and we write the equation of motion for the oscillator

$$m_C(\ddot{y} + \omega^2 y) = F(t), \qquad \omega = 2\pi\nu.$$

The force in this case is simply $F = -\partial U/\partial x$, that is, when $U = \mathscr{E}e^{-x/a}$, $F = U/a$.

We now calculate the oscillator energy $\varepsilon(t) = \frac{1}{2}m_C(\dot{y}^2 + \omega^2 y^2)$. To do this we multiply the equation of motion by $e^{i\omega t}$ and integrate with respect to t from $-\infty$ to t. Integrating the left-hand side by parts and applying the initial condition $y(-\infty) = 0$, $\dot{y}(-\infty) = 0$, we obtain

$$m_C(\dot{y} - i\omega y)e^{i\omega t} = \int_{-\infty}^{t} F(t')e^{i\omega t'}\,dt'.$$

The square of the modulus of this quantity divided by $2m_C$ gives the energy $\varepsilon(t)$. Noting that $F = U/a$, we find the energy acquired by the oscillator as a result of the collision:

$$\varepsilon = \varepsilon(\infty) = \frac{1}{2m_C a^2}\left|\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} U[x(t)]e^{i\omega t}\,dt\right|^2.$$

If we now pass over to quantum-mechanical concepts, then we must set $\varepsilon = hvp_{01}(v)$, where p_{01} is the probability of excitation of the oscillator by collision. Substituting the value of the integral above, we obtain the probability

$$p_{01}(v) = \frac{32\pi^4 M^2 a^2 v}{m_C h}\exp(-4\pi^2 av/v).$$

It decreases exponentially as the adiabatic factor av/v increases. When the mass ratio of the atoms in the molecule is arbitrary, the problem becomes somewhat more difficult; however, the only change in the results of the calculations is in the formula for p_{01} where the factor $m_B/(m_B + m_C)$ appears (see [77]).

The probability as a function of the relative particle velocity v should be averaged using the Maxwell distribution in terms of the relative velocity, i.e., using a function proportional to $\exp(-Mv^2/2kT)$. This yields an integral with respect to velocity whose integrand contains the factor $\exp(-4\pi^2 av/v - Mv^2/2kT)$. The principal role in this integral is played by the velocities $v^* = (4\pi^2 avkT/M)^{1/3}$ for which the exponent has a minimum absolute value. Collisions occurring at these velocities are mainly responsible for the excitation and deexcitation of the vibrational modes. The integral and the transition probabilities p_{01} and p_{10} are proportional to the maximum value of the exponential*

$$p_{10} \sim p_{01} \sim \exp\left(-\frac{4\pi^2 av}{v^*} - \frac{Mv^{*2}}{2kT}\right) = \exp\left(-\frac{3}{2}\frac{Mv^{*2}}{kT}\right)$$
$$= \exp\left[-\left(\frac{54\pi^4 a^2 v^2 M}{kT}\right)^{1/3}\right]. \quad (6.17)$$

Substitution of the numerical constants into the exponent in (6.17) as well as experimental evidence show that at not too high temperatures the exponent

* It is interesting to note that the rate of thermonuclear reactions has the same temperature dependence $\exp(-const\ T^{-1/3})$. This is due to the fact that the probability of the nuclei approaching each other with repulsive Coulomb forces acting between them also depends on the relative velocity of approach as $\exp(-const \cdot v^{-1})$; this relationship is then averaged using the Maxwell distribution with respect to the velocities of the nuclei.

is much greater than unity*. This means that the adiabatic condition is satisfied for the collisions which provide the main contribution to the excitation and deexcitation of the vibrational modes and that the kinetic energy of the colliding particles is much greater than kT.

Quantum-mechanical calculations of the deexcitation probability p_{10} which determine the relaxation time (see Zener [17], Schwartz and Herzfeld [18]) also lead, in the adiabatic limit, to an equation containing the exponential factor (6.17). Reference [18] considers a very general case of collisions and derives the following equation for the number of collisions prior to deexcitation

$$Z_1 = \frac{1}{p_{10}} = \pi^2 \left(\frac{3}{2\pi}\right)^{1/2} \left(\frac{h\nu}{\varepsilon_0}\right)^2 \left(\frac{kT}{\varepsilon_0}\right)^{1/6} \exp\left(-\frac{h\nu}{2kT} - \frac{\varepsilon_1}{kT}\right) \exp\left[\frac{3}{2}\left(\frac{\varepsilon_0}{kT}\right)^{1/3}\right], \tag{6.18}$$

where $\varepsilon_0 = 16\pi^4 a^2 \nu^2 M$. The last exponential corresponds precisely to the exponential in (6.17); for temperatures which are not too high, due to the large value of the exponent, this term essentially characterizes the temperature dependence of the number of collisions. The factor $\exp(-\varepsilon_1/kT)$ takes into account a certain facilitation of the transitions due to the acceleration of the particles when they approach each other; this acceleration is caused, in turn, by the long range attractive forces that are described by a "potential well" with an energy ε_1. This energy is usually of the order of a few tenths of an electron volt. Equation (6.18) has been somewhat refined in a later paper of Herzfeld [18a].

The theoretical considerations presented above show that the dependence of the vibrational relaxation time on temperature obeys the relation

$$\tau = Z\tau_{\text{col}} = \tau_{\text{col}} A\, e^{bT^{-1/3}}, \tag{6.19}$$

where b is a constant and A is a slowly varying function of temperature. Thus, a plot of $\log \tau$ as a function of $T^{-1/3}$ should yield an almost straight line.

Vibrational relaxation times are measured experimentally at room temperature and with small heating by ultrasonic absorption and dispersion. Over a wider temperature range vibrational relaxation times are measured from the establishment of equilibrium behind a shock front generated in a shock tube. A careful study of relaxation in oxygen and nitrogen was carried out by Blackman [16] using a shock tube. His results are presented in Table 6.2. This table also presents the theoretical values for oxygen calculated by Schwartz and Herzfeld [18]. As is evident the theoretical and experimental data show satisfactory agreement. Experimental values measured for many

* For example, in oxygen at $T = 1000°\text{K}$ the exponent is approximately equal to 10 (according to the data of [16]; see below).

Table 6.2

VIBRATIONAL RELAXATION IN OXYGEN AND NITROGEN MEASURED BY BLACKMAN [16]. THEORETICAL VALUES TAKEN FROM SCHWARTZ AND HERZFELD [18]

T, °K	p_{10} (experimental)[a]	p_{10} (theoretical)	Number of collisions Z (experimental)	τ in seconds normalized to the density $n = 2.67 \cdot 10^{19}$ cm^{-3}
		Oxygen		
288	$4.0 \cdot 10^{-8}$ [b]	$1.0 \cdot 10^{-8}$	$2.5 \cdot 10^{7}$	
900	$1.1 \cdot 10^{-5}$	$3.0 \cdot 10^{-6}$	$1.0 \cdot 10^{5}$	$96 \cdot 10^{-7}$
1200	$2.4 \cdot 10^{-5}$	$1.3 \cdot 10^{-5}$	$5.0 \cdot 10^{4}$	$41 \cdot 10^{-7}$
1800	$9.8 \cdot 10^{-5}$	$8.6 \cdot 10^{-5}$	$1.4 \cdot 10^{4}$	$9.5 \cdot 10^{-7}$
2400	$3.7 \cdot 10^{-4}$	$5.5 \cdot 10^{-4}$	$4.5 \cdot 10^{3}$	$2.7 \cdot 10^{-7}$
3000	$1.2 \cdot 10^{-3}$	$1.5 \cdot 10^{-3}$	$1.6 \cdot 10^{3}$	$0.83 \cdot 10^{-7}$
		Nitrogen		
600	$3.0 \cdot 10^{-8}$ [c]	$3.3 \cdot 10^{7}$		
3000	$3.1 \cdot 10^{-5}$	$4.6 \cdot 10^{4}$		$2.1 \cdot 10^{-6}$
4000	$9.7 \cdot 10^{-5}$	$1.8 \cdot 10^{4}$		$0.67 \cdot 10^{-6}$
5000	$2.5 \cdot 10^{-4}$	$0.8 \cdot 10^{4}$		$0.27 \cdot 10^{-6}$

[a] In calculating p_{10} on the basis of the experimentally determined values of the time τ, the gaskinetic cross sections $\sigma_{O_2} = 3.6 \cdot 10^{-15}$ cm^2 and $\sigma_{N_2} = 4.1 \cdot 10^{-15}$ cm^2 were used.

[b] This point was obtained by the ultrasonic method [19].

[c] This point was obtained by Huber and Kantrowitz [20] from studies of the discharge from a nozzle.

different gases more or less follow the straight line dependence of $\ln \tau$ or $\ln Z$ on $T^{-1/3}$. This is evident from Fig. 6.2 which is taken from [5]. The departures from a straight line can be partially explained by the temperature dependence of the pre-exponential factor A in (6.19).

The vibrational relaxation time for oxygen is, at a given temperature, smaller than that for nitrogen, since the natural frequency in nitrogen is one and a half times higher than in oxygen. This fact makes the excitation of the vibrational modes in nitrogen more difficult. Therefore, vibrational relaxation in air takes place in two stages: first oxygen and then nitrogen reach equilibrium. It should be noted that the collisions of N_2 with O_2 molecules are only 2.5 times less effective with respect to the excitation of vibrational modes in O_2 than are the O_2—O_2 collisions. Generally, some molecules are very active in exciting vibrational modes; for example, H_2O molecules excite vibrations in O_2 50–100 times faster than do the O_2 molecules themselves. Hence, high purity of the gas is essential for measurement of vibrational relaxation.

A detailed review of the literature on vibrational relaxation times in different gases, as well as references to many experimental and theoretical

papers, may be found in the reviews [4, 5]. We would also cite several articles concerned with the study of vibrational excitation: in O_2 [58, 59], in NO [60], in CO [61], and in CO_2 [62, 63]. We also note the review [64] and the

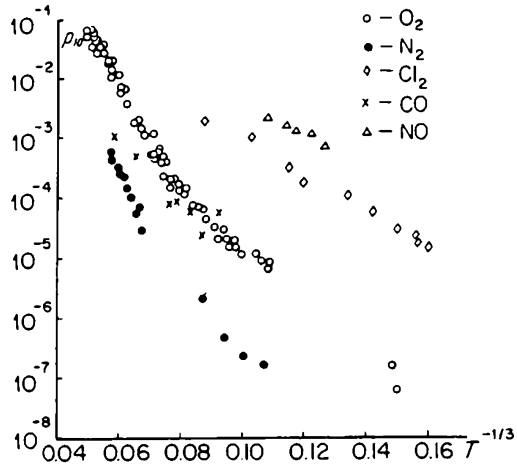


Fig. 6.2. Experimental data on the probability of deexcitation of molecules with excited vibrations.

papers [65, 66] dealing with vibrational relaxation in gas mixtures. The theory of vibrational relaxation is presented in detail in the book [77], in which may be found a detailed bibliography, including references to recent theoretical and experimental studies.

§5. Rate equation for dissociation of diatomic molecules and the relaxation time

Dissociation of diatomic molecules as a result of collisions of sufficiently energetic particles usually corresponds to the reaction

$$A_2 + M \rightleftarrows A + A + M, \tag{6.20}$$

where M is any particle*. In a homogeneous diatomic gas the particle M can be either the molecule A_2 or the atom A. The reverse process results in the recombination of atoms as a result of three-body collisions, where the third body M absorbs a portion of the binding energy released in the process.

The rate equation for the reaction (6.20), taking into account the fact that a molecule as well as an atom can serve as the particle M, takes the form

$$\frac{dA_2}{dt} = -\frac{1}{2}\frac{dA}{dt} = -k_d A_2^2 + k_r A^2 \cdot A_2 - k_d' A_2 \cdot A + k_r' A^3. \tag{6.21}$$

* There is a very small probability that a sufficiently strongly excited molecule will decompose directly into atoms $A_2 \rightleftarrows A + A$, and that these atoms will recombine into a molecule without the participation of a third body which could absorb a portion of the energy liberated during the reaction. The probabilities of photodissociation and of recombination with the emission of a photon are also very small.

For brevity we denote the particle number densities by their symbols. The reaction rate constants depend only on the temperature and are related to each other by the principle of detailed balancing

$$\frac{k_d}{k_r} = \frac{k_d'}{k_r'} = \frac{(\mathrm{A})^2}{(\mathrm{A}_2)} = K(T), \tag{6.22}$$

where the parentheses denote the equilibrium values of the number of particles at the given temperature and density; $K(T)$ is the equilibrium constant defined in terms of concentrations; it differs from the equilibrium constant defined in terms of partial pressures $K_p(T)$ by the factor $(kT)^{-1}$. Thus we have $K(T) = K_p(T)/kT$. The equilibrium constant determines the equilibrium degree of dissociation α at a given temperature and density. From (3.26) we have

$$\frac{\alpha^2}{1-\alpha} = \frac{K(T)}{4N} = \frac{1}{4N}\frac{M_\mathrm{A} v}{4I_{\mathrm{A}_2}}\left(\frac{M_\mathrm{A}}{\pi kT}\right)^{1/2}\frac{g_\mathrm{A}^2}{g_{\mathrm{A}_2}}\, e^{-U/kT}, \tag{6.23}$$

where N is the initial molecular number density and M_A is the mass of an atom (the remaining symbols are defined in §3 of Chapter III).

In contrast to vibrational relaxation, the rate equation for molecular dissociation is in general nonlinear. However, in accordance with the general procedure outlined in §1 for small departures from equilibrium, it can be reduced to the linearized form (6.2) for the number of particles A or A_2. In this case the relaxation time τ is determined by

$$\frac{1}{\tau} = 4\alpha(2-\alpha)N^2\left(k_r + k_r'\frac{2\alpha}{1-\alpha}\right). \tag{6.24}$$

Calculations show that the time τ characterizes not only the final stage of approach to equilibrium, but the entire dissociation kinetics even during the stage when only the nonlinear equation (6.21) is valid. Therefore, τ is of the same order as the time necessary to establish equilibrium dissociation for the general case of arbitrary initial conditions.

In the limiting cases of weak and strong equilibrium dissociation, (6.24) is simplified. When $\alpha \ll 1$, very few atoms are present and molecular dissociation occurs mainly as a result of collisions between molecules. In this case from (6.22) and (6.23),

$$\frac{1}{\tau} = 8\alpha N^2 k_r = \frac{2}{\alpha} N k_d. \tag{6.25}$$

For $1-\alpha \ll 1$, even if no atoms are present initially, the most important part is played by the later stage, when only a few molecules are present and the remaining molecules are broken up by collisions with atoms. In this case

$$\frac{1}{\tau} = \frac{8}{1-\alpha} N^2 k_r' = 2N k_d'. \tag{6.26}$$

Thus, the problem of the time necessary to establish equilibrium reduces to the problem of the dissociation or recombination reaction rates. Since both rates are related by the principle of detailed balancing (6.22), it is sufficient to know only one of them, either from theory or from experiment.

§6. Atom recombination rates and dissociation rates for diatomic molecules

A rough estimate of the rate of recombination of atoms in diatomic molecules can be obtained from very elementary considerations, assuming that each gaskinetic collision of atoms in the presence of a third body results in recombination. The number of collisions among A atoms per unit volume per unit time is equal to $A \cdot \bar{v} \cdot \sigma \cdot A$, where $\bar{v} = (8kT/M_A\pi)^{1/2}$ is the mean thermal speed and σ the gaskinetic cross section. The probability that at the time of collision a third body will be found "in the neighborhood", i.e., at a distance of the order of the molecular radius r, is approximately equal to the average number of particles in a volume equal to the volume of one molecule: $\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3/N$, where N is the particle number density. The number of three-body collisions per unit volume per unit time is thus equal to $A \cdot \bar{v} \cdot \sigma \cdot A \cdot \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3/N$. Introducing, for generality, the numerical coefficient β equal to the probability that a recombination will follow a three-body collision, we obtain the following expression for the recombination rate constant:

$$k_r = \beta \bar{v} \sigma \tfrac{4}{3} \pi r^3 . \tag{6.27}$$

For example, for nitrogen atoms $\bar{v} = 3.9 \cdot 10^3 T^{\circ 1/2}$ cm/sec and $\sigma \approx 10^{-15}$ cm^2. Setting $r = 3.4 \cdot 10^{-8}$ cm and $\beta = 1$, we find $k_r = 2.2 \cdot 10^{14} T^{\circ 1/2}$ cm^6/mole^2 · sec (one mole contains $6 \cdot 10^{23}$ atoms). At $T = 300°$K, $k_r = 3.8 \cdot 10^{15}$ cm^6/mole^2 · sec.

The recombination of nitrogen atoms is usually studied by measuring the change in the number of nitrogen molecules with time during afterglow*. In this manner the recombination rate constant, with nitrogen molecules acting as the third bodies, has been determined. In the temperature range between 297 and 442°K the constant was found to be almost independent of temperature and given by $k_r = 5.8 \cdot 10^{15}$ cm^6/mole^2 · sec [21]. This value is in good agreement with the estimate given above. Similar results were also obtained by other authors [22, 23]. In [70] is reported an examination of the

* The phenomenon of nitrogen afterglow can be described as follows. During the recombination of nitrogen atoms, the N_2 molecules are found to be in the $^5\Sigma_g^+$ excited state. Subsequent collisions with other molecules or atoms partially deexcite the molecules which then undergo a transition to the lower state $B\,^3\Pi_g$. Following this transition, photons of the first positive system of N_2 ($B\,^3\Pi_g \rightarrow A\,^3\Sigma_g^+$) are emitted and are measured in the experiment. Information about the rate of recombination is obtained on the basis of the changes in the afterglow intensity.

dissociation and recombination of nitrogen in a shock tube by measuring the nonequilibrium radiation. It was found that the recombination rate constant at $T = 6400°K$ is equal to $k_{rN} = 6.5 \cdot 10^{15}$ cm^6/mole$^2 \cdot$ sec with a nitrogen atom acting as the third body and 13 times smaller when a nitrogen molecule acted as the third body.

In general, the recombination rate constants at not too high temperatures ($T \sim 300$–$1000°K$), are usually of the order of 10^{14}–10^{16} cm^6/mole$^2 \cdot$ sec, which indicates rather high recombination probabilities β during three-body collisions. The recombination rate exhibits a relatively weak dependence on temperature and usually shows a certain tendency to decrease with increasing temperature. This can be understood if we recall that the recombination probability during a three-body collision is greater, the greater the time of interaction between the colliding particles, that is, the lower their speed or the lower the temperature. Thus, the probability β has an inverse dependence on temperature. For example, if $\beta \sim 1/T$, then, $k_r \sim \bar{v}\beta \sim 1/T^{1/2}$, in agreement with Wigner's theoretical calculations [24].

The rate of recombination of atoms depends on the type of third body. For example, in the recombination of nitrogen atoms, the nitrogen atoms acting as third bodies are 13 times more effective than nitrogen molecules (at $T = 6400°K$). A study of the dissociation rate of iodine in a shock tube described in [25] (the concentration of I_2 molecules was measured by the absorption of light) showed that the iodine molecules at $T = 1300°K$ were 35 times more effective as third bodies than argon atoms in the recombination of iodine atoms. The recombination rate for iodine during three-body collisions with argon at $T = 1300°K$ is $k_r = 4.5 \cdot 10^{14}$ cm^6/mole$^2 \cdot$ sec [25]; at $T = 298°K$, $k_r = 2.9 \cdot 10^{15}$ cm^6/mole$^2 \cdot$ sec [26].

Dissociation of a molecule following collision with another particle takes place only if the energy of the colliding particles exceeds the dissociation energy. The total number of collisions per unit time of the given molecule with other particles (the number density of which is N) is $\nu = N\overline{v'}\sigma$, where $\overline{v'}$ is the average velocity of the relative motion of the particles $\overline{v'} = (8kT/\mu\pi)^{1/2}$ with μ the reduced mass*. For a Maxwell velocity distribution, the number of molecular collisions with the kinetic energy of relative motion exceeding the dissociation energy U is the fraction $(U/kT + 1)e^{-U/kT}$ of the total number of collisions (usually $U/kT \gg 1$, so that $(U/kT) + 1 \approx U/kT$). It is usually assumed that only that part of the kinetic energy of the particles which corresponds to the relative velocity component directed along the line of centers of the colliding particles (if the latter are considered to be solid spheres) is effective with respect to dissociation. On the basis of this assumption the fraction

* In estimating the recombination rate, $\overline{v'}$ was replaced by $\bar{v}$ for simplicity, that is, μ was replaced by the atomic mass M_A.

of "sufficiently energetic" collisions is simply equal to $e^{-U/kT}$, rather than to $(U/kT)e^{-U/kT}$.

It is natural to assume that not only the kinetic energy of translational motion of the colliding particles is expended in breaking the molecular bond, but also the energy in their internal degrees of freedom, that is, the vibrational and rotational energy. It can be shown (see [27]) that the fraction of collisions in which the total energy of the colliding particles (taking into account the energy of the internal degrees of freedom) exceeds the dissociation energy is*

$$\frac{1}{s!}\left(\frac{U}{kT}\right)^s e^{-U/kT},$$

where each vibrational degree of freedom contributes 1 to the exponent s, and each rotational degree of freedom contributes 1/2 (in the case of half integral s, the factorial s is replaced by the gamma function $\Gamma(s+1)$). At the present time the theory of molecular dissociation by collision with other particles is still far from complete. Therefore, experimental values of the dissociation rate constant are often compared with a relation of the type

$$k_d = P\overline{v'}\sigma \frac{1}{s!}\left(\frac{U}{kT}\right)^s e^{-U/kT}. \tag{6.28}$$

The number s which characterizes the degree of participation of the internal degrees of freedom in the dissociation, and the factor P representing the probability of dissociation upon the collision of particles with sufficient energies, are parameters which must be determined experimentally.

According to present ideas, the main role in the dissociation process is played by the vibrational energy of the molecule. Stupochenko and Osipov [28] have shown that the probability of dissociation of an unexcited molecule is extremely small, even if the translational energy of the colliding particles exceeds the binding energy U. It is mainly the molecules in very high vibrational levels, whose energy is close to the dissociation energy, which can be dissociated. In this case, the translational energy of the particles cannot differ very much from the mean thermal energy. If we assume that the distribution of molecules over the vibrational states is a Boltzmann distribution, then the dissociation rate can still be described by an equation of the type (6.28) with an appropriate value of the exponent s. Stupochenko and Osipov [29] have shown that this assumption is not always justified. "Withdrawal" of molecules from the highest vibrational levels caused by dissociation can sometimes seriously distort the Boltzmann distribution for the molecules with respect

* It is assumed in the derivation of this equation that the distribution of molecules over the energy states of all the internal degrees of freedom is a Boltzmann distribution corresponding to the translational temperature T.

to the highest vibrational states. In this case the dissociation kinetics must be considered together with the kinetics of excitation of the highest vibrational levels. The process proceeds in such a manner that the collisions "deliver" the molecules to the upper levels from which they make a transition to the dissociated state. During the process of recombination of atoms in the presence of a third body, the dissociation energy is primarily converted into vibrational energy of the formed molecule. The theory underlying these processes is presented in the review [76] and in the book [77].

Experimental studies have been carried out mainly for the dissociation of oxygen behind a shock front in a shock tube (articles by Matthews [30], Byron [31], Generalov and Losev [32], Camac and Vaughan [67], Rink *et al.* [68]; a summary of bibliographical data and references to other works are given in [4, 5, 77]. A very thorough study was carried out by Matthews, who used an interferometer to determine the changes in density in the nonequilibrium zone behind a shock. These changes were compared with the theoretical values obtained from a dissociation rate equation similar to (6.28) (see Chapters IV and VII). Equilibrium in the vibrational degrees of freedom was established within a time which was at least an order of magnitude less than the dissociation time*. Thus, the effect of vibrational relaxation did not interfere with the study of the dissociation rate. The investigation covered the temperature range from 2000 to 4000°K. The degree of dissociation in Matthews' experiments was not large, $\alpha \sim 0.05$–0.1, so that the main role in dissociation was played by the O_2—O_2 collisions†. In the calculations it was assumed that $s = 3$, for which case the effectiveness of collisions was found to be $P_{O_2-O_2} = 0.073$, while the dissociation rate constant was given by

$$k_{dO_2-O_2} = 5.4 \cdot 10^{10} T^{\circ 1/2} \left(\frac{59{,}380}{T^\circ}\right)^3 e^{-59{,}380/T^\circ} \text{ cm}^3/\text{mole} \cdot \text{sec}. \quad (6.29)$$

Calculations for $s = 0$ yielded an improbably high value of P (greater than unity). This shows that the energy of the internal degrees of freedom of the molecule plays an important role in the dissociation process. Knowing the equilibrium constant for the dissociation of O_2

$$K(T) = 1.85 \cdot 10^3 T^{\circ -1/2} e^{-59{,}380/T^\circ} \text{ mole/cm}^3, \quad (6.30)$$

* For the not too high vibrational states which are occupied by the majority of molecules.

† The reaction $O_2 + O_2 = 2O + O_2$ has a "competitor", the two-stage dissociation reaction of O_2 with the intermediate formation of ozone $O_2 + O_2 = O + O_3$; $O_3 + M = O + O_2 + M$ (the reverse process, i.e., recombination, can also take place). This process plays an insignificant role at high temperatures (in particular, in Matthews' experiments). However, at low temperatures and with a low degree of dissociation, oxygen recombines primarily through the formation of ozone, since the collisions $O + O + M$ occur much less frequently than the collisions $O + O_2 + M \rightarrow O_3 + M$. The reaction rate constants for processes involving the formation of ozone are given in [33].

we may find the recombination rate with O_2 molecules acting as the third bodies:

$$k_r = 6.1 \cdot 10^{21} T^{\circ -2} \text{ cm}^6/\text{mole}^2 \cdot \text{sec}^*. \tag{6.31}$$

The relaxation time at $T = 3500°\text{K}$ and standard density is $\tau = 0.95 \cdot 10^{-6}$ sec ($\alpha = 0.084$). This result is very close to the data obtained by Glick and Wurster [34], who measured the relaxation time for the dissociation of oxygen in a shock tube. Their times, reduced to standard density, are

T, °K	3100	3300	3400	3850
$\tau \cdot 10^6$ sec	2	0.8	0.5	0.06

References [25, 35, 36] report the use of shock tubes to study the dissociation rates of bromine and iodine (the concentration of Br_2 and I_2 molecules was measured by the absorption of light from an external source). In [35] is reported the following data for the dissociation rate of bromine molecules during collision with argon atoms in a temperature range up to 2000°K: $s = 2$ and $P_{Br_2—Ar} = 0.12$. Satisfactory agreement with this result was obtained in the theoretical work of Nikitin [37]. Reference [5] presents a review of articles on molecular dissociation. We would also note [69], in which a study of the dissociation of hydrogen in a shock tube is reported. A discussion of the dissociation rates for O_2 and N_2 and other relaxation processes in air may also be found in [53]. Additional details on the theory and kinetics of molecular dissociation as well as experimental data and references to numerous original articles may be found in the book [77] which has been often cited.

§7. Chemical reactions and the activated complex method

Chemical reactions are usually divided into two types from the point of view of the energy involved: endothermic reactions, requiring a definite amount of energy, and exothermic reactions, accompanied by the liberation of heat. Examples of both types of reactions are, respectively, the dissociation of molecules and the recombination of atoms into molecules considered above. It is evident that an endothermic reaction can occur only when the colliding molecules possess a definite minimum amount of energy, the so-called activation energy E. The rate of such a reaction, therefore, is proportional to the Boltzmann factor $e^{-E/kT}$ and increases rapidly with temperature. In the dissociation process, the binding energy of the molecule U serves as the activation energy. However, it has been shown experimentally that a majority of exothermic reactions also require an activation energy and that the corresponding reaction rates increase exponentially with temperature as

* This equation is applicable only in the temperature range investigated $T \approx 2000$–4000°K. Extrapolation to room temperature gives significantly too high a recombination rate.

$e^{-E/kT}$. This relation is known as Arrhenius' law. Recombination of atoms into molecules is in this respect atypical, since it proceeds without activation and hence can easily occur at low temperatures, as can many other reactions in which free atoms participate.

An elementary chemical reaction, such as the exchange of atoms during a collision of molecule XY with a molecule WZ

$$XY + WZ \rightarrow XW + YZ, \tag{6.32}$$

can occur only when both molecules approach each other very closely. Regardless of whether this process is or is not energetically favorable, that is, whether it results in the release or absorption of energy, a very small separation between the particles will, as a rule, give rise to repulsive forces. A definite amount of energy is required to overcome such forces. It is usually said that a potential barrier must be overcome before a chemical reaction can take place. This situation is illustrated schematically in Fig. 6.3, which shows the potential energy of a system of four atoms XYWZ as a function of a "decomposition coordinate" which characterizes the relative configuration of the atoms in space. For definiteness let us assume that the forward reaction (6.32) is exothermic. The energy difference between the initial and final states of the system is equal to the energy Q released by the reaction. It is clear from Fig. 6.3 that the activation energy of the reverse reaction E_2 exceeds the activation energy of the forward reaction E_1 by the reaction energy Q. Therefore, the rate of the reverse endothermic reaction is more strongly temperature dependent than the rate of the forward exothermic reaction.

The rate equation for the reaction (6.32), considering both the forward and the reverse processes, can be written in the form

$$\frac{d\,XY}{dt} = k_1 XY \cdot WZ - k_2 XW \cdot YZ\,^*. \tag{6.33}$$

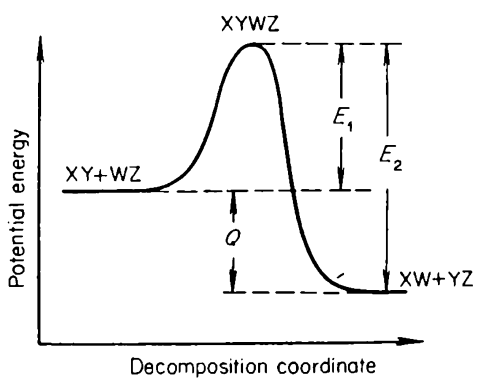


Fig. 6.3. The potential barrier in chemical reactions.

* Reactions with the participation of two molecules (atoms) are called bimolecular, while unimolecular reactions are those where the molecule is dissociated into simpler molecules (or atoms), for example, $XY \rightarrow X + Y$.

The reaction rate constants, which depend only on temperature, are related as usual by the principle of detailed balancing

$$\frac{k_2}{k_1} = \frac{(XY)(WZ)}{(XW)(YZ)} = K(T). \tag{6.34}$$

Using the concepts of collision theory, we can express the reaction rate constants similarly to the dissociation rate constants. Thus, assuming for simplicity that the only effective contribution to overcoming the potential barrier E is made by that portion of the translational energy of the colliding particles along their line of centers and that other portions, including those for the internal molecular degrees of freedom, are ineffective in this respect, we obtain

$$k_1 = P\sigma\bar{v}'e^{-E/kT}, \tag{6.35}$$

Here P, as before, is the probability of the occurrence of a chemical reaction as a result of a sufficiently energetic collision (P is sometimes called the steric factor). It has been experimentally demonstrated that many reactions, especially those where complex molecules are involved, proceed much slower than would have been expected on the basis of the number of sufficiently energetic collisions; the probability P is frequently found to be very small, even of the order of 10^{-8}.

In a number of cases a more definite estimate of the reaction rate can be obtained by using the so-called activated or intermediate complex method*. The potential energy of a system of atoms participating in an elementary reaction depends on their relative configuration. If the positions of the atoms change sufficiently slowly (and this is practically always true), then the electronic state of the system changes continuously and the potential energy depends on the nuclear position only (which corresponds to the adiabatic approximation in molecular theory). The potential energy forms a continuous surface in the configuration space of the nuclear coordinates. The potential energy for both the initial and final configuration of the atoms is at a minimum. For example, in the reaction (6.32) the energy is minimum when the atoms combine to form the molecules XY + WZ and also XW + YZ, with the molecules separated by large distances from each other in each case.

In order for a reaction to take place the point describing the motion of the system in configuration space must pass through the maximum dividing the minima on the configuration surface, that is, it must cross over the potential barrier. Generally speaking, the final state may be reached along many paths from the initial state. The path actually taken is the one which is most

* A detailed presentation of this method and its applications in calculating the rates of a number of reactions can be found in [38]; see also [27].

convenient for the given reaction, and corresponds to the lowest value of the energy maximum. The energy surface around this path resembles a "trough". Figure 6.3 illustrates schematically a section of the energy surface along the "bottom of the trough"; here, the reaction path corresponds to the decomposition coordinate.

The peak of the potential barrier corresponds to the closest approach between the reacting particles. In the neighborhood of the peak, in a region with linear dimensions δ of the order of the molecular dimensions, the atoms are formed into something not unlike a molecule. This state is called an activated complex. However, the principal difference between the activated complex and a molecule is that a molecule is in a stable state with a minimum potential energy, while the complex is in a state of unstable equilibrium with the potential energy a maximum as a function of the decomposition coordinate. The point describing the state of the system moves along the reaction path with a speed of the order of the relative velocities of the atoms, i.e., with a mean speed $\bar{v}$ which is of the order of the thermal speed. The time spent in the vicinity of the peak, that is, the lifetime of the activated complex, is of the order of $\tau = \delta/\bar{v}$. For $\delta \approx 10^{-8}$ cm and $\bar{v} \approx 10^4$ cm/sec, $\tau \approx 10^{-12}$ sec. The lifetime of a complex is very short compared to the characteristic reaction time (the time required to reach chemical equilibrium in a gas mixture). These considerations provide the basis for the theoretical assumption that the complexes may be regarded as certain types of molecules possessing the usual thermodynamic properties and being in a chemical equilibrium with the reactants, with the concentration of the complexes following the change in the reactant concentrations*.

If we assume that each complex formed decomposes in the direction of the reaction products, then the number of reactions per unit volume per unit time is equal to the number of complex decompositions, to the number of complexes per unit volume divided by their lifetime. Denoting by the chemical symbols A, B, M the amount per unit volume of the reactants A and B and complexes M (for example, for reaction (6.32) A and B are XY and WZ and M = XYWZ), we find that the number of forward reactions per unit volume per unit time is given by $k_1 \cdot A \cdot B = M/\tau$. Thus, the forward reaction rate constant is $k_1 = (M/AB)(1/\tau)$.

According to the law of mass action (see §3 of Chapter III), the ratio of the number of particles participating in the reaction $A + B \rightarrow M$ is equal at equilibrium to the ratio of the partition functions of these particles. (Since A, B, and M denote the number of particles per unit volume, the volumes V which enter the translational partition functions should be set equal to unity.) Factoring out from the partition functions terms of the type $e^{-\varepsilon/kT}$

* Actually the relaxation time for establishing such an equilibrium is of the order of the lifetime of the complex, and thus very short.

which correspond to the zero-point energy of the particles, and noting that $\varepsilon_M - (\varepsilon_A + \varepsilon_B) = E$ is equal to the activation energy, we obtain

$$\frac{M}{AB} = \left(\frac{Z_M}{Z_A Z_B}\right) e^{-E/kT}.$$

The partition functions Z_A and Z_B are calculated by the usual methods, while the partition function of the complex should be treated as follows. As with a normal molecule, the complex is stable with respect to all changes in the atomic configuration, except for the direction along the reaction path. Hence, if we consider normal vibrations of the complex, the normal vibrational frequency with respect to the decomposition coordinate is imaginary. If we assume that the peak of the potential barrier is sufficiently flat, then the motion along the decomposition coordinate may be considered as translational with an average speed $\bar{v}_x = (kT/2\pi m^*)^{1/2}$, where m^* is the effective mass of the complex. The partition function for one-dimensional translational motion of particles with a mass m^* along an interval δ, equivalent to the "volume" occupied by the complexes along the decomposition coordinate, is equal to $Z_{\text{trans}\,1-d} = (2\pi m^* kT/h^2)^{1/2}\delta$ (cf. (3.12)). In calculating the partition function for the complex Z_M, we must replace the partition function for one of the normal vibrational modes by this translational partition function. The reaction rate constant is thus given by

$$k_1 = \frac{M}{AB}\frac{1}{\tau} = \frac{Z_M}{Z_A Z_B} e^{-E/kT}\frac{\bar{v}_x}{\delta} = \frac{Z_M^*}{Z_A Z_B} e^{-E/kT}\left(\frac{2\pi m^* kT}{h}\right)^{1/2}\delta\left(\frac{kT}{2\pi m^*}\right)^{1/2}\frac{1}{\delta},$$

where Z_M^* denotes the partition function of the complex excluding a factor corresponding to one normal vibrational mode*. This equation shows that the undefined quantities δ and m^* cancel out. Introducing the so-called transmission coefficient κ characterizing the probability of decomposition of the complex in the direction of the reaction products (but not in the direction of the initial particles; κ is usually of the order of unity) we finally obtain the reaction rate constant

$$k_1 = \kappa \frac{kT}{h}\frac{Z_M^*}{Z_A Z_B} e^{-E/kT}. \tag{6.36}$$

The source of the factor kT/h in (6.36), which has the dimensions of frequency and is universal for all reactions, may be visualized in the following manner. We consider a degree of freedom of the complex along the reaction path as a normal vibration with frequency ν. Its partition function is equal to $kT/h\nu$ (for $h\nu < kT$), so that $Z_M = Z_M^* kT/h\nu$. But each vibration actually

* This partition function can be calculated in the usual manner if the "molecular" constants of the complex are known.

results in the decomposition of the complex, so that the lifetime τ is equal to the period of vibrations $\tau = 1/\nu$. From this we get $(kT/h\nu)1/\tau = kT/h$, and thus (6.36).

Substituting into (6.36) the actual expressions for the partition functions and equating the resulting equation to (6.35), we can obtain an explicit value for the steric factor P. Let us first of all formally consider the imaginary reaction in which two atoms combine into a molecule without the participation of a third body. Then Z_A and Z_B are purely translational partition functions and Z_M^* is made up of the translational and rotational partition functions (vibration of the diatomic complex has been excluded). Substituting $Z_{A,B} = (2\pi m_{A,B} kT/h^2)^{3/2}$ and $Z_M^* = [2\pi(m_A + m_B)kT/h^2]^{3/2}(8\pi^2 IkT/h^2)$ into (6.36), and noting that the moment of inertia of the complex is $I = d_{12}^2 m_A m_B/(m_A + m_B)$, where d_{12} is the average diameter of the atoms $d_{12} = (d_A + d_B)/2$, we obtain precisely the relation (6.35), which was derived on collisional arguments, if we identify the steric factor P with the transmission coefficient κ (the collision cross section is $\sigma = \pi d_{12}^2$).

It is generally convenient for purposes of estimation to write the partition functions of the reactants and of the complex as a product of partition functions, each of which corresponds to a single degree of freedom. It is also convenient not to distinguish between the partition functions pertaining to the same degree of freedom but to different particles. For example, in the case when A and B are diatomic molecules, $Z_A \sim Z_B \sim Z_{trans}^3 Z_{rot}^2 Z_{vib}$. Assuming that the complex is nonlinear, we write $Z_M^* \sim Z_{trans}^3 Z_{rot}^3 Z_{vib}^5$ (the complex contains 4 atoms and 6 vibrational degrees of freedom, one of which is excluded). Thus, to within an order of magnitude

$$k_1 \sim \kappa \frac{kT}{h} \frac{Z_{trans}^3 Z_{rot}^3 Z_{vib}^5}{Z_{trans}^6 Z_{rot}^4 Z_{vib}^2} e^{-E/kT}.$$

Similarly, for the reaction in which two atoms combine into a molecule, the factor

$$\frac{kT}{h} \frac{Z_{trans}^3 Z_{rot}^2}{Z_{trans}^6} \approx \frac{kT}{h} \frac{Z_{rot}^2}{Z_{trans}^3} \approx \pi d_{12} \bar{v}'$$

gives the approximate number of collisions entering into (6.35), so that the order of magnitude of the steric factor is

$$P \sim \kappa \frac{Z_{vib}^3}{Z_{rot}^3}.$$

At room temperatures Z_{vib} is of the order of unity. Z_{rot} is of the order of 10–100, and is smaller, the lighter is the molecule. It is evident, therefore, that the steric factor can be a very small quantity of the order of 10^{-3}–10^{-6}.

In §10 we shall employ the activated complex method for estimating the rate of formation of nitrogen dioxide in high-temperature air. This is important for the understanding of certain optical phenomena observed in a strong explosion.

§8. Oxidation of nitrogen

When air is heated to a temperature of several thousand degrees, the chemical reaction

$$\frac{1}{2}N_2 + \frac{1}{2}O_2 + 21.4\,\frac{\text{kcal}}{\text{mole}} = NO \tag{6.37}$$

takes place. This reaction results in the formation of an appreciable amount of nitric oxide, NO. Equilibrium concentrations of nitric oxide reach several percent at temperatures of 3000–10,000°K and air densities of the order of atmospheric (see Table 3.1, Chapter III). Some of the nitric oxide is oxidized to form nitrogen dioxide NO_2. Under the above conditions, the equilibrium concentrations of the latter are of the order of $10^{-4} = 10^{-2}\%$. Nitrogen oxides play an important role in the radiation and absorption of light by high-temperature air. Especially important in this respect is the role of nitrogen dioxide in the temperature range of 2000–4000°K, where the optical properties of air in the visible part of the spectrum are almost entirely determined by the NO_2 molecules. When air is heated by a strong shock wave, for example, in an explosion, both the temperature and the density of air are subjected to very rapid changes, hence the kinetics of formation and decomposition of nitrogen oxides are of considerable importance in calculating their concentrations. As will be shown in Chapters VIII and IX, features of the kinetics determine some of the characteristic optical effects observed in a strong explosion. In this section we shall consider the kinetics of the formation of nitric oxide and in the following section the kinetics of the oxidation of nitric oxide into the corresponding dioxide.

The oxidation of nitrogen requires a large activation energy, and thus it occurs only at sufficiently high temperatures, of the order of 2000°K and above. This reaction has been studied in detail, experimentally as well as theoretically, by Zel'dovich, Sadovnikov, and Frank-Kamenetskii [39]. The experiment dealing with the formation and decomposition of nitric oxide was carried out with the aid of bombs in which a mixture of hydrogen and oxygen was burned. In this manner temperatures of the order of 2000°K were obtained. To the mixture of H_2 and O_2 nitrogen and different concentrations of nitric oxide were added. When the amounts added were small, the oxide formation resulted from the combination of oxygen with the nitrogen; however, when the additions were large the oxide initially introduced decomposed. The

remaining amount of the oxide was determined after the explosion, and the formation and decomposition rates were found by comparing the experimental results with the theory. The combination of oxygen with hydrogen exerted almost no effect on the formation and decomposition of the oxide and served only as a means for obtaining high temperatures.

If we assume that the reaction takes place according to the bimolecular mechanism, that is, a collision between an N_2 and O_2 molecule results in the formation of two NO molecules, then we can write the simple expression for the reaction rate constant which follows from the collision theory (see (6.35)): $k' = P\bar{v}\sigma e^{-E/kT}$. The experimentally determined value of the pre-exponential factor is $1.1 \cdot 10^3 O_2^{-1/2}$, where O_2 denotes the number density of oxygen molecules. Thus, if we substitute $O_2 = 10^{18}$ molecules/cm^3, we obtain a value of the pre-exponential factor equal to $1.1 \cdot 10^{-6}$ cm^3/sec. At $T = 2500°K$, $\bar{v} \approx 2 \cdot 10^5$ cm/sec and $\sigma \approx 10^{-15}$ cm^2 and the transformation probability P has the improbably high value $P \approx 5000$. Thus the assumption that the reaction occurs according to the bimolecular mechanism leads to a physically unrealistic result; it has been shown experimentally that the true reaction rate is much higher.

N. N. Semenov suggested that the oxidation of nitrogen proceeds according to a chain mechanism, in which active roles are played by the free O and N atoms

$$O + N_2 \underset{k_3}{\overset{k_1}{\rightleftarrows}} NO + N - 75.5 \text{ kcal/mole}, \tag{6.38}$$

$$N + O_2 \underset{k_4}{\overset{k_2}{\rightleftarrows}} NO + O + 32.5 \text{ kcal/mole}. \tag{6.39}$$

The heats of reaction correspond to the dissociation energies of the N_2 and NO molecules which are equal to 9.74 ev = 225 kcal/mole and 6.5 ev = 150 kcal/mole, respectively*. The overall rate of the process is determined by the first, endothermic reaction, which requires an activation energy of not less than 75.5 kcal/mole. As soon as an N atom is liberated by the exchange $O + N_2 \rightarrow NO + N$, it immediately reacts with the molecular oxygen, restoring the oxygen atom O that had previously disappeared. Therefore, the concentration of O atoms during the reaction remains constant and corresponds to equilibrium with the O_2 molecules; this equilibrium is established faster than that for the oxidation of nitrogen†.

* In [39] the old values of the dissociation energies of N_2 and NO were used, 7.38 ev and 5.3 ev; however, as shown by the calculations presented below (and also by later experiments [40]), the new values of the dissociation energies do not contradict the assumption of a chain mechanism. All the numerical values of the constants in the subsequent presentation correspond to the later dissociation energies.

† Since the oxygen atoms are in equilibrium with O_2 molecules, the mechanism of dissociation of O_2 does not affect the progress of the oxidation of nitrogen.

Denoting the rate constants as in (6.38) and (6.39), we can write the general rate equations

$$\frac{d\,\mathrm{NO}}{dt} = k_1 \cdot \mathrm{O} \cdot \mathrm{N_2} + k_2 \cdot \mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{O_2} - k_3 \cdot \mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{NO} - k_4 \cdot \mathrm{O} \cdot \mathrm{NO}, \quad (6.40)$$

$$\frac{d\,\mathrm{O}}{dt} = -\frac{d\,\mathrm{N}}{dt} = -k_1 \cdot \mathrm{O} \cdot \mathrm{N_2} + k_2 \cdot \mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{O_2} + k_3 \cdot \mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{NO} - k_4 \cdot \mathrm{O} \cdot \mathrm{NO}. \quad (6.41)$$

By virtue of the fact that the concentration of O is constant, we can equate the right-hand side of (6.41) to zero, express the concentration of N in terms of O, and substitute the resulting expression into (6.40). This yields

$$\frac{d\,\mathrm{NO}}{dt} = 2\frac{\mathrm{O}}{k_2 \cdot \mathrm{O_2} + k_3 \cdot \mathrm{NO}}(k_1 \cdot k_2 \cdot \mathrm{N_2} \cdot \mathrm{O_2} - k_3 \cdot k_4 \cdot \mathrm{NO}^2). \quad (6.42)$$

Let us rearrange some of the equations. The constants k_3 and k_2 determine the rates of the exothermic reactions between an atom and a molecule, and are, most probably, of the same order. Since the concentration of NO is much smaller than that of O_2, we can neglect the term $k_3 \cdot \mathrm{NO}$ in the denominator of (6.42). The concentration of O atoms can be expressed in terms of the equilibrium constant $O_2 \rightleftarrows 2O$, which will be denoted by C_0 :

$$\mathrm{O} = C_0 \mathrm{O_2^{1/2}} = 6.6 \cdot 10^{12} e^{-61{,}000/\mathscr{R}T} \mathrm{O_2^{1/2}}. \quad (6.43)$$

Here, as well as in the subsequent discussion, all the numerical values of the equilibrium constants and of the reaction rate constants correspond to concentrations expressed in molecules/cm^3. The energies are given in cal/mole. The gas constant $\mathscr{R} = 2$ cal/mole·deg. The rate constants are connected by the principle of detailed balancing, and we have*

$$C_1 = \frac{(\mathrm{NO})(\mathrm{N})}{(\mathrm{N_2})(\mathrm{O})} = \frac{k_1}{k_3} = \frac{32}{9} e^{-75{,}500/\mathscr{R}T},$$

$$C_2 = \frac{(\mathrm{NO})(\mathrm{O})}{(\mathrm{O_2})(\mathrm{N})} = \frac{k_2}{k_4} = 6\, e^{32{,}500/\mathscr{R}T}.$$

From this we get the following identity:

$$C_1 C_2 = \frac{k_1 k_2}{k_3 k_4} = \frac{(\mathrm{NO})^2}{(\mathrm{N_2})(\mathrm{O_2})} = C^2 = \frac{64}{3} e^{-43{,}000/\mathscr{R}T}. \quad (6.44)$$

* The pre-exponential factors in the equilibrium constants C_1, C_2, and C are calculated by assuming that the masses of N and O atoms, their moments of inertia, and the frequencies of N_2, O_2, and NO are approximately equal, taking into account the different symmetries and multiplicities of the terms. This approximation is sufficiently accurate.

Factoring out k_3k_4 in (6.42) and using (6.44), we finally obtain the rate equation for the oxidation of nitrogen

$$\frac{d\,\mathrm{NO}}{dt} = k' \cdot \mathrm{N_2} \cdot \mathrm{O_2} - k \cdot \mathrm{NO}^2 = k\{(\mathrm{NO})^2 - \mathrm{NO}^2\}, \qquad (6.45)$$

where the rate constants are

$$k' = \frac{2C_0k_1}{\mathrm{O_2^{1/2}}}, \qquad k = \frac{k'}{C^2} = \frac{2C_0k_1}{C^2\mathrm{O_2^{1/2}}}. \qquad (6.46)$$

In this notation (NO) is the equilibrium value of NO corresponding to the given concentrations O_2 and N_2. Equation (6.45) differs from the usual bimolecular reaction equation in the fact that the rate constants are dependent on the concentration of one of the reactants—molecular oxygen.

The physical meaning of the expression for the rate of oxide formation $k' \cdot \mathrm{N_2} \cdot \mathrm{O_2} = 2C_0k_1\mathrm{N_2} \cdot \mathrm{O_2^{1/2}}$ is very simple: $C_0\mathrm{O_2^{1/2}}$ is the concentration of atomic oxygen and $k_1C_0\mathrm{O_2^{1/2}} \cdot \mathrm{N_2}$ is the rate of the first reaction in the chain; however, since the second reaction is exothermic it follows the first one "instantaneously", so that each event in the first reaction which "leads" the process results in the formation of two NO molecules. Factoring out $e^{-E_1/\mathscr{R}T}$ in the rate constant k_1 and noting that according to (6.43) $C_0 \sim e^{-61{,}000/\mathscr{R}T}$, it may be seen that the activation energy E' for the formation of nitric oxide ($k' \sim e^{-E'/\mathscr{R}T}$) is composed of the energy necessary for the formation of one oxygen atom -61 kcal/mole*, and the activation energy for the reaction between an oxygen atom and a nitrogen molecule $-E_1$.

In the experiments described in [39], nitric oxide was obtained by exploding a combustible mixture containing oxygen and nitrogen. The amount of oxide formed was measured after the explosion products cooled. The activation energy for the formation of the oxide $E' = 125 \pm 10$ kcal/mole and the absolute value of the rate constant in the investigated temperature range of 2000–3000°K were derived from the theory of the reaction kinetics of the cooling process. It was also noted that the higher value of the activation energy, that is, $E' = 125 + 10$, is the more probable one. This yielded an activation energy for the first reaction in the chain, $\mathrm{O} + \mathrm{N_2} \rightarrow \mathrm{NO} + \mathrm{N}$ of $E_1 = 135 - 61 = 74$ kcal/mole, which agrees with the heat of the endothermic reaction. This means that the reverse reaction $\mathrm{N} + \mathrm{NO} \rightarrow \mathrm{O} + \mathrm{N_2}$ proceeds practically without activation (or with a very low activation energy), which is typical for an exothermic reaction between a free atom and a molecule. The asbolute values of the rate constants derived from the experimental data are

$$k' = \frac{1.1 \cdot 10^3}{\mathrm{O_2^{1/2}}}\, e^{-135{,}000/\mathscr{R}T}, \qquad k = \frac{53}{\mathrm{O_2^{1/2}}}\, e^{-92{,}000/\mathscr{R}T}\ \frac{\mathrm{cm}^3}{\mathrm{sec}} \quad (\mathrm{O_2}\ \text{is in}\ \mathrm{cm}^{-3}). \qquad (6.47)$$

* This value is valid for temperatures of the order of 2000–5000°K; it differs slightly from the formation energy at absolute zero, which is -58.5 kcal/mole.

The rate constant for the first reaction in the chain is $k_1 = 8.3 \cdot 10^{-11} \times e^{-74{,}000/\mathscr{R}T}$. Comparison of this value with (6.35) of the collision theory gives a steric factor $P = 0.086$ (if we take the effective diameter $d_{12} = 3.75 \cdot 10^{-8}$ cm to be equal to the diameter of the N_2 molecule, as determined from data on viscosity). This value of P appears to be entirely reasonable.

A later investigation of the kinetics of formation of nitric oxide was carried out by Glick *et al.* [40] with the aid of a shock tube, in which a gas mixture containing nitrogen and oxygen was heated by a shock wave to a temperature of 2000–3000°K. These authors found the activation energy to be $E' = 135 \pm 5$ kcal/mole ($E_1 = 74 \pm 5$ kcal/mole), which is in good agreement with the data of [39] and confirms the agreement of the activation energy E_1 of the first reaction in the chain with the heat of reaction. Absolute values of the rate constant were also found to be close to the values given in the first reference.

It is evident from (6.47) that the activation energy for the decomposition of nitric oxide is also quite large, $E = E' - 43 = 92$ kcal/mole, and that the oxide decomposes very slowly at low temperatures. As a result, nitric oxide which formed in air at high temperatures is retained for a long time after the air is cooled, so that its concentration considerably exceeds the equilibrium value, which is very low at low temperatures (this effect is called "freezing"; we shall return to it in §5 of Chapter VIII). As is apparent from the rate equation (6.45), and (6.44) and (6.47), the relaxation time required to establish an equilibrium concentration of the oxide is*

$$\tau = \frac{1}{2k(\mathrm{NO})} = \frac{0.95 \cdot 10^{-2} \mathrm{O}_2^{1/2}}{(\mathrm{NO})} e^{92{,}000/\mathscr{R}T} = \frac{2.06 \cdot 10^{-3}}{\mathrm{N}_2^{1/2}} e^{113{,}500/\mathscr{R}T} \text{ sec}, \tag{6.48}$$

with (NO) the equilibrium value of NO. The relaxation time decreases rapidly with increasing temperature. Given below are several values for air at standard density ($N_2 = 2.1 \cdot 10^{19}$ molecules/cm^3):

T, °K	1000	1700	2000	2300	2600	3000	4000
τ, sec	$2.2 \cdot 10^{12}$	140	1	$5.3 \cdot 10^{-3}$	$1.4 \cdot 10^{-3}$	$7.8 \cdot 10^{-5}$	$7.2 \cdot 10^{-7}$

§9. Rate of formation of nitrogen dioxide at high temperatures

Since the formation of nitrogen dioxide from nitric oxide

$$2\,\mathrm{NO} + \mathrm{O}_2 = 2\,\mathrm{NO}_2 + 25.6 \text{ kcal/mole} \tag{6.49}$$

* According to the definition of relaxation time given by (6.2), when NO differs only slightly from (NO) we have $\{(\mathrm{NO})^2 - \mathrm{NO}^2\} \approx 2(\mathrm{NO}) \cdot \{(\mathrm{NO}) - \mathrm{NO}\}$, from which (6.48) follows. The time τ characterizes not only the approach to equilibrium, but the process of reaching equilibrium in general, even if no oxide was present initially.

is exothermic, the equilibrium shifts in the direction of oxidation of the oxide with a decrease in temperature. This reaction has wide industrial application and has been well studied experimentally at temperatures below 1000°K. The reaction has a very low, practically undetectable, activation energy and therefore takes place easily at ordinary temperatures. The rate equation for the reaction is

$$\frac{d\,NO_2}{dt} = 2\{k_1' NO^2 \cdot O_2 - k_2' NO_2^2\} = 2k_2'\{(NO_2)^2 - NO_2^2\}. \quad (6.50)$$

Here again (NO_2) is the equilibrium value of NO_2. The reaction rate constants describe a number of reaction events; the factor of 2 takes into account the fact that two NO_2 molecules are either formed or disappear during each reaction event. The relaxation time for establishing chemical equilibrium of the nitrogen dioxide with the oxide and the oxygen is

$$\tau' = \frac{1}{4k_2'(NO_2)} = \frac{C^2}{4k_1'(NO_2)}, \quad (6.51)$$

where $C^2 = (NO_2)^2/NO^2 \cdot O_2$ is the equilibrium constant between the dioxide and the true amounts of the oxide and the oxygen, which may not be at their equilibrium values*. The equilibrium constants can be calculated by the statistical method. After substitution of all the appropriate parameters it is found to be†

$$C = \frac{(NO_2)}{NO \cdot O_2^{1/2}} = \frac{1.25 \cdot 10^{-11}}{T^{\circ\,3/4}} \times \frac{(1 - e^{-2740/T})(1 - e^{-2270/T})^{1/2} e^{6460/T}}{(1 + e^{-174/T})(1 - e^{-916/T})(1 - e^{-1960/T})(1 - e^{-2310/T})}, \quad (6.52)$$

where the temperature is expressed everywhere in degrees and the units of C correspond to the concentrations expressed in number of particles per cm^3.

The rate constant k_1' was calculated in [38] by the activated complex method; it was found to be in good agreement with the experimental values of M. Bodenstein and his associates [44], who investigated the reaction rate in the temperature range between 353 and 845°K. Comparison shows that the reaction takes place without activation energy. The equation for the rate constant k_1' derived in [38] can also be used for estimating both the rate and the relaxation time at high temperatures that have not been investigated experimentally. The

* We note that the time τ' characterizes the relaxation only under the condition $(NO_2) \ll NO$, i.e., at sufficiently high temperatures. In the opposite case it is also necessary to consider simultaneously the change in the concentration of NO.

† It was noted by one of the authors [41] that the equilibrium constant quoted in the widely used handbook [42] was taken from [43], in which an incorrect value 2.42 times larger than the true value was given.

calculated relaxation times for the formation of nitrogen dioxide in high-temperature air at several temperatures and several values of density are presented in Table 6.3 (the equilibrium concentrations of (NO_2) have been calculated on the basis of equilibrium values of the oxide (NO) and oxygen (O_2) concentrations).

Table 6.3

RELAXATION TIMES FOR ESTABLISHING EQUILIBRIUM CONCENTRATION OF NITROGEN DIOXIDE IN AIR, IN SEC (τ' DENOTES A TERMOLECULAR REACTION AND τ'' A BIMOLECULAR ONE)

T, °K	ρ/ρ_{stand}					
	10		5		1	
	τ'	τ''	τ'	τ''	τ'	τ''
1600			$8.0 \cdot 10^{-3}$	$3.5 \cdot 10^{-1}$	$0.9 \cdot 10^{-1}$	$6.9 \cdot 10^{-1}$
1800			$3.5 \cdot 10^{-3}$	$3.9 \cdot 10^{-2}$	$0.4 \cdot 10^{-1}$	$0.9 \cdot 10^{-1}$
2000	$6.75 \cdot 10^{-4}$	$3.1 \cdot 10^{-3}$	$1.95 \cdot 10^{-3}$	$4.5 \cdot 10^{-3}$	$2.2 \cdot 10^{-2}$	$0.1 \cdot 10^{-1}$
2300	$1.42 \cdot 10^{-4}$	$2.7 \cdot 10^{-4}$	$4.0 \cdot 10^{-4}$	$4.0 \cdot 10^{-4}$	$4.5 \cdot 10^{-3}$	$0.9 \cdot 10^{-3}$
2600	$4.75 \cdot 10^{-5}$	$4.4 \cdot 10^{-5}$	$1.35 \cdot 10^{-4}$	$6.3 \cdot 10^{-5}$	$1.5 \cdot 10^{-3}$	$1.4 \cdot 10^{-4}$
3000	$1.75 \cdot 10^{-5}$	$6.6 \cdot 10^{-6}$	$4.75 \cdot 10^{-5}$	$9.4 \cdot 10^{-6}$	$5.5 \cdot 10^{-4}$	$2.1 \cdot 10^{-5}$
4000	$2.50 \cdot 10^{-8}$	$2.8 \cdot 10^{-7}$	$7.5 \cdot 10^{-8}$	$4.0 \cdot 10^{-7}$	$1.05 \cdot 10^{-6}$	$1.0 \cdot 10^{-6}$

At high temperatures, and especially at low densities, another mechanism for the formation of nitrogen dioxide, namely

$$NO + O_2 + 45 \frac{\text{kcal}}{\text{mole}} = NO_2 + O, \tag{6.53}$$

competes with the termolecular reaction (6.49). In spite of the fact that this reaction is endothermic, it has an advantage over the reaction given by (6.49) through the fact it occurs by binary, rather than three-body molecular collisions. This advantage should manifest itself at high temperatures where the activation conditions are favorable. Reaction (6.53) has not been subjected to any experimental studies; a theoretical estimate of its rate was given by one of the present authors in [41].

The rate equation for the reaction (6.53) can be written as

$$\frac{d\,NO_2}{dt} = k_1'' \cdot NO \cdot O_2 - k_2'' NO_2 \cdot O = k_2'' \cdot O\{(NO_2) - NO_2\}. \tag{6.54}$$

The relaxation time is

$$\tau'' = \frac{1}{k_2'' \cdot O}. \tag{6.55}$$

Let us estimate the rate constant by the activated complex method, the basic details of which were presented in §7. In particular, this estimate can serve as an illustration of a concrete application of the method. For convenience we shall consider the reverse reaction $NO_2 + O \rightarrow NO_3^* \rightarrow NO + O_2$, where the asterisk denotes the complex. From the general relation (6.36) the rate constant k_2'' is

$$k_2'' = \kappa \frac{kT}{h} \frac{Z^*_{NO_3}}{Z_{NO_2} \cdot Z_O}.$$

The partition functions for the O atoms and NO_2 molecules can be calculated without difficulty, since the spectroscopic constants for the NO_2 molecules are known. The complex, however, contains a large number of unknown quantities that must be chosen in a reasonable manner to carry out the estimate.

The mass of the NO_3^* complex is 1.39 times greater than the mass of the NO_2 molecule. Assuming that its dimensions somewhat exceed the dimensions of the NO_2 molecule, we assume that the average moment of inertia of the complex is 1.5 times greater than the average moment of inertia of the NO_2 molecule. The natural frequencies of the NO_3 molecule, which would be used to estimate the frequencies of the complex, are not known. We can only expect that the three highest frequencies are lower than the frequencies of the NO_2 molecule: $h\nu_{NO_2}/k = 960$, 1960, 2310°K, since the bonds in the complex are weaker. It can be easily checked that the rate constant at temperatures of 2000–4000°K is not very sensitive to the frequencies selected for the complex as long as they are taken to be within a reasonable range. For purposes of calculation let us consider the following five frequencies: $h\nu/k = 600$, 800, 900, 1500, and 2000°K (the sixth frequency is excluded from Z^*). The complex is not symmetric, so that the symmetry factor $\sigma = 1$. The statistical weight of the electronic state is $g^* \geqslant 2$, since the complex contains one unpaired electron. Let us set $g^* = 2$. The activation energy for the exothermic reaction $NO_2 + O \rightarrow NO + O_2$ is, apparently, very small, as is usual when one of the reactants is a free atom. As an estimate take $E = 10$ kcal/mole, which, at worst, can lower the estimate of the reaction rate by a factor of 2–3 at temperatures of 2000–4000°K. Substituting these as well as the other known constants into the expressions for the partition functions, and taking the transmission coefficient κ equal to unity, we obtain the rate constant

$$k_2'' = \frac{1.16 \cdot 10^{-12}}{T^{\circ 1/2}} \frac{\prod_{i=1}^{5} Z^*_{\text{vib}\,i}}{\prod_{i=1}^{3} Z_{\text{vib}\,NO_2\,i}} e^{-5030/T} \text{ cm}^3/\text{sec}, \qquad (6.56)$$

where the vibrational partition function is given by $Z_{\text{vib}} = (1 - e^{h\nu/kT})$. In order to obtain a rate constant from the collision theory (see (6.35)) of the same order as that given by (6.56), we would have to assume that the steric factor P is of the order of $2 \cdot 10^{-4}$. To choose such a low value without any apparent justification would be quite difficult, so that in this case the collision theory is practically useless and the reaction rate can be estimated only by using the activated complex method.

The relaxation times for air calculated from (6.55) and (6.56) are also presented in Table 6.3. Comparison of these relaxation times shows that at air densities of the order of or less than standard density, and at temperatures of $\sim$2000–3000°K, the second reaction proceeds more rapidly and can thus be considered to be the principal reaction.

2. *Ionization and recombination. Electronic excitation and deexcitation*

§10. Basic mechanisms

Excitation of the higher electronic states in atoms (molecules, ions) and ionization have very much in common. Essentially, ionization is a limiting case of electronic excitation, when a bound electron in an atom acquires sufficient energy to leave the atom and pass into the continuous spectrum. If sufficient energy is available, each of the elementary processes resulting in the excitation of electrons in atoms can also result in ionization.

All the elementary excitation and ionization processes can be divided into two categories: excitation and ionization of atoms (molecules, ions) caused by collisions with particles, and photoprocesses, in which the role of one of the "particles" is played by a photon. In the first category we must distinguish between ionization and excitation by electron impact and by inelastic collisions of heavy particles; this distinction is necessary since the probability of each type of collision is very different. According to this classification we can denote the basic ionization reactions in the following symbolic form (A and B are the heavy particles, e are the electrons, and $h\nu$ are the photons)

$$A + e = A^+ + e + e, \tag{6.57}$$

$$A + B = A^+ + B + e, \tag{6.58}$$

$$A + h\nu = A^+ + e. \tag{6.59}$$

The reverse processes, proceeding from right to left, result in recombination of electrons with ions: the first two represent recombinations by three-body

collisions with the participation of an electron or a heavy particle as the third body, and the last reaction is photorecombination or radiative capture of electrons.

Each of the processes (6.57)–(6.59) corresponds to an excitation process (an excited atom is denoted by an asterisk and the negative charge on e is omitted)

$$A + e = A^* + e, \tag{6.60}$$

$$A + B = A^* + B, \tag{6.61}$$

$$A + h\nu = A^*. \tag{6.62}$$

The first two reverse processes represent deexcitation of excited atoms by so-called collisions of the second kind, and the third represents spontaneous emission of an excited atom.

The atoms which are ionized may be not only those in the ground state, but also excited atoms, so that to the list of reactions (6.57)–(6.59) we must also add reactions of the type

$$A^* + e = A^+ + e + e, \tag{6.63}$$

$$A^* + B = A^+ + B + e, \tag{6.64}$$

$$A^* + h\nu = A^+ + e. \tag{6.65}$$

The same is true with respect to the excitation processes; to the list of reactions (6.60)–(6.62) we must add the reactions resulting in an increase in the degree of excitation

$$A^* + e = A^{**} + e, \tag{6.66}$$

$$A^* + B = A^{**} + B, \tag{6.67}$$

$$A^* + h\nu = A^{**}. \tag{6.68}$$

In spite of the fact that the number of excited atoms is usually appreciably smaller than the number of atoms in the ground state, the role of ionization of excited atoms is not insignificant, since the ionization of excited atoms is caused by collisions with particles of lower energies. Indeed, the number of particles capable of ionizing an unexcited atom is proportional to $e^{-I/kT}$ where I is the ionization potential. However, the number of ionization events for atoms excited to the level E^* is also proportional to $e^{-E^*/kT}e^{-(I-E^*)/kT} = e^{-I/kT}$, since the number of excited atoms is proportional to the first factor in this expression, and the number of particles capable of ionizing the excited atoms is proportional to the second factor. The relative importance of ionization of excited and unexcited atoms under conditions of equilibrium excitation is determined principally by the ionization cross sections for the two types of atoms in collisions with particles whose energy is higher than the threshold energy.

Generally speaking, processes of all three types occur simultaneously in a gas. Quite frequently, however, one of the processes is found to be dominant. For energies of the order of excitation or ionization potentials of the atom, that is, of the order of several or 10 electron volts, the cross sections for inelastic collisions of heavy particles are several orders of magnitude smaller than the cross sections for inelastic electron impacts. In addition, the velocities of the heavy particles with comparable energies are approximately a hundred times smaller than the electron velocities (in the ratio of the square roots of their masses). Therefore, processes of the type (6.58) and (6.61) in a high-temperature gas are important only if free electrons are practically absent. When the degree of ionization is of the order of 10^{-5}–10^{-4} or higher, the rates of processes of the first type (6.57) and (6.60) are greater than the rates of processes with the participation of heavy particles, and the role of the latter is negligibly small. If the gas is "instantaneously" heated, as sometimes occurs, for example, during the passage of a strong shock wave, ionization by atom or molecular collisions is of importance only for the formation of a small number of initially free "priming" electrons. In some cases the initial ionization in an "instantaneously" heated gas is created by a sufficiently intense radiation flux or by rapidly moving electrons which are supplied from the outside, from previously heated regions; these mechanisms eliminate even the "priming" role of the second process.

The comparative role of the first and third processes depends on the macroscopic conditions in a more complicated manner. The number of ionization events caused by electron impacts per unit time per unit volume is proportional to the electron density, while the number of photoionization events is proportional to the radiation density. If the dimensions of the region occupied by the heated gas are sufficiently large in comparison with the photon mean free paths, so that the radiation density is appreciable (of the order of the equilibrium density), then the radiation will be independent of the gas density and will depend only on the temperature. In this case the rate of ionization by electron impact in a sufficiently rarefied gas is found to be small and the dominant role is played by photoionization. The same is true of the excitation processes and also of the reverse processes, such as recombination and deexcitation: photorecombination dominates over recombination by three-body collisions, and spontaneous emission of excited atoms dominates over the deexcitation of atoms excited by collisions of the second kind. This is precisely the situation observed, for example, in stellar photospheres.

If the region occupied by the heated gas is bounded and transparent ("optically thin"), then the photons radiated in the gas are not captured but leave the heated volume, and the radiation density in the gas is less than its equilibrium value. Under these conditions, even if the electron density is low, the rate of ionization by electron impact can turn out to be higher than the photoionization rate; the ratio of the rates of the inverse recombination

processes can remain the same as before, so that photorecombination can still dominate.

In a sufficiently dense ionized gas, photoionization and photorecombination are of secondary importance in comparison with processes (6.57) and (6.63). Actually, the ionization and recombination processes most often take place in a more complicated manner than indicated by the simple reactions (6.57)–(6.59). So-called step-wise ionization takes place, in which the atom is first excited, let us say, by electron impact, and then it is either immediately ionized by succeeding electron impacts, or first passes through several stages during which its degree of excitation increases. The reverse process of recombination by three-body collisions also frequently takes place in a complex manner. The electron is captured by an ion into an excited atomic level, and then the atom is deexcited in stages; there are competing deexcitation mechanisms, electron collisions of the second kind and spontaneous radiative transitions between the levels.

In a molecular gas in which the atoms and molecules have ionization potentials not much greater than the dissociation energies, ionization begins long before dissociation ends, so that there is a temperature range in which there are appreciable concentrations of both electrons and molecules simultaneously. As an example we can cite air at temperatures of the order of 7000–15,000°K, which are in a range important for practical applications. In this case, the above ionization processes are accompanied by more complex processes, the most important of which is the recombination of atoms into a molecule with simultaneous ionization (associative ionization). From an energy point of view this process has an advantage over the others in the fact that it requires the expenditure of less energy than the ionization potential by an amount equal to the dissociation energy. At comparatively low temperatures and small degrees of ionization, the most important role in the ionization of air can be attributed to the reaction

$$N + O + 2.8 \text{ ev} = NO^+ + e, \tag{6.69}$$

which proceeds faster by several orders of magnitude than the simple ionization of NO caused by atomic or molecular collisions*. An important role in the recombination of electrons with ions in molecular gases is played by the so-called dissociative recombination. In particular, the following processes take place in air:

$$\begin{aligned} e + O_2^+ &\rightarrow O^* + O^* + 6.9 \text{ ev}, \\ e + N_2^+ &\rightarrow N^* + N^* + 5.8 \text{ ev}, \\ e + NO^+ &\rightarrow N^* + O^* + 2.8 \text{ ev}. \end{aligned} \tag{6.70}$$

* At comparatively low air temperatures the main supply of free electrons is provided by the NO molecules with an ionization potential $I_{NO} = 9.25$ ev, which is lower than those of all the other constituents of air ($I_{O_2} = 12.15$ ev, $I_{N_2} = 15.56$ ev, $I_O = 13.57$ ev, $I_N = 14.6$ ev, and $I_{Ar} = 15.8$ ev).

Dissociative recombination results in the formation of excited atoms. The liberated binding energy of the electron is partly used up in the dissociation of the molecule, while the remainder goes into exciting the atoms and into kinetic energy.

If the gas contains atoms or molecules with electron affinity (for example, H, O, O_2, Cl, Br, I, and others), then negative ions are formed at comparatively low temperatures. The formation of these negative ions has an appreciable effect on the rates of formation and disappearance of free electrons. In addition to reactions of the types (6.57)–(6.59), in which A and A^+ are replaced by A^- and A, respectively, there can also take place more complicated but energetically more advantageous reactions of the type (6.69). For example, in air there are the exothermic reactions

$$N + O^- = NO + e + 4 \text{ ev},$$
$$O + O^- = O_2 + e + 3.6 \text{ ev}.$$

A list of the reactions taking place in air which lead to the formation and disappearance of free electrons and also to charge exchange, along with the respective energy yields, is given in [73].

§11. Ionization of unexcited atoms by electron impact

Let us examine the single ionization process in a gas consisting of identical atoms. We assume that all atoms are ionized from the ground state and also that in the process of recombination (the reaction (6.57)) an electron is captured in the ground level. The ionization cross section for the collisions depends on the relative velocities of the colliding particles. Since the velocities of the atoms at comparable atom and electron temperatures are always considerably lower than the electron velocities, the relative velocities are approximately the same as those of the electrons; the reduced mass, which characterizes the kinetic energy of the relative motion, then is approximately the same as the electron mass.

If N_a and N_e are the atom and electron number densities, respectively, $f_e(v)\,dv$ is the Maxwell velocity distribution function for the electrons which corresponds to the electron temperature* T_e $\left(\int_0^\infty f_e(v)\,dv = 1\right)$, and $\sigma_e(v)$ is the ionization cross section for electron impact, then the number of ionization events per unit volume per unit time is

$$Z^e_{\text{ion}} = N_a N_e \int_{v_k}^{\infty} \sigma_e(v) v f_e(v)\,dv = N_a N_e \alpha_e, \tag{6.71}$$

* As a result of the great difference between the masses of the electrons and the atoms, energy exchange between electrons and heavy particles during elastic collisions takes place quite slowly. Therefore, the electron temperature can in general differ from the translational temperature of the heavy particles (see Part 3 of this chapter).

where the integration extends over electron velocities whose energy exceeds the ionization potential: $m_e v_k^2/2 = I$. Denoting the recombination rate constant by β_e, we can write down the rate equation for the reaction (6.57)

$$\frac{dN_e}{dt} = \alpha_e N_a N_e - \beta_e N_+ N_e^2, \tag{6.72}$$

where the number of ions N_+ is equal to the number of electrons N_e. The rate constants α_e and β_e are related by the principle of detailed balancing

$$\beta_e = \frac{\alpha_e}{K(T_e)}, \tag{6.73}$$

where the equilibrium constant is determined by the Saha equation (3.44):

$$K(T_e) = \frac{(N_e)(N_+)}{(N_a)} = \frac{g_+}{g_a} \frac{2(2\pi m_e k T_e)^{3/2}}{h^3} e^{-I/kT_e}$$

$$= 4.85 \cdot 10^{15} \frac{g_+}{g_a} T^{\circ\, 3/2} e^{-I/kT} \text{ cm}^{-3}. \tag{6.73'}$$

The number of recombinations per unit volume per unit time is sometimes expressed in the form $Z_{\text{rec}} = b_e N_+ N_e$. The quantity $b_e = \beta_e N_e$ is called the recombination coefficient. The dimensions of b_e are cm^3/sec, which are the same as the dimensions of the ionization rate constant α_e.

If the electron (and ion) concentration is much smaller than its equilibrium value, then recombination is unimportant and the development of ionization by electron impact has the character of an electron avalanche: if we assume that the electron temperature is independent of time, then the electron concentration increases exponentially with time $N_e = N_e^0 e^{t/\tau_e}$. Here N_e^0 is the initial electron number density, and the time scale for the avalanche is approximately (for $N_a \approx const$) given by*

$$\tau_e = \frac{1}{\alpha_e N_a}. \tag{6.74}$$

It can easily be shown that the quantity τ_e also characterizes the relaxation time for the approach to ionization equilibrium by means of the mechanism

* We would emphasize the fact that the simple exponential dependence of the electron avalanche with the time scale τ_e is valid only for $T_e = const$. Under actual conditions the electron temperature itself may be time-dependent. The point is that for $kT_e \ll I$ the ionization process requires a very large fraction of the thermal energy of the electrons; roughly speaking, the birth of each new electron requires the thermal energy from I/kT_e electrons. If there is no source to compensate for the energy lost by the electron gas in ionization, the electron temperature decreases with time, and the factor $\alpha_e \sim e^{-I/kT_e}$ decreases sharply, with the result that the progress of the avalanche is damped out. The loss of electron energy across a shock front is compensated for by the flow of energy from the atoms (ions) to the electrons. For further details, see §10 of Chapter VII.

(6.57). More precisely, for $|(N_e) - N_e| \ll (N_e)$, the relaxation time according to the general definition (6.2) is smaller than τ_e by a factor of one half.

A typical curve of the dependence of the ionization cross section σ_e on the electron velocity or energy is shown in Fig. 6.4. The cross section increases from the ionization threshold $\varepsilon_e = I$, reaches a maximum at an electron energy several times the threshold energy, and then slowly decreases. As a rule, the

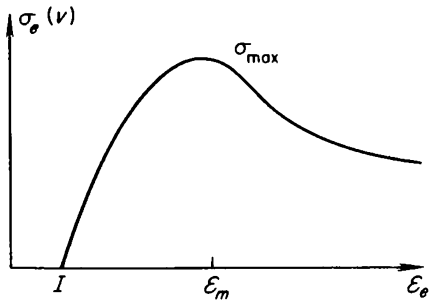


Fig. 6.4. Dependence on the electron energy of the ionization cross section for electron impact.

maximum cross section is of the order of 10^{-16} cm^2. In not too dense a gas ionization usually begins at much lower temperatures than that corresponding to the ionization potential: $I/kT_e \gg 1$. Thus, for example, in atomic hydrogen with $N_a = 10^{19}$ cm^{-3} (which corresponds to a pressure of 135 mm Hg for undissociated molecular hydrogen at room temperature) and $T = 10{,}000$°K, the equilibrium degree of ionization is $6.25 \cdot 10^{-3}$; here $I/kT = 15.7$.

Only those electrons which correspond to the tail of the Maxwell distribution function possess sufficient energy for ionization; the number of such electrons is exponentially small (proportional to $\exp(-m_e v^2/2kT_e) \ll 1$). Therefore, the dominant role in the integral of (6.71) is played by those electrons whose energies only slightly, of the order of kT_e ($kT_e \ll I$), exceed the ionization potential. It has been shown both theoretically and experimentally that the cross section near the threshold depends linearly on the electron energy ε_e, with

$$\sigma_e(v) \approx C(\varepsilon_e - I), \qquad C = const. \tag{6.75}$$

Substituting this quantity into (6.71) and integrating, we find the rate constant for ionization from the ground level of the atoms to be given by

$$\alpha_e = \int_{v_k}^{\infty} \sigma_e(v) v f_e(v)\, dv = \sigma_e \bar{v}_e \left(\frac{I}{kT_e} + 2\right) e^{-I/kT_e}. \tag{6.76}$$

Here

$$\bar{v}_e = \left(\frac{8kT_e}{\pi m_e}\right)^{1/2} = 6.21 \cdot 10^5 (T_e^\circ)^{1/2} = 6.7 \cdot 10^7 (T_{ev})^{1/2} \text{ cm/sec}$$

is the mean thermal speed of the electrons, and σ_e is an average value of the cross section $\sigma_e(v)$, the value which corresponds precisely to the electron energy $\varepsilon_e = I + kT_e$; thus $\sigma_e = CkT_e$.

According to (6.73) and (6.76) the recombination rate constant with capture of an electron into the ground atomic level is

$$\beta_e = \frac{g_a}{g_+}\left(\frac{I}{kT_e} + 2\right)\frac{h^3\sigma_e}{2\pi^2 m_e^2 kT} = 1.1 \cdot 10^{-14} C \frac{g_a}{g_+}\left(\frac{I}{kT_e} + 2\right)\frac{\text{cm}^6}{\text{sec}}. \qquad (6.77)$$

In not too dense a gas, when $I/kT_e \gg 1$ and $\beta_e \sim T_e^{-1}$, the characteristic time τ_e for small degrees of ionization has a temperature dependence given by $\tau_e \sim e^{I/kT_e}$.

Table 6.4

IONIZATION BY ELECTRON IMPACT

Atom, Molecule	I, ev	$C \cdot 10^{17}$, cm²/ev	Region of applicability, ev	ε_{max}, ev	$\sigma_{e\,max} \cdot 10^{16}$, cm²	Reference
H_2	15.4	0.59	16—25	70	1.1	[46]
He	24.5	0.13	24.5—35	100	0.34	[46]
N	14.6	0.59	15—30	~100	~2.1	[47]
N_2	15.6	0.85	16—30	110	3.1	[46]
O	13.6	0.60	14—25	~ 80	~1.5	[48]
O_2	12.1	0.68	13—40	110		[46]
NO	9.3	0.82	10—20	~100	3.25	[49]
Ar	15.8	2.0	15—25	100	3.7	[46]
		1.7	15—18			
Ne	21.5	0.16	21.5—40	~160	0.85	[46]
Hg	10.4	7.9	10.5—13	42	5.4	[46]
Hg		2.7	10.5—28			

In Table 6.4 we have presented experimental data on ionization cross sections by electron impact for some atoms and molecules (for notation, see Fig. 6.4)*. The numerical value of the constant C coincides with the cross section (in cm²) for electron energies exceeding the ionization potential by 1 ev, that is, with an average cross section σ_e at a temperature $T_e = 1$ ev = 11,600°K, which is characteristic of the singly ionized region. As may be seen from the table, the cross section σ_e is of the order of 10^{-17} cm².

In order to get some idea of the orders of magnitude of the quantities involved, let us consider the concrete example of argon at $T_e = 13{,}000$°K

* A detailed survey and analysis of data available in the literature is given in the books by Massey and Burhop [45] and Brown [78]. We also recommend Granovskii's book [46].

and $N_a = 1.7 \cdot 10^{18}\ \mathrm{cm}^{-3}$ (this density corresponds to a pressure of 50 mm Hg at standard temperature). The equilibrium degree of ionization under these conditions is 0.14, $\sigma_e = 2.24 \cdot 10^{-17}\ \mathrm{cm}^2$, $\bar{v}_e = 7.1 \cdot 10^7$ cm/sec; the rate constants are: $\alpha_e = 2 \cdot 10^{-14}\ \mathrm{cm}^3/\mathrm{sec}$, $\beta_e = 5.9 \cdot 10^{-31}\ \mathrm{cm}^6/\mathrm{sec}$ and the characteristic time $\tau_e = 2.9 \cdot 10^{-5}$ sec. At $T_e = 16{,}000°\mathrm{K}$ and the same density, the time τ_e is approximately 1/15 as large, and $\tau_e = 2 \cdot 10^{-6}$ sec.

§12. Excitation of atoms from the ground state by electron impact. Deexcitation

By analogy with our previous discussion we assume for simplicity that the atom has only one excited level E^*, so that the atom can be excited only by transition from the ground state. Let us write the rate equation for excitation

$$\frac{dN^*}{dt} = \alpha_e^* N_a N_e - \beta_e^* N^* N_e . \tag{6.78}$$

Here, α_e^* is the excitation rate constant and β_e^* is the deexcitation rate constant given by $\beta_e^* = \bar{v}_e \sigma_{e2}$, where σ_{e2} is the cross section for electron collisions of the second kind, averaged with respect to the Maxwell distribution. The excitation rate constant is expressed in terms of the excitation cross section $\sigma_e^*(v)$ through exactly the same integral as for α_e (see (6.76)), with the only difference that the lower limit is replaced by the velocity v^* which corresponds to the excitation threshold $m_e v^{*2}/2 = E^*$. The dependence of the cross section $\sigma_e^*(v)$ on velocity or energy (the so-called excitation function) has the same character as that in the ionization curve shown in Fig. 6.4. In exactly the same manner it can be approximated near the threshold by the straight line $\sigma_e^*(v) = C^*(\varepsilon - E^*)$ *. Therefore,

$$\alpha_e^* = \int_{v^*}^{\infty} \sigma_e^*(v) v f_e(v)\, dv = \sigma_e^* \bar{v}_e \left(\frac{E^*}{kT_e} + 2 \right) e^{-E^*/kT} . \tag{6.79}$$

where σ_e^* corresponds to an electron energy of $E^* + kT_e$.

Using the principle of detailed balancing and noting that

$$\frac{(N^*)}{(N_a)} = \frac{g^*}{g_a} e^{-E^*/kT_e} \tag{6.80}$$

(g^* and g_a are the statistical weights of the excited and ground states, respectively), we can relate the rate constants α_e^* and β_e^*, or the excitation and deexcitation cross sections:

$$\sigma_{e2} = \sigma_e^* \frac{g_a}{g^*} \left(\frac{E^*}{kT_e} + 2 \right); \qquad \beta_e^* = \bar{v}_e \sigma_{e2} . \tag{6.81}$$

* This is possible for many but not for all atoms; in any case the approximation results in only a small error. We note that the excitation cross section for positive ions close to the threshold value as $\varepsilon \to E^*$ is different from zero. See article by M. J. Seaton in [83] (Fig. 4, p. 389).

The characteristic time corresponding to excitation by electron impact is the same as the relaxation time required to establish the Boltzmann distribution (6.80) under the condition that $T_e = const$ (see footnote to (6.74)), and is

$$\tau_e^* = \frac{1}{\beta_e^* N_e} = \frac{1}{\bar{v}_e \sigma_{e2} N_e}. \tag{6.82}$$

Data on excitation cross sections have been collected in the books [45, 46, 78]. Some results are presented in Table 6.5. The average excitation cross sections σ_e^* are of the order of 10^{-17} cm^2. This also is the order of magnitude of the cross section for collisions of the second kind σ_{e2} (the factor in parentheses (6.81) is of the order of 10, but the ratio of the statistical weights g_a/g^* is usually ~ 1–10^{-1}).

Table 6.5

IONIZATION BY ELECTRON IMPACT

Atom	Levels	Potential E^*, ev	Interpolation of total cross section σ_e^*, cm^2	Source[a]
H	$2p$	10.1	$25 \cdot 10^{-18}(\varepsilon_{ev} - 10)$	[83]
He	$2s\,^3S$[b]	19.7	$4.6 \cdot 10^{-18}(\varepsilon_{ev} - 20)$	[46]
	$2s\,^1S$	20.6		
Ne	$3s\,^3P_2$	16.6	$1.5 \cdot 10^{-18}(\varepsilon_{ev} - 16)$	[46]
		18.5		
Ar	$4s\,^3P_2$	11.5	$7 \cdot 10^{-18}(\varepsilon_{ev} - 11.5)$	[50]
Hg	$6p\,^3P_1$	4.87	Max. cross section for $\varepsilon = 6.5$ev $\sigma_{max}^* = 1.7 \cdot 10^{-16}$	[46]
H_2		8.7	$7.6 \cdot 10^{-18}(\varepsilon_{ev} - 8.7)$	[78]

[a] Data with the source [46] were taken from tables given in Granovskii's book. References to the original papers can be found in this book.

[b] *Editors' note.* This level has been changed from $2p\,^3P$ to $2s\,^3S$ for consistency with the excitation potential. The error noted appears in the original source [46].

As an example, let us estimate the relaxation time for argon at $T_e = 13{,}000$°K, with $N_a = 1.71 \cdot 10^{18}$ cm^{-3}. The cross sections are $\sigma_e^* = 10^{-17}$ cm^2 and $\sigma_{e2} \sim 10^{-17}$ cm^2. If we take the equilibrium concentration of electrons $(N_e) = 2.4 \cdot 10^{17}$ cm^{-3}, we get $\tau_e^* \approx 6 \cdot 10^{-9}$ sec. This time is considerably less than the ionization time τ_e. It is interesting to compare the characteristic times for ionization and excitation by electron impact. From (6.74) and (6.82) we obtain

$$\frac{\tau_e}{\tau_e^*} = \frac{\bar{v}_e \sigma_{e2} N_e e^{I/kT}}{\bar{v}_e \sigma_e (I/kT + 2) N_a} \approx \frac{1}{10} \frac{N_e}{N_a} e^{I/kT} \qquad \text{when} \quad \frac{I}{kT} \sim 10.$$

Close to equilibrium and with moderate degrees of ionization $N_e/N_a \approx (6 \cdot 10^{21}/N_a)^{1/2} T_{ev}^{3/4} e^{-I/2kT_e}$; the Boltzmann distribution with respect to

excitation at ordinary gas densities is always established faster than is ionization equilibrium. In our example with argon for $N_a = 1.7 \cdot 10^{18}$ cm^{-3} and $T_e = 13{,}000°$K, $\tau_e/\tau_e^* \approx 5000$. The times may turn out to be comparable only at the beginning of the ionization process, when the number of electrons is very much smaller than the equilibrium value.

§13. Ionization of excited atoms by electron impact

Let us consider the ionization of an atom on the basis of classical mechanics, assuming that the collision of a free electron with an atom, or rather a collision with the optical electron of an atom, takes place in a time short in comparison with the period of rotation of a bound electron in its orbit, so that the latter acquires energy from the impact in the same manner as would a free electron. This was first done by Thomson in 1912 (classical formulas for the ionization cross section were used in the study of elementary ionization and recombination processes in a hydrogen plasma in [79, 80], while the Born approximation was used in [81]).

As is known from basic mechanics [82], if an electron with kinetic energy ε passes near another electron, the differential cross section of energy transfer to the "target" electron in the range $\Delta\varepsilon$ to $\Delta\varepsilon + d\Delta\varepsilon$ is $d\sigma = (\pi e^4/\varepsilon) \times [d\Delta\varepsilon/(\Delta\varepsilon)^2]$. The cross section for the transfer of energy exceeding E ($E \leqslant \Delta\varepsilon \leqslant \varepsilon$) is

$$\sigma = \frac{\pi e^4}{\varepsilon}\left(\frac{1}{E} - \frac{1}{\varepsilon}\right).$$

We assume that ionization takes place each time that the impact imparts to the bound electron an amount of energy exceeding the binding energy. Then, if E is the binding energy of the electron in the atom, σ is the ionization cross section. Noting that $e^2 = 2I_{\mathrm{H}}a_0$, where I_{H} is the ionization potential of a hydrogen atom and a_0 is the Bohr radius, we write the ionization cross section in the form

$$\sigma = 4\pi a_0^2 \frac{I_{\mathrm{H}}^2(\varepsilon - E)}{E\varepsilon^2}. \tag{6.83}$$

This equation gives a qualitatively correct description of the dependence of the ionization cross section of an unexcited atom on the energy $\sigma(\varepsilon)$, as depicted in Fig. 6.4, and gives the correct order of magnitude of the cross sections (in the given case $E \equiv I$). Near the threshold, when $\varepsilon \approx E \equiv I$, (6.83) reduces to the linear dependence (6.75) $\sigma \approx C(\varepsilon - I)$, where the slope constant is found to be

$$C = \frac{4\pi^2 a_0^2}{I_{\mathrm{H}}}\left(\frac{I_{\mathrm{H}}}{I}\right)^3 = 2.6 \cdot 10^{-17}\left(\frac{I_{\mathrm{H}}}{I}\right)^3 \frac{\mathrm{cm}^2}{\mathrm{ev}}.$$

For the majority of atoms and molecules the constants C and cross sections near the threshold as calculated on the basis of classical formulas exceed by several-fold the experimental values (see Table 6.4); correct values are obtained in the case of argon.

Equation (6.83) leads to a similitude relationship with respect to n for ionization from the nth level of a hydrogen atom. For a hydrogen atom $E_n = I_H/n^2$ and

$$\sigma_n(\varepsilon) = 4\pi a_0^2 I_H n^4 \frac{(n^2\varepsilon - I_H)}{(n^2\varepsilon)^2} = n^4\sigma_1(n^2\varepsilon).$$

It is interesting that the quantum-mechanical formulas based on the Born approximation, in the case of the ionization of excited hydrogen atoms, lead to a similar, but slightly different similitude relationship $\sigma_n(\varepsilon) = n^3\sigma_1(n^2\varepsilon)$ [81]. However, we are most justified in considering the ionization of excited atoms on the basis of the classical theory.

We now calculate the ionization rate of the excited atoms. If N_n is the number of atoms per unit volume which are in the nth quantum state, and $f(\varepsilon)\,d\varepsilon$ is the Maxwell distribution function for the electrons normalized to unity, then the number of ionizations of these atoms per unit volume per unit time is

$$Z_{\text{ion},n} = N_n N_e \int_{E_n}^{\infty} \sigma(\varepsilon) v_e f(\varepsilon)\,d\varepsilon = \alpha_n N_n N_e. \tag{6.84}$$

Substituting the cross section (6.83), we find the ionization rate constant

$$\alpha_n = 4\pi a_0^2 \bar{v}_e \left(\frac{I_H}{kT}\right)^2 \psi_n, \qquad \bar{v}_e = \left(\frac{8kT}{\pi m}\right)^{1/2};$$

$$\psi_n = \int_{x_n}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{x_n} - \frac{1}{x'}\right) e^{-x'}\,dx' = \frac{e^{-x_n}}{x_n} - E_1(x_n); \qquad x_n = E_n/kT \tag{6.85}$$

(we note that the number "n" in this equation is for the present still only a subscript, so that (6.85) can be applied to any atom in any state). When $x_n \gg 1$, we have approximately

$$E_1(x) \approx \frac{e^{-x}}{x}\left(1 - \frac{1}{x}\right), \qquad \psi_n \approx \frac{e^{-x_n}}{x_n^2};$$

$$\alpha_n = 4\pi a_0^2 \bar{v}_e \left(\frac{I_H}{E_n}\right)^2 e^{-E_n/kT} = 2.2 \cdot 10^{-10} T^{\circ 1/2} \left(\frac{I_H}{E_n}\right)^2 e^{-E_n/kT} \frac{\text{cm}^3}{\text{sec}}. \tag{6.86}$$

(If $E_n = I$, we obtain (6.76), with the factor 2 dropped in comparison with $I/kT \gg 1$.)

In order to compare the rates of ionization of excited and unexcited atoms, we must make some assumption with respect to the number of excited atoms. We assume that the gas is close to thermodynamic equilibrium and that the excited states have a Boltzmann distribution. In addition, we consider hydrogen atoms. Then,

$$E_n = I_H/n^2, \qquad N_n = n^2 e^{-(x_1 - x_n)} N_1,$$

$$\frac{Z_{\text{ion},n}}{Z_{\text{ion},1}} = \frac{\alpha_n N_n}{\alpha_1 N_1} = n^2 e^{-(x_1 - x_n)} \frac{\psi_n}{\psi_1}.$$

We can always take $x_1 \gg 1$. If x_n is also large (low-lying levels and low temperatures), then

$$\frac{Z_{\text{ion},n}}{Z_{\text{ion},1}} \approx n^2 \left(\frac{x_1}{x_n}\right)^2 \approx n^6 \gg 1.$$

For the upper levels with binding energies $E_n \sim kT$ and $x_n \sim 1$, we can set approximately $\psi_n = \frac{2}{5} e^{-x_n}/x_n$ [80]. In this case

$$\alpha_n \approx 4\pi a_0^2 \bar{v}_e \frac{2}{5}\left(\frac{I_H}{kT}\right) n^2 e^{-E_n/kT}$$

$$\approx 1.4 \cdot 10^{-4} n^2 T^{\circ -1/2} e^{-E_n/kT} \frac{\text{cm}^3}{\text{sec}} \qquad (E_n \sim kT). \tag{6.86'}$$

Then the ratio of ionization rates is

$$\frac{Z_{\text{ion},n}}{Z_{\text{ion},1}} \approx \frac{2}{5} \frac{x_1^2}{x_n} n^2 \approx \frac{2}{5}\left(\frac{I_H}{kT}\right) n^4 \gg 1.$$

Thus, when the levels have a Boltzmann distribution, the atoms are ionized by electron impacts primarily from the upper levels, in which case the role of the excited states is more important, the higher is the degree of excitation. In drawing conclusions about relative roles of the ionization of unexcited and excited atoms under highly nonequilibrium conditions we must be very careful, since the upper levels may be found to be quite depleted in comparison with the equilibrium distribution. We shall return to the problem of electron-impact ionization in Chapter VII, where we consider the ionization of a gas in a shock wave.

Let us find the rate of electron capture by ions into excited atomic levels by three-body collisions, with the electron playing the role of the third body. The number of captures into the nth level per unit of volume per unit time is $Z_{\text{rec},n} = \beta_n N_e^2 N_+$. According to the principle of detailed balancing, for thermodynamic equilibrium $Z_{\text{rec},n} = Z_{\text{ion},n}$, so that

$$\beta_n = \alpha_n \frac{(N_n)}{(N_e)(N_+)}.$$

The Saha equation together with the Boltzmann law gives

$$\frac{(N_e)(N_+)}{(N_n)} = \frac{2g_+}{g_n}\left(\frac{2\pi mkT}{h^2}\right)e^{-E_n/kT}. \tag{6.87}$$

Substituting α_n from (6.85), we obtain the capture rate constant. For a hydrogen-like atom ($g_+ = 1$, $g_n = 2n^2$)

$$\beta_n = \frac{4}{\pi}\frac{a_0^2 h^3}{m^2 kT}\left(\frac{I_H}{kT}\right)^2 n^2 \psi_n e^{x_n}$$

$$= 0.91 \cdot 10^{-25}\frac{n^2}{T^\circ}\left(\frac{I_H}{kT}\right)^2 \psi_n e^{x_n}\frac{\text{cm}^6}{\text{sec}}. \tag{6.88}$$

If $x_n \gg 1$ (capture into low levels and low temperatures)

$$\psi_n e^{x_n} \approx x_n^{-2}, \qquad \beta_n \approx 0.91 \cdot 10^{-25} n^6/T^\circ \text{ cm}^6/\text{sec}.$$

For captures into high levels with $E_n \sim kT$,

$$\psi_n e^{x_n} \approx \frac{2}{5}x_n^{-1},$$

$$\beta_n \approx \frac{0.36 \cdot 10^{-25} n^4}{T^\circ}\frac{I_H}{kT} = \frac{5.65 \cdot 10^{-21} n^4}{T^{\circ 2}}\frac{\text{cm}^6}{\text{sec}}. \tag{6.88'}$$

It can be seen from these equations that captures into the upper levels are much more frequent than into the lower levels; the probability of capture increases very rapidly with an increase in the quantum number n. Physically this is simply a result of increasing the radius and area of the orbit of the bound electron with the increase in n (the orbit area is proportional to n^4). We here use the term "capture" rather than "recombination" on purpose, since capture into an upper level, in general, is not always equivalent to recombination—it is easy to remove an electron from the upper levels. We shall return to the problem of recombination by three-body collisions in §17.

Let us discuss briefly the problem of ionization of ions. The cross section relation (6.83) applied to the ionization of hydrogen-like ions from the ground level yields a similarity relationship with respect to Z ($E \equiv I_Z = I_H Z^2$)

$$\sigma_Z(\varepsilon) = \frac{4\pi a_0^2 I_H}{Z^4}\frac{(Z^{-2}\varepsilon - I_H)}{(Z^{-2}\varepsilon)^2} = \frac{1}{Z^4}\sigma_1\left(\frac{\varepsilon}{Z^2}\right).$$

In this case the Born approximation leads to a slight departure from the similarity [83].

Let us estimate the dependence of the rate of ionization of ions on their charge ($Z = 1$ corresponds to a neutral atom). It is obvious that there is no sense in making this comparison at the same temperatures, since the second

ionization takes place at temperatures higher than the first, the third at temperatures higher than the second, etc. As was explained in Chapter III, atoms and ions are usually ionized at temperatures satisfying the condition $I_Z/kT \sim 5$–10. Therefore it is reasonable to compare the ionization rates for constant values of the ratio I_Z/kT. Remembering that in this case $\bar{v}_e \sim T^{1/2} \sim Z$, we obtain from (6.86) ($E_n \to I_Z = I_H Z^2$) the rate constant of the Zth ionization from the ground level $\alpha_Z = \alpha_1/Z^3$. The ionization of ions thus takes place at a relatively slower rate than the ionization of neutral atoms. Physically, this is primarily due to the smallness of the geometric dimensions of ions.

§14. Impact transitions between excited states of an atom

Experimental data on cross sections for electron-impact excitation pertain to transitions from the ground state (see §12). In the study of a heated plasma it is sometimes necessary to estimate the probability of impact transitions between higher levels. The transition cross sections can be estimated on the basis of results given by the quantum-mechanical method of distorted waves [83]. A simplified formula for the cross section of electron impact excitation of an atom for allowed transitions is given in [86]. It is convenient to represent it in a form similar to the classical expression for the ionization cross section

$$\sigma_{nn'} = 4\pi a_0^2 \frac{I_H(\varepsilon - E_{nn'})}{E_{nn'}\varepsilon^2} 3f_{nn'}. \tag{6.89}$$

Here $E_{nn'}$ is the energy of transition $n \to n'$ ($n' > n$); $f_{nn'}$ is the corresponding oscillator strength for absorption. The quantum-mechanical formula for the transition cross section contains a product of matrix elements, one of which describes the bremsstrahlung emission of a photon $h\nu = E_{nn'}$ from scattering of an electron in the field of an atom, and the other the absorption of this photon by an atom. This latter matrix element is the one expressed in terms of the oscillator strength. The excitation of an atom by electron impact can thus be interpreted as though the electron first emits a bremsstrahlung photon, while the subsequent absorption of this photon brings about the excitation.

If we use (6.89) to describe the excitation of atoms from the ground state due to electron impacts with energies slightly exceeding the threshold energy, it is found that this equation gives values somewhat higher than the experimentally determined cross sections. For hydrogen the cross section given by it is higher than the experimental values by a factor of 3–3.5, while for some other atoms (helium, sodium) the overestimate of the formula is less. It should be noted that in [84] the transitions of a bound electron in an atom under the action of electron impacts were treated on the basis of classical mechanics (the orbital motion of the bound electron was taken into account), and results

were obtained which are in agreement within order of magnitude with those given by quantum-mechanical calculations*.

Let us now estimate by means of (6.89) the transition probabilities in a hydrogen plasma (this was done in [79]). The number of excitation events by electron impacts $n \to n'$ per unit volume per unit time is

$$Z_{\text{exc},nn'} = N_n N_e \int_{E_{nn'}}^{\infty} \sigma_{nn'}(\varepsilon) v_e f(\varepsilon)\, d\varepsilon = \sigma_{nn'} N_n N_e . \tag{6.90}$$

For the rate constant we obtain an expression which is completely analogous to (6.85),

$$\alpha_{nn'} = 4\pi a_0^2 \bar{v}_e \left(\frac{I_H}{kT}\right)^2 \psi_{nn'} 3 f_{nn'};$$

$$\psi_{nn'} = e^{-x_{nn'}} x_{nn'}^{-1} - E_1(x_{nn'}); \qquad x_{nn'} = \frac{E_{nn'}}{kT}. \tag{6.91}$$

The number of reverse processes of deexcitation $n' \to n$ per unit volume per unit time is $Z_{\text{deex},n'n} = \beta_{n'n} N_{n'} N_e$. According to the principle of detailed balancing

$$\beta_{n'n} = a_{nn'} \frac{n^2}{n'^2} e^{x_{nn'}} = 4\pi a_0^2 \bar{v}_e \left(\frac{I_H}{kT}\right)^2 3 f_{nn'} \frac{n^2}{n'^2} x_{nn'} \psi_{nn'} . \tag{6.92}$$

If we substitute into these equations the oscillator strength given by (5.78), the transition energy $E_{nn'} = I_H(1/n^2 - 1/n'^2)$, and also the values of the constants, we obtain the numerical formulas

$$\alpha_{nn'} = \frac{2 \cdot 10^{-4}}{T^{\circ 1/2}} \frac{1}{n^5 n'^3 (n^{-2} - n'^{-2})^4} [e^{-x_{nn'}} - x_{nn'} E_1(x_{nn'})] \frac{\text{cm}^3}{\text{sec}}, \tag{6.91'}$$

$$\beta_{n'n} = \frac{2 \cdot 10^{-4}}{T^{\circ 1/2}} \frac{1}{n^3 n'^5 (n^{-2} - n'^{-2})^4} [1 - x_{nn'} e^{x_{nn'}} E_1(x_{nn'})] \frac{\text{cm}^3}{\text{sec}}. \tag{6.92'}$$

It is readily seen that the probabilities of deexcitation transitions from the state n' into the states $n' - 1$, $n' - 2$, etc., decrease faster than the sequence $1, 2^{-4}, 3^{-4}$. The ratio of the total probability of transitions to all the low-lying levels to the probability of transition to the closest level is bounded between 1 and $1 + 2^{-4} + 3^{-4} + \cdots = \pi^4/90 = 1.08$. The same is true with respect to the excitation probabilities $n \to n + 1$, $n \to n + 2, \ldots$. Thus, for discrete transitions in atoms under the action of electron impacts the most probable transitions are those between neighboring levels, while "jumps" over levels have a very low probability.

* Collisions between free and bound electrons on the basis of the classical theory are also treated in [85].

Let us now consider transitions between neighboring levels in the region of the upper states with $n \gg 1$. If the distances between levels ΔE are less than kT ($\Delta E \approx 2I_H/n^3 = 2E_n/n$, which is the case when $E_n < nkT/2$), the expressions in brackets in (6.91′) and (6.92′) do not differ appreciably from one. In the limit $x_{nn'} \to 0$, they reduce exactly to one. It follows from this that in this region of states the probability of transitions between neighboring levels with excitation and that with deexcitation of an atom ("upward" and "downward") are rather close to each other and are approximately

$$N_e\alpha_{n,n+1} \approx N_e\beta_{n,n-1} \approx \frac{8}{\sqrt{3}} N_e\bar{v}_e a_0^2 n^4 I_H/kT$$

$$= 1.25 \cdot 10^{-5} n^4 T^{\circ -1/2} N_e \text{ sec}^{-1} \qquad (6.93)$$

(the average transition cross section is larger by a factor of approximately $I_H/kT \gg 1$ than the area of the circular orbit which corresponds to the nth level, $\pi a_0^2 n^4$).

Let us now compare the probabilities of excitation and ionization of an atom by electron impact. If the atom is in the ground state and the temperature is not too high, so that $I/kT \gg 1$, then it is clear that ionization events are less frequent than excitation events simply because a smaller number of electrons possess the energy required for ionization. However, even in those cases when the majority of electrons do possess energy sufficient for ionization, in collisions with atoms whose binding energy is $E_n \sim kT$, ionization takes place less frequently than discrete transitions. The probability of discrete transitions to neighboring states is relatively higher, the smaller is the binding energy (the greater is n). This can be seen by comparing (6.86) and (6.93). Of course, the absolute value of the probability of ionization increases as n increases (but at a slower rate than the probability of discrete transitions).

§15. Ionization and excitation by heavy particle collisions

The formal description of these processes is completely analogous to the previously considered cases of ionization and excitation by electron impact. Thus the rate equation for ionization of unexcited atoms has the form

$$\frac{dN_e}{dt} = \alpha_a N_a^2 - \beta_a N_+ N_e N_a \,^*,$$

where, according to the principle of detailed balancing, $\beta_a = \alpha_a/K(T)$. The characteristic time is given by

$$\tau_a = \frac{(N_e)}{2\alpha_a N_a^2} = \frac{1}{2\beta_a N_a (N_e)}.$$

* By definition, the recombination coefficient is $b_a = \beta_a N_a$.

The ionization rate constant α_a is expressed by the same equation as that for α_e. It should be noted, however, that the ionization cross section $\sigma_a(v')$ depends on the relative velocity of the colliding atoms and that the Maxwell distribution function (with respect to the relative velocities) contains the reduced mass μ; in the case of identical atoms the reduced mass is $\mu = m_a/2$. If we again approximate the cross section near the threshold by a linear dependence on the kinetic energy of the relative motion $\varepsilon' = \mu v'^2/2$, we then obtain for α_a an expression analogous to (6.76). If, however, we simply take outside the integral sign some average value of the cross section σ_a, then the factor $(I/kT) + 2$ will be replaced by approximately the same quantity, namely, $(I/kT) + 1$. Thus,

$$\alpha_a = \sigma_a \overline{v'} \left(\frac{I}{kT} + 1 \right) e^{-I/kT},$$

$$\overline{v'} = \left(\frac{8kT}{\pi\mu} \right)^{1/2},$$

where σ_a corresponds to the energy $\varepsilon' \approx I + kT$. The kinetics of the excitation process can be described in a similar manner.

Unfortunately, unlike the case of electron impact, it is very difficult to make any quantitative estimates of the rates of the processes. Comparison of the rate constants for ionization by electrons and atoms shows that $\alpha_e/\alpha_a = (\overline{v_e}/\overline{v'})(\sigma_e/\sigma_a)$. At comparable temperatures $\overline{v_e}/\overline{v'} \approx (m_a/m_e)^{1/2} \sim 100$. It would appear that the cross section σ_a is several orders of magnitude smaller than σ_e. No experimental data are available on the cross sections for ionization or excitation by atoms for energies of the order of tens of electron volts. Apparently these cross sections are of the order of 10^{-20} to 10^{-22} cm^2.

In order for a collision to be inelastic the impact must be sufficiently sharp, in other words, the velocity with which the particles approach each other must be of the order of velocities of the outer electrons in the atom. In the case of an electron impact with an energy of the order of the ionization potential or of the excitation energy, that is, of the order of several up to 10 ev, this condition is satisfied and the inelastic cross section is large. The collision velocities of heavy particles are comparable only when the energies are greater than the above values by a factor of approximately $(m_a/m_e)^{1/2} \sim 100$, that is, when the energies are of the order of kev's. Indeed, in this case the ionization or excitation cross sections are close to the analogous electron impact cross sections. However, when the energies are of the order of 10 ev the particles approach each other with a very low velocity and the impact is "adiabatic". This situation is completely analogous to the case of vibrational excitation in molecules which was considered in §4. In precisely the same manner, in order for the probability of inelastic energy transfer during such a collision to

be high, the adiabatic factor $2\pi av/v$ should not be too great, i.e., of the order of unity. Here $2\pi\nu$ does not denote the angular frequency of molecular vibrations, but that of the rotation of the electron in its orbit ($2\pi av$ is of the order of the electron velocity in an atom, since a is of the order of atomic dimensions). The lowest energies of relative motion* ε', for which it has been still possible to carry out experimental measurements of ionization, were of the order of 30–40 ev. It was found that the cross section for ionization of argon by atoms and ions of argon at $\varepsilon' = 35$ ev was $\sigma_a \sim 3 \cdot 10^{-18}$ cm^2 [51], for ionization of helium by helium atoms $\sigma_a \sim 2 \cdot 10^{-19}$ cm^2 at $\varepsilon' = 35$ ev [52], for ionization of argon by potassium ions $\sigma_a \sim 2 \cdot 10^{-19}$ cm^2 at $\varepsilon' \sim 45$ ev †.

The quantum-mechanical analogue of the adiabatic condition $2\pi av/v \gg 1$ is

$$2\pi av/v \to \frac{ah\nu}{\hbar v} = \frac{a\,\Delta E}{\hbar v} \gg 1 \ddagger,$$

where ΔE is the inelastic energy converted on a collision. The origin of this condition is as follows: The probability of the process is determined by the interaction matrix element, which contains the product of wave functions of the initial and final particle states. Wave functions of translational motion are described by plane waves $e^{i\mathbf{p}\cdot\mathbf{r}/\hbar}$; the product of plane waves of the initial and final states gives the oscillating factor $e^{i\Delta\mathbf{p}\cdot\mathbf{r}/\hbar}$ in the integrand of the matrix element, where $\Delta\mathbf{p}$ is the change in momentum of the arriving particle during a collision. The integral has a considerable magnitude if this factor does not oscillate in the region where the interaction energy is high, that is, at a distance r which is of the order of the atomic dimensions a. The condition for a high probability of the process is thus given by the condition that $\Delta p \cdot a/\hbar \lesssim 1$. The change in the momentum Δp is of the order of $\Delta E/v$, where ΔE is the change in the kinetic energy of the particle in an inelastic energy transfer. From this we obtain the condition for a high probability to be $a\Delta E/\hbar v \lesssim 1$, while the condition for a low probability is $a\Delta E/\hbar v \gg 1$.

In particular, it follows from this condition that the cross sections of processes in which the inelastic conversion of energy ΔE is very small (the so-called resonance case) must be large. In fact, the cross sections for ionization of atoms by excited atoms or molecules are large, when the removal of an

* The usual experimental procedure employs a beam of fast particles which passes through a gas consisting of "stationary" atoms. The ionization threshold with respect to the energy of the arriving particles is then twice as large as the ionization potential. This corresponds to the fact that the reduced mass is half as small as the atomic mass, and for a given relative velocity $\varepsilon' = \varepsilon/2$; and $\varepsilon_{\text{thr}} = 2\varepsilon'_{\text{thr}} = 2I$.

† In [54] theoretical calculations were carried out of the cross sections for the inelastic collisions Ar–Ar and He–He, and the results compared with the experimental data of [51, 52]. Data on ionization cross sections for collisions between ions and atoms with energies of the order of several hundred ev and above are given in the surveys [75].

‡ $\hbar = h/2\pi$.

electron is accomplished by the expenditure of the energy of the internal degrees of freedom, rather than the kinetic energy of translational motion. Thus, the cross sections for processes such as

$$A + B^* \rightarrow A^+ + e + B,$$

where the excitation energy E^* of particle B is close to the ionization potential of particle A, and in order of magnitude close to the gaskinetic cross sections. Therefore, the process of ionization by heavy particles, particularly by molecules, is most likely to proceed in two or more stages: First, one of the particles is excited, and then ionization by collision with the excited particle takes place (so-called ionization by a collision of the second kind) or, conversely, the removal of an electron from the excited particle takes place. Some data on these processes may be found in the books [45, 46].

The problem of estimating the rate constants for ionization or excitation by heavy particles can arise only in considering the earliest stage of ionization of an "instantaneously" heated gas, while the electron concentration remains very small (less than 10^{-4}–10^{-5}), i.e., before an electron avalanche develops.

The estimation of the lower limit of time required for the generation of the "priming" electrons and of an electron avalanche will be considered by the following hypothetical process. Let the gas be "instantaneously" heated to a high temperature T and let the freed electrons instantaneously acquire the same temperature T as the atoms. At the beginning of the process, while the ionization is considerably below its equilibrium value, we may neglect the recombination process. Initially, $dN_e/dt = \alpha_a N_a^2$ and $N_e = \alpha_a N_a^2 t$. The number of electrons increases linearly with time until the rate of ionization by electron impact becomes comparable with the rate of ionization by atom collisions and an avalanche appears. This time t_1 is determined by the condition $\alpha_e N_a N_e = \alpha_a N_a^2$. Substituting here $N_e = \alpha_a N_a^2 t_1$ and noting that, according to (6.74), $\alpha_e N_a = \tau_e^{-1}$, we find $t_1 = \tau_e$. In other words, the minimum required time t_1 is equal to the characteristic time for the development of an avalanche.

The actual "induction" time for the development of an avalanche can be appreciable. This time is determined not by the generation of a sufficient number of free electrons, but by the heating of the electron gas to a sufficiently high temperature to produce appreciable ionization. This time is limited by the slowing-down effect of the energy exchange between atoms (ions) and electrons, which lose an appreciable amount of energy in inelastic collisions, i.e., through ionization and excitation. The topic of energy exchange between ions and electrons will be considered in §20. The conditions under which atoms are "instantaneously" heated to high temperatures with ensuing ionization are attainable in shock tubes. Chapter VII will deal with the kinetics of ionization in a shock front and with the establishment of ionization equilibrium behind the front.

§16. Photoionization and photorecombination

Photoionization and photorecombination processes have already been considered in Chapter V in calculating the absorption and emission coefficients for light; therefore, we recall here some of the considerations and conclusions of that chapter. Let us assume for simplicity that all the atoms are in the ground state and that during recombination the electrons are captured into the ground level. If N_a is the number density of atoms, $U_\nu\, d\nu$ is the radiant energy per unit volume in the spectral interval from ν to $\nu + d\nu$, and $\sigma_{\nu 1}(\nu)$ is the cross section for photoionization from the ground atomic level, then the number of photoionization events per unit volume per unit time is

$$Z^\nu_{\text{ion}} = N_a \int_{\nu_1}^{\infty} \frac{U_\nu}{h\nu}\, d\nu \cdot c \cdot \sigma_{\nu 1}(\nu) = \alpha_\nu N_a. \tag{6.94}$$

Here only the photons with $h\nu > h\nu_1 = I$ participate in the absorption; α_ν is the photoionization rate constant. Let $\sigma_{c1}(v)$ denote the cross section for the radiative capture of electrons with a velocity v into the ground atomic level. Then the number of photorecombination events per unit volume per unit time is

$$Z^\nu_{\text{rec}} = b_\nu N_+ N_e = N_+ N_e \int_0^\infty f_e(v)\, dv \cdot v \cdot \sigma_{c1}(v)\left(1 + \frac{c^3 U_\nu}{8\pi h\nu^3}\right). \tag{6.95}$$

The term $c^3 U_\nu / 8\pi h\nu^3$ takes into account the induced recombination, corresponding to induced photon emission. The energy of the emitted photon is related to the electron velocity by the photoelectric equation

$$h\nu = \frac{m_e v^2}{2} + I.$$

The integral in (6.95) represents the photorecombination coefficient b_ν.

According to the principle of detailed balancing, the differentials in the integral expressions for Z^ν_{rec} and Z^ν_{ion} are equal to each other under conditions of complete thermodynamic equilibrium. Substituting for $f_e(v)$ the Maxwell distribution function for the electrons and for U_ν the Planck function, using the Saha equation (6.73) and the photoelectric equation, we obtain a relationship between the cross sections for photoionization and photorecombination

$$\sigma_{c1}(v) = \frac{g_1}{g_+} \frac{h^2\nu^2}{m_e^2 v^2 c^2}\, \sigma_{\nu 1}(\nu).$$

The cross sections for photoionization from the nth excited atomic level and for radiative capture into the nth level are similarly related

$$\sigma_{cn}(v) = \frac{g_n}{g_+} \frac{h^2\nu^2}{m_e^2 v^2 c^2}\, \sigma_{\nu n}(\nu). \tag{6.95a}$$

Here g_n is the statistical weight of the nth atomic state. The frequency ν and the electron velocity v are also related by the photoelectric equation

$$h\nu = \frac{m_e v^2}{2} + \varepsilon_n = \frac{m_e v^2}{2} + I - w_n,$$

where ε_n is the binding energy of an electron in the nth state and w_n is the excitation energy of the nth atomic level.

The rate equation for the photoprocesses is

$$\frac{dN_e}{dt} = Z^{\nu}_{\text{ion}} - Z^{\nu}_{\text{rec}} = \alpha_\nu N_a - b_\nu N_+ N_e.$$

The relaxation time for the photoprocesses is

$$\tau_\nu = \frac{1}{b_\nu (N_e)} = \frac{(N_e)}{\alpha_\nu N_a}.$$

Let us estimate the photoionization rate constant by assuming that the radiation density is close to its equilibrium value. Unlike the collision ionization cross sections, which are equal to zero at the ionization threshold, the photoionization cross section is different from zero at the threshold and, on the contrary, in many cases is a maximum when $h\nu = I = h\nu_1$. Thus, for hydrogen-like atoms $\sigma_{\nu 1} = \sigma^0_{\nu 1}(\nu_1/\nu)^3$, where $\sigma^0_{\nu 1} = 7.9 \cdot 10^{-18}$ cm^2, if the charge of the "nucleus" is equal to unity (see (5.34)). If, as is usually the case, $I/kT \gg 1$, then the ionizing photons are in the Wien region of the spectrum, where $U_\nu \sim e^{-h\nu/kT}$. Taking the average value of the cross section (which can be set equal to the cross section at the ionization threshold to a high degree of accuracy) outside the integral sign in (6.94), we obtain after carrying out the integration

$$\alpha_\nu = \frac{8\pi}{c^2}\frac{I^2}{h^2}\frac{kT}{h}\sigma^0_{\nu 1} e^{-I/kT} = 3.95 \cdot 10^{23} T_{\text{ev}} I^2_{\text{ev}} \sigma^0_{\nu 1} e^{-I/kT} \text{ sec}^{-1}. \quad (6.96)$$

The recombination coefficient b_ν can be found either from the principle of detailed balancing $b_\nu = \alpha_\nu (N_a)/(N_+)(N_e)$, or directly by evaluating the integral (6.95). We note that for $I \gg kT$, the role of the induced recombinations is very small; the factor in square brackets in (6.95) $1 + e^{-h\nu/kT} \approx 1$, since $h\nu > I \gg kT$. The recombination coefficient becomes (for $I/kT \gg 1$)

$$\begin{aligned} b_\nu &= \overline{v_e \sigma_{c1}(v)} = \bar{v}_e \bar{\sigma}_{c1}, \\ \bar{\sigma}_{c1} &= \sigma^0_{c1}/T_{\text{ev}} = \frac{g_1}{2g_+}\frac{I^2}{m_e c^2 kT}\sigma^0_{\nu 1} = \frac{g_1}{g_+}\frac{I^2_{\text{ev}}}{T_{\text{ev}}}\sigma^0_{\nu 1} \cdot 10^{-6} \text{ cm}^2, \end{aligned} \quad (6.97)$$

where $\bar{\sigma}_{c1}$ is the average cross section for radiative capture into the ground level ($\bar{v}_e$ is the mean electron thermal speed). The average radiative capture cross section is inversely proportional to the electron temperature. The photoionization and radiative capture cross sections for some atoms at a temperature corresponding to 1 ev (σ^0_{v1}; $\bar{\sigma}_{c1} = \sigma^0_{c1}/T_{ev}$) are given in Table 6.6. Regarding the ion cross sections, we can state that if they are considered as hydrogen-like systems, then $\sigma^0_{v1} \sim Z^{-2}$ and $\sigma^0_{c1} \sim I_z^2 Z^{-2}$. Usually ionization potentials of ions increase with the charge as $I_z \sim Z$ to Z^2, from which $\sigma^0_{c1} \sim Z^0$ to Z^2.

Table 6.6

CROSS SECTIONS FOR PHOTOIONIZATION FROM THE GROUND LEVEL OF VARIOUS ATOMS AND RADIATIVE CAPTURE OF ELECTRONS INTO THE GROUND LEVEL

Atom	I, ev	g_1	g_+	$\sigma^0_{v1} \cdot 10^{18}$, cm^2	Behavior of cross section σ_{v1} past threshold	$\sigma^0_{c1} \cdot 10^{21}$, cm^2 ev
H	13.54	2	1	7.9	Decreases as ν^{-3}	2.9
Li	5.37	2	1	3.7		0.21
C	11.24	9	6	10	Decreases by one half when $h\nu = I + 10$ ev	1.9
N	14.6	4	9	7.5	Decreases slowly	0.7
O	13.57	9	4	3	Almost constant until $h\nu \sim I + 15$ ev	1.24
F	17.46	6	9	2	Almost constant until $h\nu \sim I + 15$ ev	0.41
Na	5.09	2	1	0.31	Decreases more rapidly than ν^{-3}	0.016
Ca	6.25	1	2	25	Decreases as ν^{-3}	0.51

The cross sections σ^0_{v1} and the data on the behavior of the cross sections past threshold are taken from [55]. The quantities σ^0_{c1} were calculated using (6.95).

Let us clarify the role of recombinations with the capture of an electron into an excited level. The recombination coefficient in the general case is (compare with (6.97))

$$b_v = \sum_n \overline{v\sigma_{cn}(v)}, \tag{6.98}$$

where the summation is taken over all the levels n, and the averaging is with respect to a Maxwell distribution of electrons. Here $\sigma_{cn}(v)$ is given by (6.95a). For hydrogen-like atoms $\sigma_{vn} \sim 1/n^5$ and $g_n = 2n^2$, so that $\sigma_{cn} \sim 1/n^3$, while v and v are related by the photoelectric equation, with $\varepsilon_n = I/n^2$. Generally speaking, in summing with respect to n we are faced with the problem of the actual number of levels in the atom (see §6, Chapter III). In the given case, however, the summation over n converges rapidly and it can be extended approximately to $n = \infty$.

Calculating the recombination coefficient by (6.98) for a hydrogen-like atom, we find that it can be expressed in the form

$$b_\nu = b_{\nu 1}\varphi(I/kT); \qquad b_{\nu 1} = 2.07 \cdot 10^{-11} Z^2 T^{\circ -1/2} = 2 \cdot 10^{-13} Z^2 T_{ev}^{-1/2}\ \text{cm}^3/\text{sec}, \tag{6.99}$$

where $b_{\nu 1}$ is a coefficient corresponding to capture into the ground level for $I/kT \gg 1$ (it is determined from (6.97)); $\varphi(I/kT)$ is a very slowly varying function, which is obtained by a summation over n. This function is tabulated in Spitzer's book [56]. For example, for $I/kT = 5$, $\varphi = 1.69$, for $I/kT = 10$, $\varphi = 2.02$, while for $I/kT = 100, \varphi = 3.2$. Approximately (see [86]),

$$b_\nu = 2.7 \cdot 10^{-13} Z^2 T_{ev}^{-3/4}\ \text{cm}^3/\text{sec}. \tag{6.100}$$

Thus under conditions usually encountered in the singly ionized region, where $\beta = I/kT \sim 10$, capture into all excited levels makes approximately the same contribution to recombination as does capture into the ground level. By virtue of the principle of detailed balancing, if the atoms obey a Boltzmann distribution with respect to their excited states and if radiative equilibrium exists, the same result applies for photoionization. The role of ionization of excited atoms during photoionization is thus comparable to the role of ionization of unexcited atoms, so that our estimates of photoionization and photorecombination rates are low by approximately a factor of 2.

Let us compare the ionization rate of unexcited atoms by electron impact and by photons (assuming that the radiation density is that for equilibrium). Using equations (6.94), (6.96), (6.71), and (6.76), we find

$$\frac{Z_{\text{ion}}^e}{Z_{\text{ion}}^\nu} = \frac{\alpha_e N_e}{\alpha_\nu} = \frac{1.7 \cdot 10^{-16} N_e}{I_{ev} T_{ev}^{1/2}} \frac{C(\text{cm}^2/\text{ev})}{\sigma_{\nu 1}^0(\text{cm}^2)}.$$

Evidently, the rates of the reverse processes are in the same ratio. The numerical values of C and $\sigma_{\nu 1}^0$ are of the same order of magnitude ($\sim 5 \cdot 10^{-18}$, see Tables 6.4 and 6.6), ionization potentials I are of the order of 10 ev, and a typical temperature with single ionization is of the order of 1 ev = 11,600°K. These values give

$$\frac{Z_{\text{ion}}^e}{Z_{\text{ion}}^\nu} = \frac{Z_{\text{rec}}^e}{Z_{\text{rec}}^\nu} \sim 10^{-17} N_e,$$

so that when $N_e > 10^{17}\ \text{cm}^{-3}$ it is the electron processes which predominate, while when $N_e < 10^{17}\ \text{cm}^{-3}$ the main role is played by photoprocesses (we wish to emphasize that this pertains only to the ionization of atoms from the ground state and to the capture of an electron into the ground level of an atom, with the radiation and electron densities of the order of those at equilibrium).

Now a few words on the cause of excitation and deexcitation of the first excited states by radiation. The lifetimes of atoms in first excited states, with respect to spontaneous emission, are of the order of $\tau_\nu^* \sim 10^{-8}$ sec. The lifetime of an atom in these levels, with respect to deexcitation by electron impact at an electron temperature $T_e \sim 1$ ev, is, according to §12, of the order of $\tau_e^* \sim 10^9/N_e$ sec, so that the "quenching" of radiation by electron impact takes place at electron densities $N_e > 10^{17}$ cm^{-3} and, conversely with $N_e < 10^{17}$ cm^{-3} the main role is played by photoprocesses (in the same manner as for ionization of atoms from the ground level and for the capture of an electron into the ground level).

Under conditions close to thermodynamic equilibrium the same is true with respect to the excitation rates by electrons and photons of atomic levels lying close to the ground level. Let us note that the absorption cross sections for resonant radiation which is capable of exciting atoms are very large, and the resonant radiation is most often in equilibrium (the medium is opaque to resonant radiation). For this reason, the time $\tau^* \sim 10^{-18}$ sec characterizes the relaxation time for the establishment of a Boltzmann distribution in the first excited atomic levels due to photoprocesses. The probability of spontaneous radiative transitions from the upper excited states is discussed in §13, Chapter V.

§17. Electron-ion recombination by three-body collisions (elementary theory)

In a highly rarefied plasma the recombination of electrons with ions takes place primarily by binary collisions with the emission of a photon. In a dense plasma this process takes place primarily by three-body collisions with an electron acting as the third body (a neutral atom can also serve as the third body, but this process is of importance only for extremely low degrees of ionization, less than 10^{-7}–10^{-10}). The simplest way to estimate the recombination rate when the electron serves as the third body is to generalize to this case the old Thomson theory [45], which concerns recombination with the participation of a neutral atom. The considerations here are completely analogous to those which were used in §6 of this chapter to estimate the rate of recombination of atoms into a molecule by three-body collisions.

Let us assume that the electron is captured by an ion (with a charge Z) into a closed orbit and recombines if it passes past the ion with an impact parameter (aiming distance) r such that the potential energy of Coulomb attraction to the ion Ze^2/r is greater than the average kinetic energy of the electron $\frac{3}{2}kT$. The impact parameter, consequently, cannot exceed Zr_0, where $r_0 = e^2/\frac{3}{2}kT$ is the effective radius of Coulomb interaction of particles with charges $Z = 1$.

The number of such collisions per unit volume per unit time is $N_e \bar{v}_e \pi r_0^2 Z^2 N_+$. But, in order for capture to take place when the electron passes

past an ion (on a path for which the impact parameter is of the order of Zr_0), the electron must interact with another electron which can receive the potential energy which is released on capture. The probability of such an event is approximately $Zr_0\pi r_0^2 N_e$. The number of recombinations per unit volume per unit time is thus

$$Z_{\text{rec}} = N_e \bar{v}_e \pi r_0^2 Z^2 N_+ \cdot Z r_0^3 \pi N_e = \beta N_e^2 N_+ = b N_e N_+ . \tag{6.101}$$

From this we obtain for the recombination coefficient

$$b = \bar{v}_e \pi^2 r_0^5 Z^3 N_e = \frac{2^6 \pi (2\pi)^{1/2}}{3^5} \frac{e^{10} Z^3}{m^{1/2} (kT)^{9/2}} N_e . \tag{6.102}$$

The radius of Coulomb interaction between an electron and a proton $r_0 = e^2/\frac{3}{2}kT$ (we shall consider hydrogen), is very close to the radius r_{n^*} of the circular orbit of an electron with binding energy $E_{n^*} \approx kT$

$$r_{n^*} = a_0 n^{*2} = a_0 I_{\text{H}}/kT = e^2/2kT.$$

It is therefore evident that this same recombination coefficient should be obtained by summing the electron capture coefficients $\beta_n N_e$ derived in §14 over all n from 1 to $n^* = (I_{\text{H}}/E_{n^*})^{1/2} = (I_{\text{H}}/kT)^{1/2}$ (for $I_{\text{H}}/kT \gg 1$, $n^* \gg 1$, the summation can be replaced by integration). And in fact, this procedure yields an equation which practically coincides with (6.102). This method of calculating the recombination coefficient in terms of the probability of capture into discrete levels was used by Hinnov and Hirschberg [80]. It has the advantage of being physically clear, although it is not rigorous.

It is remarkable that the rigorous (within the framework of certain assumptions) theory which has been developed by Pitaevskii [87] and by Gurevich and Pitaevskii [88] (the latter will be discussed in the next section) leads to the formula

$$b = \frac{4\pi (2\pi)^{1/2}}{9} \frac{e^{10} Z^3}{m^{1/2} (kT)^{9/2}} \ln \Lambda_1 \cdot N_e , \tag{6.103}$$

which differs from the elementary relation (6.102) only by the numerical coefficient $\frac{2}{1}\frac{7}{6} \ln \Lambda_1$, of the order of unity. Here $\ln \Lambda_1$ is a Coulomb logarithm of a particular kind, which can approximately be set equal to one. Numerically, from (6.103) with $\ln \Lambda_1 = 1$, the recombination coefficient is

$$b = \frac{8.75 \cdot 10^{-27} Z^3}{T_{\text{ev}}^{9/2}} N_e = \frac{5.2 \cdot 10^{-23} Z^3}{T_{1000\,\text{deg}}^{9/2}} N_e \frac{\text{cm}^3}{\text{sec}} . \tag{6.104}$$

The range of applicability of this equation (for hydrogen $Z = 1$) is limited to quite low temperatures $kT \ll I_{\text{H}}$, for which capture takes place into very high levels $n^* = (I_{\text{H}}/kT)^{1/2} \gg 1$. Evidently, these temperatures are below 3000°K ($n^* \geqslant 7$).

Let us compare the coefficients b of three-body recombination as given by (6.104) and those of photorecombination with capture into all levels b_ν from (6.100). The latter predominates when

$$N_e < \frac{3.1 \cdot 10^{13} T_{ev}^{3.75}}{Z} = \frac{3.2 \cdot 10^{9} T_{1000\,\mathrm{deg}}^{3.75}}{Z}\ \mathrm{cm}^{-3}. \qquad (6.105)$$

As may be seen, at low temperatures and not extremely low densities the main role is always played by three-body recombinations.

Reference [80] contains approximate formulas for estimating three-body recombination coefficients at higher temperatures (from ≈ 3000 to $\approx 10{,}000°$K), when capture takes place into low-lying levels. We note that in this range (6.104) gives values of the recombination coefficient which are on the high side, but by not more than a factor of 5–10 even at $T = 10{,}000°$K. Also given in [80] is a convenient graph of the total recombination coefficient $b + b_\nu$ as a function of N_e and T. There is also a description of the results of an experimental study of recombination in helium, which shows good agreement of the theory with experiment.

§18. A more rigorous theory of recombination by three-body collisions

Let us examine in more detail the process of three-body recombination in a low-temperature hydrogen plasma. We assume that the gas is appreciably out of equilibrium with the degree of ionization higher than for equilibrium, or, what is the same thing, that the temperature is lower than that which corresponds to the given degree of ionization, so that it is predominantly recombination which takes place in the plasma. We have pointed out above that the probability of an electron capture in three-body collisions increases rapidly with an increasing orbit radius and a decreased binding energy of the level, so that electrons are primarily captured into the upper levels. As was shown in §13 of Chapter V, the probability of spontaneous radiative transitions from the upper levels is reduced sharply when the quantum number n increases and the binding energy E_n becomes lower (as $1/n^5 \sim E_n^{5/2}$).

Let us assume that the electron density is sufficiently high that the probabilities of radiative transitions from the upper levels are much less than the probabilities of impact transitions. Practically, the opposite situation is not realized at low temperatures: If the densities are so low that radiative transitions from upper levels take place at a higher rate than impact transitions, then in general it is photorecombination which predominates and the electrons are captured primarily into the lower rather than into the upper levels. Thus, the state of a highly excited atom which is formed as a result of electron capture changes under the action of electron impacts. In this case the transitions

which are most probable are those into the nearest neighboring states. In the region where the distances between the levels ΔE_n are smaller than kT, transitions with excitation and deexcitation ("upward" and "downward") are, according to the principle of detailed balancing, almost equally probable ($\Delta E_n < kT$ in the region of binding energies $E_n < \frac{1}{2}nkT$ or $E_n < I_H(kT/2I_H)^{2/3}$; this follows from $\Delta E_n \approx |dE_n/dn| = 2I_H/n^3 = 2E_n/n = 2I_H(E_n/I_H)^{3/2}$). Thus, in this region of the energy spectrum, the energy of an atom changes by small amounts in each impact, and "steps" in either direction have approximately equal probability. This is a typical picture of "diffusion". We can say that what is taking place is "diffusion of a bound electron in an atom along the energy axis".

The ratio of probabilities of "upward" and "downward" changes in the region of low-lying levels $E_n \gg kT$, $\Delta E > kT$, where the probability of deexcitation is higher than that of excitation. In addition, in the region of low-lying levels radiative transitions also promote deexcitation and are quite probable. Within the framework of the "diffusion" model this means that a "drain" exists in the region of the low-lying levels and, consequently, the "diffusive flux" is directed "downward" and the highly excited atom which was formed tends to move into the ground state. This process, in fact, is what recombination consists of. We wish to emphasize that the direction of the diffusive flux is determined by the state of the gas. Had the conditions been such that the ionization was lower than that at equilibrium, then excitation would have predominated and the flux would have been directed "upward". It is important that the probability of ionizing an atom on collision at not too high levels is not large and is less than the probability of discrete transistions, so that we can neglect ionization in this region. The probability of ionization, which increases with the level number n, is high in the region of very large n where the probability of capture is also high. The result of this is that in the region of very small binding energies (of the order or less than kT) the Saha-Boltzmann equilibrium of (6.87) is established between the population of the levels and the density of the free electrons. Within the framework of the diffusion model this means that the "source" of particles in the region of low binding energies is such that the given particle density is automatically maintained in this region. The flux along the energy axis, which here arises due to the presence of the "drain" in the region of high binding energies, apparently also determines the rate of draining of excited atoms "downward" and the rate of formation of atoms in the ground state, i.e., essentially the recombination rate. This picture of the recombination process has been formulated mathematically by Pitaevskii [87], who considered the diffusion along the energy axis on the basis of the purely classical Fokker–Planck equation, on the assumption that the principal role is played by the upper states, where the discreteness of energy levels is weak.

For greater clarity and in order to more clearly demonstrate the physical meaning of the approximations made here and of the "diffusion coefficient", we turn here to a classical approach, starting from a system of quantum-mechanical rate equations. Let N_n be the number of atoms per unit volume in the nth levels (the population of the levels). We set up rate equations for these number densities which take into account only discrete transitions between neighboring levels. For convenience we group the direct and reverse processes in pairs, and write

$$\frac{dN_n}{dt} = N_e\{[\beta_{n+1,n}N_{n+1} - \alpha_{n,n+1}N_n] - [\beta_{n,n-1}N_n - \alpha_{n-1,n}N_{n-1}]\}. \quad (6.106)$$

Let us consider the region of large quantum numbers $n \gg 1$ (it is assumed that $I_H/kT \gg 1$). In this region of discrete numbers n and N_n we can treat as continuous and differentiate functions of the number n (recalling that the "differential" $dn = 1$). Expanding (6.106) up to terms of second order, we obtain

$$\frac{\partial N_n}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial j_n}{\partial n}; \qquad j_n = -\alpha_{n-1,n}N_e\left[\frac{\partial N_n}{\partial n} + \left(\frac{\beta_{n,n-1}}{\alpha_{n-1,n}} - 1\right)N_n\right]. \quad (6.107)$$

We now transform the ratio of probabilities using the principle of detailed balancing, and we restrict ourselves to the consideration of that region of levels where the distance between levels is less than kT

$$\frac{\beta_{n,n-1}}{\alpha_{n-1,n}} = \frac{(N_{n-1})}{(N_n)} = \frac{(n-1)^2}{n^2}\, e^{\Delta E/kT} \sim 1 - \frac{2}{n} + \frac{\Delta E}{kT}.$$

Now

$$\frac{\partial N_n}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial j_n}{\partial n}; \qquad j_n = -\alpha_{n-1,n}N_e\left[\frac{\partial N_n}{\partial n} + \left(\frac{\Delta E}{kT} - \frac{2}{n}\right)N_n\right]. \quad (6.108)$$

This equation has the typical form of a diffusion equation in the presence of a volume force. The quantity $D_n = \alpha_{n-1,n}N_e$ plays the role of the diffusion coefficient, and its units are $\sec^{-1}$ (since the "coordinate" n is dimensionless). From the distribution function N_n with respect to n of the excited atoms, it is easy to make a transition to the distribution function with respect to the binding energy $\varphi(E)$. Obviously,

$$N_n = \varphi(E)\left|\frac{dE}{dn}\right| = \varphi(E)\,\Delta E$$

and

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial n} = \frac{\partial}{\partial E}\cdot\left|\frac{dE}{dn}\right| = -\Delta E\,\frac{\partial}{\partial E}.$$

Transforming (6.108) and dropping higher-order terms, we obtain

$$\frac{\partial\varphi}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial j}{\partial E}; \qquad j = -D\frac{\partial\varphi}{\partial E} + D\left(\frac{1}{kT} - \frac{5}{2E}\right)\varphi;$$
$$D = \alpha N_e(\Delta E)^2; \qquad \alpha = \alpha_{n-1,n}. \tag{6.109}$$

The coefficient of diffusion D along the energy axis has the units of erg^2/sec; ΔE corresponds to the "mean free path", and $1/2\alpha N_e$ is the average time between collisions, which are accompanied by "upward" and "downward" transitions. If we take still another step and transform (6.109) from the distribution function of the atoms with respect to the binding energy $\varphi(E)$ to the distribution function of bound electrons in the phase space of position and momenta, we obtain the Fokker–Planck equation in the form which served as the starting point in [87, 88].

The diffusion coefficient D has been calculated in [85, 88] on the basis of the purely classical theory as the mean square of the change in energy of a bound electron per unit time as a result of collisions with free electrons

$$D_{\text{class}} = \frac{1}{2}\left\langle\frac{\partial(\delta E)^2}{\partial t}\right\rangle = \frac{2(2\pi)^{1/2}}{3}\frac{e^4 E \ln\Lambda_1 \cdot N_e}{(mkT)^{1/2}}. \tag{6.110}$$

When we calculate the diffusion coefficient in terms of the quantum-mechanical probability of the transitions $\alpha_{n-1,n}N_e$, with $D = \alpha N_e(\Delta E)^2$, where $\alpha_{n-1,n}$ is given by the equations of §14 under the condition $\Delta E \ll kT$, we arrive at exactly the same form for the coefficient as that given by the classical theory; we find that D exceeds D_{class} by a factor of $(8/\sqrt{3})/(\pi \ln \Lambda_1) \approx 4.4$ (for $\ln\Lambda_1 = 1$). It is necessary to conclude that the classical value in the region of closely spaced levels is more accurate than the approximate quantum-mechanical value*.

Let us assume that the highly excited atom which is formed as a result of capture of an electron by an ion is deexcited and returns to the ground state at a rate which is fast in comparison with the rate of change of electron density and temperature, that is, essentially, in comparison with the recombination rate. Then a quasi-steady energy distribution is established among the excited atoms, which "follows" the slow electron density and temperature changes. In other words, in considering recombination with the given N_e and T we can seek a steady state solution of (6.108) or (6.109) in which the flux is constant. In this case it is also unnecessary to solve for the distribution function in an explicit form. It is sufficient to determine the flux, since the quantity j_n in cm^{-3} sec^{-1} represents the rate of formation of atoms in the ground state,

* It is appropriate to note here that the theoretical quantum-mechanical transition probabilities for the lower levels are on the high side in comparison with experimental results.

i.e., the number of recombinations $Z_{rec} = bN_eN_+$ per unit volume per unit time.

Setting in (6.108) $j_n = const$, integrating the linear equation thus obtained for the function $N(n) \equiv N_n$, and taking into account the fact that $\Delta E = 2I_H/n^3$ and $E_n = I_H/n^2$, we obtain

$$N_n = -\frac{j_n}{N_e} n^2 e^{E_n/kT} \int_{n_0}^{n} \frac{e^{-E_n/kT}}{n^2 \alpha_{n-1,n}} dn ;$$

here n_0 is a constant of integration. As was noted above, a "drain" exists in the region of low-lying levels, so that the level populations are small there and $N_n \approx 0$. Consequently, we take for n_0 a number of the order of unity. Calculations show that the integral converges rapidly in the region where n is not large and is practically independent of the specific value selected for n_0.

Let us now use the second boundary condition in the region of large n, which is a statement of the fact that the Saha–Boltzmann equilibrium (6.87) is established in this region. Consequently,

$$\text{as } n \to \infty, \qquad N_n \to n^2 e^{E_n/kT} \left(\frac{h^2}{2\pi mkT}\right)^{3/2} N_e N_+. \tag{6.111}$$

From this we get an expression for the flux

$$-j_n = \left(\frac{h^2}{2\pi mkT}\right)^{3/2} \left[\int_{n_0 \sim 1}^{n} \frac{e^{-E_n/kT}}{n^2 \alpha_{n-1,n}} dn\right]^{-1} N_e^2 N_+ = bN_eN_+, \tag{6.112}$$

and for the recombination coefficient b.

If we transform from $\alpha_{n-1,n}$ to the diffusion coefficient with $\alpha_{n-1,n} = D/(\Delta E)^2$, make the substitution $\Delta E = 2I_H/n^3$, and evaluate the integral (6.112) using the classical value of D from (6.110), we obtain formula (6.104) for the recombination coefficient*.

Bates, Kingston, and McWhirter [89], in a paper published almost simultaneously with the first article of Pitaevskii [87], have considered recombination with rather general assumptions. In fact, the paper [89] is based on the same ideas on the progress of the recombination as those in [87], but the authors used a system of rate equations for the numbers of discrete state populations (of the type (6.106)) which takes into account all the processes, comprising electron capture, electron impact ionization, discrete transitions to distant levels, radiative capture, and spontaneous radiative transitions. The

* This is precisely what was done in [87, 88], but there the authors operated from the very beginning with the energy of the atom $E = -E_n$, and not with the quantum numbers n. We note that the above method was used in [87] to calculate the recombination coefficient with a neutral atom participating as the third body. The value thus obtained exceeds the result of Thomson's theory [45] by a factor of approximately 6.

condition that the distribution in the upper levels is an equilibrium one was used to limit the number of equations. The system of equations, including that for the steady state case $dN_n/dt = 0$ for $n \neq 1$, were solved numerically over a wide range of densities and temperatures, including also the high temperatures for which there is capture into low-lying levels. The recombination rate was defined as $-dN_+/dt = dN_1/dt$. The calculated results for the recombination coefficients were tabulated*. The authors propose that the general complex process be termed "impact-radiative recombination". In the limit of low densities it becomes photorecombination, at higher densities it becomes what we have called above three-body recombination. Results of numerical calculations for this limiting case are in satisfactory agreement with those given by (6.104).

In [83, 89] are explained the conditions under which the use of the approximation assuming that the energy distribution of excited atoms is quasi-steady is permissible. Actually, for this assumption to be valid the numbers of excited atoms must be much smaller than the numbers of unexcited atoms and free electrons.

In some cases it is necessary to know not only the recombination rate, but also the subsequent fate of the potential energy which is released on recombination. As follows from what was said above, a part of this energy is imparted to the electron gas on impact deexcitation of the excited atoms which are formed on recombination, and is then transformed into heat. Another part is emitted as a result of spontaneous radiative transitions, and in the case when the gas is transparent to radiation it is essentially lost by the gas. However, if the gas is not completely transparent, then this part of the energy participates in the subsequent, quite complex, reactions connected with the absorption and emission of light (in particular, with the diffusion of resonance radiation); finally, as a result of impact deexcitation of the atoms this energy in part is also transformed into heat and in part leaves the gas volume in the form of radiation. The problem of the rate of deexcitation of highly excited atoms which are formed on recombination, and that of the transformations of the potential energy was considered in a paper by Kuznetsov and one of the authors of this book [90], in connection with a study of radiation recombination kinetics in a gas expanding into a vacuum. The recombination kinetics for the sudden expansion into vacuum will be discussed in §9 of Chapter VIII, where some results obtained in the above reference will also be presented.

§19. Ionization and recombination in air

Ionization and recombination in molecular gases dissociated as a result of very high temperatures takes place approximately in the same manner as

* They are also given in the book [83].

in atomic gases. At lower temperatures, when the molecular concentration is appreciable, the situation is essentially different, and the primary processes are those involving molecular participation. Thus, in air at temperatures below approximately 10,000°K the main ionization mechanism is the reaction (6.69), $N + O + 2.8$ ev $= NO^+ + e$, which requires the minimum activation energy. In reactions of this type the electron removal is accomplished by the binding energy which is released upon recombination of the atoms into a molecule, and hence only a small amount of additional energy is needed, taken from the supply of thermal energy. A reaction of the type $A + B \rightleftarrows AB^+ + e$ can take place if the potential curves of the two systems, denoted by the right- and left-hand sides of the equation, respectively, intersect, as is shown schematically in Fig. 6.5. Let the atoms possess an energy supply (let us say of

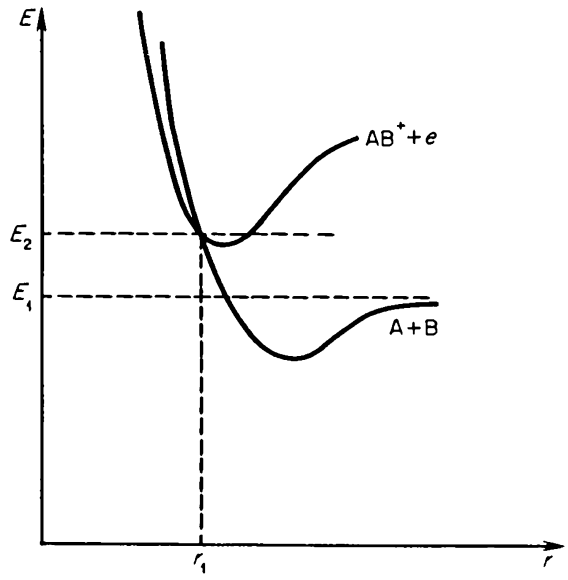


Fig. 6.5. Sketch of potential curves illustrating associative ionization and dissociative recombination reactions.

kinetic energy of relative motion) which is equal to $\Delta E = E_2 - E_1$, that is, their total energy corresponds to the horizontal line E_2. In accordance with the Frank–Condon principle (see §16 of Chapter V), at the time when they are separated by the distance r_1 at which the potential curves intersect, the system $A + B$ can, without changing its total energy, pass into the other state $AB^+ + e$ corresponding to the second potential curve. The cross section for such a process (when the required energy, which exceeds the activation energy, is available) can be presented in the very graphic form [83],

$$\sigma = \gamma \pi r_1^2 [1 - e^{-r_1/v\tau}],$$

where τ is the lifetime of the molecular complex which is formed at the time when the atoms are at a distance of r_1 from each other with respect to a transition to the state with a removed electron, v is the rate at which the atoms approach each other, i.e., r_1/v is the characteristic time for the interaction of the atoms or for the existence of the complex, and the ratio $r_1/v\tau$ characterizes the probability of transition in this time; γ is the probability that the atomic system A + B be in the particular state which corresponds to the intersecting potential curves; it is defined as the ratio of the statistical weight of this state to the sum of statistical weights of all possible states. If $r_1/v\tau \gg 1$, then the cross section is $\sigma \approx \gamma\pi r_1^2$; if, on the other hand, the probability of the transformation is low $r_1/v\tau \ll 1$, then $\sigma = \gamma\pi r_1^2(r_1/v\tau)$. These considerations were used by Lin and Teare [73] in order to estimate the cross section and rate of the reaction (6.69); in this case they used the experimental data of [72], which were obtained by measuring the ionization rate of air in a shock tube, in order to determine the unknown quantity τ. As follows from the potential curves for the NO molecule, $r_1 \approx 10^{-8}$ cm, and γ is estimated as 0.1. The time was found to be given by $\tau \approx 6 \cdot 10^{-13}$ sec. The corresponding cross section of the process is $\sigma = 1.5 \cdot 10^{-16}$ cm^2 (for the speed $v = 3 \cdot 10^5$ cm/sec and $T = 5000°$K). The value of the rate constant for the reaction (6.69) obtained as a result is

$$k_{\text{ion N, O}} = \frac{5 \cdot 10^{-11}}{T^{\circ 1/2}} e^{-32{,}500/T^\circ} \frac{\text{cm}^3}{\text{sec}}. \tag{6.113}$$

Using the equilibrium constant for the reaction which, over a wide range of temperatures, is given approximately by the relation

$$K = (1.4 \cdot 10^{-8} T + 1.2 \cdot 10^{-12} T^2 + 1.4 \cdot 10^{-16} T^3)\, e^{-32{,}500/T},$$

we can estimate the rate constant for the reverse reaction, i.e., dissociative recombination*. For low temperatures

$$b_{\text{diss rec NO}^+} = \frac{k_{\text{ion N, O}}}{K} = 3 \cdot 10^{-3} T^{\circ -3/2} \frac{\text{cm}^3}{\text{sec}}. \tag{6.114}$$

This value is in agreement with experimental data on dissociative recombination of NO^+ at room temperature and at 2000°K.

At high temperatures together with the reaction (6.69) the analogous reactions

$$N + N + 5.8 \text{ ev} \rightarrow N_2^+ + e, \qquad O + O + 6.5 \text{ ev} \rightarrow O_2^+ + e$$

take place. Rate constants for these reactions are also derived in [73], but not directly as for the reaction (6.69), but by using the equilibrium constants and the

* For the theory of this process see [83].

rates of the corresponding dissociative recombination reactions. The latter are defined by expressions close to those for b_{NO^+}.

The paper of Lin and Teare [73] is a fundamental investigation and one can find in it a large amount of information on the rates of ionization processes in air, and also a review of experimental works and a bibliography. A detailed list of reactions in air in which charged particles participate and the corresponding rate constants selected from various published sources is presented in [92].

Dissociative recombination processes play a most important role in the E and F layers of the ionosphere (at altitudes over 100 km above sea level). A detailed summary of experimental values of the dissociative recombination coefficient $b_{\text{diss rec}}$ is given in the review by Ivanov-Kholodnyi [71]. The value of $b_{\text{diss rec}}$ decreases with increasing temperatures approximately as $T^{-1/2}$ to $T^{-3/2}$ (according to various data). For N_2^+ ions at $T = 300°K$, $b_{\text{diss rec } N_2^+} \approx 10^{-6}$ cm^3/sec, which corresponds to the very large cross section of $\sigma \approx 10^{-13}$ cm^2. The value of $b_{\text{diss rec}}$ for O_2^+ and NO^+ ions is slightly smaller.

For recombination in cold air (in the ionosphere) an important role is played by charge exchange reactions of the type

$$O^+ + O_2 \rightarrow O + O_2^+ + 1.6 \text{ ev}.$$

Atomic ions O^+ which are formed in the upper layers of the atmosphere under the action of ultraviolet radiation from the sun recombine at a slow rate. On the other hand, charge exchange with the subsequent dissociative recombination of O_2^+ is a much faster process. The rate constants for charge exchange reactions which take place with a release of energy are estimated [92] as

$$k_{\text{ch ex}} \approx 1.3 \cdot 10^{-12} T^{\circ 1/2} \text{ cm}^3/\text{sec}.$$

Recombination in cold air at comparatively high densities (in the D layer of the ionosphere below ~ 80 km) proceeds primarily through the formation of negative oxygen ions. Electrons become attached to oxygen molecules predominantly by three-body collisions $O_2 + e + M \rightarrow O_2^- + M$, and then the O_2^- ions exchange charge with N_2^+ or O_2^+ ions in binary or three-body collisions. The most recent data on recombination in cold air and also on many other inelastic processes which take place in the ionosphere are given in the surveys by Dalgarno [74] and by Danilov and Ivanov-Kholodnyi [91].

3. *Plasma*

§20. Relaxation in a plasma

In an atomic or molecular gas the relaxation time for establishing a Maxwell velocity distribution is characterized by the time between particle

collisions, or by gaskinetic cross sections which are of the order of 10^{-15} cm^2. These gaskinetic cross sections are approximately $\sigma \approx \pi a^2$, where the radius a is of the order of the range of interatomic and intermolecular interaction forces, of the order of the dimensions of the particles. The forces acting between the charged particles of a plasma, of electrons and ions, are of a different character. The Coulomb forces decrease very slowly with distance, as $1/r^2$, and do not have a characteristic length scale. Therefore, the problem of "collisions" between the charged particles together with the problem of the corresponding relaxation times must be considered separately.

A plasma can be visualized as a mixture of two gases, an electron gas and an ion gas, with very different particle masses m_e and m, respectively. Owing to this large mass difference, energy transfer becomes difficult, since the energy transferred during a "collision" between an electron and an ion is only a fraction of the order of $m_e/m \ll 1$ of their kinetic energy. Therefore, the average kinetic energy of the electrons and ions, that is, the electron and ion temperatures, can differ greatly from one another over a relatively long time period. These two factors, the long range character of the Coulomb forces and the pronounced difference in the electron and ion masses, determine the specific properties of a plasma.

Let us first consider the interaction of charged particles with masses of the same order. By collisions the particles can transfer energy comparable to their initial energies, hence the Maxwell velocity distribution, and thus a temperature, is established after only a few collisions. If "collision" is understood to denote an interaction between particles involving a significant change in velocity and energy, with a deflection by an appreciable angle (of the order of 90°), then in the case of charged particles "collisions" will occur when the particles approach each other to a distance at which the kinetic and potential (Coulomb) energies become comparable. This characteristic distance r_0 is obviously determined from the condition $Z^2e^2/r_0 \approx \frac{3}{2}kT$, where Z is the charge of the particles. Thus we can take as a measure of the cross section for such "collisions" the quantity

$$\sigma \approx \pi r_0^2 \approx \frac{4}{9}\pi \frac{Z^4e^4}{(kT)^2}. \tag{6.115}$$

Actually, the problem is somewhat more complicated, since an important role in the velocity changes of particles obeying a Coulomb interaction law is played by "distant" collisions, corresponding to large impact parameters (Fig. 6.6). "Distant" collisions occur more frequently than "close" collisions. For a Coulomb law with the force decreasing slowly with distance, the total effect of the "distant" collisions is very large despite the fact that the change in the velocity in each such collision is small. Let us estimate this effect. The force F acting on a particle that passes another particle at a distance r is of

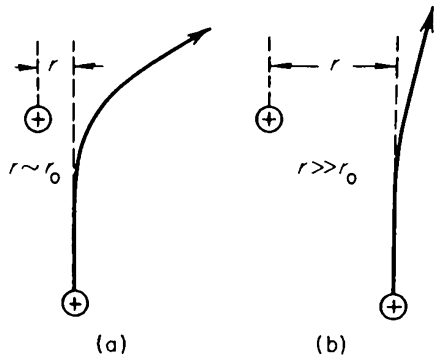


Fig. 6.6. Trajectory of an ion passing another ion with the same type of charge: (a) $r \sim r_0$, strong interaction; (b) $r \gg r_0$, weak interaction.

the order of magnitude of Z^2e^2/r^2. The time during which the force is acting is $t \sim r/v$, where v is the particle velocity. The velocity change during passage Δv is of the order of $Ft/m \sim Z^2e^2/mvr$ *. Since Δv can be both positive and negative, it is only natural to characterize the interaction by the square of the velocity change $(\Delta v)^2 \sim Z^4e^4/m^2v^2r^2$. The probability of such a change is proportional to the area of a ring $2\pi r\,dr$. Thus the rate of change of $(\Delta v)^2$ for a flux of particles Nv is the order of

$$\frac{d(\Delta v)^2}{dt} \sim Nv \int (\Delta v)^2 \cdot 2\pi r\,dr \sim \frac{NvZ^4e^4 2\pi}{m^2v^2} \int \frac{dr}{r},$$

where N is the particle number density. The lower limit on the integral is the minimum distance to which the particles can approach each other $r_0 = 2Z^2e^2/mv^2 = \frac{2}{3}Z^2e^2/kT$. At the upper limit, as $r \to \infty$, the integral diverges logarithmically. However, very "distant" interactions in an electrically neutral gas are screened off by the simultaneous action of the positive and negative charges. The screening radius, which may be taken to be the upper limit, is, clearly the Debye radius d (see §11, Chapter III). Using (3.78) for this quantity, we find

$$\int \frac{dr}{r} \approx \int_{r_0}^{d} \frac{dr}{r} = \ln \frac{d}{r_0} = \ln \Lambda, \qquad \Lambda = \frac{3(kT)^{3/2}}{2(4\pi)^{1/2}Z^3e^3N^{1/2}}. \tag{6.116}$$

If we define the relaxation time τ as the time during which $(\Delta v)^2$ changes by an amount of the order of v^2, and replace approximately v by $\bar{v}$ and mv^2 by $3kT$, we obtain

$$\frac{1}{\tau} = \frac{1}{v^2} \frac{d(\Delta v)^2}{dt} = N\bar{v} \frac{2\pi}{9} \frac{Z^4e^4}{(kT)^2} \ln \Lambda.$$

* *Editors' note.* The velocity v here denotes relative velocity and m the reduced mass of the two particles $m_1m_2/(m_1 + m_2)$, approximately the mass of either particle if their masses are of the same order.

More exact considerations [56] lead to the appearance in this equation of an additional numerical factor of the order of one, namely, if $\bar{v} = (8kT/\pi m)^{1/2}$ is the mean thermal speed, then

$$\frac{1}{\tau} = N\bar{v} \cdot 1.1\pi \frac{Z^4e^4}{(kT)^2} \ln \Lambda = \frac{8.8 \cdot 10^{-2} NZ^4}{A^{1/2}T^{\circ 3/2}} \ln \Lambda \text{ sec}^{-1}, \qquad (6.117)$$

where A is the atomic weight of the particles. In particular, for electron-electron collisions

$$\frac{1}{\tau_{ee}} = \frac{3.8N_e \ln \Lambda}{T^{\circ 3/2}} \text{ sec}^{-1}. \qquad (6.118)$$

Using the ordinary relationship between the collision frequency and the gas-kinetic cross section $1/\tau = N\bar{v}\sigma$, one can also introduce the concept of a cross section for "Coulomb collisions" of particles

$$\sigma = 0.69\pi \frac{Z^4e^4}{(kT)^2} \ln \Lambda = \frac{6 \cdot 10^{-6}Z^4}{T^{\circ 2}} \ln \Lambda = \frac{4.4 \cdot 10^{-14}Z^4}{T_{ev}^2} \ln \Lambda \text{ cm}^2. \qquad (6.119)$$

As can be seen, it differs from the elementary formula (6.115), which does not take into account "far collisions", by a factor which is approximately equal to $\ln \Lambda$. As follows from Table 6.7*, $\ln \Lambda$ is of the order of 10. The cross

Table 6.7
$\ln \Lambda$ FOR $Z = 1$

	N, cm^{-3}			
T, °K	10^{12}	10^{15}	10^{18}	10^{21}
10^3	5.97			
10^4	9.43	5.97		
10^5	12.8	9.43	5.97	
10^6	15.9	12.4	8.96	5.97

section has a weak logarithmic dependence on the density and is inversely proportional to the square of the temperature. It becomes comparable to ordinary gaskinetic cross sections $\sigma \sim 10^{-15}$ cm^2 at a temperature $T \sim$ 250,000°K†.

* The data in the table were taken from [56]. They are somewhat more accurate than those obtained from (6.116).

† It should be noted that when the temperature and energy are so large that the radius r_0 is smaller than the ion (complex) radius and the cross section is smaller than the gas-kinetic cross section, the frequency of collisions and the mean free path of the ions are determined by the gaskinetic rather than by the Coulomb cross section. In this case it should be kept in mind that the gaskinetic ion radius decreases with increasing charge.

The cross section σ and the mean free path $l = 1/N\sigma$ for charged particles are independent of mass, and so are the same for electrons and ions with the same temperatures (for $Z = 1$). The relaxation time, due to its dependence on the velocity, is proportional to the square root of the mass $\tau \sim 1/\bar{v} \sim m^{1/2}$, and the relaxation time for electrons is 100 times smaller than for ions (at the same temperatures). For example, in an electron gas with $T = 20{,}000°\text{K}$ and $N_e = 10^{18}\ \text{cm}^{-3}$, $\sigma \approx 6 \cdot 10^{-14}\ \text{cm}^2$ and $\tau = 2 \cdot 10^{-13}$ sec. In a gas consisting of hydrogen nuclei (protons) at the same temperature and density, the time is greater by a factor of 43, $\tau \approx 8.6 \cdot 10^{-12}$ sec. These estimates show that the temperature in each of the gases is established very rapidly,so that the problem of the relaxation time required to establish a translational temperature practically never arises.

The situation is different with respect to the establishment of thermodynamic equilibrium between an electron and an ion gas, that is, the equalization of the electron and ion temperatures. In a number of physical processes a difference in the temperatures of the ion and electron gases arises; this difference disappears with time as the system approaches thermodynamic equilibrium. Thus, for example, in a shock wave propagating through a plasma the shock heats only the ions, while the electrons remain cold. The gradual energy transfer from the ions to the electrons and the equilibration of their temperatures take place downstream of the shock, over a comparatively long time (see §12, Chapter VII). Let us estimate the relaxation time required for the exchange of energy between the ions and electrons, for the equilibration of their temperatures. The "cross section" (6.119) is independent of the mass of the charged particles and actually characterizes the probability of strong deflection of the particle from its original direction during an interaction. The effect of energy exchange appears, so to speak, to be a result of the deflection. When the masses of the particles are comparable, this strong deflection is simultaneously related to an appreciable exchange of energy, as a result of which the cross section σ does determine the rate of energy transfer during the collision of identical particles. However, when the interacting particles have sharply differing masses (electrons and ions) the energy transfer from a collision, according to the conservation laws, cannot exceed a fraction of the order of m_e/m of their kinetic energy. Therefore, appreciable energy transfer can occur only when the particles are subjected to very many collisions (approximately m/m_e).

In repeating the derivation of the "cross section" for collisions between electrons and ions, we note that the kinetic energy of the colliding particles is understood to denote the kinetic energy of their relative motion. If the electron temperature is not much lower than that of the ions, then the relative velocity is almost equal to the electron velocity. The reduced mass is also equal to the mass of the electron, so that the average energy of relative motion is characterized by the electron temperature. In addition, one of the factors

Z^2 in the expression for the cross section pertains to one of the particles, while the second factor Z^2 pertains to the other one. Since for an electron $Z = 1$, the factor Z^4 in the expression for the cross section is now replaced by Z^2. Thus, the "cross section" for "collisions" between electrons and ions is of the order of $\sigma' \approx \pi Z^2 e^4 \ln \Lambda/(kT_e)^2$, the time between "collisions" is $\tau' \sim 1/N\bar{v}_e\sigma'$, and the characteristic time for energy transfer is

$$\tau_{ei} \sim \frac{m}{m_e}\tau' \sim \frac{m}{m_e}\frac{1}{N\bar{v}_e\sigma'} *.$$

A more rigorous analysis [56] leads to the appearance of a numerical coefficient of the order of unity. After substituting the values of the constants, the expression for the time of energy transfer becomes

$$\tau_{ei} = \frac{252\,A \cdot T_e^{\circ 3/2}}{NZ^2 \ln \Lambda} = \frac{3.5 \cdot 10^8 A T_{ev}^{3/2}}{NZ^2 \ln \Lambda} \text{ sec}, \tag{6.120}$$

where A is the atomic weight of the ions and N is the ion number density. For example, if $N = 10^{18}$ cm^{-3}, $T_e = 20{,}000°$K, $Z = 1$, and $A = 16$ (oxygen atoms), $\tau_{ei} \approx 2.8 \cdot 10^{-9}$ sec.

When the difference between the ion and electron temperatures is not too great, it is natural to represent the change in temperature of one of the gases as an ordinary relaxation equation such as (6.2)

$$\frac{dT_e}{dt} = \frac{T - T_e}{\tau_{ei}}. \tag{6.121}$$

It turns out, however, that the rate equation for the equilibration of temperatures (6.121) is also valid at large temperature differences. Equation (6.121) with the exchange time given by (6.120) (only differing by a very small amount through a numerical coefficient of the order of unity) was originally derived by Landau [57] in 1937, by means of a rigorous analysis of the kinetic equation for a gas consisting of charged particles interacting in accordance with the Coulomb law.

We note that in the case of a weakly ionized gas the equation (6.121) describing energy exchange is still valid if we take into account exchange with neutral atoms by setting $1/\tau_{ei} = 1/\tau_{e,\text{ion}} + 1/\tau_{e,\text{neut}}$; here $\tau_{e,\text{ion}}$ is given by (6.120) above. As to $\tau_{e,\text{neut}}$, we may write from elementary considerations

$$\frac{1}{\tau_{e,\text{neut}}} \approx N_{\text{neut}}\bar{v}_e\sigma_{e,\text{elast}}\frac{2m_e}{m}, \tag{6.122}$$

where $\sigma_{e,\text{elast}}$ is the average cross section for elastic electron-atom collisions. Precise calculations [50] yield results close to the above. Ordinarily, for $T_e \sim 1$ ev, energy exchange with neutral atoms plays the principal role only when the degree of ionization is less than about 10^{-3}.

* In the case of interaction between electrons and complex ions at sufficiently large energy, the remark made in the second footnote following (6.119) still holds.

Cited references

Editors' note:

In the references cited we have used, as far as possible, the abbreviations for journals and reports used by *Chemical Abstracts*. A list of these abbreviations may be found in the List of Periodicals of the Chemical Abstracts Service published by the American Chemical Society.

Transliteration of Russian names has essentially followed the system adopted by the Library of Congress, but with no distinction between e and ë or between и and й, and with yu used for ю and ya for я. In the case of books translated from Russian into English the transliterated author names are those appearing on the translation. Russian titles have been translated into English, but where a translation is indicated the title given is that appearing on the translated version. A source of an English translation for all cited Russian references has been given whenever known to the editors.

Chapter I

1. Landau, L. D., and Lifshitz, E. M.
   Mechanics of Continuous Media. Gostekhizdat, Moscow, 2nd edition, 1954.
2. Zel'dovich, Ya. B.
   Theory of Shock Waves and Introduction to Gasdynamics. Izdat. Akad. Nauk SSSR, Moscow, 1946.
3. Kochin (Kotchine), N. E.
   Sur la théorie des ondes de choc dans un fluide, *Rend. Circolo Mat. Palermo* **50**, 305–344 (1926).
   Roze, A. V., Kibel', N. A., and Kochin, N. E.
   Theoretical Hydromechanics, Part 2. ONTI, Moscow, 1937.
4. Sedov, L. I.
   Le mouvement d'air en cas d'une forte explosion, *Compt. Rend. (Doklady) Acad. Sci. URSS* **52**, 17–20 (1946).
   Propagation of strong blast waves, *Prikl. Mat. i Mekh.* **10**, 241–250 (1946).
5. Sedov, L. I.
   Similarity and Dimensional Methods in Mechanics. Gostekhizdat, Moscow, 4th edition, 1957. English transl. (M. Holt, ed.), Academic Press, New York, 1959.
6. Taylor, G. I.
   The formation of a blast wave by a very intense explosion. II. The atomic explosion of 1945, *Proc. Roy. Soc. (London), Ser. A* **201**, 175–186 (1950).
7. Chernyi, G. G.
   The problem of a point explosion, *Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR* **112**, 213–216 (1957). Transl. as *Rep.* no. MOA TIL/T.4871, Ministry of Aviation (Gt. Brit.), 1959.

8. Goldstine, H. H., and von Neumann, J.
Blast wave calculation, *Commun. Pure Appl. Math.* **8**, 327–353 (1955).
9. Brode, H. L.
Numerical solutions of spherical blast waves, *J. Appl. Phys.* **26**, 766–775 (1955).
10. Okhotsimskii, D. E., Kondrasheva, I. L., Vlasova, Z. P., and Kazakova, R. K.
Calculation of a point explosion with counterpressure, *Tr. Mat. Inst. Akad. Nauk SSSR* **50** (1957).
11. Landau, L. D.
On shock waves at far distances from their place of generation, *Prikl. Mat. i Mekh.* **9**, 286–292 (1945).
12. Sadovskii, M. A.
The mechanical effect of blast waves in air with respect to data from experimental studies, *Physics of Explosions, Collection No. 1*, pp. 20–111. Izdat. Akad. Nauk SSSR, Moscow, 1952.
13. Kompaneets, A. S.
A point explosion in an inhomogeneous atmosphere, *Soviet Phys. "Doklady" (English Transl.)* **5**, 46–48 (1960).
14. Courant, R., and Friedrichs, K. O.
Supersonic Flow and Shock Waves. Wiley (Interscience), New York, 1957.
15. Stanyukovich, K. P.
Unsteady Motion of Continuous Media. Gostekhizdat, Moscow, 1955. English transl. (M. Holt, ed.), Academic Press, New York, 1960.
16. Imshennik, V. S.
The isothermal scattering of a gas cloud, *Soviet Phys. "Doklady" (English Transl.)* **5**, 253–256 (1960).
17. Molmud, P.
Expansion of a rarefied gas cloud into a vacuum, *Phys. Fluids* **3**, 362–366 (1960).
18. Nemchinov, I. V.
The sudden expansion of a plane gas layer with a gradual energy release, *Zh. Prikl. Mekhan. i Tekhn. Fiz.*, 1961, No. 1, 17–26.
The sudden expansion of a heated gas mass in the regular regime, *Zh. Prikl. Mekhan. i Tekhn. Fiz.*, 1964, No. 5, 18–29.

Chapter II

1. Ambartsumian, V. A. (ed.)
Theoretical Astrophysics. Gostekhizdat, Moscow, 1952. English transl., Pergamon Press, New York, 1958.
2. Unsöld, A.
Physik der Sternatmosphären, mit Besonderer Berücksichtigung der Sonne. Springer, Berlin, 2nd edition, 1955.
3. Mustel', E. P.
Stellar Atmospheres. Fizmatgiz, Moscow, 1960.
4. Landau, L. D., and Lifshitz, E. M.
Statistical Physics. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Mass., 1958.
5. Raizer, Yu. P.
On the structure of the front of strong shock waves in gases, *Soviet Phys. JETP (English Transl.)* **5**, 1242–1248 (1957).

6. Landau, L. D., and Lifshitz, E. M.
The Classical Theory of Fields. Gostekhizdat, Moscow, 3rd edition, 1960. English transl. (revised 2nd edition), Addison–Wesley, Reading, Mass., 1962.
7. Belen'kii, S. Z.
On the equations of hydrodynamics taking into account radiation, *Tr. Fiz. Inst. Akad. Nauk SSSR* **10**, 15–22 (1958).
8. Imshennik, V. S., and Morozov, Yu. I.
The energy-momentum radiation tensor in a moving medium for conditions close to equilibrium, *Zh. Prikl. Mekhan. i Tekhn. Fiz.*, 1963, No. 3, 3–10.
9. Davis, L. W.
Semiclassical treatment of the optical maser, *Proc. Inst. Elec. Electronics Engrs.* **51**, 76–79 (1963).
10. Jaynes, E. T., and Cummings, F. W.
Comparison of quantum and semiclassical radiation theories with application to the beam maser, *Proc. Inst. Elec. Electronics Engrs.* **51**, 89–109 (1963).
11. Kapitza, P. L., and Dirac, P. A. M.
The reflection of electrons from standing light waves, *Proc. Cambridge Phil. Soc.* **29**, 297–300 (1933).
12. Bartell, L. S., Thompson, H. B., and Roskos, R. R.
Observation of stimulated Compton scattering of electrons by laser beam, *Phys. Rev. Letters* **14**, 851–852 (1964).
13. Keldysh, L. V.
Ionization in the field of a strong electromagnetic wave, *Soviet Phys. JETP (English Transl.)* **20**, 1307–1314 (1965).
14. Weisskopf, V., and Wigner, E.
Über die natürliche Linienbreite in der Strahlung des harmonischen Oszillators, *Z. Physik* **65**, 18–29 (1930).
15. Landau, L. D., and Lifshitz, E. M.
Quantum Mechanics, Non-Relativistic Theory. Addison–Wesley, Reading, Mass., 1958.
16. Reif, T.
Fundamentals of Statistical and Thermal Physics. McGraw-Hill, New York, 1965.

Chapter III

1. Landau, L. D., and Lifshitz, E. M.
Statistical Physics. Addison–Wesley, Reading, Mass., 1958.
2. Godnev, I. N.
The Calculation of Thermodynamic Properties from Molecular Data. Gostekhizdat, Moscow, 1956.
3. Predvoditelev, A. S., *et al.*
Tables of Thermodynamic Properties of Air for Temperatures from 6000°K to 12,000°K and Pressures from .001 to 1000 atm. Izdat. Akad. Nauk SSSR, Moscow, 1957.
Thermodynamic Functions of Air (for Temperatures of 12,000 to 20,000°K and Pressures of 0.001 to 1000 atm). Izdat. Akad. Nauk SSSR, Moscow, 1959. English transl. Assoc. Technical Services, Inc., Glen Ridge, N. J., 1962.
4. Selivanov, V. V., and Shlyapintokh, I. Ya.
The thermodynamic properties of air for thermal ionization and the shock wave, *Zh. Fiz. Khim.* **32**, 670–678 (1958).

5. Stupochenko, E. V., Stakhanov, I. P., Samuilov, E. V., Pleshanov, A. S., and Rozhdestvenskii, I. B.
Thermodynamic properties of air in the temperature range from 1000 to 12,000°K and pressure range from 0.001 to 1000 atm., *Physical Gasdynamics*, pp. 3–38. Izdat. Akad. Nauk SSSR, Moscow, 1959.
6. Zel'dovich, Ya. B.
The proof of singularity of the solution of mass law equations, *Zh. Fiz. Khim.* **11**, 685–687 (1938).
7. Moore, C. E.
Atomic Energy Levels as Derived from the Analyses of Optical Spectra. Vols. I, II, III, Circular 467, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, 1949–1958.
8. Kaye, G. W. C., and Laby, T. H.
Tables of Physical and Chemical Constants and Some Mathematical Functions. Longmans Green, New York, 9th edition, 1941.
9. Fermi, E.
Sopra lo spostamento per pressione delle righe elevate delle serie spettrali, *Nuovo Cimento* **11**, 157–166 (1934).
10. Ecker, G., and Weizel, W.
Zustandsumme und effektive Ionisierungsspannung eines Atoms im Inneren des Plasmas, *Ann. Physik* **17**, 126–140 (1956).
Seaton, M. J.
A comparison of theory and experiment for photo-ionization cross-sections. I. Neon and the elements from boron to neon, *Proc. Roy. Soc. (London), Ser. A* **208**, 408–430 (1951).
Ehler, A. W., and Weissler, G. L.
Ultraviolet absorption of atomic nitrogen in its ionization continuum, *J. Opt. Soc. Am.* **45**, 1035–1043 (1955).
Vitense, E.
Der Aufbau der Sternatmosphären. IV. Kontinuierliche Absorption und Streuung als Funktion von Druck und Temperatur, *Z. Astrophys.* **28**, 81–112 (1951).
11. Timan, B. L.
The effect of the interaction of ions on their equilibrium concentration in the case of a thermally multiply ionized gas, *Zh. Eksperim. i Teor. Fiz.* **27**, 708–711 (1954).
12. Margenau, H., and Lewis, M.
Structure of spectral lines from plasmas, *Rev. Mod. Phys.* **31**, 569–615 (1959).
13. Kudrin, L. P.
The equation of state of partially ionized hydrogen, *Soviet Phys. JETP (English Transl.)* **13**, 798–801 (1961).
14. Benson, S. W., Buss, J. H., and Myers, H.
Thermodynamic properties of ionized gases, *IAS Paper* No. 59–95, Inst. of Aero. Sci., New York, N. Y., 1959.
15. Raizer, Yu. P.
A simple method of calculating the degree of ionization and thermodynamic functions of a multiply ionized gas, *Soviet Phys. JETP (English Transl.)* **9**, 1124–1126 (1959).
16. Zel'dovich, Ya. B., and Raizer, Yu. P.
Strong shock waves in gases, *Usp. Fiz. Nauk* **63**, 613–641 (1957).
17. Zel'dovich, Ya. B.
Theory of Shock Waves and Introduction to Gasdynamics. Izdat. Akad. Nauk SSSR, Moscow, 1946.

18. Davies, D. R.
Shock waves in air at very high pressures, *Proc. Phys. Soc. (London), Sect. A* **61**, 105–118 (1948).
19. Rozhdestvenskii, I. B.
Thermodynamic and gasdynamic properties of air behind a normal shock wave taking into account dissociation and ionization, *Physical Gasdynamics*, pp. 70–82. Izdat. Akad. Nauk SSSR, Moscow, 1959.
20. Gorban', N. F.
The determination of the flow variables behind a normal shock wave taking into account variable specific heat and dissociation, *Physical Gasdynamics*, pp. 83–93. Izdat. Akad. Nauk SSSR, Moscow, 1959.
21. Prokof'ev, V. A.
On the problem of the calculation of radiation in one-dimensional steady gas motion, *Uch. Zap., Mosk. Gos. Univ.*, 1954, No. 172, Mekhanika, 79–125.
22. Resler, E. L., Lin, S. C., and Kantrowitz, A.
The production of high temperature gases in shock tubes, *J. Appl. Phys.* **23**, 1390–1399 (1952).
23. Sabol, A. P.
Flow properties of strong shock waves in xenon gas as determined for thermal equilibrium conditions, *NACA Tech. Note* No. 3091 (1953).
24. Kholev, S. R.
Equilibrium parameters for very strong shock waves in monatomic gases and hydrogen, *Izv. Vysshikh. Uchebn. Zavedenii, Fiz.* 1959, No. 4, 28–37.
25. Christian, R. H., and Yarger, F. L.
Equation of state of gases by shock wave measurements. I. Experimental method and the Hugoniot of argon, *J. Chem. Phys.* **23**, 2042–2044 (1955).
26. Model', I. Sh.
Measurement of high temperatures in strong shock waves in gases, *Soviet Phys. JETP (English Transl.)* **5**, 589–601 (1957).
27. Sachs, R. G.
Some properties of very intense shock waves, *Phys. Rev.* **69**, 514–522 (1946).
28. Tsukerman, V. A., and Manakova, M. A.
Sources of short x-ray pulses for investigating fast processes, *Soviet Phys.—Tech. Phys. (English Transl.)* **2**, 353–363 (1957).
29. Gombàs, P.
Die Statistische Theorie des Atoms und ihre Anwendungen. Springer, Wien, 1949.
30. Landau, L. D., and Lifshitz, E. M.
Quantum Mechanics, Non-Relativistic Theory. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Mass., 1958.
31. Latter, R.
Temperature behavior of the Thomas-Fermi statistical model for atoms, *Phys. Rev.* **99**, 1854–1870 (1955).
32. Brachman, M. K.
Thermodynamic functions on the generalized Fermi-Thomas theory, *Phys. Rev.* **84**, 1263 (1951).
33. Bethe, H. A., and Marshak, R. E.
The generalized Thomas-Fermi method as applied to stars, *Astrophys. J.* **91**, 239–243 (1940).
Feynman, R. P., Metropolis, N., and Teller, E.
Equations of state of elements based on the generalized Fermi-Thomas theory, *Phys. Rev.* **75**, 1561–1573 (1949).

Gilvarry, J. J.
Thermodynamics of the Thomas-Fermi atom at low temperature, *Phys. Rev.* **96**, 934–943 (1954).
Solution of the temperature-perturbed Thomas-Fermi equation, *Phys. Rev.* **96**, 944–948 (1954).
Gilvarry, J. J., and Peebles, G. H.
Solutions of the temperature-perturbed Thomas-Fermi equation, *Phys. Rev.* **99**, 550–552 (1955).

34. Larkin, A. I.
Thermodynamic functions of a low temperature plasma, *Soviet Phys. JETP (English Transl.)* **11**, 1363–1364 (1960).
Vedenov, A. A., and Larkin, A. I.
Equation of state of a plasma, *Soviet Phys. JETP (English Transl.)* **9**, 806–811 (1959).

Chapter IV

1. Penner, S. S., Harshbarger, F., and Vali, V.
An introduction to the use of the shock tube for the determination of physio-chemical parameters, *in Combustion Researches and Reviews 1957*, pp. 134–172. Butterworths, London, 1957.
2. Losev, S. A., and Osipov, A. I.
The study of nonequilibrium phenomena in shock waves, *Soviet Phys.—Usp. (English Transl.)* **4**, 525–552 (1962).
3. Ladenburg, R. W., Lewis, B., Pease, R. N., and Taylor, H. S. (eds.)
Physical Measurements in Gas Dynamics and Combusion (Vol. IX of *High Speed Aerodynamics and Jet Propulsion*). Princeton Univ. Press, Princeton, N.J., 1954.
4. Rakhmatullin, Kh. A., and Semenov, S. S. (eds.)
Shock Tubes, A Collection of Papers Translated into Russian. Inostrannoi Lit., Moscow, 1962.
5. Strehlow, R. A., and Cohen, A.
Limitations of the reflected shock technique for studying fast chemical reactions and its application to the observation of relaxation in nitrogen and oxygen, *J. Chem. Phys.* **30**, 257–265 (1959).
6. Fowler, R. G., Atkinson, W. R., Compton, W. D., and Lee, R. J.
Shock waves in low pressure spark discharges, *Phys. Rev.* **88**, 137–138 (1952).
Fowler, R. G., Atkinson, W. R., and Marks, L. W.
Ion concentrations and recombination in expanding low pressure sparks, *Phys. Rev.* **87**, 966–970 (1952).
7. Kolb, A. C.
Production of high-energy plasmas by magnetically driven shock waves, *Phys. Rev.* **107**, 345–350 (1957).
Propagation of strong shock waves in pulsed longitudinal magnetic fields, *Phys. Rev.* **107**, 1197–1198 (1957).
8. Wiese, W., Berg, H. F., and Griem, H. R.
Measurements of temperatures and densities in shock-heated hydrogen and helium plasmas, *Phys. Rev.* **120**, 1079–1085 (1960).
9. Kholev, S. R., and Poltavchenko, D. S.
Acceleration of the plasma of a discharge and production of strong shock waves in a camera with coaxial electrodes, *Soviet Phys. "Doklady" (English Transl.)* **5**, 356–360 (1960).

10. Kholev, S. R., and Krestnikova, L. I.
Experimental investigation of a directed gas flow from an impulsive discharge, *Izv. Vysshikh. Uchebn. Zavedenii, Fiz.* 1960, No. 1, 29–37.
11. Patrick, R. M.
High-speed shock waves in a magnetic annular shock tube, *Phys. Fluids* **2**, 589–598 (1959).
12. Josephson, V.
Production of high-velocity shocks, *J. Appl. Phys.* **29**, 30–32 (1958).
13. Ziemer, R. W.
Experimental investigation in magneto-aerodynamics, *ARS J.* **29**, 642–647 (1959).
14. Kudryavtseva, E. V., and Ionova, V. P. (eds.)
Moving Plasmas, A Collection of Papers Translated into Russian. Inostrannoi Lit., Moscow, 1961.
15. *Optical Pyrometry in Plasmas, A Collection of Papers Translated into Russian.* Inostrannoi Lit., Moscow, 1960.
16. Lochte-Holtgreven, W.
Production and measurement of high temperatures, *Rept. Progr. Phys.* **21**, 312–383 (1958).
17. Ryabinin, Yu. N.
Gases at High Densities and Temperatures. Fizmatgiz, Moscow, 1959.
18. Ferri, A. (ed.)
Fundamental Data Obtained from Shock Tube Experiments. AGARDograph No. 41, Pergamon Press, New York, 1961.
19. Stupochenko, E. V., Losev, S. A., and Osipov, A. I.
Relaxation Processes in Shock Waves. Nauka, Moscow, 1965.

Chapter V

1. Landau, L. D., and Lifshitz, E. M.
The Classical Theory of Fields. Gostekhizdat, Moscow, 3rd edition, 1960. English transl. (revised 2nd edition), Addison-Wesley, Reading, Mass., 1962.
2. Landau, L. D., and Lifshitz, E. M.
Quantum Mechanics, Non-Relativistic Theory. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Mass., 1958.
3. Heitler, W.
The Quantum Theory of Radiation. Oxford Univ. Press, London and New York, 2nd edition, 1944.
4. Menzel, D. H., and Pekeris, C. L.
Absorption coefficients and hydrogen line intensities, *Monthly Notices Roy. Astron. Soc.* **96**, 77–111 (1935).
5. Bethe, H. A., and Salpeter, E. E.
Quantum Mechanics of One- and Two-Electron Atoms. Academic Press, New York, 1957.
6. Ambartsumian, V. A. (ed.).
Theoretical Astrophysics, Gostekhizdat, Moscow, 1952. English transl., Pergamon Press, New York, 1958.
7. Bates, D. R.
Calculation of the cross-section of neutral atoms and positive and negative ions towards the absorption of radiation in the continuum, *Monthly Notices Roy. Astron. Soc.* **106**, 432–445 (1946).

8. Keck, J. C., Camm, J. C., Kivel, B., and Wentink, T., Jr.
Radiation from hot air. Part II. Shock tube study of absolute intensities, *Ann. Phys. (N.Y.)* **7**, 1–38 (1959).
9. Branscomb, L. M., Burch, D. S., Smith, S. J., and Geltman, S.
Photodetachment cross section of the electron affinity of atomic oxygen, *Phys. Rev.* **111**, 504–513 (1958).
10. Unsöld, A.
Physik der Sternatmosphären, mit Besonderer Berücksichtigung der Sonne. Springer, Berlin, 2nd edition, 1955.
11. Unsöld, A.
Über das kontinuierliche Spektrum der Hg-Hochdrucklampe, des Unterwasserfunkens und ähnlicher Gasentladungen, *Ann. Physik* **33**, 607–616 (1938).
12. Vitense, E.
Der Aufbau der Sternatmosphären. IV. Kontinuierliche Absorption und Streuung als Funktion von Druck und Temperatur, *Z. Astrophys.* **28**, 81–112 (1951).
Schirmer, H.
Die Bestimmung der Temperatur der zylindreschen Saüle einer Xenon-Hochdruckentladung, *Z. Angew. Phys.* **6**, 3–9 (1954).
13. Burgess, A., and Seaton, M. J.
Cross sections for photoionization from valence-electron states, *Rev. Mod. Phys.* **30**, 992–993 (1958).
A general formula for the calculation of atomic photo-ionization cross sections, *Monthly Notices Roy. Astron. Soc.* **120**, 121–151 (1960).
Seaton, M. J.
The quantum defect method, *Monthly Notices Roy. Astron. Soc.* **118**, 504–518 (1958).
14. Biberman, L. M., and Norman, G. E.
On the calculation of photoionization absorption, *Opt. Spectr. (USSR) (English Transl.)* **8**, 230–232 (1960).
15. Biberman, L. M., Norman, G. E., and Ul'yanov, K. N.
On the calculation of photoionization absorption in atomic gases, *Opt. Spectr. (USSR) (English Transl.)* **10**, 297–299 (1961).
16. Chandrasekhar, S., and Breen, F. H.
The motion of an electron in the Hartree field of an atom, *Astrophys. J.* **103**, 41–70 (1946).
On the continuous absorption coefficient of the negative hydrogen ion. III, *Astrophys. J.* **104**, 430–445 (1946).
17. Biberman, L. M., and Romanov, V. E.
On the mechanism of formation of continuous background in the emission spectrum of hot gases, *Opt. i Spektroskopiya* **3**, 646–648 (1957).
18. Raizer, Yu. P.
Simple method for computing the mean range of radiation in ionized gases at high temperatures, *Soviet Phys. JETP (English Transl.)* **10**, 769–771 (1960).
19. Becker, R.
Theorie der Elektrizität. Vol. II. Elektronentheorie. B. G. Teubner, Leipzig and Berlin, 1933.
20a. Herzberg, G.
Molecular Spectra and Molecular Structure. I. Spectra of Diatomic Molecules. Van Nostrand, Princeton, N. J., 2nd edition, 1950.
20b. Gaydon, A. G.
Dissociation Energies and Spectra of Diatomic Molecules. Wiley, New York, 1947.

20c. Kondrat'ev, V. N.
The Structure of Atoms and Molecules. Fizmatgiz, Moscow, 1959.

21. Kivel, B., Mayer, H., and Bethe, H.
Radiation from hot air. Part I. Theory of nitric oxide absorption, *Ann. Phys. (N.Y.)* **2**, 57–80 (1957).

22. Jarmain, W. R., Fraser, P. A., and Nicholls, R. W.
Vibrational transition probabilities of diatomic molecules: collected results N_2, N_2^+, NO, O_2^+, *Astrophys. J.* **118**, 228–233 (1953).
Fraser, P. A., Jarmain, W. R., and Nicholls, R. W.
Vibrational transition probabilities of diatomic molecules; collected results II, N_2^+, CN, C_2, O_2, TiO, *Astrophys. J.* **119**, 286–290 (1954).
Jarmain, W. R., Fraser, P. A., and Nicholls, R. W.
Vibrational transition probabilities of diatomic molecules; collected results. III. N_2, NO, O_2, O_2^+, OH, CO, CO^+, *Astrophys. J.* **122**, 55–61 (1955).
Jarmain, W. R., and Nicholls, R. W.
Vibrational transition probabilities to high quantum numbers for the nitrogen first and second positive band systems, *Can. J. Phys.* **32**, 201–204 (1954).
Turner, R. G., and Nicholls, R. W.
An experimental study of band intensities in the first positive system of N_2. I. Vibrational transition probabilities, *Can. J. Phys.* **32**, 468–474 (1954).
Fraser, P. A.
A method of determining the electronic transition moment for diatomic molecules, *Can. J. Phys.* **32**, 515–521 (1954).
Nicholls, R. W.
An experimental study of band intensities in the first positive system of N_2. III. Quantitative treatment of eye estimates, *Can. J. Phys.* **32**, 722–725 (1954).
Nicholls, R. W., and Jarmain, W.
r-Centroids: average internuclear separations associated with molecular bands, *Proc. Phys. Soc. (London) Sect. A* **69**, 253–264 (1956).

23. Biberman, L. M., and Yakubov, I. T.
An approximate method for calculating Franck–Condon factors, *Opt. Spectr. (USSR) (English Transl.)* **8**, 155–158 (1960).

24. Losev, S. A.
On the absorption of ultraviolet radiation by oxygen heated to temperatures of several thousand degrees. *Nauchn. Dokl. Vysshei Shkoly, Fiz.-Mat. Nauki*, 1958, No. 5, 197–200.

25. Weber, D., and Penner, S. S.
Absolute intensities for the ultraviolet γ bands of NO, *J. Chem. Phys.* **26**, 860–861 (1957).

26. Ditchburn, R. W., and Heddle, D. W. O.
Absorption cross-sections in the vacuum ultra-violet. I. Continuous absorption of oxygen (1800 to 1300 Å), *Proc. Roy. Soc. (London), Ser. A* **220**, 61–70 (1953).
Absorption cross-sections in the vacuum ultra-violet. II. The Schumann–Runge bands of oxygen (2000 to 1750 Å), *Proc. Roy. Soc. (London), Ser. A* **226**, 509–521 (1954).

27. Biberman, L. M., Erkovich, S. P., and Soshnikov, V. N.
The transition probability in the Schumann–Runge band system of the O_2 molecule, *Opt. Spectr. (USSR) (English Transl.)* **7**, 346–347 (1959).

27a. Soshnikov, V. N.
Absolute intensities of electronic transitions in diatomic molecules, *Soviet Phys.—Usp. (English Transl.)* **4**, 425–440 (1961).

28. Meyerott, R. E.
Radiation heat transfer to hypersonic vehicles, *Combustion and Propulsion, Third AGARD Colloquium* (M. W. Thring *et al.*, eds.), pp. 431–450. Pergamon, New York, 1958.
29. Landau, L. D., and Lifshitz, E. M.
Statistical Physics. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Mass., 1958.
30. Logan, J. G., Jr.
Recent advances in determination of radiative properties of gases at high temperatures, *Jet Propulsion* **28**, 795–798 (1958).
31. Keck, J., Camm, J., and Kivel, B.
Absolute emission intensity of Schumann–Runge radiation from shock heated oxygen, *J. Chem. Phys.* **28**, 723–724 (1958).
32. Wentink, T., Jr., Planet, W., Hammerling, P., and Kivel, B.
Infrared continuum radiation from high-temperature air, *J. Appl. Phys.* **29**, 742–743 (1958).
32a. Armstrong, B. H., and Meyerott, R. E.
Absorption coefficients for high-temperature nitrogen, oxygen, and air, *Phys. Fluids* **3**, 138–140 (1960).
33. Losev, S. A., Generalov, N. A., and Terebenina, L. B.
On the absorption of ultraviolet radiation behind a shock wave in air, *Opt. Spectr. (USSR) (English Transl.)* **8**, 300–301 (1960).
34. Model', I. Sh.
Measurement of high temperatures in strong shock waves in gases, *Soviet Phys. JETP (English Transl.)* **5**, 589–601 (1957).
35. Dixon, J. K.
The absorption coefficient of nitrogen dioxide in the visible spectrum, *J. Chem. Phys.* **8**, 157–160 (1940).
36. Harris, L., and King, G. W.
The infrared absorption spectra of nitrogen dioxide and tetroxide, *J. Chem. Phys.* **2**, 51–57 (1934).
37. Lambrey, M.
Sur le spectre d'absorption ultraviolet du peroxyde d'azote, *Compt. Rend.* **188**, 251–252 (1929).
38. Raizer, Yu. P.
Glow of air during a strong explosion, and the minimum brightness of a fireball, *Soviet Phys. JETP (English Transl.)* **7**, 331–339 (1958).
39. Raizer, Yu. P.
The formation of nitrogen oxides in the shock wave generated by a strong explosion in air, *Zh. Fiz. Khim.* **33**, 700–709 (1959).
40. Penner, S. S.
Quantitative Molecular Spectroscopy and Gas Emissivities. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Mass., 1959.
41. El'yashevich, M. A.
Atomic and Molecular Spectroscopy. Fizmatgiz, Moscow, 1962.
42. Dronov, A. P., Sviridov, A. G., and Sobolev, N. N.
The continuous emission spectra of krypton and xenon behind a shock wave, *Opt. Spectr. (USSR) (English Transl.)* **12**, 383–389 (1962).
43. Kivel, B., Hammerling, P., and Teare, J. D.
Radiation from the non-equilibrium region of normal shocks in oxygen, nitrogen and air, *Planetary Space Sci.* **3**, 132–137 (1961).

44. Kivel, B.
Radiation from hot air and its effect on stagnation-point heating, *J. Aerospace Sci.* **28**, 96–102 (1961).
45. Allen, R. A., Camm, J. C., and Keck, J. C.
Radiation from hot nitrogen, *J. Quant. Spectr. and Radiative Transfer* **1**, 269–277 (1961).
46. Olfe, D. B.
Mean beam length calculations for radiation from non-transparent gases, *J. Quant. Spectr. and Radiative Transfer* **1**, 169–176 (1961).
47. Penner, S. S.
The determination of absolute intensities and *f*-numbers from shock-tube studies, *Fundamental Data Obtained from Shock Tube Experiments* (A. Ferri, ed.), pp. 261–290. AGARDograph No. 41, Pergamon Press, New York, 1961.
48. Faizullov, F. S., Sobolev, N. N., and Kudryavtsev, E. M.
The temperature of nitrogen and air behind shock waves, *Soviet Phys. "Doklady" (English Transl.)* **4**, 833–836 (1960).
49. Biberman, L. M., Vorob'ev, V. S., and Norman, G. E.
Energy emitted in spectral lines by a plasma at equilibrium, *Opt. Spectr. (USSR) (English Transl.)* **14**, 176–179 (1963).
50. Penner, S. S., and Thomas, M.
Approximate theoretical calculation of continuum opacities, *AIAA J.* **2**, 1572–1575 (1964).
51. Biberman, L. M., and Lagar'kov, A. N.
Effect of spectral lines on the coefficient of radiant heat conduction, *Opt. Spectr. (USSR) (English Transl.)* **16**, 173–175 (1964).
52. Vorob'ev, V. S., and Norman, G. E.
Energy radiated in spectral lines by an equilibrium plasma. II, *Opt. Spectr. (USSR) (English Transl.)* **17**, 96–101 (1964).
53. Bates, D. R. (ed.)
Atomic and Molecular Processes. Academic Press, New York, 1962.
54. Sobel'man, I. N.
Introduction to the Theory of Atomic Spectra. Moscow, 1963.
55. Biberman, L. M., and Norman, G. E.
Recombination and bremsstrahlung in plasmas (free-bound and free-free transitions of electrons in the fields of positive ions), *J. Quant. Spectr. and Radiative Transfer* **3**, 221–245 (1963).
56. Biberman, L. M., Vorob'ev, V. S., Norman, G. E., and Yakubov, I. T.
Radiation heating in hypersonic flow, *Kosmicheskie Issledovaniya* **2**, No. 3, 441–454 (1964).
57. Allen, R. A., and Textoris, A.
Evidence for the existence of N^- from the continuum radiation from shock waves, *J. Chem. Phys.* **40**, 3445–3446 (1964).
58. Norman, G. E.
The role of the negative nitrogen ion N^- in the production of the continuous spectrum of nitrogen and air plasmas, *Opt. Spectr. (USSR) (English Transl.)* **17**, 94–96 (1964).
59. Levitt, B. P.
Thermal emission from nitrogen dioxide, *Trans. Faraday Soc.* **58**, 1789–1800 (1962).
60. Brown, S. C.
Basic Data of Plasma Physics. Wiley, New York, 1959.
61. Raizer, Yu. P.
Bremsstrahlung radiation from an electron due to scattering by neutral atoms with

correlation of collisions taken into account, *Zh. Prikl. Mekhan. i Tekhn. Fiz.*, 1964, No. 5, 149–151.

62. Zel'dovich, Ya. B., and Raizer, Yu. P.
Cascade ionization of a gas by a light pulse, *Soviet Phys. JETP (English Transl.)* **20**, 772–780 (1965).
63. Ginzburg, V. L.
Propagation of Electromagnetic Waves in Plasma. Fizmatgiz, Moscow, 1960. English transl. (W. L. Sadowski and D. M. Gallik, eds.), Gordon and Breach, New York, 1962.
64. Huebner, W. F., *et al.* (eds.)
Opacities. Proc. Second International Conf., 1964 *in J. Quant. Spectr. and Radiative Transfer* **5**, 1–280 (1965).
65. Meyerand, R. G., Jr., and Haught, A. F.
Gas breakdown at optical frequencies, *Phys. Rev. Letters* **11**, 401–402 (1963).
66. Damon, E. K., and Tomlinson, R. G.
Observation of ionization of gases by a ruby laser, *Appl. Opt.* **2**, 546–547 (1963).
67. Minck, R. W.
Optical frequency electrical discharges in gases, *J. Appl. Phys.* **35**, 252–254 (1964).
68. Meyerand, R. G., Jr., and Haught, A. F.
Optical-energy absorption and high-density plasma production, *Phys. Rev. Letters* **13**, 7–9 (1964).
69. Ramsden, S. A., and Davies, W. E. R.
Radiation scattered from the plasma produced by a focused ruby laser beam, *Phys. Rev. Letters* **13**, 227–229 (1964).
70. Mandel'shtam, S. L., Pashinin, P. P., Prokhindeev, A. V., and Sukhodrev, N. K.
Study of the "spark" produced in air by focused laser radiation, *Soviet Phys. JETP (English Transl.)* **20**, 1344–1346 (1965).
71. Mandel'shtam, S. L., Pashinin, P. P., Prokhorov, A. M., Raizer, Yu. P., and Sukhodrev, N. K.
Investigation of the spark discharge produced in air by focusing laser radiation. II, *Soviet Phys. JETP (English Transl.)* **22**, 91–96 (1966).
72. Ambartsumyan, R. V., Basov, N. G., Boiko, V. A., Zuev, V. S., Krokhin, O. N., Kryukov, P. G., Senatskii, Yu. V., and Stoilov, Yu. Yu.
Heating of matter by focused laser radiation, *Soviet Phys. JETP (English Transl.)* **21**, 1061–1064 (1965).
73. Keldysh, L. V.
Ionization in the field of a strong electromagnetic wave, *Soviet Phys. JETP (English Transl.)* **20**, 1307–1314 (1965).
74. Askar'yan, G. A., and Rabinovich, M. S.
Cascade ionization in a medium by an intense light flash, *Soviet Phys. JETP (English Transl.)* **21**, 190–192 (1965).
75. Wright, J. K.
Theory of the electrical breakdown of gases by intense pulses of light, *Proc. Phys. Soc. (London)* **84**, 41–46 (1964).
76. Ryutov, D. D.
Theory of breakdown of noble gases at optical frequencies, *Soviet Phys. JETP (English Transl.)* **20**, 1472–1479 (1965).
77. Raizer, Yu. P.
Heating of a gas by a powerful light pulse, *Soviet Phys. JETP (English Transl.)* **21**, 1009–1017 (1965).

78. Ramsden, S. A., and Savic, P.
A radiative detonation model for the development of a laser-induced spark in air, *Nature* **203**, 1217–1219 (1964).
79. Basov, N. G., and Krokhin, O. N.
Conditions for heating up of a plasma by the radiation from an optical generator, *Soviet Phys. JETP* (*English Transl.*) **19**, 123–125 (1964).
80. Dawson, J. M.
On the production of plasma by giant pulse lasers, *Phys. Fluids* **7**, 981–987 (1964).
81. Zel'dovich, Ya. B.
On the theory of propagating detonations in gas-like systems, *Zh. Eksperim. i Teor. Fiz.* **10**, 542–568 (1940).
82. Zel'dovich, Ya. B., and Kompaneets, A. S.
Theory of Detonation. Academic Press, New York, 1960.
83. Zel'dovich, B. Ya., and Pilipetskii, N. F.
Laser radiation field focused by real systems, *Izv. Vysshikh Uchebn. Zavedenii, Radiofiz.* **9**, 95–101 (1966).
84. Ivanova, A. V.
Photoionization of optical electrons in the ions N V and O VI, *Opt. Spectr.* (*USSR*) (*English Transl.*) **16**, 502–504 (1964).
85. Ivanova, A. V., and Solodchenkova, S. A.
Quantum-mechanical calculation of continuous absorption coefficients for some components of intensely heated air, *Opt. Spectr.* (*USSR*) (*English Transl.*) **20**, 220–223 (1966).
86. Raizer, Yu. P.
Breakdown and heating of a gas under the influence of a laser beam, *Soviet Phys.—Usp.* (*English Transl.*) **8**, 650–673 (1966).
87. Spitzer, L., Jr.
Physics of Fully Ionized Gases. Wiley (Interscience), New York, 2nd edition, 1962.

Chapter VI

1. Hornig, D. F.
Energy exchange in shock waves, *J. Phys. Chem.* **61**, 856–860 (1957).
2. Greene, E. F., Cowan, G. R., and Hornig, D. F.
The thickness of shock fronts in argon and nitrogen and rotational heat capacity lags, *J. Chem. Phys.* **19**, 427–434 (1951).
3. Greene, E. F., and Hornig, D. F.
The shape and thickness of shock fronts in argon, hydrogen, nitrogen, and oxygen, *J. Chem. Phys.* **21**, 617–624 (1953).
4. Leskov, L. V., and Savin, F. A.
On the relaxation of nonequilibrium gas systems, *Soviet Phys.—Usp.* (*English Transl.*) **3**, 912–927 (1961).
5. Losev, S. A., and Osipov, A. I.
The study of nonequilibrium phenomena in shock waves, *Soviet Phys.—Usp.* (*English Transl.*) **4**, 525–552 (1962).
6. Zartmann, I. F.
Ultrasonic velocities and absorption in gases at low pressures, *J. Acoust. Soc. Am.* **21**, 171–174 (1949).

7. Van Itterbeek, A., and Vermaelen, R.
Mesures sur l'absorption et la vitesse de propagation du son dans l'hydrogène léger et l'hydrogène lourd entre 300°K et 60°K, *Physica* **9**, 345–355 (1942).
8. Zmuda, A. J.
Dispersion of velocity and anomalous absorption of ultrasonics in nitrogen, *J. Acoust. Soc. Am.* **23**, 472–477 (1951).
9. Connor, J. V.
Ultrasonic dispersion in oxygen, *J. Acoust. Soc. Am.* **30**, 297–300 (1958).
10. Petralia, S.
Interferometria ultrasonora nei gas (IV). Assorbimento di ultrasuoni nell'ammoniaca, *Nuovo Cimento, Ser.* 9 **10**, 817–826 (1953).
11. Ener, C., Gabrysh, A. F., and Hubbard, J. C.
Ultrasonic velocity, dispersion, and absorption in dry, CO_2-free air, *J. Acoust. Soc. Am.* **24**, 474–477 (1952).
12. Landau, L. D., and Lifshitz, E. M.
Quantum Mechanics, Non-Relativistic Theory. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Mass., 1958.
13. Schwartz, R. N., Slawsky, Z. I., and Herzfeld, K. F.
Calculation of vibrational relaxation time in gases, *J. Chem. Phys.* **20**, 1591–1599 (1952).
14. Osipov, A. I.
The relaxation of the vibrational motion in an isolated system of harmonic oscillators, *Soviet Phys. "Doklady" (English Transl.)* **5**, 102–104 (1960).
15. Landau, L. D., and Teller, E.
Zur Theorie der Schalldispersion, *Physik. Z. Sowjetunion* **10**, 34–43 (1936).
16. Blackman, V.
Vibrational relaxation in oxygen and nitrogen, *J. Fluid Mech.* **1**, 61–85 (1956).
17. Zener, C.
Interchange of translational, rotational and vibrational energy in molecular collisions, *Phys. Rev.* **37**, 556–569 (1931).
Low velocity inelastic collisions, *Phys. Rev.* **38**, 277–281 (1931).
18. Schwartz, R. N., and Herzfeld, K, F.
Vibrational relaxation times in gases (three-dimensional treatment), *J. Chem. Phys.* **22**, 767–773 (1954).
18a. Herzfeld, K. F.
Calculations of absolute relaxation times in gases, *Proc. Third International Cong. on Acoustics Stuttgart, 1959. Vol. I. Principles* (L. Cremer, ed.), pp. 503–504. Elsevier (Van Nostrand), New York, 1961.
19. Knötzel, H., and Knötzel, L.
Schallabsorption und Dispersion in Sauerstoff, *Ann. Physik* **2**, 393–403 (1948).
20. Huber, A. W., and Kantrowitz, A.
Heat-capacity lag measurements in various gases, *J. Chem. Phys.* **15**, 275–284 (1947).
21. Herron, J. T., Franklin, J. L., Bradt, P., and Dibeler, V. H.
Kinetics of nitrogen atom recombination, *J. Chem. Phys.* **29**, 230–231 (1958).
22. Harteck, P., Reeves, R. R., and Mannella, G.
Rate of recombination of nitrogen atoms, *J. Chem. Phys.* **29**, 608–610 (1958).
23. Wentink, T., Jr., Sullivan, J. O., and Wray, K. L.
Nitrogen atomic recombination at room temperature, *J. Chem. Phys.* **29**, 231–232 (1958).
24. Wigner, E.
Calculation of the rate of elementary association reactions, *J. Chem. Phys.* **5**, 720–725 (1937).
Some remarks on the theory of reaction rates, *J. Chem. Phys.* **7**, 646–652 (1939).

25. Britton, D., Davidson, N., Gehman, W., and Schott, G.
Shock waves in chemical kinetics: further studies on the rate of dissociation of molecular iodine, *J. Chem. Phys.* **25**, 804–809 (1956).
26. Bunker, D. L., and Davidson, N.
A further study of the flash photolysis of iodine, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80**, 5085–5090 (1958).
27. Fowler, R. H., and Guggenheim, E. A.
Statistical Thermodynamics. Cambridge Univ. Press, London and New York, 1939.
28. Stupochenko, E. V., and Osipov, A. I.
On the mechanism of thermal dissociation of diatomic molecules, *Zh. Fiz. Khim.* **32**, 1673–1674 (1958).
29. Stupochenko, E. V., and Osipov, A. I.
Kinetics of thermal dissociation of diatomic molecules, *Russ. J. Phys. Chem.* (*English Transl.*) **33**, 36–39 (1959).
30. Matthews, D. L.
Interferometric measurement in the shock tube of the dissociation rate of oxygen, *Phys. Fluids* **2**, 170–178 (1959).
31. Byron, S. R.
Measurement of the rate of dissociation of oxygen, *J. Chem. Phys.* **30**, 1380–1392 (1959).
32. Generalov, N. A., and Losev, S. A.
On an investigation of nonequilibrium phenomena behind the front of a shock wave in air. Dissociation of oxygen, *Zh. Prikl. Mekhan. i Tekhn. Fiz.*, 1960, No. 2, 64–73.
33. Zinman, W. G.
Recent advances in chemical kinetics of homogeneous reactions in dissociated air, *ARS J.* **30**, 233–238 (1960).
34. Glick, H. S., and Wurster, W. H.
Shock tube study of dissociation relaxation in oxygen, *J. Chem. Phys.* **27**, 1224–1226 (1957).
35. Palmer, H. B., and Hornig, D. F.
Rate of dissociation of bromine in shock waves, *J. Chem. Phys.* **26**, 98–105 (1957).
36. Britton, D., and Davidson, N.
Shock waves in chemical kinetics. Rate of dissociation of molecular bromine, *J. Chem. Phys.* **25**, 810–813 (1956).
37. Nikitin, E. E.
On the calculation of the velocity distribution of diatomic molecules, *Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR* **119**, 526–529 (1958).
38. Glasstone, S., Laidler, K. J., and Eyring, H.
The Theory of Rate Processes; The Kinetics of Chemical Reactions, Viscosity, Diffusion and Electrochemical Phenomena. McGraw-Hill, New York, 1941.
39. Zel'dovich, Ya. B., Sadovnikov, P. Ya., and Frank-Kamenetskii, D. A.
The Oxidation of Nitrogen by Combustion. Izdat. Akad. Nauk SSSR, Moscow, 1947.
40. Glick, H. S., Klein, J. J., and Squire, W.
Single-pulse shock tube studies of the kinetics of the reaction $N_2+O_2 \rightleftarrows 2NO$ between 2000–3000°K, *J. Chem. Phys.* **27**, 850–857 (1957).
41. Raizer, Yu. P.
The formation of nitrogen oxides in the shock wave generated by a strong explosion in air, *Zh. Fiz. Khim.* **33**, 700–709 (1959).
42. Kaye, G. W. C., and Laby, T. H.
Tables of Physical and Chemical Constants and Some Mathematical Functions. Long-

mans Green, New York, 9th edition, 1941.
43. Zeise, H.
Chemische Konstante und thermodynamisches Potential von NO_2-Gas und das Gasgleichgewicht $2NO + O_2 \rightleftarrows 2NO_2$, aus Spektroskopischen daten Berechnet, *Z. Elektrochem.* **42**, 785–789 (1936).
44. Ramstetter, Dr.-Ing.
Messungen der Geschwindigkeit $2NO_2 \leftrightarrows 2NO + O_2$, pp. 106–118, *in* Bodenstein, M., Bildung und Zersetzung der Höheren Stickoxyde, *Z. Physik. Chem.* (*Leipzig*) **100**, 68–123 (1922).
Lindner, Fraulein Dr.
Messungen der Gleichgewichts $2NO_2 \rightleftarrows 2NO + O_2$, pp. 82–87, *in* Bodenstein, M., Bildung und Zersetzung der Höheren Stickoxyde, *Z. Physik. Chem.* (*Leipzig*) **100**, 68–123 (1922).
45. Massey, H. S. W., and Burhop, E. H. S.
Electronic and Ionic Impact Phenomena. Oxford Univ. Press, London and New York, 1952.
46. Granovskii, V. L.
Electric Currents in a Gas. Vol. I. Gostekhizdat, Moscow, 1952.
47. Seaton, M. J.
Electron impact ionization of Ne, O, and N, *Phys. Rev.* **113**, 814 (1959).
48. Fite, W. L., and Brackmann, R. T.
Ionization of atomic oxygen on electron impact, *Phys. Rev.* **113**, 815–816 (1959).
49. Tate, J. T., and Smith, P. T.
The efficiencies of ionization and ionization potentials of various gases under electron impact, *Phys. Rev.* 39, 270–277 (1932).
50. Petschek, H., and Byron, S.
Approach to equilibrium ionization behind strong shock waves in argon, *Ann. Phys.* (*N. Y.*) **1**, 270–315 (1957).
51. Rostagni, A.
Ricerche sui raggi positivi e neutrali. V. Ionizzazione per urto di ioni e di atomi, *Nuovo Cimento* **13**, 389–406 (1936).
Wayland, H.
The ionization of neon, krypton and xenon by bombardment with accelerated neutral argon atoms, *Phys. Rev.* **52**, 31–37 (1937).
52. Rostagni, A.
Ricerche sui raggi positivi e neutrali. III. Ionizzazione per urto di atomi, *Nuovo Cimento* **11**, 621–634 (1934).
53. Wray, K. L., Teare, J. D., Kivel, B., and Hammerling, P.
Relaxation processes and reaction rates behind shock fronts in air and component gases, *Eighth Symposium* (*International*) *on Combustion*, pp. 328–339. Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore, 1962.
54. Rosen, P.
Low-energy inelastic atomic collisions, *Phys. Rev.* **109**, 348–350 (1958).
Ionization cross section of argon–argon collisions near threshold, *Phys. Rev.* **109**, 351–355 (1958).
55. Ambartsumian, V. A. (ed.)
Theoretical Astrophysics. Gostekhizdat, Moscow, 1952. English transl., Pergamon Press, New York, 1958.
56. Spitzer, L., Jr.
Physics of Fully Ionized Gases. Wiley (Interscience), New York, 2nd edition, 1962.

57. Landau, L. D.
Kinetic equation in the case of a Coulomb interaction, *Zh. Eksperim. i Teor. Fiz.* **7**, 203–209 (1937).
58. Generalov, N. A.
Vibrational relaxation in oxygen at high temperatures. I, *Vestn. Mosk. Univ., Ser. III: Fiz., Astron.*, 1962, No. 3, 51–59.
59. Camac, M.
O_2 vibrational relaxation in oxygen–argon mixtures, *J. Chem. Phys.* **34**, 448–459 (1961).
60. Roth, W.
Shock tube study of vibrational relaxation in the $A^2\Sigma^+$ state of NO, *J. Chem. Phys.* **34**, 999–1003 (1961).
61. Matthews, D. L.
Vibrational relaxation of carbon monoxide in the shock tube, *J. Chem. Phys.* **34**, 639–642 (1961).
62. Johannesen, N. H., Zienkiewicz, H. K., Blythe, P. A., and Gerrard, J. H.
Experimental and theoretical analysis of vibrational relaxation regions in carbon dioxide, *J. Fluid Mech.* **13**, 213–224 (1962).
63. Hurle, I. R., and Gaydon, A. G.
Vibrational relaxation and dissociation of carbon dioxide behind shock waves, *Nature* **184**, 1858–1859 (1959).
64. Griffith, W. C.
Vibrational relaxation times, *Fundamental Data Obtained from Shock Tube Experiments* (A. Ferri, ed.), pp. 242–260. AGARDograph No. 41, Pergamon Press, New York, 1961.
65. Valley, L. M., and Levgold, S.
Vibrational relaxation times for gas mixtures, *Phys. Fluids* **3**, 831 (1960).
66. Osipov, A. I.
Vibrational relaxation in binary gas mixtures, *Vestnik. Mosk. Univ., Ser. III: Fiz., Astron.*, 1960, No. 4, 96–99.
67. Camac, M., and Vaughan, A.
O_2 dissociation rates in O_2–Ar mixtures, *J. Chem. Phys.* **34**, 460–470 (1961).
68. Rink, J. P., Knight, H. T., and Duff, R. E.
Shock tube determination of dissociation rates of oxygen, *J. Chem. Phys.* **34**, 1942–1947 (1961).
69. Patch, R. W.
Shock-tube measurement of dissociation rates of hydrogen, *J. Chem. Phys.* **36**, 1919–1924 (1962).
70. Allen, R. A., Keck, J. C., and Camm, J. C.
Nonequilibrium radiation and the recombination rate of shock-heated nitrogen, *Phys. Fluids* **5**, 284–291 (1962).
71. Ivanov-Kholodnyi, G. S.
Intensity of short-wave solar radiation and the rate of ionization and recombination processes in the ionosphere. Review, *Geomagnetism and Aeronomy* **2**, 315–336 (1962).
72. Lin, S. C., Neal, R. A., and Fyfe, W. I.
Rate of ionization behind shock waves in air. I. Experimental results, *Phys. Fluids* **5**, 1633–1648 (1962).
73. Lin, S. C., and Teare, J. D.
Rate of ionization behind shock waves in air. II. Theoretical interpretations, *Phys. Fluids* **6**, 355–375 (1963).

74. Dalgarno, A.
Charged particles in the upper atmosphere, *Ann. Geophys.* **17**, 16–49 (1961).
75. Fedorenko, N. V.
Ionization in collisions between ions and atoms, *Soviet Phys.—Usp.* (*English Transl.*) **2**, 526–546 (1959).
Fedorenko, N. V., Flaks, I. P., and Filippenko, L. G.
Ionization of inert gases by multiply charged ions, *Soviet Phys. JETP* (*English Transl.*) **11**, 519–523 (1960).
76. Osipov, A. I., and Stupochenko, E. V.
Non-equilibrium energy distributions over the vibrational degrees of freedom in gases, *Soviet Phys.—Usp.* (*English Transl.*) **6**, 47–66 (1963).
77. Stupochenko, E. V., Losev, S. A., and Osipov, A. I.
Relaxation Processes in Shock Waves. Nauka, Moscow, 1965.
78. Brown, S. C.
Basic Data of Plasma Physics. Wiley, New York, 1959.
79. Ivanov-Kholodnyi, G. S., Nikol'skii, G. M., and Gulyaev, R. A.
Ionization and excitation of hydrogen. I. Elementary processes for the upper levels, *Soviet Astron.—AJ* (*English Transl.*) **4**, 754–765 (1961).
80. Hinnov, E., and Hirschberg, J. G.
Electron-ion recombination in dense plasmas, *Phys. Rev.* **125**, 795–801 (1962).
81. Biberman, L. M., Toropkin, Yu. N., and Ul'yanov, K. N.
The theory of multistage ionization and recombination, *Soviet Phys.—Tech. Phys.* (*English Transl.*) **7**, 605–609 (1963).
82. Landau, L. D., and Lifshitz, E. M.
Mechanics. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Mass., 1960.
83. Bates, D. R. (ed.)
Atomic and Molecular Processes. Academic Press, New York, 1962.
84. Gryzinski, M.
Classical theory of electronic and ionic inelastic collisions, *Phys. Rev.* **115**, 374–383 (1959).
85. Gurevich, A. V.
Structure of the disturbed zone in the vicinity of a charged body in plasma, *Geomagnetism and Aeronomy* **4**, 1–11 (1964).
86. Allen, C. W.
Astrophysical Quantities. (Athlone Press) Oxford Univ. Press, New York, 1st edition, 1955.
87. Pitaevskii, L. P.
Electron recombination in a monatomic gas, *Soviet Phys. JETP* (*English Transl.*) **15**, 919–921 (1962).
88. Gurevich, A. V., and Pitaevskii, L. P.
Recombination coefficient in a dense low-temperature plasma, *Soviet Phys. JETP* (*English Transl.*) **19**, 870–871 (1964).
89. Bates, D. R., Kingston, A. E., and McWhirter, R. W. P.
Recombination between electrons and atomic ions. I. Optically thin plasmas, *Proc. Roy. Soc.* (*London*), *Ser. A* **267**, 297–312 (1962).
Recombination between electrons and atomic ions. II. Optically thick plasmas, *Proc. Roy. Soc.* (*London*), *Ser. A* **270**, 155–167 (1962).
90. Kuznetsov, N. M., and Raizer, Yu. P.
On the recombination of electrons in a plasma expanding into vacuum, *Zh. Prikl. Mekhan. i Tekhn. Fiz.*, 1965, No. 4, 10–20.

91. Danilov, A. D., and Ivanov-Kholodnyi, G. S.
Research on ion-molecule reactions and dissociative recombination in the upper atmosphere and in the laboratory, *Soviet Phys.—Usp.* (*English Transl.*) **8**, 92–116 (1965).
92. Eschenroeder, A. Q., Daiber, J. W., Golian, T. C., and Hertzberg, A.
Shock tunnel studies of high-enthalpy ionized airflows, *The High Temperature Aspects of Hypersonic Flow* (W. C. Nelson, ed.), pp. 217–254. Pergamon Press, New York, 1964.

Appendix

Some often used constants, relations between units, and formulas*

Fundamental constants

Speed of light	$c = 2.998 \cdot 10^{10}$ cm/sec
Planck constant	$h = 6.625 \cdot 10^{-27}$ erg · sec
	$\hbar = h/2\pi = 1.054 \cdot 10^{-27}$ erg · sec
Electron charge	$e = 4.803 \cdot 10^{-10}$ esu
Electron mass	$m = 9.108 \cdot 10^{-28}$ g
Proton mass	$m_p = 1.673 \cdot 10^{-24}$ g
Mass of unit atomic weight	$M_0 = 1.660 \cdot 10^{-24}$ g
Boltzmann constant	$k = 1.380 \cdot 10^{-16}$ erg/deg
Universal gas constant	$\mathscr{R} = 8.317 \cdot 10^{7}$ erg/deg · mole
	$= 1.987$ cal/deg · mole
Avogadro number	$N_0 = 6.023 \cdot 10^{23}$ mole^{-1}
Loschmidt number	$n_0 = 2.687 \cdot 10^{19}$ cm^{-3}

Relations between units

Energy $E_0 = 1$ ev $= 1.602 \cdot 10^{-12}$ erg corresponds to:

temperature	$E_0/k = 11{,}605°\mathrm{K}$
frequency	$E_0/h = 2.418 \cdot 10^{14}$ sec^{-1}
wavelength	$hc/E_0 = 1.240 \cdot 10^{-4}$ cm $= 12{,}400$ Å
wave number	$E_0/hc = 8066$ cm^{-1}

* Values of the constants are taken from C. W. Allen, *Astrophysical Quantities*. (Athlone Press) Oxford Univ. Press, New York, 2nd edition, 1963. *Editors' note*. Some of the constants and numerical values in this appendix may differ slightly in the last significant figure from those used in the body of the text, which were based on constants given in the first edition (1955) of Allen's book.

In spectroscopy wave number is often used in place of frequency.

Wave number $1/\lambda = 1\ \text{cm}^{-1}$ corresponds to:

wavelength	$\lambda = 10^8$ Å
frequency	$\nu = 2.998 \cdot 10^{10}\ \text{sec}^{-1}$
temperature	$T = h\nu/k = 1.439°\text{K}$
photon energy	$h\nu = 1.240 \cdot 10^{-4}\ \text{ev} = 1.986 \cdot 10^{-16}\ \text{erg}$

$1\ \text{cal} = 4.185 \cdot 10^7\ \text{erg}$, $1\ \text{kcal} = 10^3\ \text{cal}$

1 ev per molecule corresponds to 23.05 kcal/mole

1 volt = 1/300 units of potential in esu

Constants and relations between them

Bohr radius $$a_0 = \frac{h^2}{4\pi^2 me^2} = \frac{\hbar^2}{me^2} = 0.529 \cdot 10^{-8}\ \text{cm}$$

Ionization potential of hydrogen atom $$I_{\text{H}} = \frac{e^2}{2a_0} = \frac{2\pi^2 e^4 m}{h^2} = \frac{e^4 m}{2\hbar^2} = 13.60\ \text{ev}$$

Rydberg constant $$Ry = \frac{I_{\text{H}}}{h} = \frac{2\pi^2 e^4 m}{h^3} = 3.290 \cdot 10^{15}\ \text{sec}^{-1}$$

Electron speed in first Bohr orbit $$v_0 = \frac{2\pi e^2}{h} = \frac{e^2}{\hbar} = 2.188 \cdot 10^8\ \text{cm/sec}$$

Classical electron radius $$r_0 = \frac{e^2}{mc^2} = 2.818 \cdot 10^{-13}\ \text{cm}$$

Compton wavelength $$\lambda_0 = \frac{h}{mc} = 2.426 \cdot 10^{-10}\ \text{cm}$$

$$\lambda\!\!\!^{-}_0 = \frac{\lambda_0}{2\pi} = \frac{\hbar}{mc} = 3.862 \cdot 10^{-11}\ \text{cm}$$

Rest mass energy of electron $$mc^2 = 511\ \text{kev} = 8.186 \cdot 10^{-7}\ \text{erg}$$

The number "137" = (fine structure constant)$^{-1}$ $\quad \dfrac{\hbar c}{e^2} = \dfrac{hc}{2\pi e^2} = 137.0$

Length ratio $\quad a_0 = \text{“}137\text{”}\, \lambda\!\!\!^{-}_0 = \text{“}137\text{”}^2 r_0$

Energy ratio $\quad mc^2 = 2I_{\mathrm{H}} \cdot \text{“}137\text{”}^2$

Thomson cross section $\quad \varphi_0 = \dfrac{8}{3}\pi r_0^2 = 6.65 \cdot 10^{-25}\ \mathrm{cm}^2$

Mass ratio proton/electron $\quad m_p/m = 1836$

Electric field of a proton at a distance of the first Bohr radius $\quad \dfrac{e^2}{a_0^2} = 1.715 \cdot 10^7\ \mathrm{esu} = 5.145 \cdot 10^9\ \mathrm{volt/cm}$

Area of spectral line with unit oscillator strength $\quad \dfrac{\pi e^2}{mc} = 0.0265\ \mathrm{cm^2/sec}$

Atomic unit cross section $\quad \pi a_0^2 = 0.880 \cdot 10^{-16}\ \mathrm{cm}^2$

Formulas

Radiant energy flux from surface of a perfect black body

$$S = \sigma T^4 = 5.67 \cdot 10^{-5} T_{\mathrm{deg}}^4$$
$$= 1.03 \cdot 10^{12} T_{\mathrm{ev}}^4\ \mathrm{erg/cm^2 \cdot sec}$$
(σ = Stefan-Boltzmann constant)

Equilibrium radiant energy density

$$U_p = \frac{4\sigma T^4}{c} = 7.56 \cdot 10^{-15} T_{\mathrm{deg}}^4$$
$$= 1.37 \cdot 10^2 T_{\mathrm{ev}}^4\ \mathrm{erg/cm^3}$$

Spectral equilibrium radiant energy density

$$U_{\nu p}\,d\nu = \frac{8\pi h\nu^3}{c^3}\,\frac{1}{e^{h\nu/kT}-1}\,d\nu \text{ erg/cm}^3$$

(maximum at the frequency $h\nu = 2.822\ kT$)

Spectral equilibrium radiation intensity

$$I_{\nu p}\,d\nu = \frac{cU_{\nu p}\,d\nu}{4}$$

$$= \frac{2h\nu^3}{c^2}\,\frac{d\nu}{e^{h\nu/kT}-1} \text{ erg/cm}^2 \cdot \text{sec} \cdot \text{sterad}$$

Saha equation

$$\frac{N_e N_+}{N_a} = A\,\frac{g_+}{g_a}\,T^{3/2}\,e^{-I/kT}$$

where

$$A = 2\left(\frac{2\pi mk}{h^2}\right)^{3/2} = 4.83 \cdot 10^{15}\ \text{cm}^{-3} \cdot \text{deg}^{-3/2}$$

$$= 6.04 \cdot 10^{21}\ \text{cm}^{-3} \cdot \text{ev}^{-3/2}$$

Maxwell distribution function normalized to unity

$$f(v)\,dv = 4\pi\left(\frac{m}{2\pi kT}\right)^{3/2} \exp\left(-\frac{mv^2}{2kT}\right) v^2\,dv$$

$$f(\varepsilon)\,d\varepsilon = \frac{2}{\pi^{1/2}}\,\frac{\varepsilon^{1/2}}{(kT)^{3/2}}\,e^{-\varepsilon/kT}\,d\varepsilon$$

Electron speed

$$v_e = 5.93 \cdot 10^7 \varepsilon_{\text{ev}}^{1/2} \text{ cm/sec}$$

Speed of particle with atomic weight A

$$v = 1.38 \cdot 10^6 (\varepsilon_{\text{ev}}/A)^{1/2} \text{ cm/sec}$$

Electron mean thermal speed

$$\bar{v}_e = \left(\frac{8kT}{\pi m}\right)^{1/2} = 6.21 \cdot 10^5 T_{\text{deg}}^{1/2}$$

$$= 6.69 \cdot 10^7 T_{\text{ev}}^{1/2} \text{ cm/sec}$$

Particle mean thermal speed

$$\bar{v} = 1.45 \cdot 10^5 \left(\frac{T_{\text{deg}}}{A}\right)^{1/2}$$

$$= 1.56 \cdot 10^6 \left(\frac{T_{\text{ev}}}{A}\right)^{1/2} \text{ cm/sec}$$

Classical damping constant

$$\gamma = \frac{8\pi^2 e^2 \nu^2}{3mc^3} = 2.47 \cdot 10^{-22} \nu^2_{\text{sec}^{-1}}$$

$$= \frac{0.222 \cdot 10^{16}}{\lambda^2_{\text{Å}}} \text{ sec}^{-1}$$

Cross section σ in terms of P_c = average number of collisions per cm at 1 mm Hg and 0°C

$$\sigma = 2.83 \cdot 10^{-17} P_c \text{ cm}^2$$

Specific energy

$$1 \text{ ev/molecule} = \frac{9.65 \cdot 10^{11}}{M} \text{ erg/g}$$

where

M = molecular weight

Author Index

Numbers in brackets are reference numbers and are included to assist in locating references in which the authors' names are not mentioned in the text. Italicized numbers indicate the pages on which the references are listed, and those in parentheses the number of citations for the given page.

Allen, C. W. 396[86], 405[86], *439*
Allen, R. A. 332[45], 335[57], 364[70], *432(2), 438*
Ambartsumian, V. A. (ed.) 267[6], 269[6], 404[55], *423, 428, 437*
Ambartsumyan, R. V. 338[72], *433*
Armstrong, B. H. 332[32a], *431*
Askar'yan, G. A. 343[74], *433*
Atkinson, W. R. 239[6], *427*

Bartell, L. S. 124[12], *424*
Basov, N. G. 338[72], 348, *433, 434*
Bates, D. R. 268, 412, 412[89], 413[89], *428, 439*
Bates, D. R. (ed.) 256[53], 268[53], 287[53], 292[53], 390[83], 391[83], 395[83], 396[83], 413[83], 414[83], *432, 439*
Becker, R. 285[19], 287[19], *429*
Belen'kii, S. Z. 171, *424*
Benson, S. W. 201[14], 218[14], *425*
Berg, H. F. 241[8], *427*
Bethe, H. A. 231[33], 266[5], 289, 296[5], 299[5], 313[21], 319[21], 321[21], 324[21], 326[21], 328[21], *426, 428, 430*
Biberman, L. M. 276, 276[55], 283[17], 297, 303[49], 321[23], 323[27], 332[56], 392[81], 393[81], *429(3), 430(2), 432(4), 439*
Blackman, V. 360, 360[16], *435*
Blythe, P. A. 362[62], *438*
Bodenstein, M. 379
Boiko, V. A. 338[72], *433*
Brachman, M. K. 230, *426*
Brackmann, R. T. 389[48], *437*
Bradt, P. 364[21], *435*
Branscomb, L. M. 269[9], *429*
Breen, F. H. 283, *429*
Britton, D. 365[25], 368[25], 368[36], *436(2)*
Brode, H. L. 99[9], *423*
Brown, S. C. 256[60], 338[60], 389, 391[78], *432, 439*
Bunker, D. L. 365[26], *436*
Burch, D. S. 269[9], *429*
Burgess, A. 276, *429*
Burhop, E. H. S. 389, 391[45], 401[45], 406[45], 412[45], *437*
Buss, J. H. 201[14], 218[14], *425*
Byron, S. R. 367, 391[50], 421[50], *436, 437*

Camac, M. 362[59], 367, *438(2)*
Camm, J. C. 269[8], 305[8], 321[8], 326[8], 330[8], 332[8], 332[31], 332[45], 333[8], 364[70], *429, 431, 432, 438*
Chandrasekhar, S. 283, *429*
Chernyi, G. G. 97, *422*
Christian, R. H. 213, *426*
Cohen, A. 239[5], *427*
Compton, W. D. 239[6], *427*
Connor, J. V. 353[9], *435*
Courant, R. 20[14], *423*
Cowan, G. R. 353, 353[2], *434*
Cummings, F. W. 124[10], *424*

Daiber, J. W. 416[92], *440*
Dalgarno, A. 416, *438*
Damon, E. K. 338[66], *433*
Danilov, A. D. 416, *440*
Davidson, N. 365[25], 365[26], 368[25], 368[36], *436(3)*
Davies, D. R. 212, *426*
Davies, W. E. R. 338[69], 344[69], 347[69], *433*

Davis, L. W. 124[9], *424*
Dawson, J. M. 348[80], *434*
Dibeler, V. H. 364[21], *435*
Dirac, P. A. M. 124, *424*
Ditchburn, R. W. 323[26], *430*
Dixon, J. K. 337[35], *431*
Döring, W. 346
Dronov, A. P. 276, *431*
Duff, R. E. 367[68], *438*

Ecker, G. 200[10], *425*
Ehler, A. W. 200[10], *425*
El'yashevich, M. A. 304[41], *431*
Ener, C. 353[11], *435*
Erkovich, S. P. 323[27], *430*
Eschenroeder, A. Q. 416[92], *440*
Eyring, H. 370[38], 379[38], *436*

Faizullov, F. S. 332[48], *432*
Fedorenko, N. V. 400[75], *439*
Fermi, E. 200[9], *425*
Ferri, A. (ed.) 234[18], 243[18], *428*
Feynman, R. P. 231[33], *426*
Filippenko, L. G. 400[75], *439*
Fite, W. L. 389[48], *437*
Flaks, I. P. 400[75], *439*
Fowler, R. G. 239[6], *427*
Fowler, R. H. 366[27], 370[27], *436*
Frank-Kamenetskii, D. A. 374, 375[39], 377[39], 378[39], *436*
Franklin, J. L. 364[21], *435*
Fraser, P. A. 321[22], *430*
Friedrichs, K. O. 20[14], *423*
Fyfe, W. I. 415[72], *438*

Gabrysh, A. F. 353[11], *435*
Gaydon, A. G. 304[20], 313[20], 319[20b], 362[63], *429, 438*
Gehman, W. 365[25], 368[25], *436*
Geltman, S. 269[9], *429*
Generalov, N. A. 332[33], 362[58], 367, *431, 436, 438*
Gerrard, J. H. 362[62], *438*
Gilvarry, J. J. 231[33], *427*
Ginzburg, V. L. 282[63], 283[63], *433*
Glasstone, S. 370[38], 379[38], *436*
Glick, H. S. 368, 375[40], 378, *436(2)*
Godnev, I. N. 183[2], *424*
Goldstine, H. H. 99[8], *423*
Golian, T. C. 416[92], *440*
Gombàs, P. 223, *426*
Gorban', N. F. 213, *426*
Granovskii, V. L. 389[46], 391[46], 401[46], *437*
Greene, E. F. 353, 353[2, 3], *434(2)*
Griem, H. R. 241[8], *427*
Griffith, W. C. 362[64], *438*
Gryzinski, M. 396[84], *439*
Guggenheim, E. A. 366[27], 370[27], *436*
Gulyaev, R. A. 392[79], 396[79], *439*
Gurevich, A. V. 397[85], 407, 411[88], 411[85], 412[88], *439(2)*

Hammerling, P. 332[32], 332[43], 335[32], 368[53], *431(2), 437*
Harris, L. 337[36], *431*
Harshbarger, F. 234[1], 243[1], *427*
Harteck, P. 364[22], *435*
Haught, A. F. 338[65], 338[68], 339[65], 343[65], *433(2)*
Heddle, D. W. O. 323[26], *430*
Heitler, W. 254[3], *428*
Herron, J. T. 364[21], *435*
Hertzberg, A. 416[92], *440*
Herzberg, G. 304[20], 310[20a], 312[20a], 313[20], *429*
Herzfeld, K. F. 356[13], 360, 360[18], 360[18a], *435(3)*
Hinnov, E. 392[80], 394[80], 407, 408[80], *439*
Hirschberg, J. G. 392[80], 394[80], 407, 408[80], *439*
Hornig, D. F. 244, 353, 353[1], 353[2, 3], 368[35], *434(3), 436*
Hubbard, J. C. 353[11], *435*
Huber, A. W. 361, *435*
Huebner, W. F., *et al.* (eds.) 332[64], *433*
Hurle, I. R. 362[63], *438*

Imshennik, V. S. 106, 172[8], *423, 424*
Ionova, V. P. (ed.) 243[14], *428*
Ivanova, A. V. 268, *434(2)*
Ivanov-Kholodnyi, G. S. 392[79], 396[79], 416, *438–440*

Jarmain, W. R. 321[22], *430*
Jaynes, E. T. 124[10], *424*
Johannesen, N. H. 362[62], *438*
Josephson, V. 242, *428*

Kantrowitz, A. 213, 361, *426, 435*
Kapitza, P. L. 124, *424*
Kaye, G. W. C. 196[8], 379[42], *425 436*
Kazakova, R. K. 99[10], *423*
Keck, J. C. 269[8], 305[8], 321[8], 326[8], 330[8], 332[8], 332[31], 332[45], 333[8], 364[70], *429, 431, 432, 438*
Keldysh, L. V. 125, 340, 343[73], *424, 433*
Kholev, S. R. 213, 242, *426–428*
Kibel', N. A. 86, *422*
King, G. W. 337[36], *431*
Kingston, A. E. 412, 412[89], 413[89], *439*
Kivel, B. 269[8], 305[8], 313[21], 319[21], 321[8], 321[21], 324[21], 326[8], 326[21], 328[21], 330[8], 332[8], 332[31], 332[32], 332[43], 332[44], 333[8], 335[32], 368[53], *429, 430, 431(3), 432, 437*
Klein, J. J. 375[40], 378[40], *436*
Knight, H. T. 367[68], *438*
Knötzel, H. 361[19], *435*
Knötzel, L. 361[19], *435*
Kochin (Kotchine), N. E. 86, *422*
Kolb, A. C. 240, 241, *427*
Kompaneets, A. S. 99, 173, 346[82], *423, 434*
Kondrasheva, I. L. 99[10], *423*
Kondrat'ev, V. N. 304[20], 313[20], *430*
Kramers, H. A. 259, 260
Krestnikova, L. I. 242, *428*
Krokhin, O. N. 338[72], 348, *433, 434*
Kryukov, P. G. 338[72], *433*
Kudrin, L. P. 200[13], *425*
Kudryavtsev, E. M. 332[48], *432*
Kudryavtseva, E. V. (ed.) 243[14], *428*
Kuznetsov, N. M. 413[90], *439*

Laby, T. H. 196[8], 379[42], *425, 436*
Ladenburg, R. W. (ed.) 234[3], 243[3], *427*
Lagar'kov, A. N. 297, *432*
Laidler, K. J. 370[38], 379[38], *436*
Lambrey, M. 337[37], *431*
Landau, L. D. 1, 29[1], 70, 74[1], 95, 101, 116[4], 120, 171[6], 179, 216, 220, 223, 251, 253[2], 254[2], 327[29], 355, 357, 392[82], 421[57], *422, 423(2), 424(3), 426, 428(2), 431, 435(2), 438, 439*
Larkin, A. I. 200[34], *427*
Latter, R. 227[31], 230, 231, *426*
Lee, R. J. 239[6], *427*
Leskov, L. V. 353, 362[4], 367[4], *434*
Levgold, S. 362[65], *438*
Levitt, B. P. 338[59], *432*
Lewis, B. (ed.) 234[3], 243[3], *427*
Lewis, M. 200[12], *425*
Lifshitz, E. M. 1, 29[1], 70, 74[1], 95, 116[4], 120, 171[6], 179, 216, 220, 223, 251, 253[2], 254[2], 327[29], 355, 392[82], *422, 423, 424(3), 426, 428(2), 431, 435, 439*
Lin, S. C. 213, 386[73], 415, 415[72], 416, *426 438(2)*
Lindner, Fraulein Dr. 379[44], *437*
Lochte-Holtgreven, W. 234[16], 245[16], *428*
Logan, J. G., Jr. 332[30], *431*
Losev, S. A. 234[2], 234[19], 239[2], 239[19], 243[2], 243[19], 321[24], 332[33], 353, 358, 359[77], 361[5], 362[5], 362[77], 367[77], 367, 367[5], 368[5], 368[77], *427, 428, 430, 431, 434, 436, 439*

Manakova, M. A. 219, *426*
Mandel'shtam, S. L. 338[70], 338[71], 343[71], 344[71], 347[71], *433(2)*
Mannella, G. 364[22], *435*
Margenau, H. 200[12], *425*
Marks, L. W. 239[6], *427*
Marshak, R. E. 231[33], *426*
Massey, H. S. W. 389, 391[45], 401[45], 406[45], 412[45], *437*
Matthews, D. L. 362[61], 367, *436, 438*
Mayer, H. 313[21], 319[21,], 321[21], 324[21], 326[21], 328[21], *430*
McWhirter, R. W. P. 412, 412[89], 413[89], *439*
Menzel, D. H. 266[4], *428*
Metropolis, N. 231[33], *426*
Meyerand, R. G., Jr. 338[65], 338[68], 339[65], 343[65], *433(2)*

Meyerott, R. E. 326[28], 332[32a], 332[28], 335[28], *431(2)*
Minck, R. W. 338[67], *433*
Model', I. Sh. 213, 336, *426, 431*
Molmud, P. 106[17], *423*
Moore, C. E. 196[7], *425*
Morozov, Yu. I. 172[8], *424*
Mustel', E. P. 107, *423*
Myers, H. 201[14], 218[14], *425*

Neal, R. A. 415[72], *438*
Nemchinov, I. V. 106, *423*
Nicholls, R. W. 321[22], *430*
Nikitin, E. E. 368, *436*
Nikol'skii, G. M. 392[79], 396[79], *439*
Norman, G. E. 276, 276[55], 303[49], 303[52], 332[56], 335[58], *429(2), 432(5)*

Okhotsimskii, D. E. 99[10], *423*
Olfe, D. B. 332[46], *432*
Osipov, A. I. 234[2], 234[19], 239[2], 239[19], 243[2], 243[19], 353, 356[14], 358, 359[77], 361[5], 362[5], 362[66], 362[77], 366, 367[76], 367[77], 367[5], 368[5], 368[77], *427, 428, 434–436, 438, 439(2)*

Palmer, H. B. 368[35], *436*
Pashinin, P. P. 338[70], 338[71], 343[71], 344[71], 347[71], *433(2)*
Patch, R. W. 368[69], *438*
Patrick, R. M. 242, *428*
Pease, R. N. (ed.) 234[3], 243[3], *427*
Peebles, G. H. 231[33], *427*
Pekeris, C. L. 266[4], *428*
Penner, S. S. 234[1], 243[1], 281[50], 323[25], 332[47], *427, 430, 431, 432(2)*
Petralia, S. 353[10], *435*
Petschek, H. 391[50], 421[50], *437*
Pilipetskii, N. F. 341, *434*
Pitaevskii, L. P. 407, 409, 411[87], 411[88], 412, 412[87], 412[88], *439(2)*
Planet, W. 332[32], 335[32], *431*
Pleshanov, A. S. 188[5], 191[5], *425*
Poltavchenko, D. S. 242, *427*
Predvoditelev, A. S., *et al.* 187[3], 191[3], *424*
Prokhindeev, A. V. 338[70], *433*
Prokhorov, A. M. 338[71], 343[71], 344[71], 347[71], *433*
Prokof'ev, V. A. 213, *426*

Rabinovich, M. S. 343[74], *433*
Raizer, Yu. P. 201[15], 206[15], 210[16], 257[61], 276[18], 280[18], 281[62], 337[39], 338[38], 338[71], 343[62], 343[71], 343[77], 344[71], 344[77], 347[71], 347[77], 348[77], 348[86], 379[41], 380[41], 413[90], *423, 425(2), 429, 431(2), 432, 433(3), 434, 436, 439*
Rakhmatullin, Kh. A. (ed.) 234[4], 238[4], 239[4], 243[4], *427*
Ramsden, S. A. 338[69], 344[69], 344, 347[69], *433, 434*
Ramstetter, Dr.-Ing. 379[44], *437*
Rayleigh, Lord 81
Reeves, R. R. 364[22], *435*
Reif, T. 120, *424*
Resler, E. L. 213, *426*
Rink, J. P. 367, *438*
Romanov, V. E. 283[17], *429*
Rosen, P. 400[54], *437*
Roskos, R. R. 124[12], *424*
Rostagni, A. 400[51], 400[52], *437(2)*
Roth, W. 362[60], *438*
Roze, A. V. 86, *422*
Rozhdestvenskii, I. B. 188[5], 191[5], 213, *425, 426*
Ryabinin, Yu. N. 234, *428*
Ryutov, D. D. 343[76], *433*

Sabol, A. P. 213, *426*
Sachs, R. G. 213, *426*
Sadovnikov, P. Ya. 374, 375[39], 377[39], 378[39], *436*
Sadovskii, M. A. 101, *423*
Salpeter, E. E. 266[5], 289, 296[5], 299[5], *428*
Samuilov, E. V. 188[5], 191[5], *425*
Savic, P. 344, *434*
Savin, F. A. 353, 362[4], 367[4], *434*
Schirmer, H. 200[10], 276[12], *429*
Schott, G. 365[25], 368[25], *436*
Schwartz, R. N. 356[13], 360, *435(2)*
Seaton, M. J. 200[10], 276, 389[47], *425, 429, 437*
Sedov, L. I. 93, 95, 99, 104, *422(2)*

Selivanov, V. V. 187[4], 196, 197[4], 206, 212, *424*
Semenov, N. N. 375
Semenov, S. S. (ed.) 234[4], 238[4], 239[4], 243[4], *427*
Senatskii, Yu. V. 338[72], *433*
Shlyapintokh, I. Ya. 187[4], 196, 197[4], 206, 212, *424*
Slawsky, Z. I. 356[13], *435*
Smith, P. T. 389[49], *437*
Smith, S. J. 269[9], *429*
Sobolev, N. N. 276, 332[48], *431, 432*
Sobel'man, I. N. 287[54], 292[54], *432*
Solodchenkova, S. A. 268[85], *434*
Soshnikov, V. N. 323[27], 323, *430(2)*
Spitzer, L., Jr. 260, 405, 418[56], 421[56], *434, 437*
Squire, W. 375[40], 378[40], *436*
Stakhanov, I. P. 188[5], 191[5], *425*
Stanyukovich, K. P. 93, 102[15], 104, 104[15], *423*
Stoilov, Yu. Yu. 338[72], *433*
Strehlow, R. A. 239[5], *427*
Stupochenko, E. V. 188[5], 191[5], 234[19], 239[19], 243[19], 353, 358, 359[77], 362[77], 366, 367[76], 367[77], 368[77], *425, 428, 436, 439(2)*
Sukhodrev, N. K. 338[70], 338[71], 343[71], 344[71], 347[71], *433(2)*
Sullivan, J. O. 364[23], *435*
Sviridov, A. G. 276, *431*

Tate, J. T. 389[49], *437*
Taylor, G. I. 93, *422*
Taylor, H. S. (ed.) 234[3], 243[3], *427*
Teare, J. D. 332[43], 368[53], 386[73], 415, 416, *431, 437, 438*
Teller, E. 231[33], 357, *426, 435*
Terebenina, L. B. 332[33], *431*
Textoris, A. 335[57], *432*
Thomas, M. 281[50], *432*
Thompson, H. B. 124[12], *424*
Thomson, J. J. 392
Timan, B. L. 200[11], 216, *425*
Tomlinson, R. G. 338[66], *433*
Toropkin, Yu N. 392[81], 393[81], *439*
Tsukerman, V. A. 219, *426*
Turner, R. G. 321[22], *430*

Ul'yanov, K. N. 392[81], 393[81], *429, 439*
Unsöld, A. 107, 157, 273, 276, 287[10], 292[10], 300, *423, 429(2)*

Vali, V. 234[1], 243[1], *427*
Valley, L. M. 362[65], *438*
Van Itterbeek, A. 353[7], *435*
Vaughan, A. 367, *438*
Vedenov, A. A. 200[34], *427*
Vermaelen, R. 353[7], *435*
Vitense, E. 200[10], 276[12], *425, 429*
Vlasova, Z. P. 99[10], *423*
von Neumann, J. 99[8], 346, *423*
Vorob'ev, V. S. 303[49], 303[52], 332[56], *432(3)*

Wayland, H. 400[51], *437*
Weber, D. 323[25], *430*
Weisskopf, V. 126, *424*
Weissler, G. L. 200[10], *425*
Weizel, W. 200[10], *425*
Wentink, T., Jr. 269[8], 305[8], 321[8], 326[8], 330[8], 332[8], 332[32], 333[8], 335[32], 364[23], *429, 431, 435*
Wiese, W. 241[8], *427*
Wigner, E. 126, 365, *424, 435*
Wray, K. L. 364[23], 368[53], *435, 437*
Wright, J. K. 343[75], *433*
Wurster, W. H. 368, *436*

Yakubov, I. T. 321[23], 332[56], *430, 432*
Yarger, F. L. 213, *426*

Zartmann, I. F. 353[6], *434*
Zeise, H. 379[43], *437*
Zel'dovich, B. Ya. 341, *434*
Zel'dovich, Ya. B. 68, 191[6], 210[16], 212, 281[62], 343[62], 346[81], 346[82], 374, 375[39], 377[39], 378[39], *422, 425(3), 433, 434(2), 436*
Zener, C. 360, *435*
Ziemer, R. W. 243[13], *428*
Zienkiewicz, H. K. 362[62], *438*
Zinman, W. G. 367[33], *436*
Zmuda, A. J. 353[8], *435*
Zuev, V. S. 338[72], *433*

Subject Index

Absorption, 110, 113–115, 119
  for concentration measurement, 244
  probability of, 121
Absorption coefficient, 110, 115, 120
  bound-bound, 113
  bound-free, 113
  continuous spectra, 140
  frequency dependence, 138, 139, 144
  mass, 111
  spectral lines, 140
  (*see also* Attenuation coefficient; Mean absorption coefficient)
Absorption cross section, 113
  at line center, 114
  spectral line, 294, 295
Absorption curve, 269
Absorption lines, 139
Absorption spectrum,
  hydrogen-like atoms, 293–297
  molecular, 321–330
Absorption wave, 344–348
Absorptivity, 118
Acoustic equations, 7
Activated complex method, 370–373
  in NO_2 formation, 381
  reaction rate, 372
Activation energy, 189, 368
Adiabatic condition, 357
  quantum mechanical, 400
Adiabatic exponent, 208
Adiabatic invariant, 172
Air,
  degree of ionization, comparison of exact and approximate calculations, 206
  dissociation of, 184, 187
  equilibrium composition with dissociation and ionization, 187
  internal energy with ionization, 206
  ionization of, 187, 188, 413–416
  radiation intensity curve, 336
  as shock tube test gas, 238
  species present at high temperature, 331
Air, properties of,
  with ionization, 196, 197
  radiative, 331 *ff.*
  behind shock waves with dissociation and ionization, 211–213
  thermodynamic, 188
Al, photoionization, 276
Angular distribution of radiation, 144–151, 155
Anharmonic molecular vibrations, 183
Anharmonic oscillator, 127
  in laser effect, 123
Anomalous absorption, 75
Anomalous thermodynamic properties, 67–69
Ar,
  excitation of, 391
  ionization by Ar, 400
  ionization by K, 400
  ionization of, 389
  ionization potential, 385
  photoionization, 276
  properties behind shock waves, 213
  as shock tube test gas, 237, 238
Arbitrary discontinuities, 84–92
Arc discharge spectra, 201
Arrhenius' law, 369
Associative ionization, 414, 415
Atom recombination rates, 364, 365
Atomic cell, 223, 229
  entropy of, 230
Atomic line spectra, 283 *ff.*
Attenuation coefficient, 110
  mass, 111
Attenuation of a light beam, 111
Average ionic charge, multiply ionized gas, 203, 279
Average ionization, degree (*see* Multiple ionization, approximate calculations for)
Average ionization potential, 203
Avogadro number, 441

Band spectra, 112, 303 *ff.*
Bernoulli equation, 42, 49
Beta band system of NO, 305, 320, 323–330, 334
Bimolecular reactions, 369
Binding energy (*see* Dissociation energy)
Black body, 118
  (*see also* Perfect black body)
Black-body radiation, 115–118
Bohr radius, 442
Boltzmann constant, 441

Boltzmann statistics, 121
Boltzmann's law for equilibrium radiation intensity, 121
Born approximation, 254
Bose quantum statistics, 121
Bound-bound transitions, 112, 144, 283 *ff.*
Bound electron states, 111
Bound-free absorption, 114, 264–269
Bound-free absorption coefficient, 114
Bound-free absorption cross section, 114
Bound-free transitions, 112, 261 *ff.*
Br_2, dissociation rate, 368
Bragg angles, 124
Breakdown in a laser beam, 338–343
Breakdown wave, 344, 347
Break-up of arbitrary discontinuities (*see* Arbitrary discontinuities)
Bremsstrahlung, 113
  from an ion, 113
  from a neutral atom, 113
Bremsstrahlung absorption, 115, 259
Bremsstrahlung absorption coefficient, 114
Bremsstrahlung emission, 248 *ff.*
  from a neutral atom, 255–258
  quantum effects, 254
  quasi-classical condition, 253
Brightness temperature, 138, 139
  for integrated radiation (*see* Integrated brightness temperature)
Bulk viscosity coefficient, 73, 76, 353
  (*see also* Second viscosity coefficient)

C,
  cross section for photoprocesses, 404
  photoionization, 267, 268
Ca,
  cross section for photoprocesses, 404
  photoionization, 267, 268
Cascade emission, 126, 127
Centered compression wave, impossibility of continuous solution for, 43
Centered rarefaction wave, 37, 38, 41
  head, 38
  tail, 38
  (*see also* Self-similar motion)
Centered simple wave, 37
  (*see also* Centered rarefaction wave; Self-similar motion)
Chain reaction mechanism, in NO formation, 375
Champlain's theorem, 61
Chapman–Jouguet point, 346
Characteristic equations, 19
Characteristics, 15–18
  domain of dependence, 22
  isentropic flow, 17, 19–25
  nonisentropic flow, 17
  numerical integration, 24
  region of influence, 23
Charge conservation condition, 193
Charge exchange, 386, 416
Chemical equilibrium, effect on thermodynamic properties, 189
Chemical potential, degenerate free electron gas, 221, 222
Chemical reaction rate, 189
Chemical reactions, 188–192, 368–373
CO_2, rotational relaxation time, 353
Coherent light, 123
Color temperature, 140, 141
Compressed atom, 226–228
  electron density distribution, 226
Compression wave,
  attainable states, 62
  "overshooting" of, 44
Compton effect, 124, 125
Compton scattering, 125
Compton wavelength, 442
Conditional equilibrium (*see* Metastable equilibrium)
Conservation of number of atoms, condition, 185, 190, 193
Contact discontinuity, 87–91
  thickness, 90, 91
Contact surface, as a "piston" in shock tubes, 236, 237
  (*see also* Contact discontinuity)
Continuous absorption, 269–276
Continuous spectra, 112, 113, 248 *ff.*
Correction factor, bound-free transitions, 266
Correlation effect in bremsstrahlung emission, 257
Coulomb collisions, 417
Coulomb energy of a gas, 216
Coulomb field, divergence in effective radiation, 251
Coulomb interactions, 215

Critical point, 68
Cross section,
  absorption, 113 (*see also* Absorption cross section)
  bound-free absorption, 114
  Coulomb collision, 419
  for electron capture, 263
  emission, 252
  excitation, 391, 396
  ionization, 388, 392–395
  photoionization, 265, 266
  photoprocesses, 402
  resonant scattering, 114
  scattering, 113, 115
  Thomson, 115, 443
  transport scattering, 256
Cs, photoionization, 267, 268

D_2,
  rotational excitation energy, 352
  rotational relaxation time, 353
Damping constant, 284, 445
Debye–Hückel method, 216–218
Debye radius, 216
Decibels, 9
Decomposition coordinate, 369
Deexcitation, 382, 390
Degeneracy temperature, electron gas, 219, 220
Degenerate electron gas, 220–222, 231
Degree of ionization, 195
Degrees of freedom, 177, 349
Delta band system of NO, 324
Dense gases, 217–232
  cold, 223–229
  hot, 229–232
Density ratio across a strong shock, 51, 52 (*see also* Limiting density ratio across a shock)
Detailed balancing principle, 120
Detonation mechanism, 92
Diatomic gas, 184
Diatomic molecules, 178
  dissociation, 183–188
  energy levels, 303 *ff.*
  notation for electronic state, 306–308
  symmetry properties, 308
Diffraction scattering, 125
Diffusion approximation for radiation, 151, 152, 154–156, 163, 164
  boundary conditions, 148, 149
  effect of optical thickness, 147
Diffusion coefficient, 90
  for photons, 146, 151
  in recombination model, 410–412
Diffusion equation for photons, 146, 147
Diffusion model for recombination, 408–412
Dilatational viscosity coefficient, 73 (*see also* Second viscosity coefficient)
Discontinuities,
  formation of, 32
  propagation velocity of, 46
  (*see also* Arbitrary discontinuities; Weak discontinuities)
Discontinuity relations (*see* Shock wave relations)
Dissipative processes (*see* Viscosity and Heat conduction)
Dissociation, 183, 184
  nonequilibrium, 184
  role of vibrational energy in, 366
Dissociation energy, 186
  N_2, NO, O_2, 184
Dissociation rates, 365–368
Dissociation relaxation, 362–368
Dissociation relaxation time, 363
Dissociation spectrum, 310
Dissociative equilibrium constant, 186
Dissociative recombination, 385, 386, 414–416
Doublet splitting, NO, 182

Effective absorption coefficient, 129
Effective adiabatic exponent, 188, 207–210
Effective front thickness, 28
Effective radiation, 250
Effective ratio of specific heats (*see* Effective adiabatic exponent)
Effective temperature (*see* Brightness temperature)
Einstein coefficient,
  for absorption, 290–292
  for emission, 288–292
Einstein coefficients, relation between, 120, 290
Electrical conductivity measurement, 245

Electrical contact probes, 245
Electromagnetic frequency scale (*see* Radiation spectrum)
Electromagnetic shock tubes, 239–243
Electron attachment, 386, 416
Electron avalanche, 340–343, 387, 401
Electron beam scattering, 244
Electron capture, 261–264, 394, 395
  cross section for, 263
  (*see also* Recombination)
Electron charge, 441
Electron concentration from gas luminosity, 245
Electron density distribution,
  compressed atom, 226
  free neutral atom, 225
  slightly compressed atom, 226
Electron mass, 441
Electron orbits, 261
Electron radius, 442
Electron scattering from a standing light wave, 124
Electron spin, 306
Electron temperature, 386, 417, 420
Electronic deexcitation, 382
  (*see also* Electronic excitation)
Electronic energy, 304
Electronic excitation, 192–197, 382–386
Electronic excitation energy, 193
Electronic partition functions, 181, 182, 195, 198–201
  cutoff of, 195, 196, 198–201
  transformed, 194, 195
Electronic transitions, 111, 246 *ff.*
Emission, 110, 113, 114, 119
Emission coefficient, 110, 119, 120
Emission cross section, 252
Emittance, 134
Endothermic reactions, 190, 368
Energy distribution in radiation (*see* Spectral radiant energy density)
Energy level diagram,
  nitrogen, 307
  proton-electron system, 111
Energy levels, hydrogen-like atom, 262
Energy of radiation (*see* Radiation energy)
Engineering equation of state, 176
Entropy, approximate relation for, with multiple ionization, 205
Entropy change,
  with anomalous thermodynamic properties, 67–69
  shock, 53, 60–62
  with viscosity and heat conduction, 72
  weak compression shock, 64–67
  weak rarefaction shock, 64
Entropy equation, with radiant heat transfer, 143
Entropy of radiation, 117, 197
Equation of state, 3, 176
  perfect gas, 3, 177
Equations for shock front structure, 76, 77
Equations of gasdynamics,
  in Eulerian coordinates, 1–4
  in Lagrangian coordinates, 4–7
  one-dimensional with viscosity and heat conduction, 69–72
  with radiant heat transfer, 143
  with radiation energy and pressure, 168–172
Equilibrium radiation, 115–118
Excitation,
  by electron impact, 390–392, 396–398
  of excited atoms, 396–398
  by heavy particles, 398–401
Excitation energies, 196, 198–201
  ionic levels, 195
  N, N_2, NO, O, O_2, 182
Exothermic reactions, 189, 368

F,
  cross section for photoprocesses, 404
  photoionization, 267, 268
Fermi–Dirac statistics for an electron gas, 218–222
Fermi limiting energy, 220, 221
Fine structure constant, 443
Finite amplitude waves, 29, 44
  "overshooting" of, 31, 32
  steepening of, 31, 32
First law of thermodynamics, 3
First negative band system of N_2^+, 305, 330, 334
First positive band system of N_2, 305, 307, 330, 334
Fortrat diagrams, 310
Forward-reverse approximation, 149–151
Fowler T-tube, 239, 240

Frank–Condon factor, 319–321
Frank–Condon principle, 313–321
Free electron states, 111
Free energy, 176, 180, 182
  from Coulomb interactions, 216
  dissociated diatomic gas, 185
  ionized gas, 194
Free-free transitions, 112–114, 248 *ff.*
  in a high-temperature gas, 258–261
Free neutral atom, electron density distribution, 225
Free piston, compression by, 234
Freezing, of NO, 378

Gamma band system of NO, 305, 323, 324, 328–330, 334
Gas constant, 3, 177
  universal, 3, 177, 441
Gaunt factor, 254, 260
Gibbs free energy (*see* Gibbs potential)
Gibbs potential, 176
Gray body, 141, 144
Ground state, proton-electron system, 111
Ground triplet state, O, 182

H, 199
  cross section for photoprocesses, 404
  degree of ionization, 195
  dissociation energy, 212
  electron energy levels, 112
  excitation of, 391
  excited states, 198
  ionization of, 199, 200, 212
  ionization potential, 111, 442
  photoionization, 267, 268
H^-,
  binding energy, 268
  photodetachment, 269
H_2,
  excitation of, 391
  ionization of, 389
  properties behind shock waves, 213
  rotational energy, 178, 352
  rotational relaxation time, 353
  as shock tube driver gas, 237, 238
Harmonic oscillator, emission from, 126, 127

He,
  excitation of, 391
  ionization by He, 400
  ionization of, 389
  as shock tube driver gas, 237
Heat conduction, 69–73
Heat of reaction, 190
Helmholtz free energy (*see* Free energy)
Hertzberg band system, 323
Hg,
  excitation of, 391
  ionization of, 389
  photoionization, 276
High-speed photography, 243
Hugoniot curves, 49–52, 55–59
  for absorption wave, 345–347
  physically unattainable states, 51
Hugoniot relations, 50
  with dissociation and ionization, 209–213
  with equilibrium radiation, 213–215
Hydrogenic (*see* Hydrogen-like)
Hydrogen-like atom, 198
  binding energy, 199
  energy levels, 198
  recombination, 405
  transformed electronic partition function, 199
Hydrogen-like systems, 248

I_2,
  dissociation rate, 368
  recombination rate, 365
Impact parameter, 250
Impact-radiative recombination, 413
Induced Compton effect, 124, 125
Induced emission, 118–128
Integrated brightness temperature, 138–140, 165
  plane photosphere, 162
Integrated emission coefficient, bremsstrahlung emission, 258
Integrated radiant energy density, 110, 169–172
  equilibrium radiation, 117, 443
Integrated radiant energy flux, 110
  perfect black body, 118, 443
Integrated radiation intensity, 110
Interferometry, 244

Intermediate complex method (*see* Activated complex method)
Internal energy,
  air, comparison of exact and approximate calculations, 206
  approximate relation with multiple ionization, 205
  from Coulomb interactions, 216
  dissociated diatomic gas, 184
  ionized gas, 193
  perfect gas, 183
  power-law relation, 208
  rotational, 178
  translational, 177, 178
  vibrational, 178, 183
"Internal" induced emission, 127
Ionization, 192–197, 382 *ff.*
  in air, 413–416
  degree of for air, 206
  by electron impact, 386–390, 392–396
  of excited atoms, 392–396
  by heavy particles, 398–401
  internal energy of air with, 206
  multiple, 201–207
Ionization potential,
  average, 203
  effective decrease in, 217, 218
  first, 195
  H, 111, 442
  lowering due to cutoff, 200, 201
  m-ion, 194, 203, 204
  N, N_2, NO, O, O_2, 192
  second, 195
Ionization probes, 245
Ionization rate, 388, 393–396, 405
Ionized gases, with Coulomb interactions, 215–218
Ionosphere, processes in, 416
Isentropes, 50, 55–61, 65–67
  with anomalous thermodynamic properties, 67–69
  approximate relation for with multiple ionization, 205
Isentropic equation, perfect gas, 178
Isentropic exponent, 4, 207
Isotropic distribution of radiation, 110

Kholev and Poltavchenko shock tube, 242
Kinematic viscosity, 73, 75
Kinetic energy, degenerate electron gas, 220
Kinetic pressure, 225–277
Kirchhoff's law, 118, 120, 129
Kolb T-tube, 240, 241
Kr, photoionization, 276
Kramers' formula, 265
Kramers–Unsöld formula, 271

Lagrangian coordinates, 4–7
Lambda-type doubling, 308
Langmuir probe, 245
Laser beam,
  breakdown in, 338–343
  heating in, 343–348
Laser effect, 122–124
Lasers, 119, 122
Li,
  cross section for photoprocesses, 404
  photoionization, 267, 268, 276
Lifetime of activated complex, 371
Light mean free path (*see* Photon mean free path)
Limiting compression, 58
  (*see also* Limiting density ratio across a shock)
Limiting density ratio across a shock, 52, 59
  with dissociation and ionization, 209–212
  with radiation, 214, 215
  (*see also* Density ratio across a strong shock)
Limiting velocity for steady flow, 42
Line broadening, 287, 292
Line spectra, 112
Line width, total, 287
Local radiation equilibrium, 151–156
Longitudinal viscosity coefficient, 76
Lorentz line shape, 126
Loschmidt number, 441

Magnetic annular shock tube, 242
Magnetic shock tubes (*see* Electromagnetic shock tubes)
Magnetic piston, 240–242
Magnetic quantum number, 316
Masers, 122
Mass action law, 186, 190
  for ionization, 194

Maximum exhaust velocity for unsteady flow, 102, 103, 237
Maxwell distribution function, 258, 444
Maxwell stress tensor, 168
Mean absorption coefficient, 166
  bremsstrahlung, 260
  multiply ionized gas, 278–281
  singly ionized gas, 275
Mean free path, molecular, 70
  (*see also* Photon, Planck, Radiation, and Rosseland mean free paths)
Metastable equilibrium, 189, 350
Microscopic reversibility, principle of, 120
Microwave absorption and reflection, 245
Milne problem, 160
Molecular band spectra, 303 *ff.*
  infrared, 308
  structure of, 308–312
Molecular transport of momentum, 70
Moment of inertia, linear molecule, 181
Momentum density of radiation, 168–171
Momentum flux density tensor, 2, 168
  of radiation, 168–172
Monatomic gas, 177
Multiple ionization, approximate calculations for, 201–207
Multiple shock compression, 59

N,
  absorption coefficients, 334
  concentration in ionized air, 197
  cross section for photoprocesses, 404
  first excited electronic state, energy, 182
  ionization of, 389
  ionization potential, 192, 385
  photoionization, 267
  statistical weight, ground state, 182
N^-, experimental data, 335
N^{+4}, photoionization, 268
N_2,
  absorption coefficients, 334
  dissociation energy, 184, 213
  dissociation of, 187, 188
  electronic states and band systems, 305–310, 312, 321
  energy level diagram, 307
  first excited electronic state, energy, 182
  ionization of, 389
  ionization potential, 192
  oscillator strength, 333, 334
  recombination rate, 364, 365
  rotational energy, 178, 352
  rotational relaxation time, 353
  statistical weight, ground state, 182
  vibrational energy, 178, 352
  vibrational relaxation time, 361
N_2^+,
  dissociative recombination of, 385
  electronic states and band systems, 305, 321
  oscillator strength, 334
Na,
  cross section for photoprocesses, 404
  photoionization, 267, 268
Natural line width, 114, 285, 292
Ne,
  excitation of, 391
  ionization of, 389
Negative ions, photon absorption by (*see* Photodetachment)
Nernst theorem, 230
NH_3, rotational relaxation time, 353
NO,
  absorption by, 324
  absorption coefficients, 324
  activation energy for decomposition, 378
  activation energy for formation, 377, 378
  concentration in air, 190
  dissociation energy, 184
  doublet splitting, ground state, 182
  electronic states and band systems, 305, 314, 319–321, 324
  first excited electronic state, energy, 182
  formation in dissociated air, 187
  formation of, 189, 374–378
  Frank–Condon factors for β-system, 319, 320
  ionization of, 389
  ionization potential, 385
  oscillator strength, 333, 334
  potential curves, 314
  reaction rate constant for formation of, 191
  relaxation time in formation of, 378
  rotational energy, 178

statistical weight, ground state, 182
vibrational energy, 178
NO^+,
in air, 385
dissociative recombination of, 385
NO_2,
absorption cross section, 337
concentration in air, 338
formation of, 378–382
relaxation time in formation of, 379, 380
vibrational energy, 178
Nonuniformly heated body,
radiation from, 138
radiation spectrum, 139, 140

O,
absorption coefficients, 334
concentration in ionized air, 197
cross section for photoprocesses, 404
first excited electronic state, energy, 182
ground triplet state, energy spacing, 182
ionization of, 389
ionization potential, 192, 385
photoionization, 267, 268
statistical weight, ground state, 182
O^-,
absorption cross section, 268
binding energy, 268
O^{+5}, photoionization, 268
O_2,
absorption coefficients, 334
dissociation energy, 184
dissociation of, 187, 188
dissociation rate, 367
dissociation relaxation time, 368
effect of H_2O on vibrational excitation, 361
electronic states and band systems, 305, 313, 321
first excited electronic state, 182
ionization of, 389
ionization potential, 192, 385
oscillator strength, 333, 334
potential curves, 314
recombination rate, 368
rotational energy, 178, 352
rotational relaxation time, 353
statistical weight, ground state, 182
vibrational energy, 178, 353
vibrational relaxation time, 361
O_2^-, binding energy, 268
O_2^+, dissociative recombination of, 385
O_3, formation of, 367
One-sided integrated radiant energy flux, equilibrium radiation, 117, 118
One-sided spectral radiant energy flux, equilibrium radiation, 117, 118
(*see also* Surface brightness, spectral)
Optical characteristics, 110
Optical pyrometry, 245
Optical thickness, 111, 135, 151
Optically thick body, 135, 136
Optically thin body, 135, 137
Orbital quantum number, 306
Oscillator, bound electron as, 284–286
Oscillator strength, 290–292
for the continuum, 298–300
hydrogen-like atoms, 296, 297
molecular transitions, 321–323, 332
negative, for emission, 291
Overlapping of spectral lines, 294
Oxidation of nitrogen, 189, 191, 374–382

p, u diagrams, 90, 91
p, V diagrams, 55–69
Partial pressures, 186
Partition functions, 179–182
activated complex, 372, 373
free electron, 194
harmonic oscillator, 181
m-ion, 194
monatomic gas, 182
(*see also* Electronic, Rotational, and Vibrational partition functions)
Pauli exclusion principle, 220
Peclet number, 72
Perfect black body, 118
Perfect gas, 3, 183
constant specific heats, 176–178
Phase transition of solids, 69
Photodetachment, 268
Photoelectric effect, 113, 114
Photoexcitation, 406
Photoionization, 112, 264–269, 384, 385, 402–406
cross section, 265, 266
Photon absorption, 110
Photon and electron collision processes, relation between, 256

Photon distribution function, 108
Photon emission, probability of, 119
Photon gas, 116
Photon lifetime, 111
Photon mean free path, 111
  absorption, 115
  scattering, 115
  (*see also* Radiation mean free path)
Photon number as invariant of electromagnetic field, 172–175
Photon scattering, 110
Photorecombination, 112, 384, 385, 402–406
Photospheres (*see* Stellar photospheres)
Pinch effect, 242
Planck constant, 441
Planck distribution function, 121
Planck function, 116
Planck mean free path, 166
Plane photosphere problem, 158–164
Plasmas, relaxation in, 416–421
Point explosion, 93
  with counterpressure, 99–101
  (*see also* Strong explosion)
Poisson's adiabatics (*see* Isentropes)
Poisson's equation, with spherical symmetry, 224
Polyatomic molecules,
  dissociation, 183
  linear, 178
  nonlinear, 178
Polymorphous transformation of solids, 69
  (*see also* Phase transition of solids)
Population inversion, 123
Potential pressure, 225–227
Poynting vector, 108, 169
Prandtl front thickness, 82
Pressure,
  approximate relation for, with multiple ionization, 205
  from Coulomb interactions, 217
  degenerate electron gas, 220
  ionized gas, 193
  radiation (*see* Radiation pressure)
Priming electrons, 340, 384, 401
Probability of atomic transitions, 288–292
Probability of molecular transitions, 316–321
Proton mass, 441

Quantum numbers, molecular, 304, 306–308, 316
Quasi-energy, 125
Quasi-equilibrium, 120
Quasi-momentum, 126

Radiant energy conservation, 130
Radiant heat exchange in a fluid, 141–144
Radiation, 107 *ff.*, 246 *ff.*
Radiation continuity equation, 130, 145
Radiation energy, 168, 197
Radiation energy losses, 164–168
Radiation entropy (*see* Entropy of radiation)
Radiation equilibrium (*see* Equilibrium radiation)
Radiation from a plane layer, 135–137
Radiation from accelerated electron, 249
Radiation heat conduction approximation, 151–156, 163, 164
Radiation intensity (*see* Spectral radiation intensity)
Radiation mean free path,
  averaged for optically thick body (*see* Rosseland mean free path)
  averaged for optically thin body (*see* Planck mean free path)
Radiation momentum (*see* Momentum density of radiation)
Radiation pressure, 142, 168, 172, 197
  isotropic field, 117
Radiation spectrum, 108
  optically thick body, 167
  optically thin body, 167
Radiation thermal conductivity coefficient, 153
Radiation wave, 344, 348
Radiative capture (*see* Electron capture)
Radiative emission in spectral lines, 300–303
Radiative equilibrium, in a star, 157
Radiative transfer, 107
Radiative transfer equation, 128–130, 132
  quasi-steady, 133
Rarefaction shock waves, 59–62
  with anomalous thermodynamic properties, 67–69

Rarefaction wave, 33-37
attainable states, 62
cylindrically symmetric, 43
spherically symmetric, 43
(*see also* Centered rarefaction wave)
Rate of excitation or deexcitation (*see* Relaxation)
Ratio of specific heats, 4
Rayleigh-Jeans law, 116
Rayleigh-Jeans region of spectrum, 122
Rb, photoionization, 267, 268
RbH, potential curves, 319
Reaction rate, by activated complex method, 372
(*see also* Chemical reactions; Relaxation)
Recombination, 382, 387
diffusion model for, 408–412
impact-radiative, 413
molecular, 364–368, 387
by three-body collisions, 406–413
(*see also* Dissociation; Ionization)
Recombination coefficient, 387
Recombination rate, 388, 395
Red edge, 311, 312
Reflectivity, 118
Relaxation,
dissociation, 362–368
in plasmas, 416–421
rotational, 352, 353
translational, 349
Relaxation layer, 234
Relaxation processes, 349 *ff.*
order of, 351
Relaxation times, 351
for dissociation, 363
for equilibrium radiation, 130
in NO formation, 378
in NO_2 formation, 379, 380
for photoprocesses, 403
in a plasma, 421
rotational, 353
vibrational, 356, 360–362
Remote ignition, 92
Re-radiation, 129
Resonant energy transfer, 122
Resonant scattering, 114
Resonant scattering cross section at line center, 114
Rest mass energy of electron, 442
Restricted equilibrium, 120
Reversible reactions, 189
Reynolds number, 72
Riemann invariants, 19–21, 26
Rosseland mean free path, 152, 153
air, 280
bremsstrahlung, 260
effect of spectral lines on, 297, 298
multiply ionized gas, 278–281
singly ionized gas, 274, 275
Rosseland weighting factor, 153
Rotating mirror camera, 243
Rotational energies, 181, 304
H_2, 178, 352
N_2, 178, 352
NO, 178
O_2, 178, 352
Rotational partition function, 181
Rotational quantum number, 304
Rotational relaxation, 352, 353
Rotational relaxation times, 353
Rotational structure of band spectra, 308–312
Rydberg, 293, 442

Saha equation, 194, 195, 444
Sawtooth absorption curve, 273, 274
Scattering, 110, 114, 115, 286
Scattering coefficient, 110
mass, 111
Scattering cross section, 113, 115
Schlieren photography, 244
Schumann-Runge band system, 305, 323, 330, 333, 334
Schwarzschild approximation (*see* Forward-reverse approximation)
Screening effect, 251
Screening radius, in a plasma, 418
Second law of thermodynamics, 4
Second positive band system of N_2, 305, 307–310, 312, 330, 334
Second viscosity coefficient, 73, 74, 76
and internal degrees of freedom, 74
Selection rules, diatomic molecules, 308
Selective absorption, 114
Self-absorption, 136
Self-consistent electric field, 223, 224
Self-similar compression wave, impossibility of continuous solution for, 43, 44

Self-similar motion, 39
centered rarefaction wave, 38–41
centered simple wave (*see* Centered rarefaction wave)
plane arbitrary discontinuities, 86, 87
(*see also* Strong explosion; Sudden expansion of a gas cloud into vacuum)
Shadow photography, 244
Shock adiabatics (*see* Hugoniot curves)
Shock front, 75
structure, 54, 69, 75–77
Shock front thickness, 73
measurement of, 244
Shock tubes, 88, 89, 233–245
with combustion, 238
conditions behind reflected wave, 238, 239
driver gas, 234, 235
methods of measurement, 243–245
principle of operation, 234–236
test gas, 234, 235
Shock wave reflection from end of shock tube, 89, 238, 239
Shock wave relations, 45–49
Shock waves,
with anomalous thermodynamic properties, 67–69
formation of, 23, 44
limiting density ratio (*see* Limiting density ratio across a shock)
mechanical stability condition for, 61, 62, 68, 69
Simple waves, 27–30, 32
Slightly compressed atom, electron density distribution, 228
Sound absorption, 74, 75
coefficient of, 74, 75
Sound dispersion, 75
Sound intensity, 9
(*see also* Decibels)
Sound wave propagation with viscosity and heat conduction, 74, 75
Sound waves,
energy of, 12
monochromatic, 10
plane, 7, 8, 10
propagation velocity of, 8
spherical, 13–15
(*see also* Finite amplitude waves)
Specific heat, 177, 179
diatomic molecules, 183
with dissociation, 184, 186, 187
rotational, 178
translational, 177, 178
vibrational, 178, 183
Specific heat ratio,
diatomic gas, vibrations excited, 179
diatomic gas, vibrations frozen, 179
equilibrium radiation, 117
monatomic gas, 179
Spectra in nebulae, 201
Spectral emission coefficient, bremsstrahlung emission, 258
Spectral energy flux, one-sided (*see* One-sided spectral radiant energy flux)
Spectral line shape, 127
Spectral line width, 126, 127
Spectral lines, 283–292
Spectral measurement of light intensity, 244
Spectral radiant energy density, 109
equilibrium radiation, 116, 444
(*see also* Planck function)
Spectral radiant energy flux, 109
Spectral radiant energy flux vector, 109
Spectral radiation intensity, 109, 128–130
equilibrium radiation, 116, 444
integral expressions for, 131, 132
Spectroscopic notation, 306–308
Speed of light, 441
Spontaneous emission, 119, 121, 127, 129
probability of, 121
Stark effect, 200
Stars (*see* Stellar photospheres)
Statistical weight,
free electron state, 192, 194
ground state, N, N_2, NO, O, O_2, 182
hydrogen-like atom, 265
Stefan–Boltzmann constant, 117, 443
Stellar photospheres, 154
radiative equilibrium in, 157–164
Steric factor, 370
Stimulated emission (*see* Induced emission)
Stirling's formula, 180
Strong explosion, 93–99
approximate treatment, 97–99
with counterpressure, 94
similarity law, 95

Strong shock relations, 51, 52, 94
with equilibrium radiation, 213–215
Sudden expansion of a gas cloud into vacuum, 101–106
conditions for self-similarity, 104–106
with energy release, 106
isothermal, 106
plane layer, 104
Sum rule,
molecular, 318, 319
for oscillator strengths, 299
Surface brightness,
black body, 137
integrated (*see* Integrated brightness temperature)
spectral, 136, 137
Symmetry factor, 181
Symmetry properties, diatomic molecules, 308

Taper tube, 242, 243
Temperature,
effect on dissociation, 186, 187
translational, 350
vibrational, 356
Thermal conductivity coefficient, 71
of radiation (*see* Radiation thermal conductivity coefficient)
Thermal diffusivity, 72, 75
Thermal expansion coefficient, 56, 65
Thermal radiation, 107
Thermodynamic equilibrium, 349
Thermodynamic functions,
with Coulomb corrections, 216–218
monatomic gas, 182, 183
rotational contribution to, 183
vibrational contribution to, 183
Thermonuclear reactions, rate of, 359
Thomas–Fermi method, 220–229
generalized for nonzero temperature, 229–232
Thomson cross section, 115, 443
Thomson theory for recombination, 406
Threshold for breakdown, 342
Total absorption coefficient (*see* Attenuation coefficient)
Total emission coefficient, 120
Transition probabilities,
atomic, 288–292
hydrogen atom, 300–302
molecular, 316–321
vibrational (*see* Vibrational excitation, probability of)
Transitions,
between excited states, 396–398
bound-bound, 112, 114, 283 *ff.*
bound-free, 112, 261 *ff.*
electronic, 111, 246 *ff.*
free-free, 112–114, 248 *ff.*
Translational partition function, 180, 182
Translational relaxation, 349
Transport scattering cross section, 256
True absorption coefficient, 110

Unimolecular reactions, 369
Unsteady flow into vacuum, 42, 101–106, 237

van der Waals' gas, 69
Vegard–Kaplan forbidden band system, 305, 307, 323
Vibrational energies, 182, 304
N_2, 178, 354
NO, 178
NO_2, 178
O_2, 178, 354
Vibrational excitation, probability of, 355–361
Vibrational partition function, 181
Vibrational quantum number, 304
Vibrational relaxation time, 356, 360–362
Vibrational-rotational coupling, 183
Violet edge, 311, 312
Virial theorem, particles in a Coulomb field, 227, 228
Viscosity, 69–73
Viscosity coefficient, 71, 73
"Viscous" pressure, 71
Viscous stress tensor, 71
Visible spectrum, 108
Volume radiator, 135, 136

Wave equation,
for density change in plane motion, 7
solutions of in plane motion, 8
for velocity in plane motion, 8

Wave number, 442
Weak discontinuities, 32
Weak shock front structure,
  entropy maximum, 79–81
  heat conduction but no viscosity, 77–81
  viscosity but no heat conduction, 81–84
Weak shock wave relations, 53, 63–67
Weak shock waves, 56
Weakly anisotropic radiation field, 145–151
Weakly imperfect gases, 215, 216
Weakly ionized gas,
  photon absorption in, 281
  relaxation in, 421
Wien region, 121
Wien's displacement law, 116

x-ray absorption, 244
Xe, 207
  photoionization, 276
  properties behind shock waves, 213

Zero-point energy, vibrations, 181

SCIENCE/PHYSICS

PHYSICS OF SHOCK WAVES AND HIGH-TEMPERATURE HYDRODYNAMIC PHENOMENA

Ya. B. Zel'dovich and Yu. P. Raizer

High temperatures elicit a variety of reactions in gases, including increased molecular vibrations, dissociation, chemical reactions, ionization, and radiation of light. In addition to affecting the motion of the gas, these processes can lead to changes of composition and electrical properties, as well as optical phenomena.

These and other processes of extreme conditions—such as occur in explosions, in supersonic flight, in very strong electrical discharges, and in other cases—are the focus of this outstanding text by two leading physicists of the former Soviet Union. The authors deal thoroughly with all the essential physical influences on the dynamics and thermodynamics of continuous media, weaving together material from such disciplines as gas dynamics, shock-wave theory, thermodynamics and statistical physics, molecular physics, spectroscopy, radiation theory, astrophysics, solid-state physics, and other fields.

This volume, uniquely comprehensive in the field of high-temperature gas physics and gas dynamics, was edited and annotated by Wallace D. Hayes and Ronald F. Probstein, leading authorities on the flow of gases at very high speeds. It is exceptionally well suited to the needs of graduate students in physics, as well as professors, engineers, and researchers.